This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world’s books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that’s often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book’s long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ **Make non-commercial use of the files** We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ **Refrain from automated querying** Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google’s system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ **Maintain attribution** The Google “watermark” you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ **Keep it legal** Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can’t offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book’s appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google’s mission is to organize the world’s information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world’s books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at [http://books.google.com/](http://books.google.com/)
REPRINTED FROM THE AUTHOR'S EDITION 1719.

THE LIFE
AND
SURPRISING ADVENTURES
OF
ROBINSON CRUSOE
OF YORK, MARINER.

GIVING AN ACCOUNT
OF HIS TWENTY-EIGHT YEARS' RESIDENCE ON A DESERT UNINHABITED ISLAND,
AND HOW HE WAS STRANGELY DELIVERED.

ALSO
AN ACCOUNT OF HIS FURTHER ADVENTURES AND SUBSEQUENT TRAVELS IN
FRANCE, PERSIA, INDIA, CHINA, TARTARY, AND RUSSIA.

BY
DANIEL Defoe.

ILLUSTRATED BY ABOVE 100 DESIGNS BY GORDON BROWNE.

LONDON:
BLACKIE & SON, 49 & 50 OLD BAILEY, E.C.;
GLASGOW, EDINBURGH, AND DUBLIN.
1885.
PREFACE TO THIS EDITION.

In this edition of *Robinson Crusoe* the text of the original has been carefully followed, and no attempt has been made to polish the strong unstudied diction of the author, or to improve on his homely vigorous language. In only a few instances, and those very few and unimportant, has the original text been departed from: namely, where there occur in that text (in five or six places) evident misprints, or sentences uncorrected by the author and standing meaningless or contradictory till the obvious corrections were made; and also where, in as few instances, names of places were so misspelt (according to modern usage) as to present an almost insuperable geographical difficulty to youthful readers. For the sake of youthful readers also there have been omitted in three or four places certain gross or profane expressions, which, though characteristic of the persons supposed to use them, were quite superfluous to the text, and formed no essential or desirable part of the dialogue.

These alterations are so slight and unimportant as hardly to form actual departures from the original text, and it may therefore be claimed that the present edition of De Foe's immortal work (unlike many that have been published) is a faithful reproduction of the original, and that the following pages contain "the Strange Surprizing Adventures of Robinson Crusoe," as they were written nearly a hundred and seventy years ago.

The Work (as here published) being mainly intended for the younger class of readers, many obscure expressions and obsolete words have their meaning explained in brief footnotes.

*London, September, 1884.*
NOTICE OF

THE ORIGINAL EDITION OF ROBINSON CRUSOE.

The original edition of this masterpiece of De Foe was published in 1719, and contained the adventures of Robinson Crusoe up to the time of his leaving the island on which he was so long compelled to reside. Its title was: "The Life and Strange Surprizing Adventures of Robinson Crusoe, of York, Mariner: who lived eight and twenty Years all alone in an uninhabited Island on the Coast of America, near the Mouth of the Great River Oroonoque; having been cast on Shore by Shipwreck, wherein all the Men perished but himself: With an Account how he was at last as strangely deliver'd by Pyrates. Written by himself." The work was not put forth under De Foe's name, but had prefixed to it a short preface, in which "the editor" expresses his high opinion of the narrative, as both entertaining and instructive, and gravely states that he "believes the thing to be a just History of Fact; neither is there any Appearance of Fiction in it." The success of this volume was very great (there being four editions of it in the same year), and in a few months a second volume was published, with the following title: "The farther Adventures of Robinson Crusoe, being the Second and last Part of his Life, and strange, surprising Accounts of his Travels round Three Parts of the Globe. Written by himself." The present edition comprises the whole of these two volumes. A sort of supplementary volume was published in 1720, consisting of "Serious Reflections" by Robinson Crusoe, together with his "Vision of the Anglick World." This volume seems never to have had any popularity, and is long since utterly forgotten. It has, indeed, no real connection with the history of Crusoe, nor any interest for readers in general.
CONTENTS.

LIST OF THE PAGE ILLUSTRATIONS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Illustration</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Crusoe tempted to go to Sea,</td>
<td>Frontispiece. 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crusoe cast ashore,</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;I was terrified to the last degree,&quot;</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rescue of the Spaniard,</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A great ship on fire,</td>
<td>329</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The savages made prisoners,</td>
<td>390</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;We stood and looked very steadily at them,&quot;</td>
<td>448</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destruction of the Tartar Idol,</td>
<td>569</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Biographical Notice of the Author, . . . . . . . . . . . . . pp. xi-xvi

My birth and parentage—Early education—Desire to go to sea—My father's wise counsel and warnings—A mother's displeasure—I leave home—Sail from Hull to London—A great storm—My fear and repentance drowned in punch—The storm renewed—The ship springs a leak and founders—The crew saved and reach Yarmouth—Another warning despised—I travel to London, . . . . . . . pp. 1-14

I make a voyage to Guinea—Am successful in a trading venture—Death of the honest captain, who had taught me mathematics and navigation—Sail again for Guinea—The ship is captured by Turkish pirates—I am in slavery at Sallee—My new master—Make my escape with the boy Xury in a longboat, . . . . . . . . . . . . pp. 15-23

We steer south and reach land—Adventure with a lion—See savages on the shore—A leopard shot—We are picked up by a Portuguese ship—The captain takes Xury—We arrive at the Brazils—The captain's wholesome advice—I purchase a small plantation—My increasing prosperity, . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . pp. 23-38

My passion for wandering—Receive a tempting offer from my neighbour planters—I sail for the African coast—We are caught in a tornado—
CONTENTS.

The ship strikes on a sandbank—Loss of all the crew—I am cast ashore half-dead, . . . . . . . . . . . . . pp. 38-46

My sad condition—First night on the island—In the morning I swim to the wreck—Construct a raft and bring ashore many useful things—View the country, and seek a proper place of habitation—The island appears barren and uninhabited by men—My other visits to the wreck—A storm blows the wreck farther off the land, . . . . pp. 47-59

I fix on a spot for my tent, and proceed to fortify it—Anxiety about my powder—I see goats on the island—A dismal prospect of my condition—Hopeful considerations, . . . . . . . . . . . . pp. 60-65

I resolve to keep a calendar—Secure a dog and two cats—Reflections on my condition—Begin to furnish my house—I feel the want of many necessary articles—Copy of my Journal—God's goodness to me in sending seed-corn—A terrible earthquake and hurricane, . . . pp. 66-87

The storm drives the wreck farther in-shore—I visit it daily—Find a turtle—I fall ill of fever andague—A frightful dream—Wholesome thoughts, leading to prayer—I find a Bible, the reading whereof gives me great comfort, . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . pp. 87-98

I begin to recover, and feel thankful and repentant—Make a survey of the island—Find tobacco, melons, grapes, and other fruits—Build a summer bower—My daily diet—Observe the first anniversary of my coming to the island—I learn to divide the seasons—My attempts at basket-making, . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . pp. 93-113

I travel across the island—Catch a parrot—Bring home a young goat—My second anniversary—Reflections upon my condition, . . . pp. 113-119

I begin my third year on the island—The want of tools—Reap my crop of corn—I at last succeed in making tolerable earthenware vessels—How I milled and baked—I set about making a boat, but fail to get it into the water, . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . pp. 119-135

My fourth anniversary—Wise and profitable reflections—Fatal and fortunate days—My new clothing and umbrella—How five years have passed over, . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . pp. 135-143

I start on a voyage of discovery, and am blown out to sea—My narrow escape—An unexpected visit from Poll, . . . . . . pp. 144-151

My improvement in the mechanic exercises—I trap some goats—A description of my own appearance, and of my family and estates—My alarm at seeing the print of a man's foot on the shore—Look to God for deliverance—I adopt new means for defence, . . . . . . pp. 152-172
CONTENTS.

I come upon the horrible remains of a cannibal feast—My plans against the savages—A better disposition afterwards possesses me—Discover a cave or grotto, into which I remove my ammunition—My diversions and amusements—See a party of savages on the shore—Find proofs of their cannibalism—My distress of mind and indignation, . . . pp. 172-194

A Spanish ship lost with all hands off the island—I go on board the wreck and obtain new supplies—Find some useless money—A few profitable reflections, . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . pp. 194-206

A strange dream—A new resolve—Another landing of the savages—I rescue one of their victims, and name him Friday—A description of my new servant—Remains of the cannibals' feast buried, . . . pp. 206-216

I make clothes for Friday—He becomes much attached to me—His alarm on hearing my gun fired—My efforts to teach him—Friday's reasoning and notions of religion—Reflections on the uselessness of religious controversy, . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . pp. 216-230

Friday tells me of the white mans in his country—I set about making a canoe—Keep another anniversary—The savages again land—We attack them and rescue a Spaniard—Friday finds his father, . . . pp. 230-249

My island now peopled—My converse with the Spaniard—We make preparations for sending the Spaniard and Friday's father on a voyage to the mainland, . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . pp. 249-257

A ship appears off the island—The captain and two others landed as prisoners—We attack and overcome the mutinous crew—The ship secured, . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . pp. 257-261

I make preparations for leaving the island—Part of the ships' crew are left behind—I bring away some relics of my long imprisonment—My arrival in England after thirty-five years' absence, . . . pp. 281-287

I visit Yorkshire, and find greater part of my family dead—Afterwards sail for Lisbon—Receive news about my Brazil plantation—The old captain's honesty and kindness—My sudden increase of wealth—Considerations concerning my future course, . . . . pp. 287-296

I set out by land from Lisbon for England—We meet with severe weather, and are attacked by wolves—Friday's adventure with a bear—We are again attacked by wolves—I arrive safe in England—My Brazil plantation sold—I marry and try to settle in England, . . . pp. 296-315
CONTENTS.

THE SECOND PART.

My strong inclination to go abroad again—A strange dream—My wife's devotion to me—I buy a farm in Bedfordshire—My wife's death—I sail with my nephew for the East Indies—The supplies I carried out for the colony in my island—We save the people on board a burning ship—We transfer the passengers to another ship—A young priest remains with us, . . . . . . . . . . . . pp. 317-338

We steer for the West Indies—Fall in with a disabled ship, and relieve the crew—Sad condition of the poor passengers—The lady found dead, and we take on board her son and her maid—I reach my old habitation on the island, . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . pp. 338-346

My landing on the island—Friday's meeting with his father—My reception by the Spaniards, . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . pp. 347-351

A retrospective view of the state of the island when I first left it—The Spaniard's narrative—He returns to the island with his countrymen—The villanous conduct of three of the Englishmen I left on the island—They are disarmed and reduced to order for a time, . . . . . . . pp. 352-365

The narrative continued—Two bands of savages land on the island—A fierce battle between them—The Spaniards capture three of the savages, . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . pp. 365-371

The colonists make new arrangements about their dwellings—Another broil with the three Englishmen—Will Atkins' murderous plot—The three are banished from their comrades—They set sail for the mainland—Their unexpected return with three native men and five native women—A strange kind of lottery—Some reflections on diligence and slothfulness, . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . pp. 372-388

Another landing of savages—Three of them are left behind, one of whom afterwards escapes—The savages return and burn some of the huts—They are beaten back for the time, . . . . . . . . . pp. 388-399

A larger band of armed savages land—After a fierce fight they are routed—Their canoes are burned, and the remnant of the men are confined to one part of the island—How they were taught to plant and to make useful articles, . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . pp. 399-409

Will Atkins' wonderful tent of basket-work—Improvement I observed in the colony—An account of the life of the Spaniards whilst among the savages, . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . pp. 410-417
CONTENTS.

My intercourse with the people on the island, and presents I made to them of things likely to be useful—The island divided into three colonies or settlements, pp. 417-422

The character of the French priest—A diverting account of his life—His serious discourse with me concerning the marrying of the Englishmen to the native women—He urges on me the sin of neglecting to teach all the natives on the island the truths of religion—He asks to remain on the island as a teacher, pp. 422-436

My discourse with the Englishmen about marrying the women—The priest's scruples against marrying unbaptized persons—Will Atkins' confession—He becomes truly penitent—The priest's candour and Christian charity—We catechize Will Atkins—He relates the discourse he had with his wife concerning religion—They are married, and also the young woman Susan, pp. 436-460

My final arrangements before leaving the island—Will Atkins gladly receives a Bible—Susan's story of her dreadful sufferings on shipboard—I bid farewell to the island, pp. 460-470

Three days after leaving we are attacked by savages, and Friday is killed—We arrive at the Brazils—I send more supplies to the island, pp. 470-478

My passion for further wandering—I proceed to the East Indies—We touch at Madagascar—A desperate fray with the natives there—My opposition to the massacre brings on me the ill-will of the crew—I am left alone in Bengal, pp. 478-501

I have thoughts of returning to England—An English merchant proposes to me a voyage to China—I make another voyage to the Spice Islands and Manillas, pp. 501-505

My partner and I purchase a Dutch ship, and start on another voyage—We put into the river of Cambodia to repair a leak, and receive a warning that our new ship had been pirated—We put to sea again and are chased by boats—We make for the coast of Tonquin—We lay the ship ashore for repair, and are attacked by the natives, pp. 505-521

We get out to sea again, and take on board an old Portuguese pilot—His story about the pirates—His advice to go to China—We come to Quinchang—We are tormented by the fear of falling in with the Dutch and being treated by them as pirates—We meet with three Romish missionaries, pp. 521-533

Father Simon the friar or missionary—My dealings with a Japan merchant—We part with the ship—Visit the city of Nanquin—A dissertation on the Chinese—We travel to Peking, pp. 534-545
CONTENTS.

We leave Peking, and travel in a large caravan—Some of the wonders that we saw, including the great wall of China—We are threatened by Tartars—I am set on by five ruffians, and only saved by the bravery of the old pilot—We are again threatened by the Tartars—We reach Argun in the dominions of the Czar of Muscovy, . . . . pp. 546–560

My satisfaction at having reached a Christian country—The geography of this part of Muscovy—We destroy the great Tartar idol Cham-Chi-Thaungu—Fury of the Tartars, who pursue us—We reach Jarawena safely, . . . . . . . . . . . . . pp. 560–573

We pass through a frightful desert—A description of the people of the country—We reach Tobolski—Life at this place—The story of an exiled Russian noble—He refuses to escape, . . . . pp. 573–588

We start from Tobolski—Are attacked by roving bands—We reach Archangel and then Hamburg—I arrive safely in London in 1705: “resolving to harass myself no more,” . . . . . . . . . . . pp. 589–595
THE MAN WHO WROTE ROBINSON CRUSOE.

For more than a century and a half the story of Robinson Crusoe has been the most popular narrative ever written. Its fascinations have attracted old and young.

At the time that it was first published (in 1719) it gained such a reputation that it was bought by all classes, and it is still a foremost favourite not only with those who read it for amusement, but with literary critics, who appreciate the consummate skill of the writer, who describes every circumstance and each detail with such an easy simplicity as to give the whole story an air of truth which at once arrests the attention and controls the imagination.

Our great-great-grandfathers when they were boys had an intimate acquaintance with Robinson Crusoe. To them he was a real character; and boys still regard him not so much as the hero of a fiction as an historical person, and talk of his adventures as events which really happened.

Dr. Johnson speaking of this remarkable story asks, “Was there ever anything written by mere man that the reader wished longer except Robinson Crusoe, Don Quixote, and the Pilgrim’s Progress?”

One of De Foe’s numerous opponents, who endeavoured to ridicule and to ruin him at the time that the book was first issued, wrote, “There is not an old woman that can go to the price of it but buys the ‘Life and Adventures,’ and leaves it as a legacy with the Pilgrim’s Progress.” This was rare praise though it was meant for a snarl, and shows how great must have been the popularity of the tale, for, if the old folks bought it, we may be sure
the young folks either bought or borrowed it, and they have con-
tinued to do so ever since.

Perhaps now that you take this book into your hand you may
like to hear something about the man who wrote it. He played
a conspicuous part in several of the most exciting occurrences of
the time in which he lived, and some of his own adventures and
vicissitudes were of a very extraordinary kind, especially as he
began life in a commonplace and humble manner, and might never
have been heard of but for his courage and industry and for the
determination with which he constantly opposed tyranny and
injustice.

Daniel Defoe was born in the year 1661. He was the son
of James Defoe, who was a tradesman in London, and it is not
known for what reason he placed the "De" before his name,
unless he discovered that his family was of foreign extraction.
As his father was a dissenter from the Church of England, Daniel
was sent to a school kept by a member of the same community at
Newington Green, where he appears to have studied well. He was
an assiduous reader, and it is believed learnt Latin, Dutch, and
Italian; but he was also a keen observer, and retained in his
memory nearly everything that he saw or heard, so that as he
went a great deal into the company of various kinds of people he
acquired a great deal of information, which he was able to put to
good account in the large number of essays, pamphlets, and stories
which he afterwards wrote.

It was intended that he should be a Nonconformist minister,
and perhaps his studies and his strong religious convictions were
in favour of the choice; but for some reason he did not carry out
this design. At nineteen he wrote his first pamphlet, and soon
afterwards became known as a satirical writer and a bold opponent
of the tyrannical measures which the government and the church
were at that time putting in force against the liberties and the
consciences of the people. The persecution of the Nonconformists
and Dissenters naturally excited his indignation, and afterwards
(when James II. came to the throne), his detestation of the principles
of the government and his strong desire to support Protestantism led him foolishly to join the rebellion which was attempted by the Duke of Monmouth.

On the failure of this attempt De Foe, more fortunate than many others, escaped with life and liberty. He then went into business as a hosier or dealer in wool in Freeman's Yard, Cornhill, but he continued to write and publish political pamphlets, in which he satirized the government and advocated justice and constitutional laws. He also wrote on public events and on commercial and financial subjects. His industry was extraordinary, and his caustic satire and humorous reasoning made numerous and powerful enemies at the court. While he was in business he went on more than one journey to Spain, but he did not succeed very well with his trade, possibly because he devoted too much attention to politics. Though the number of pamphlets and essays which he wrote could have left him little leisure, he had a project for making the kind of bricks and tiles which at that time were brought to this country from Holland, and accordingly he commenced a manufactory on the banks of the Thames. But while he thus introduced a new industry to England he did not profit by it, for the persecutions of his opponents prevented him from pursuing the enterprise, and he became bankrupt. He then devoted his energies to the payment of his creditors in full, and in this he succeeded.

When William of Orange came to the throne De Foe's position was improved. As a friend to civil and religious liberty and a firm Protestant, William III. had his loyal support. Early in 1700 he published a pamphlet in answer to a libel on the king, and called it "The True Born Englishman." It was in verse, and was a defence of William and a satirical attack on his enemies. The effect of it was that De Foe was invited to court and received a present of a considerable sum of money, which, with the large sale of the book, placed him for a time in easy circumstances. He hoped to obtain some employment from the government, but the death of William III., the accession of Anne, and the influence
of the adherents of the House of Stuart frustrated his expectations. Once more he began to write diligently, and his enemies sought for an opportunity to ruin him. That opportunity he soon gave them by publishing an ironical pamphlet entitled "The Shortest Way with the Dissenters," which offended many people and so enraged the High Church party that they issued an indictment. The House of Commons ordered the book to be burned by the common hangman, and a warrant was issued for the apprehension of De Foe, with the proclamation of a reward of £50 for any one who should bring him to justice.

This proclamation gives us a description of De Foe's personal appearance—"A middle-sized, spare man, about forty years old, of a brown complexion and dark brown-coloured hair, but wears a wig, a hooked nose, sharp chin, gray eyes, and a large mole near his mouth." He was soon arrested, and the sentence upon him was that he should stand in the pillory, be fined 200 marks, to find sureties for his good behaviour for seven years, and should be imprisoned in Newgate till all this was done. The pillory was a kind of raised platform set up on the open street, and the prisoner, whose hands were secured to a beam at about the height of his head, stood there to be the object of the jeers and abuse of the mob, who pelted him with filth. There were three principal pillories in London: one in front of the Royal Exchange, one at the Conduit in Cheapside, and one at Temple Bar. The government made a great mistake in De Foe's case, for the populace, regarding him as the champion of religious liberty, attended him in a kind of triumphal procession from Newgate to the places where the pillories stood. It was in the month of July that he first mounted one of these platforms, and as there were plenty of flowers to be had, the pillory was hung with garlands, and refreshments were brought to him during the time that he stood there, the crowd accompanying him back to Newgate with acclamations when the penance was over. This was in 1703, and while he was in prison his courage and industry did not desert him; he continued to write, and among other things published an ode to the pillory. He
also planned a journal called the *Review*, written entirely by himself, and afterwards published two or three times a week for some years. After he had been in prison more than a year, Harley, who became Secretary of State, interceded with Queen Anne for his release, and the queen kindly sent money to his wife and shortly after set him at liberty. He retired to the country with his wife and children and continued to write, and for some time, though his enemies were always on the watch to entrap him, he contrived to live in peace.

His character and abilities must have been highly esteemed whatever opposition there may have been to his outspoken expressions in politics, for in 1706, when the Union of Scotland and England in one government was proposed, Lord Godolphin recommended him to the queen as a proper person to send to Edinburgh to promote that union.

He was engaged in this undertaking for more than a year, and on his return his efforts were rewarded by a pension; but a change in the government soon deprived him of it, and he was again obliged to gain a living by writing. In fact he had never left off writing. The number of pamphlets and essays that came from his pen was astonishing. Altogether above 400 are known to have been published, besides his later stories, essays, biographies, and narratives of adventure. Again he was attacked for his political declarations; again he was fined and imprisoned in Newgate; but again he was liberated by the queen.

This was in November, 1713, and in the following year the queen died. The enemies of De Foe then endeavoured to crush him, and he felt compelled to write an account of his political conduct and of the sufferings which had been inflicted on him. His health gave way for a time, and when he recovered he abandoned political writing and satirical pamphlets and devoted his talents to narratives and stories of fiction, of which the Life and Adventures of Robinson Crusoe is the earliest and the most permanently popular. It has been hinted that this story was taken from the narrative of Alexander Selkirk, a man who some
De Foe was a man of true genius and of indomitable spirit, neither daunted him nor prevented him from denouncing or upholding the right of liberty of conscience; but it is said that his greatest ability lay in what may be called story-telling. The book that is now before you is a work which shows that he was a consummate master. There is no need for any description of the merits or the style of the story, as in this special edition the original language of the work has been preserved, it may be well to remind the young reader that in the period in which Johnson Crusoe was supposed to have lived; and secondly, that De Foe was such an accomplished narrator, that he was able to use the modes of expression that a man like Robinson Crusoe would have used at that time. This latter particular is one of the reasons why De Foe's story is so real, and therefore so admirable.
I was born in the year 1632, in the city of York, of a good family, though not of that country, my father being a foreigner of Bremen, who settled first at Hull: he got a good estate by merchandise, and leaving off his trade, lived afterward at York, from whence he had married my mother, whose relations were named Robinson, a very good family in that country, and from whom I was called Robinson Kreutznaer; but, by the usual corruption of words in England, we are now called, nay, we call ourselves, and write our name Crusoe, and so my companions always called me.

I had two elder brothers, one of which was lieutenant-colonel to an English regiment of foot in Flanders, formerly commanded by the famous Colonel Lockhart, and was killed at the battle near Dunkirk against the Spaniards: what became of my second brother
I never knew, any more than my father or mother did know what was become of me.

Being the third son of the family, and not bred to any trade, my head began to be filled very early with rambling thoughts. My father, who was very ancient, had given me a competent share of learning, as far as house education and a country free school generally goes, and designed me for the law; but I would be satisfied with nothing but going to sea, and my inclination to this led me so strongly against the will, nay, the commands of my father, and against all the entreaties and persuasions of my mother and other friends, that there seemed to be something fatal in that propension of nature tending directly to the life of misery which was to befall me.

My father, a wise and grave man, gave me serious and excellent counsel against what he foresaw was my design. He called me one morning into his chamber, where he was confined by the gout, and expostulated very warmly with me upon this subject. He asked me what reasons more than a mere wandering inclination I had for leaving my father's house and my native country, where I might be well introduced, and had a prospect of raising my fortune by application and industry, with a life of ease and pleasure. He told me it was for men of desperate fortunes on one hand, or of aspiring, superior fortunes on the other, who went abroad upon adventures, to rise by enterprise, and make themselves famous in undertakings of a nature out of the common road; that these things were all either too far above me, or too far below me; that mine was the middle state, or what might be called the upper station of low life, which he had found by long experience was the best state in the world, the most suited to human happiness, not exposed to the miseries and hardships, the labour and sufferings of the mechanic part of mankind, and not embarrassed with the pride, luxury, ambition, and envy of the upper part of mankind. He told me I might judge of the happiness of this state by this one thing—namely, that this was the state of life which all other people envied; that kings have frequently lamented the miserable consequences of being born to great things, and wish they had been placed in the middle of the two extremes,—between the
mean and the great; that the wise man gave his testimony to this as the just standard of true felicity, when he prayed to have neither poverty nor riches.¹

He bid me observe it, and I should always find, that the calamities of life were shared among the upper and lower part of mankind; but that the middle station had the fewest disasters, and was not exposed to so many vicissitudes as the higher or lower part of mankind; nay, they were not subjected to so many distempers and uneasinesses either of body or mind, as those were who, by vicious living, luxury, and extravagancies on one hand, or by hard labour, want of necessaries, and mean or insufficient diet on the other hand, bring distempers upon themselves by the

¹ Solomon. Proverbs xxx. 8.
natural consequences of their way of living; that the middle station of life was calculated for all kind of virtues and all kind of enjoyments; that peace and plenty were the handmaids of a middle fortune; that temperance, moderation, quietness, health, society, all agreeable diversions, and all desirable pleasures, were the blessings attending the middle station of life; that this way men went silently and smoothly through the world, and comfortably out of it, not embarrassed with the labours of the hands or of the head, not sold to the life of slavery for daily bread, or harassed with perplexed circumstances, which rob the soul of peace and the body of rest; not enraged with the passion of envy, or secret burning lust of ambition for great things; but in easy circumstances sliding gently through the world, and sensibly tasting the sweets of living, without the bitter; feeling that they are happy, and learning by every day's experience to know it more sensibly.

After this, he pressed me earnestly, and in the most affectionate manner, not to play the young man, not to precipitate myself into miseries which nature and the station of life I was born in seemed to have provided against; that I was under no necessity of seeking my bread; that he would do well for me, and endeavour to enter me fairly into the station of life which he had been just recommending to me; and that if I was not very easy and happy in the world, it must be my mere fate or fault that must hinder it, and that he should have nothing to answer for, having thus discharged his duty in warning me against measures which he knew would be to my hurt. In a word, that as he would do very kind things for me if I would stay and settle at home, as he directed, so he would not have so much hand in my misfortunes, as to give me any encouragement to go away. And, to close all, he told me I had my elder brother for an example, to whom he had used the same earnest persuasions to keep him from going into the Low Country wars, but could not prevail, his young desires prompting him to run into the army, where he was killed; and though, he said, he would not cease to pray for me, yet he would venture to say to me that, if I did take this foolish step, God would not bless me, and I would have leisure hereafter to reflect
upon having neglected his counsel when there might be none to assist in my recovery.

I observed in this last part of his discourse, which was truly prophetic, though I suppose my father did not know it to be so himself, I say I observed the tears run down his face very plentifully, and especially when he spoke of my brother who was killed; and that when he spoke of my having leisure to repent, and none to assist me, he was so moved that he broke off the discourse, and told me his heart was so full he could say no more to me.

I was sincerely affected with this discourse—as indeed who could be otherwise?—and I resolved not to think of going abroad any more, but to settle at home according to my father's desire. But, alas! a few days wore it all off; and, in short, to prevent any of my father's further importunities, in a few weeks after I resolved to run quite away from him. However, I did not act so hastily neither as my first heat of resolution prompted; but I took my mother, at a time when I thought her a little pleasanter than ordinary, and told her that my thoughts were so entirely bent upon seeing the world, that I should never settle to anything with resolution enough to go through with it, and my father had better give me his consent than force me to go without it; that I was now eighteen years old, which was too late to go apprentice to a trade, or clerk to an attorney; that I was sure if I did, I should never serve out my time, and I should certainly run away from my master before my time was out, and go to sea; and if she would speak to my father to let me go one voyage abroad, if I came home again and did not like it, I would go no more, and I would promise by a double diligence to recover that time I had lost.

This put my mother into a great passion. She told me she knew it would be to no purpose to speak to my father upon any such subject; that he knew too well what was my interest to give his consent to any such thing so much for my hurt, and that she wondered how I could think of any such thing, after such a discourse as I had had with my father, and such kind and tender expressions as she knew my father had used to me; and that, in short, if I would ruin myself, there was no help for me; but I
might depend I should never have their consent to it. That, for her part, she would not have so much hand in my destruction; and I should never have it to say that my mother was willing when my father was not.

Though my mother refused to move it to my father, yet, as I have heard afterwards, she reported all the discourse to him, and that my father, after showing a great concern at it, said to her with a sigh,—"That boy might be happy if he would stay at home; but if he goes abroad he will be the most miserable wretch that was ever born. I can give no consent to it."

It was not till almost a year after this that I broke loose, though in the meantime I continued obstinately deaf to all proposals of settling to business, and frequently expostulating with my father and mother about their being so positively determined against what they knew my inclinations prompted me to. But being one day at Hull, where I went casually, and without any purpose of making an elopement that time; but, I say, being there, and one of my companions being going by sea to London in his father's ship, and prompting me to go with them, with the common allurement of seafaring men—namely, that it should cost me nothing for my passage—I consulted neither father nor mother any more, nor so much as sent them word of it; but leaving them to hear of it as they might, without asking God's blessing, or my father's; without any consideration of circumstances or consequences, and in an ill hour, God knows, on the 1st of September, 1651, I went on board a ship bound for London. Never any young adventurer's misfortunes, I believe, began sooner, or continued longer than mine. The ship was no sooner gotten out of the Humber but the wind began to blow, and the waves to rise in a most frightful manner; and, as I had never been at sea before, I was most inexpressibly sick in body, and terrified in my mind. I began now seriously to reflect upon what I had done, and how justly I was overtaken by the judgment of Heaven for my wicked leaving my father's house, and abandoning my duty; all the good counsel of my parents, my father's tears and my mother's entreaties, came now fresh into my mind; and my conscience, which was not yet come to the pitch of hardness to which it has been
since, reproached me with the contempt of advice, and the breach of my duty to God and my father.

All this while the storm increased, and the sea, which I had never been upon before, went very high, though nothing like what I have seen many times since; no, nor like what I saw a few days after. But it was enough to affect me then, who was but a young sailor and had never known anything of the matter. I expected every wave would have swallowed us up, and that every time the ship fell down, as I thought, in the trough or hollow of the sea, we should never rise more; and in this agony of mind I made many vows and resolutions, that if it would please God here to spare my life this one voyage, if ever I got once my foot upon dry land again, I would go directly home to my father, and never set it into a ship again while I lived; that I would take his advice, and never run myself into such miseries as these any more. Now I saw plainly the goodness of his observations about the middle station of life; how easy, how comfortably he had lived all his days, and never had been exposed to tempests at sea, or troubles on shore; and I resolved that I would, like a true repenting prodigal, go home to my father.

These wise and sober thoughts continued all the while the storm continued, and indeed some time after; but the next day the wind was abated and the sea calmer, and I began to be a little inured to it. However, I was very grave for all that day, being also a little sea-sick still; but towards night the weather cleared up, the wind was quite over, and a charming fine evening followed; the sun went down perfectly clear, and rose so the next morning; and having little or no wind, and a smooth sea, the sun shining upon it, the sight was, as I thought, the most delightful that ever I saw.

I had slept well in the night, and was now no more sea-sick but very cheerful, looking with wonder upon the sea that was so rough and terrible the day before, and could be so calm and so pleasant in so little time after. And now, lest my good resolutions should continue, my companion, who had indeed enticed me away, comes to me,—"Well, Bob," says he, clapping me on the shoulder, "how do you do after it? I warrant you were frightened, wa'n't
you, last night, when it blew but a capful of wind?”—"A capful, d'you call it?” said I; "'twas a terrible storm.”—"A storm, you fool you,” replies he; "do you call that a storm? Why, it was nothing at all! Give us but a good ship and sea-room, and we think nothing of such a squall of wind as that. But you're but a

"I warrant you were frightened, won't you?"

fresh-water sailor, Bob. Come, let us make a bowl of punch, and we'll forget all that. D'ye see what charming weather 'tis now?” To make short this sad part of my story, we went the old way of all sailors. The punch was made, and I was made drunk with it. And in that one night's wickedness I drowned all my repentance, all my reflections upon my past conduct, and all my resolutions for my future. In a word, as the sea was returned to its smoothness of surface and settled calmness by the abatement of that
storm, so—the hurry of my thoughts being over, my fears and apprehensions of being swallowed up by the sea being forgotten, and the current of my former desires returned—I entirely forgot the vows and promises that I made in my distress. I found, indeed, some intervals of reflection, and the serious thoughts did, as it were, endeavour to return again sometimes; but I shook them off, and roused myself from them as it were from a distemper, and applying myself to drinking and company, soon mastered the return of those fits—for so I called them—and I had in five or six days got as complete a victory over conscience as any young fellow, that resolved not to be troubled with it, could desire. But I was to have another trial for it still; and Providence, as in such cases generally it does, resolved to leave me entirely without excuse. For if I would not take this for a deliverance, the next was to be such a one as the worst and most hardened wretch among us would confess both the danger and the mercy.

The sixth day of our being at sea we came into Yarmouth Roads; the wind having been contrary and the weather calm, we had made but little way since the storm. Here we were obliged to come to an anchor, and here we lay, the wind continuing contrary—namely, at south-west—for seven or eight days, during which time a great many ships from Newcastle came into the same roads, as the common harbour where the ships might wait for a wind for the river.

We had not, however, rid here so long, but we should have tided it up the river, but that the wind blew too fresh; and after we had lain four or five days, blew very hard. However, the roads being reckoned as good as a harbour, the anchorage good, and our ground-tackle\(^1\) very strong, our men were unconcerned, and not in the least apprehensive of danger, but spent the time in rest and mirth, after the manner of the sea;\(^2\) but the eighth day, in the morning, the wind increased, and we had all hands at work to strike our top-masts, and make everything snug and close, that the ship might ride as easy as possible. By noon the sea went very high indeed, and our ship rid forecastle\(^3\) in, shipped several

---

\(^1\) Anchors, cables, &c.  
\(^2\) i.e. of sailors.  
\(^3\) The forward part of the ship, where the foremast stands. It was separated from the rest of the deck by a bulkhead.
seas, and we thought once or twice our anchor had come home, upon which our master ordered out the sheet-anchor; so that we rode with two anchors ahead, and the cables veered out to the better end.

By this time it blew a terrible storm indeed, and now I began to see terror and amazement in the faces even of the seamen themselves. The master, though vigilant in the business of preserving the ship, yet, as he went in and out of his cabin by me, I could hear him softly to himself say several times, "Lord, be merciful to us; we shall be all lost, we shall be all undone," and the like. During these first hurries I was stupid, lying still in my cabin, which was in the steerage, and cannot describe my temper. I could ill resume the first penitence, which I had so apparently trampled upon and hardened myself against. I thought the bitterness of death had been past, and that this would be nothing, too, like the first. But when the master himself came by me, as I said just now, and said we should be all lost, I was dreadfully frightened. I got up out of my cabin and looked out; but such a dismal sight I never saw. The sea went mountains high, and broke upon us every three or four minutes. When I could look about, I could see nothing but distress round us. Two ships that rid near us we found had cut their masts by the board, being deep laden; and our men cried out that a ship which rid about a mile ahead of us was foundered. Two more ships being driven from their anchors, were run out of the roads to sea at all adventures, and that with not a mast standing. The light ships fared the best, as not so much labouring in the sea; but two or three of them drove, and came close by us, running away with only their sprit-sail out before the wind.

Towards evening the mate and boatswain begged the master of our ship to let them cut away the foremost, which he was very unwilling to; but the boatswain protesting to him that if he did not the ship would founder, he consented; and when they had cut away the foremost, the main-mast stood so loose and shook the ship so much, they were obliged to cut her away also, and make a clear deck.

¹ Complete.
SPRUNG A LEAK!

Any one may judge what a condition I must be in at all this, who was but a young sailor, and who had been in such a fright before at but a little. But if I can express at this distance the thoughts I had about me at that time, I was in tenfold more horror of mind upon account of my former convictions, and the having returned from them to the resolutions I had wickedly taken at first, than I was at death itself; and these, added to the terror of the storm, put me into such a condition that I can by no words describe it. But the worst was not come yet. The storm continued with such fury, that the seamen themselves acknowledged they had never known a worse. We had a good ship; but she was deep laden, and wallowed in the sea, that the seamen every now and then cried out she would founder. It was my advantage in one respect that I did not know what they meant by founder till I inquired. However, the storm was so violent, that I saw what is not often seen—the master, the boatswain, and some others more sensible than the rest, at their prayers, and expecting every moment when the ship would go to the bottom. In the middle of the night, and under all the rest of our distresses, one of the men that had been down on purpose to see, cried out we had sprung a leak; another said there was four foot water in the hold.

Then all hands were called to the pump. At that very word my heart, as I thought, died within me, and I fell backwards upon the side of my bed where I sat, into the cabin. However, the men roused me, and told me that I that was able to do nothing before was as well able to pump as another, at which I stirred up and went to the pump, and worked very heartily. While this was doing, the master, seeing some light colliers, who, not able to ride out the storm, were obliged to slip and run away to sea, and would come near us, ordered to fire a gun as a signal of distress. I, who knew nothing what that meant, was so surprised, that I thought the ship had broke, or some dreadful thing had happened. In a word, I was so surprised, that I fell down in a swoon. As this was a time when everybody had his own life to think of, nobody minded me, or what was become of me; but another man stepped up to the pump, and thrusting me aside with his foot, let me lie,
thinking I had been dead; and it was a great while before I came
to myself.

We worked on; but the water increasing in the hold, it was
apparent that the ship would founder; and though the storm
began to abate a little, yet, as it was not possible she could swim
till we might run into a port, so the master continued firing guns
for help, and a light ship, who had rid it out just ahead of us,
ventured a boat out to help us. It was with the utmost hazard
the boat came near us; but it was impossible for us to get on
board, or for the boat to lie near the ship's side, till at last, the men
rowing very heartily, and venturing their lives to save ours, our
men cast them a rope over the stern with a buoy to it, and then
veered it out a great length, which they, after great labour and
hazard, took hold of, and we hauled them close under our stern,
and got all into their boat. It was to no purpose for them or us
after we were in the boat to think of reaching to their own ship,
so all agreed to let her drive, and only to pull her in towards shore
as much as we could; and our master promised them, that if the
boat was staved upon shore, he would make it good to their
master; so, partly rowing and partly driving, our boat went away
to the norward, sloping towards the shore almost as far as
Winterton Ness.

We were not much more than a quarter of an hour out of our
ship when we saw her sink, and then I understood for the first time
what was meant by a ship foundering in the sea. I must acknow-
ledge I had hardly eyes to look up when the seamen told me she
was sinking; for from that moment they rather put me into the
boat than that I might be said to go in. My heart was, as it
were, dead within me, partly with fright, partly with horror of
mind and the thoughts of what was yet before me.

While we were in this condition, the men yet labouring at the
oar to bring the boat near the shore, we could see, when our boat,
mounting the waves, we were able to see the shore, a great many
people running along the shore to assist us when we should come
near; but we made but slow way towards the shore, nor were we
able to reach the shore, till, being past the lighthouse at Wint-
ton, the shore falls off to the westward towards Cromer, and so the
land broke off a little the violence of the wind. Here we got in, and though not without much difficulty, got all safe on shore, and walked afterwards on foot to Yarmouth, where, as unfortunate men, we were used with great humanity, as well by the magistrates of the town, who assigned us good quarters, as by particular merchants and owners of ships, and had money given us sufficient to carry us either to London or back to Hull, as we thought fit.

Had I now had the sense to have gone back to Hull, and have gone home, I had been happy, and my father, an emblem of our blessed Saviour's parable, had even killed the fatted calf for me; for, hearing the ship I went away in was cast away in Yarmouth Road, it was a great while before he had any assurance that I was not drowned.

But my ill fate pushed me on now with an obstinacy that nothing could resist; and though I had several times loud calls from my reason and my more composed judgment to go home, yet I had no power to do it. I know not what to call this, nor will I urge that it is a secret overruling decree that hurries us on to be the instruments of our own destruction, even though it be before us, and that we push upon it with our eyes open. Certainly nothing but some such decreed unavoidable misery attending, and which it was impossible for me to escape, could have pushed me forward against the calm reasonings and persuasions of my most retired thoughts, and against two such visible instructions as I had met with in my first attempt.

My comrade, who had helped to harden me before, and who was the master's son, was now less forward than I. The first time he spoke to me after we were at Yarmouth, which was not till two or three days, for we were separated in the town to several quarters; I say, the first time he saw me, it appeared his tone was altered, and looking very melancholy, and shaking his head, asked me how I did, and telling his father who I was, and how I had come this voyage only for a trial, in order to go further abroad. His father, turning to me with a very grave and concerned tone, "Young man," says he, "you ought never to go to sea any more; you ought to take this for a plain and visible token that you are not to be a seafaring man."—"Why, sir," said I; "will you go to
...more of my story, as the end of it, but with a strange kind of passion, "What had I that such an unhappy wretch should come into, would not set my foot in the same ship with three thousand pounds." This, indeed, was, as I said, as his spirit, which were yet agitated by the sense of being further than he could have authority to go. Afterwards talked very gravely to me; exhorted me, my father, and not tempt Providence to my ruin; to see a visible hand of Heaven against me; "And, said he, "depend upon it, if you do not go back, where you will meet with nothing but disasters and disappointments."

Your father's words are fulfilled upon you.

We parted soon after, for I made him little answer to him no more. Which way he went I know not. Having some money in my pocket, I travelled to London there, as well as on the road, had many struggles —what course of life I should take, and whether to come or go to sea.

As to going home, shame opposed the best motion to my thoughts: and it immediately occurred to me to laugh at among the neighbours, and should I come, not my father and mother only, but even every one of the common temper of mankind in general. It.
what measures to take and what course of life to lead. An irresistible reluctance continued to going home; and as I stayed a while, the remembrance of the distress I had been in wore off; and as that abated, the little motion I had in my desires to a return wore off with it, till at last I quite laid aside the thoughts of it, and looked out for a voyage.

That evil influence which carried me first away from my father's house, that hurried me into the wild and indigested notion of raising my fortune, and that impressed those conceits so forcibly upon me, as to make me deaf to all good advice, and to the entreaties and even command of my father—I say, the same influence, whatever it was, presented the most unfortunate of all enterprises to my view, and I went on board a vessel bound to the coast of Africa, or, as our sailors vulgarly call it, a voyage to Guinea.¹

It was my great misfortune that in all these adventures I did not ship myself as a sailor, whereby, though I might indeed have worked a little harder than ordinary, yet at the same time I had learned the duty and office of a foremast man, and in time might have qualified myself for a mate or lieutenant, if not for a master. But as it was always my fate to choose for the worse, so I did here; for, having money in my pocket, and good clothes upon my back, I would always go on board in the habit of a gentleman. And so I neither had any business in the ship, or learned to do any.

It was my lot first of all to fall into pretty good company in London, which does not always happen to such loose and unguided young fellows as I then was, the devil generally not omitting to lay some snare for them very early. But it was not so with me. I first fell acquainted with the master of a ship who had been on the coast of Guinea; and who having had very good success there, was resolved to go again; and who, taking a fancy to my conversation, which was not at all disagreeable at that time, hearing me say I had a mind to see the world, told me if I would go the voyage with him I should be at no expense; I should be his messmate and his companion; and if I could carry anything with me,

¹The Gold Coast. The coins called guineas were so named because numbers of them were made from gold brought from the "Guinea Coast" of Africa.
I should have all the advantage of it that the trade would admit, and perhaps I might meet with some encouragement.

I embraced the offer, and, entering into a strict friendship with this captain, who was an honest and plain-dealing man, I went the voyage with him, and carried a small adventure with me, which, by the disinterested honesty of my friend the captain, I increased very considerably; for I carried about £40 in such toys and trifles as the captain directed me to buy. This £40 I had mustered together by the assistance of some of my relations whom I corresponded with, and who, I believe, got my father, or at least my mother, to contribute so much as that to my first adventure.

This was the only voyage which I may say was successful in all my adventures, and which I owe to the integrity and honesty of my friend the captain, under whom also I got a competent knowledge of the mathematics and the rules of navigation, learned how to keep an account of the ship's course, take an observation, and, in short, to understand some things that were needful to be understood by a sailor. For, as he took delight to introduce me, I took delight to learn; and, in a word, this voyage made me both a sailor and a merchant; for I brought home five pounds nine ounces of gold dust for my adventure, which yielded me in London at my return almost £300, and this filled me with those aspiring thoughts which have since so completed my ruin.

Yet even in this voyage I had my misfortunes too, particularly that I was continually sick, being thrown into a violent calenture by the excessive heat of the climate, our principal trading being upon the coast, from the latitude of fifteen degrees north even to the line itself.

I was now set up for a Guinea trader; and my friend, to my great misfortune, dying soon after his arrival, I resolved to go the same voyage again, and I embarked in the same vessel with one who was his mate in the former voyage, and had now got the command of the ship. This was the unhappiest voyage that ever man made; for though I did not carry quite £100 of my new gained wealth, so that I had £200 left, and which I lodged with my friend's widow, who was very just to me, yet I fell into terrible misfortunes in this voyage; and the first was this—namely,
ATTACKED BY PIRATES.

our ship making her course towards the Canary Islands, or rather between those islands and the African shore, was surprised in the gray of the morning by a Turkish rover of Sallee, who gave chase to us with all the sail she could make. We crowded also as much canvas as our yards would spread or our masts carry to have got clear; but finding the pirate gained upon us, and would certainly come up with us in a few hours, we prepared to fight, our ship having twelve guns and the rogue eighteen. About three in the afternoon he came up with us, and bringing-to by mistake just athwart our quarter, instead of athwart out stern, as he intended, we brought eight of our guns to bear on that side, and poured in a broadside upon him, which made him sheer off again, after returning our fire and pouring in also his small shot from near two hundred men which he had on board. However, we had not a man touched, all our men keeping close. He prepared to attack

"He entered sixty men upon our decks."

1 That part of the ship that lies toward the stern.
us again, and we to defend ourselves; but laying us on board the
next time upon our other quarter, he entered sixty men upon our
decks, who immediately fell to cutting and hacking the decks and
rigging. We plied them with small-shot, half-pikes, powder-cheats,
and such like, and cleared our deck of them twice. However, to
cut short this melancholy part of our story, our ship being disabled,
and three of our men killed and eight wounded, we were obliged
to yield, and were carried all prisoners into Sallee, a port belong-
ing to the Moors.

The usage I had there was not so dreadful as at first I appre-
hended, nor was I carried up the country to the emperor's court,
as the rest of our men were, but was kept by the captain of the
rover as his proper prize, and made his slave, being young and
nimble and fit for his business. At this surprising change of my
circumstances, from a merchant to a miserable slave, I was perfectly
overwhelmed; and now I looked back upon my father's prophetic
discourse to me, that I should be miserable, and have none to
relieve me, which I thought was now so effectually brought to
pass, that it could not be worse; that now the hand of Heaven
had overtaken me, and I was undone without redemption. But,
alas! this was but a taste of the misery I was to go through, as
will appear in the sequel of this story.

As my new patron or master had taken me home to his house,
so I was in hopes that he would take me with him when he went
to sea again, believing that it would some time or other be his
fate to be taken by a Spanish or Portugal man-of-war; and that
then I should be set at liberty. But this hope of mine was soon
taken away; for when he went to sea he left me on shore to look
after his little garden, and do the common drudgery of slaves
about his house; and when he came home again from his cruise,
he ordered me to lie in the cabin to look after the ship.

Here I meditated nothing but my escape, and what method I
might take to effect it, but found no way that had the least pro-
bability in it. Nothing presented to make the supposition of it
rational; for I had nobody to communicate it to that would
embark with me, no fellow-slave, no Englishman, Irishman, or
Scotsman there but myself; so that for two years, though I often
pleased myself with the imagination, yet I never had the least encouraging prospect of putting it in practice.

After about two years an odd circumstance presented itself, which put the old thought of making some attempt for my liberty again in my head. My patron lying at home longer than usual without fitting out his ship, which, as I heard, was for want of money, he used constantly, once or twice a-week, sometimes oftener, if the weather was fair, to take the ship's pinnace, and go out into the road a-fishing; and as he always took me and a young Maresco with him to row the boat, we made him very merry, and I proved very dexterous in catching fish, insomuch that sometimes he would send me with a Moor, one of his kinsmen, and the youth—the Maresco, as they called him—to catch a dish of fish for him.

It happened one time, that going a-fishing in a stark\(^1\) calm morning, a fog rose so thick, that though we were not half a league from the shore we lost sight of it; and rowing we knew not whither or which way, we laboured all day and all the next night, and when the morning came we found we had pulled off to sea instead of pulling in for the shore; and that we were at least two leagues from the shore. However, we got well in again, though with a great deal of labour and some danger; for the wind began to blow pretty fresh in the morning: but particularly we were all very hungry.

But our patron, warned by this disaster, resolved to take more care of himself for the future; and having lying by him the long-boat of our English ship he had taken, he resolved he would not go a-fishing any more without a compass and some provision. So he ordered the carpenter of his ship, who also was an English slave, to build a little state-room or cabin in the middle of the longboat, like that of a barge, with a place to stand behind it to steer and hale home the main-sheet; and room before for a hand or two to stand and work the sails. She sailed with what we call a shoulder-of-mutton sail; and the boom gibed over the top of the cabin, which lay very snug and low, and had in it room for him to lie, with a slave or two; and a table to eat on, with some small

---

\(^1\) “Stark” is here used for quite or thoroughly.
lockers to put in some bottles of such liquor as he thought fit to drink; particularly his bread, rice, and coffee.

We went frequently out with this boat a-fishing. And as I was most dexterous to catch fish for him, he never went without me. It happened that he had appointed to go out in this boat, either

"He sent on board a larger store of provisions."

for pleasure or for fish, with two or three Moors of some distinction in that place and for whom he had provided extraordinarily, and had therefore sent on board the boat overnight a larger store of provisions than ordinary; and had ordered me to get ready three fuzees with powder and shot, which were on board his ship, for that they designed some sort of fowling as well as fishing.

I got all things ready as he had directed, and waited the next morning with the boat washed clean, her ancient\(^1\) and pendants

\(^1\) Flag at the stern.
out, and everything to accommodate his guests. When by-and-by my patron came on board alone, and told me his guests had put off going, upon some business that fell out, and ordered me with the man and boy as usual to go out with the boat and catch them some fish, for that his friends were to sup at his house; and commanded that as soon as I had got some fish, I should bring it home to his house; all which I prepared to do.

This moment my former notions of deliverance darted into my thoughts, for now I found I was like to have a little ship at my command; and my master being gone, I prepared to furnish myself, not for a fishing business, but for a voyage; though I knew not, neither did I so much as consider, whither I should steer; for anywhere to get out of that place was my way.

My first contrivance was to make a pretence to speak to this Moor, to get something for our subsistence on board; for I told him we must not presume to eat of our patron's bread. He said that was true; so he brought a large basket of rusk or biscuit of their kind, and three jars with fresh water into the boat. I knew where my patron's case of bottles stood, which it was evident by the make were taken out of some English prize, and I conveyed them into the boat while the Moor was on shore, as if they had been there before for our master. I conveyed also a great lump of bees'-wax into the boat, which weighed above half a hundredweight, with a parcel of twine or thread, a hatchet, a saw, and a hammer, all which were of great use to us afterwards, especially the wax to make candles. Another trick I tried upon him, which he innocently came into also. His name was Ismael, who they call Muly or Moely; so I called to him—"Moely," said I, "our patron's guns are on board the boat; can you not get a little powder and shot? It may be we may kill some alcamics (a fowl like our curlews) for ourselves, for I know he keeps the gunner's stores in the ship." "Yes," says he, "I'll bring some." And accordingly he brought a great leather pouch, which held about a pound and a half of powder, or rather more, and another with shot, that had five or six pound, with some bullets, and put all into the boat. At the same time, I had found some powder of my master's in the great cabin, with which I filled one of the
large bottles in the case, which was almost empty, pouring what was in it into another; and thus furnished with everything needful, we sailed out of the port to fish. The castle, which is at the entrance of the port, knew who we were, and took no notice of us; and we were not above a mile out of the port before we hauled in our sail, and set us down to fish. The wind blew from the north-north-east, which was contrary to my desire; for had it blown southerly, I had been sure to have made the coast of Spain, and at least reached to the Bay of Cadiz; but my resolutions were, blow which way it would, I would be gone from that horrid place where I was, and leave the rest to fate.

After we had fished some time and caught nothing—for when I had fish on my hook, I would not pull them up, that he might not see them—I said to the Moor, "This will not do; our master will not be thus served; we must stand farther off." He, thinking no harm, agreed; and being in the head of the boat, set the sails: and as I had the helm, I run the boat out near a league farther, and then brought her to, as if I would fish; when, giving the boy the helm, I stepped forward to where the Moor was, and making as if I stooped for something behind him, I took him by surprise with my arm under his twist, and tossed him clear overboard into the sea. He rose immediately, for he swim like a cork, and called to me, begged to be taken in; told me he would go all over the world with me. He swim so strong after the boat that he would have reached me very quickly, there being but little wind; upon which I stepped into the cabin, and fetching one of the fowling-pieces, I presented it at him, and told him I had done him no hurt, and if he would be quiet I would do him none. "But," said I, "you swim well enough to reach to the shore, and the sea is calm; make the best of your way to shore, and I will do you no harm, but if you come near the boat I'll shoot you through the head; for I am resolved to have my liberty." So he turned himself about and swim for the shore; and I make no doubt but he reached it with ease, for he was an excellent swimmer.

I could have been content to have taken this Moor with me and have drowned the boy, but there was no venturing to trust
him. When he was gone I turned to the boy, who they called Xury, and said to him, "Xury, if you will be faithful to me, I'll make you a great man; but if you will not stroke your face to be true to me—that is, swear by Mahomet and his father's beard—I must throw you into the sea too." The boy smiled in my face, and spoke so innocently, that I could not mistrust him; and swore to be faithful to me, and go all over the world with me.

While I was in view of the Moor that was swimming, I stood out directly to sea with the boat, rather stretching to windward, that they might think me gone towards the strait's mouth (as indeed any one that had been in their wits must have been supposed to do); for who would have supposed we were sailed on to the southward, to the truly barbarian coast, where whole nations of negroes were sure to surround us with their canoes, and destroy us; where we could never once go on shore but we should be devoured by savage beasts, or more merciless savages of human kind.

But as soon as it grew dusk in the evening I changed my course, and steered directly south and by east, bending my course
a little toward the east, that I might keep in with the shore; and having a fair fresh gale of wind and a smooth, quiet sea, I made such sail that I believe by the next day at three o'clock in the afternoon, when I first made the land, I could not be less than 150 miles south of Sallee; quite beyond the Emperor of Morocco's dominions, or, indeed, of any other king thereabouts, for we saw no people.

Yet such was the fright I had taken at the Moors, and the dreadful apprehensions I had of falling into their hands, that I would not stop, or go on shore, or come to an anchor, the wind continuing fair, till I had sailed in that manner five days; and then the wind shifting to the southward, I concluded also that if any of our vessels were in chase of me, they also would now give over. So I ventured to make to the coast, and came to an anchor in the mouth of a little river, I knew not what, or where; neither what latitude, what country, what nation, or what river. I neither saw, nor desired to see, any people; the principal thing I wanted was fresh water. We came into this creek in the evening, resolving to swim on shore as soon as it was dark, and discover the country; but as soon as it was quite dark we heard such dreadful noises of the barking, roaring, and howling of wild creatures, of we knew not what kinds, that the poor boy was ready to die with fear, and begged of me not to go on shore till day. "Well, Xury," said I, "then I won't; but it may be we may see men by day, who will be as bad to us as those lions." "Then we give them the shoot gun," says Xury, laughing; "make them run way." Such English Xury spoke by conversing among us slaves. However, I was glad to see the boy so cheerful, and I gave him a dram (out of our patron's case of bottles) to cheer him up. After all, Xury's advice was good, and I took it. We dropped our little anchor, and lay still all night—I say still, for we slept none—for in two or three hours we saw vast great creatures (we knew not what to call them) of many sorts come down to the sea-shore, and run into the water, wallowing and washing themselves for the pleasure of cooling themselves; and they made such hideous howlings and yellings, that I never indeed heard the like.

Xury was dreadfully frightened, and indeed so was I too. But
Search for Water.

We were both more frightened when we heard one of these mighty creatures come swimming towards our boat. We could not see him, but we might hear him by his blowing to be a monstrous, huge, and furious beast. Xury said it was a lion, and it might be so for aught I know; but poor Xury cried to me to weigh the anchor, and row away. "No," says I; "Xury, we can slip our cable with the buoy to it, and go off to sea. They cannot follow us far." I had no sooner said so but I perceived the creature (whatever it was) within two oars' length, which something surprised me. However, I immediately stepped to the cabin-door, and taking up my gun, fired at him, upon which he immediately turned about, and swam towards the shore again.

But it is impossible to describe the horrible noises, and hideous cries and howlings, that were raised as well upon the edge of the shore as higher within the country, upon the noise or report of the gun—a thing I have some reason to believe those creatures had never heard before. This convinced me that there was no going on shore for us in the night upon that coast; and how to venture on shore in the day was another question too, for to have fallen into the hands of any of the savages had been as bad as to have fallen into the hands of lions and tigers; at least we were equally apprehensive of the danger of it.

Be that as it would, we were obliged to go on shore somewhere or other for water, for we had not a pint left in the boat. When or where to get to it was the point. Xury said, if I would let him go on shore with one of the jars, he would find if there was any water, and bring some to me. I asked him why he would go—why I should not go and he stay in the boat? The boy answered with so much affection that made me love him ever after. Says he, "If wild mans come, they eat me; you go way." "Well, Xury," said I, "we will both go; and if the wild mans come, we will kill them. They shall eat neither of us." So I gave Xury a piece of rusk-bread to eat, and a dram out of our patron's case of bottles which I mentioned before; and we haled the boat in as near the shore as we thought was proper, and waded on shore, carrying nothing but our arms and two jars for water.

I did not care to go out of sight of the boat, fearing the coming
of canoes with savages down the river; but the boy seeing a low place about a mile up the country, rambled to it; and by and by I saw him come running towards me. I thought he was pursued by some savage, or frightened with some wild beast, and I ran forward towards him to help him; but when I came nearer to him, I saw something hanging over his shoulders—which was a creature that he had shot, like a hare, but different in colour and longer legs. However, we were very glad of it, and it was very good meat; but the great joy that poor Xury came with, was to tell me he had found good water and seen no wild mens.

But we found afterwards that we need not take such pains for water, for a little higher up the creek where we were, we found the water fresh when the tide was out, which flowed but a little way up. So we filled our jars, and feasted on the hare we had killed, and prepared to go on our way, having seen no footsteps of any human creature in that part of the country.

As I had been one voyage to this coast before, I knew very well that the islands of the Canaries, and the Cape de Verd Islands also, lay not far off from the coast. But as I had no instruments to take an observation to know what latitude we were in, and did not exactly know, or at least to remember, what latitude they were in, I knew not where to look for them, or when to stand off to sea towards them; otherwise I might now easily have found some of these islands. But my hope was, that if I stood along this coast till I came to that part where the English traded, I should find some of their vessels upon their usual design of trade, that would relieve and take us in.

By the best of my calculation, that place where I now was, must be that country which, lying between the Emperor of Morocco's dominions and the negroes, lies waste and uninhabited, except by wild beasts—the negroes having abandoned it and gone farther south, for fear of the Moors; and the Moors not thinking it worth inhabiting, by reason of its barrenness. And, indeed, both forsaking it because of the prodigious numbers of tigers, lions, leopards, and other furious creatures which harbour there; so that the Moors use it for their hunting only, where they go like an army, two or three thousand men at a time. And, indeed, for near a
hundred miles together upon this coast, we saw nothing but a waste uninhabited country by day, and heard nothing but howlings and roaring of wild beasts by night.

Once or twice in the daytime, I thought I saw the Pico\(^1\) of Teneriffe, being the high top of the mountain Teneriffe in the Canaries; and had a great mind to venture out in hopes of reaching thither; but having tried twice, I was forced in again by contrary winds, the sea also going too high for my little vessel, so I resolved to pursue my first design and keep along the shore.

Several times I was obliged to land for fresh water after we had left this place; and once in particular, being early in the morning, we came to an anchor under a little point of land which was pretty high, and the tide beginning to flow, we lay still to go farther in. Xury, whose eyes were more about him than it seems mine were, calls softly to me and tells me that we had best go farther off the shore:—"For," says he, "look, yonder lies a dreadful monster on the side of that hillock fast asleep." I looked where he pointed, and saw a dreadful monster indeed; for it was a terrible great lion that lay on the side of the shore, under the shade of a piece of the hill, that hung as it were a little over him. "Xury," says I, "you shall go on shore and kill him." Xury looked frightened, and said, "Me kill! he eat me at one mouth"—one mouthful, he meant. However, I said no more to the boy, but bad him lie still; and I took our biggest gun, which was almost musket-bore, and loaded it with a good charge of powder and with two slugs, and laid it down; then I loaded another gun with two bullets; and the third—for we had three pieces—I loaded with five smaller bullets. I took the best aim I could with the first piece to have shot him into the head, but he lay so with his leg raised a little above his nose, that the slugs hit his leg about the knee, and broke the bone. He started up, growling at first; but finding his leg broke, fell down again; and then got up upon three legs, and gave the most hideous roar that ever I heard. I was a little surprised that I had not hit him on the head. However, I took up the second piece immediately; and though he began to move off, fired again, and shot him into the head, and had the pleasure to see him drop, and

\(^1\) Peak or Point.
make but little noise, but lay struggling for life. Then Xury took heart, and would have me let him go on shore. "Well, go," said I. So the boy jumped into the water, and taking a little gun in one hand, swam to shore with the other hand, and coming close to the creature, put the muzzle of the piece to his ear, and shot him into the head again, which despatched him quite.

This was game indeed to us, but this was no food; and I was very sorry to lose three charges of powder and shot upon a creature that was good for nothing to us. However, Xury said he would have some of him; so he comes on board, and asked me to give him the hatchet. "For what, Xury?" said I. "Me cut off his head," said he. However, Xury could not cut off his head; but he cut off a foot and brought it with him—and it was a monstrous great one.

I bethought myself, however, that perhaps the skin of him might one way or other be of some value to us; and I resolved to take off his skin if I could. So Xury and I went to work with him; but Xury was much the better workman at it—for I knew very ill how to do it. Indeed, it took us up both the whole day; but at last we got off the hide of him, and spreading it on the top of our cabin, the sun effectually dried it in two days' time, and it afterwards served me to lie upon.

After this stop we made on to the southward continually for ten or twelve days, living very sparing on our provisions, which began to abate very much, and going no oftener into the shore than we were obliged to for fresh water. My design in this was to make the river Gambia or Senegal—that is to say, anywhere about the Cape de Verd, where I was in hopes to meet with some European ship; and if I did not, I knew not what course I had to take, but to seek for the islands or perish there among the negroes. I knew that all the ships from Europe—which sailed either to the coast of Guinea, or to Brazil, or to the East Indies—made this cape or those islands; and in a word, I put the whole of my fortune upon this single point, either that I must meet with some ship or must perish.

When I had pursued this resolution about ten days longer, as I have said, I began to see that the land was inhabited; and in two
or three places, as we sailed by, we saw people stand upon the shore to look at us. We could also perceive they were quite black and stark naked. I was once inclined to have gone on shore to them. But Xury was my better counsellor, and said to me, "No go, no go." However, I hauled in nearer the shore that I might talk to them, and I found they ran along the shore by me a good way. I observed they had no weapons in their hands—except one, who had a long slender stick, which Xury said was a lance, and that they would throw them a great way with good aim. So I kept at a distance, but talked with them by signs as well as I could; and particularly made signs for something to eat. They beckoned to me to stop my boat, and they would fetch me some meat. Upon this I lowered the top of my sail and lay by; and two of them ran up into the country, and in less than half an hour came back and brought with them two pieces of dry flesh and some corn, such as is the produce of their country—but we neither knew what the one or the other was. However, we were willing to accept it, but how to come at it was our next dispute; for I was not for venturing on shore to them, and they were as much afraid of us. But they took a safe way for us all—for they brought it to the shore and laid it down, and went and stood a great way off till we fetched it on board, and then came close to us again.

We made signs of thanks to them, for we had nothing to make them amends. But an opportunity offered that very instant to oblige them wonderfully—for while we were lying by the shore, came two mighty creatures, one pursuing the other (as we took it) with great fury, from the mountains towards the sea. Whether it was the male pursuing the female, or whether they were in sport or in rage, we could not tell, any more than we could tell whether it was usual or strange; but I believe it was the latter—because, in the first place, those ravenous creatures seldom appear but in the night; and, in the second place, we found the people terribly frightened, especially the women. The man that had the lance or dart did not fly from them, but the rest did. However, as the two creatures ran directly into the water, they did not seem to offer to fall upon any of the negroes, but plunged themselves into
the sea, and swam about as if they had come for their diversion. At last one of them began to come nearer our boat than at first I expected, but I lay ready for him; for I had loaded my gun with all possible expedition, and bade Xury load both the other. As soon as he came fairly within my reach I fired, and shot him directly into the head. Immediately he sank down into the water, but rose instantly and plunged up and down as if he was struggling for life. And so indeed he was. He immediately made to the shore; but between the wound, which was his mortal hurt, and the strangling of the water, he died just before he reached the shore.

It is impossible to express the astonishment of these poor creatures at the noise and the fire of my gun; some of them were even ready to die for fear, and fell down as dead with the very terror. But when they saw the creature dead and sunk in the water, and that I made signs to them to come to the shore, they took heart and came to the shore, and began to search for the creature. I found him by his blood staining the water; and by the help of a rope which I slung round him, and gave the negroes to haul, they dragged him on shore, and found that it was a most curious leopard, spotted and fine to an admirable degree; and the negroes held up their hands with admiration to think what it was I had killed him with.

The other creature, frightened with the flash of fire and the noise of the gun, swam on shore, and ran up directly to the mountains from whence they came, nor could I at that distance know what it was. I found quickly the negroes were for eating the flesh of this creature, so I was willing to have them take it as a favour from me; which, when I made signs to them that they might take him, they were very thankful for. Immediately they fell to work with him; and though they had no knife, yet with a sharpened piece of wood they took off his skin as readily—and much more readily than we could have done with a knife. They offered me some of the flesh, which I declined, making as if I would give it them; but made signs for the skin, which they gave me very freely, and brought me a great deal more of their provision, which, though I did not understand, yet I accepted. Then
I made signs to them for some water, and held out one of my jars to them, turning it bottom upward, to show that it was empty, and that I wanted to have it filled. They called immediately to some of their friends; and there came two women, and brought a great vessel made of earth, and burned as I suppose in the sun. This they set down for me as before; and I sent Xury on shore with my jars, and filled them all three. The women were as stark naked as the men.

I was now furnished with roots and corn—such as it was—and water; and leaving my friendly negroes, I made forward for about eleven days more without offering to go near the shore, till I saw the land run out a great length into the sea, at about the distance of four or five leagues before me, and the sea being very calm, I kept a large offing to make this point. At length, doubling the point at about two leagues from the land, I saw plainly land on the other side to seaward. Then I concluded, as it was most certain indeed, that this was the Cape de Verd Islands. However, they were at a great distance; and I could not well tell what I had best to do, for if I should be taken with a fresh of wind, I might neither reach one nor the other.

In this dilemma, as I was very pensive, I stepped into the cabin and sat me down, Xury having the helm, when on a sudden the boy cried out, "Master, master, a ship with a sail!" and the foolish boy was frightened out of his wits, thinking it must needs be some of his master's ships sent to pursue us, when I knew we were gotten far enough out of their reach. I jumped out of the cabin, and immediately saw not only the ship, but what she was—namely, that it was a Portuguese ship, and, as I thought, was bound to the coast of Guinea for negroes. But when I observed the course she steered I was soon convinced they were bound some other way, and did not design to come any nearer to the shore. Upon which I stretched out to sea as much as I could, resolving to speak with them if possible.

With all the sail I could make, I found I should not be able to come in their way, but that they would be gone by before I could make any signal to them. But after I had crowded to the utmost and began to despair, they, it seems, saw me by the help of their
"Master, master, a ship with a sail!"

hear the gun. Upon these signals they very kindly and lay by for me, and in about three hours' time...
ON BOARD SHIP.

It was an inexpressible joy to me—that anyone will believe—that I was thus delivered, as I esteemed it, from such a miserable and almost hopeless condition as I was in, and I immediately offered all I had to the captain of the ship as a return for my deliverance; but he generously told me he would take nothing from me, but that all I had should be delivered to the ship as a return for my deliverance. "For," says he, "I have saved your life on no other terms than I would be glad to be saved myself, and it may one time or other be my lot to be taken up in the same condition; besides," said he, "when I carry you to the Brazils, so great a way from your own country, if I should take from you what you have, you will be starved there, and then I only take away that life I have given. No, no, Seignor Inglese," says he, "Mr. Englishman, I will carry you thither in charity, and those things will help you to buy your subsistence there and your passage home again."

As he was charitable in his proposal, so he was just in the performance to a tittle; for he ordered the seamen that none should offer to touch anything I had. Then he took everything into his own possession, and gave me back an exact inventory of them, that I might have them, even so much as my three earthen jars.

As to my boat it was a very good one, and that he saw, and told me he would buy it of me for the ship's use, and asked me what I would have for it? I told him he had been so generous to me in everything, that I could not offer to make any price of the boat, but left it entirely to him; upon which he told me he would give me a note of his hand to pay me eighty pieces of eight for it at Brazil, and when it came there, if any one offered to give more he would make it up. He offered me also sixty pieces of eight more for my boy Xury; which I was loath to take: not that I was not willing to let the captain have him, but I was very loath to sell the poor boy's liberty, who had assisted me so faithfully in procuring my own. However, when I let him know my reason, he owned it to be just, and offered me this medium—that he would give the boy an obligation to set him free in ten years, if he turned Christian. Upon this, and Xury saying he was willing to go to him, I let the captain have him.
We had a very good voyage to the Brazils, and arrived in the Bay de Todos los Santos, or All-Saints' Bay, in about twenty-two days after. And now I was once more delivered from the most miserable of all conditions of life; and what to do next with myself I was now to consider.

The generous treatment the captain gave me I can never enough remember. He would take nothing of me for my passage, gave me twenty ducats for the leopard's skin and forty for the lion's skin which I had in my boat, and caused everything I had in the ship to be punctually delivered me; and what I was willing to sell he bought, such as the case of bottles, two of my guns, and a piece of the lump of bees'-wax, for I had made candles of the rest. In a word,

I made about two hundred and twenty pieces of eight of all my cargo; and with this stock I went on shore in the Brazils.

I had not been long here, but being recommended to the house of a good honest man like himself, who had an "ingeino," as they call it—that is, a plantation and a sugar-house—I lived with him some time, and acquainted myself by that means with the manner of their planting and making of sugar. And seeing how well the planters lived, and how they grew rich suddenly, I resolved, if I could get license to settle there, I would turn planter among them;
CRUSOE TURNS PLANTER.

resolving in the meantime to find out some way to get my money which I had left in London remitted to me. To this purpose, getting a kind of a letter of naturalization, I purchased as much land that was uncured as my money would reach, and formed a plan for my plantation and settlement, and such a one as might be suitable to the stock which I proposed to myself to receive from England.

I had a neighbour—a Portuguese of Lisbon, but born of English parents—whose name was Wells, and in much such circumstances as I was. I call him my neighbour, because his plantation lay next to mine, and we went on very sociably together. My stock was but low as well as his; and we rather planted for food than anything else for about two years. However, we began to increase, and our land began to come into order; so that the third year we planted some tobacco, and made each of us a large piece of ground ready for planting canes in the year to come. But we both wanted help; and now I found, more than before, I had done wrong in parting with my boy Xury.

But alas! for me to do wrong that never did right was no great wonder. I had no remedy but to go on. I was gotten into an employment quite remote to my genius, and directly contrary to the life I delighted in, and for which I forsook my father's house, and broke through all his good advice; nay, I was coming into the very middle station, or upper degree of low life, which my father advised me to before, and which, if I resolved to go on with, I might as well have stayed at home, and never have fatigued myself in the world as I had done. And I used often to say to myself, I could have done this as well in England among my friends as have gone five thousand miles off to do it among strangers and savages in a wilderness, and at such a distance as never to hear from any part of the world that had the least knowledge of me.

In this manner I used to look upon my condition with the utmost regret. I had nobody to converse with but now and then this neighbour—no work to be done but by the labour of my hands; and I used to say I lived just like a man cast away upon some desolate island that had nobody there but himself. But how
just has it been, and how should all men reflect, that when they
compare their present conditions with others that are worse,
Heaven may oblige them to make the exchange, and be convinced
of their former felicity by their experience,—I say how just has it
been that the truly solitary life I reflected on, in an island of mere
desolation, should be my lot, who had so often unjustly compared
it with the life which I then led; in which, had I continued, I
had in all probability been exceeding prosperous and rich!

I was in some degree settled in my measures for carrying on
the plantation, before my kind friend, the captain of the ship that
took me up at sea, went back—for the ship remained there in
providing his loading and preparing for his voyage near three
months—when, telling him what little stock I had left behind
me in London, he gave me this friendly and sincere advice.
"Seignor Inglese," says he,—for so he always called me,—"if you
will give me letters, and a procuration here in form to me, with
orders to the person who has your money in London, to send your
effects to Lisbon to such persons as I shall direct, and in such
goods as are proper for this country, I will bring you the produce
of them, God willing, at my return. But since human affairs are
all subject to changes and to disasters, I would have you give
orders but for one hundred pounds sterling, which you say is half
your stock, and let the hazard be run for the first; so that if it
come safe you may order the rest the same way, and if it mis-
carry you may have the other half to have recourse to for your
supply."

This was so wholesome advice, and looked so friendly, that I
could not but be convinced it was the best course I could take; so
I accordingly prepared letters to the gentlewoman with whom I
had left my money, and a procuration to the Portuguese captain,
as he desired.

I wrote the English captain's widow a full account of all my
adventures; my slavery, escape, and how I had met with the
Portugal captain at sea, the humanity of his behaviour, and in
what condition I was now in, with all other necessary directions
for my supply. And when this honest captain came to Lisbon, he
found means, by some of the English merchants there, to send
over, not the order only, but a full account of my story, to a merchant at London, who represented it effectually to her; whereupon she not only delivered the money, but out of her own pocket sent the Portugal captain a very handsome present for his humanity and charity to me.

The merchant in London, vesting this hundred pounds in English goods such as the captain had writ for, sent them directly to him at Lisbon, and he brought them all safe to me to the Brazils; among which, without my direction—for I was too young in my business to think of them—he had taken care to have all sorts of tools, iron-work, and utensils necessary for my plantation, and which were of great use to me.

When this cargo arrived I thought my fortune made, for I was surprised with joy of it; and my good steward the captain had laid out the five pounds, which my friend had sent him for a present for himself, to purchase and bring me over a servant under bond for six years’ service, and would not accept of any consideration except a little tobacco, which I would have him accept, being of my own produce.

Neither was this all. But my goods being all English manufactures, such as cloth, stuffs, bays,¹ and things particularly valuable and desirable in the country, I found means to sell them to a very great advantage; so that I may say I had more than four times the value of my first cargo, and was now infinitely beyond my poor neighbour—I mean in the advancement of my plantation; for the first thing I did I bought me a negro slave, and an European servant also—I mean another besides that which the captain brought me from Lisbon.

But as abused prosperity is oftentimes made the very means of our greatest adversity, so was it with me. I went on the next year with great success in my plantation. I raised fifty great rolls of tobacco on my own ground, more than I had disposed of for necessaries among my neighbours; and these fifty rolls being each of above a hundredweight, were well cured and laid by against the return of the fleet from Lisbon. And now, increasing in business and in wealth, my head began to be full of projects and

¹ Baize; serge; soft woollen cloth.
undertakings beyond my reach—such as are indeed often the ruin of the best heads in business.

Had I continued in the station I was now in, I had room for all the happy things to have yet befallen me for which my father so earnestly recommended a quiet, retired life, and of which he had so sensibly described the middle station of life to be full of. But other things attended me, and I was still to be the wilful agent of all my own miseries, and particularly to increase my fault and double the reflections upon myself, which in my future sorrows I should have leisure to make. All these miscarriages were procured by my apparent obstinate adhering to my foolish inclination of wandering abroad, and pursuing that inclination in contradiction to the clearest views of doing myself good in a fair and plain pursuit of those prospects and those measures of life which Nature and Providence concurred to present me with and to make my duty.

As I had once done thus in my breaking away from my parents, so I could not be content now, but I must go and leave the happy view I had of being a rich and thriving man in my new plantation, only to pursue a rash and immoderate desire of rising faster than the nature of the thing admitted; and thus I cast myself down again into the deepest gulf of human misery that ever man fell into, or perhaps could be consistent with life and a state of health in the world.

To come, then, by the just degrees to the particulars of this part of my story. You may suppose that having now lived almost four years in the Brazils, and beginning to thrive and prosper very well upon my plantation, I had not only learned the language, but had contracted acquaintance and friendship among my fellow-planters, as well as among the merchants at St. Salvador, which was our port; and that, in my discourses among them, I had frequently given them an account of my two voyages to the coast of Guinea, the manner of trading with the negroes there, and how easy it was to purchase upon the coast for trifles—such as beads, toys, knives, scissors, hatchets, bits of glass, and the like—not only gold dust, Guinea grains, elephants' teeth, &c., but negroes for the service of the Brazils in great numbers.
A FAIR PROPOSAL

They listened always very attentively to my discourses on these heads, but especially to that part which related to the buying negroes; which was a trade at that time not only not far entered into, but, as far as it was, had been carried on by the assiento, or permission of the Kings of Spain and Portugal, and engrossed in the public;¹ so that few negroes were brought, and those excessively dear.

It happened, being in company with some merchants and planters of my acquaintance, and talking of those things very earnestly, three of them came to me the next morning, and told me they had been musing very much upon what I had discoursed with them of the last night, and they came to make a secret proposal to me. And after enjoining me secrecy, they told me that they had a mind to fit out a ship to go to Guinea; that they had all plantations as well as I, and were straitened for nothing so much as servants; that as it was a trade that could not be carried on, because they could not publicly sell the negroes when they came home, so they desired to make but one voyage, to bring the negroes on shore privately, and divide them among their own plantations; and, in a word, the question was, whether I would go their supercargo in the ship to manage the trading part upon the coast of Guinea. And they offered me that I should have my equal share of the negroes, without providing any part of the stock.

This was a fair proposal, it must be confessed, had it been made to any one that had not had a settlement and plantation of his own to look after, which was in a fair way of coming to be very considerable, and with a good stock upon it. But for me that was thus entered and established, and had nothing to do but go on as I had begun for three or four years more, and to have sent for the other hundred pound from England, and who in that time, and with that little addition, could scarce have failed of being worth three or four thousand pounds sterling, and that increasing too,—for me to think of such a voyage was the most preposterous thing that ever man in such circumstances could be guilty of.

¹Monopolised: the negroes were all bought by speculators to enhance their price to the planters.
THE OFFER ACCEPTED.

But I that was born to be my own destroyer, could no more resist the offer than I could restrain my first rambling designs when my father's good counsel was lost upon me. In a word, I told them I would go with all my heart if they would undertake to look after my plantation in my absence, and would dispose of it to such as I should direct if I miscarried. This they all

"The question was, whether I would go their supercargo."

engaged to do, and entered into writings or covenants to do so; and I made a formal will; disposing of my plantation and effects, in case of my death, making the captain of the ship that had saved my life, as before, my universal heir, but obliging him to dispose of my effects as I had directed in my will—one-half of the produce being to himself, and the other to be shipped to England. In short, I took all possible caution to preserve my effects and keep up my plantation. Had I used half as much prudence to have looked into my own interest, and have made a judgment of what I ought to have done and not to have done, I had certainly
never gone away from so prosperous an undertaking—leaving all
the probable views of a thriving circumstance, and gone upon a
voyage to sea, attended with all its common hazards, to say
nothing of the reasons I had to expect particular misfortunes to
myself.

But I was hurried on, and obeyed blindly the dictates of my
fancy rather than my reason. And accordingly, the ship being
fitted out and the cargo furnished, and all things done as by
agreement by my partners in the voyage, I went on board in an
evil hour—being the same day eight year¹ that I went from my
father and mother at Hull in order to act the rebel to their
authority and the fool to my own interest.

Our ship was about 120 ton burthen; carried six guns and
fourteen men, besides the master, his boy, and myself. We had
on board no large cargo of goods, except of such toys as were fit
for our trade with the negroes—such as beads, bits of glass, shells
and odd trifles, especially little looking-glasses, knives, scissors,
hatchets, and the like.

The same day I went on board we set sail, standing away to
the northward upon our own coast, with design to stretch over
for the African coast when they came about 10 or 12 degrees of
northern latitude; which, it seems, was the manner of their course
in those days. We had very good weather, only excessively hot,
all the way upon our own coast, till we came the height of Cape
& Augustino; from whence, keeping farther off at sea, we lost
sight of land, and steered as if we were bound for the Isle Fernand
de Noronha, holding our course north-east by north, and leaving
those isles on the east. In this course we passed the line in about
twelve days’ time; and were by our last observation in 7 degrees
22 minutes northern latitude, when a violent tornado or hurricane
took us quite out of our knowledge. It began from the south-
west, came about to the north-west, and then settled into the
north-east; from whence it blew in such a terrible manner that
for twelve days together we could do nothing but drive, and scudding
away before it, let it carry us whither ever fate and the fury
of the winds directed. And during these twelve days I need not

¹ 1st of September, 1659.
say that I expected every day to be swallowed up; nor, indeed, did any in the ship expect to save their lives.

In this distress, we had, besides the terror of the storm, one of our men died of the calenture, and one man and the boy washed overboard. About the twelfth day, the weather abating a little, the master made an observation as well as he could, and found that he was in about 11 degrees north latitude, but that he was 22 degrees of longitude difference west from Cape St. Augustino; so that he found he was gotten upon the coast of Guiana, or the north part of Brazil, beyond the River Amazonas, toward that of the River Orinoco, commonly called the Great River, and began to consult with me what course he should take, for the ship was leaky and very much disabled, and he was going directly back to the coast of Brazil.

I was positively against that; and looking over the charts of the sea-coast of America with him, we concluded there was no inhabited country for us to have recourse to till we came within the circle of the Caribbee Islands, and therefore resolved to stand away for Barbadoes; which, by keeping off at sea, to avoid the indraught of the Bay or Gulf of Mexico, we might easily perform, as we hoped, in about fifteen days' sail; whereas we could not possibly make our voyage to the coast of Africa without some assistance both to our ship and to ourselves.

With this design we changed our course, and steered away north-west by west, in order to reach some of our English islands, where I hoped for relief. But our voyage was otherwise determined; for, being in the latitude of 12 degrees 18 minutes, a second storm came upon us, which carried us away with the same impetuosity westward, and drove us so out of the very way of all human commerce, that had all our lives been saved as to the sea, we were rather in danger of being devoured by savages than ever returning to our own country.

In this distress, the wind still blowing very hard, one of our men early in the morning cried out "Land!" and we had no sooner run out of the cabin to look out in hopes of seeing whereabouts in the world we were, but the ship struck upon a sand,  

1 De Foe spells it "Guiney."  
2 Orinoco.
and in a moment her motion being so sudden, we were together in such a manner that we expected we should all have perished immediately, and we were immediately carried into the close quarters to stand up in the ship, but were saved by the sea.

It is not easy for any one who has not seen a shipwrecked


to describe or conceive a mass of men in such circum-
stances. We knew we were, or upon what land it was we were driven, and how the main was inhabited or not inhabited, and the route of the wind was still, though rather it was not so much as without breaking in a miracle should turn impractical upon another.
and expecting death every moment, and every man acting accordingly as preparing for another world, for there was little or nothing more for us to do in this. That which was our present comfort, and all the comfort we had, was that, contrary to our expectation, the ship did not break yet, and that the master said the wind began to abate.

Now, though we thought that the wind did a little abate, yet the ship having thus struck upon the sand, and sticking too fast for us to expect her getting off, we were in a dreadful condition indeed, and had nothing to do but to think of saving our lives as well as we could. We had a boat at our stern just before the storm, but she was first staved by dashing against the ship's rudder, and in the next place she broke away, and either sunk or was driven off to sea; so there was no hope from her. We had another boat on board; but how to get her off into the sea was a doubtful thing. However, there was no room to debate, for we fancied the ship would break in pieces every minute, and some told us she was actually broken already.

In this distress the mate of our vessel lays hold of the boat, and with the help of the rest of the men, they got her swung over the ship's side, and getting all into her, let go, and committed ourselves, being eleven in number, to God's mercy and the wild sea: for though the storm was abated considerably, yet the sea went dreadfully high upon the shore, and might well be called "den wild zee," as the Dutch call the sea in a storm.

And now our case was very dismal indeed; for we all saw plainly that the sea went so high that the boat could not live, and that we should be inevitably drowned. As to making sail, we had none; nor, if we had, could we have done anything with it: so we worked at the oar towards the land, though with heavy hearts, like men going to execution; for we all knew that when the boat came nearer the shore she would be dashed in a thousand pieces by the breach of the sea. However, we committed our souls to God in the most earnest manner, and the wind driving us towards the shore, we hastened our destruction with our own hands, pulling as well as we could towards land.

What the shore was—whether rock or sand, whether steep or
shoal—we knew not; the only hope that could rationally give us the least shadow of expectation, was if we might happen into some bay or gulf, or the mouth of some river, where by great chance we might have run our boat in, or got under the lee of the land, and perhaps made smooth water. But there was nothing of this appeared; but as we made nearer and nearer the shore, the land looked more frightful than the sea.

After we had rowed or rather driven about a league and a half, as we reckoned it, a raging wave, mountain-like, came rolling astern of us, and plainly bade us expect the coup-de-grâce. In a word, it took us with such a fury, that it overset the boat at once, and separating us as well from the boat as from one another, gave us not time hardly to say, O God! for we were all swallowed up in a moment.

Nothing can describe the confusion of thought which I felt when I sunk into the water; for though I swam very well, yet I could not deliver myself from the waves so as to draw breath, till that a wave, having driven me or rather carried me a vast way on towards the shore, and having spent itself, went back, and left me upon the land almost dry, but half dead with the water I took in. I had so much presence of mind as well as breath left that, seeing myself nearer the mainland than I expected, I got upon my feet, and endeavoured to make on towards the land as fast as I could before another wave should return and take me up again. But I soon found it was impossible to avoid it; for I saw the sea come after me as high as a great hill, and as furious as an enemy which I had no means or strength to contend with. My business was to hold my breath and rise myself upon the water if I could, and so by swimming to preserve my breathing and pilot myself towards the shore if possible; my greatest concern now being that the sea, as it would carry me a great way towards the shore when it came on, might not carry me back again with it when it gave back towards the sea.

The wave that came upon me again buried me at once twenty or thirty feet deep in its own body; and I could feel myself carried with a mighty force and swiftness towards the shore a very great way; but I held my breath, and assisted myself to swim still
forward with all my might. I was ready to burst with holding my breath, when, as I felt myself rising up, so to my immediate relief I found my head and hands shoot out above the surface of the water; and though it was not two seconds of time that I could keep myself so, yet it relieved me greatly, gave me breath and new courage. I was covered again with water a good while, but not so long but I held it out; and finding the water had spent itself and began to return, I struck forward against the return of the waves, and felt ground again with my feet. I stood still a few moments to recover breath, and till the water went from me, and then took to my heels and ran with what strength I had farther towards the shore. But neither would this deliver me from the fury of the sea, which came pouring in after me again, and twice more I was lifted up by the waves and carried forwards as before, the shore being very flat.

The last time of these two had well near been fatal to me; for the sea having hurried me along as before, landed me, or rather dashed me against a piece of a rock, and that with such force, as it left me senseless, and indeed helpless, as to my own deliverance: for the blow taking my side and breast, beat the breath as it were quite out of my body, and had it returned again immediately, I must have been strangled in the water; but I recovered a little before the return of the waves, and seeing I should be covered again with the water, I resolved to hold fast by a piece of the rock, and so to hold my breath, if possible, till the wave went back. Now as the waves were not so high as at first, being near land, I held my hold till the wave abated, and then fetched another run, which brought me so near the shore, that the next wave, though it went over me, yet did not so swallow me up as to carry me away; and the next run I took I got to the mainland, where, to my great comfort, I clambered up the cliffs of the shore and sat me down upon the grass, free from danger, and quite out of the reach of the water.

I was now landed, and safe on shore, and began to look up and thank God that my life was saved in a case wherein there was some minutes before scarce any room to hope. I believe it is impossible to express to the life what the ecstasies and transports of
the soul are when it is so saved, as I may say, out of the very grave; and I do not wonder now at that custom, namely, that when a malefactor, who has the halter about his neck, is tied up, and just going to be turned off, and has a reprieve brought to him—I say, I do not wonder that they bring a surgeon with it, to let him blood\(^1\) that very moment they tell him of it, that the surprise may not drive the animal spirits from the heart and overwhelm him:

"For sudden joys, like griefs, confound at first."

I walked about on the shore lifting up my hands, and my whole being, as I may say, wrapped up in the contemplation of my deliverance, making a thousand gestures and motions which I cannot describe, reflecting upon all my comrades that were drowned, and that there should not be one soul saved but myself; for, as for them, I never saw them afterwards, or any sign of them, except three of their hats, one cap, and two shoes that were not fellows.

I cast my eyes to the stranded vessel, when the breach and froth of the sea being so big, I could hardly see it, it lay so far off, and considered, "Lord, how was it possible I could get on shore?"

After I had solaced my mind with the comfortable part of my condition, I began to look round me to see what kind of place I was in, and what was next to be done, and I soon found my comforts abate, and that in a word I had a dreadful deliverance; for I was wet, had no clothes to shift me, nor anything either to eat or drink to comfort me, neither did I see any prospect before me but that of perishing with hunger, or being devoured by wild beasts. And that which was particularly afflicting to me was, that I had no weapon either to hunt and kill any creature for my sustenance, or to defend myself against any other creature that might desire to kill me for theirs;—in a word, I had nothing about me but a knife, a tobacco-pipe, and a little tobacco in a box. This was all my provision, and this threw me into terrible agonies of mind, and for a while I ran about like a

\(^{1}\) i.e. to bleed him in the arm; a common practice in old-fashioned medical treatment.
madman. Night coming upon me, I began with a heavy he
to consider what would be my lot if there were any raven-
beasts in that country, seeing at night they always come abro-
for their prey.

All the remedy that offered to my thoughts at that time w

"I fell fast asleep."

to get up into a thick bushy tree like a fir, but thorny, which gi
near me, and where I resolved to sit all night, and consider
next day what death I should die; for as yet I saw no pros-
of life. I walked about a furlong from the shore to see if I co
find any fresh water to drink, which I did, to my great joy; 
having drunk, and put a little tobacco in my mouth to prev
hunger, I went to the tree, and getting up into it, endeavoured to place myself so as that if I should sleep I might not fall; and having cut me a short stick like a truncheon for my defence, I took up my lodging, and having been excessively fatigued, I fell fast asleep, and slept as comfortably as, I believe, few could have done in my condition, and found myself the most refreshed with it that I think I ever was on such an occasion.

When I waked it was broad day, the weather clear, and the storm abated, so that the sea did not rage and swell as before; but that which surprised me most was, that the ship was lifted off in the night from the sand where she lay by the swelling of the tide, and was driven up almost as far as the rock which I first mentioned, where I had been so bruised by the dashing me against it; this being within about a mile from the shore where I was, and the ship seeming to stand upright still, I wished myself on board, that at least I might have some necessary things for my use.

When I came down from my apartment in the tree, I looked about me again, and the first thing I found was the boat, which lay as the wind and the sea had tossed her up upon the land, about two miles on my right hand. I walked as far as I could upon the shore to have got to her, but found a neck or inlet of water between me and the boat which was about half a mile broad; so I came back for the present, being more intent upon getting at the ship, where I hoped to find something for my present subsistence.

A little after noon I found the sea very calm and the tide ebbed so far out that I could come within a quarter of a mile of the ship. And here I found a fresh renewing of my grief; for I saw evidently that if we had kept on board we had been all safe—that is to say, we had all got safe on shore, and I had not been so miserable as to be left entirely destitute of all comfort and company as I now was. This forced tears from my eyes again, but as there was little relief in that, I resolved, if possible, to get to the ship; so I pulled off my clothes, for the weather was hot to extremity, and took the water. But when I came to the ship, my difficulty was still greater to know how to get on board; for
as she lay aground and high out of the water, there was nothing within my reach to lay hold of. I swam round her twice, and the second time I spied a small piece of a rope, which I wondered I did not see at first, hang down by the fore-chains so low as that with great difficulty I got hold of it, and by the help of that rope got up into the forecastle of the ship. Here I found that the ship was bulged,¹ and had a great deal of water in her hold, but that she lay so on the side of a bank of hard sand, or rather earth, and her stern lay lifted up upon the bank, and her head low almost to the water. By this means all her quarter was free, and all that was in that part was dry; for you may be sure my first work was to search and to see what was spoiled and what was free. And first I found that all the ship's provisions were dry and untouched by the water, and being very well disposed to eat, I went to the bread-room and filled my pockets with biscuit, and eat it as I went about other things, for I had no time to lose. I also found some rum in the great cabin, of which I took a large dram, and which I had indeed need enough of to spirit me for what was before me. Now I wanted nothing but a boat to furnish myself with many things which I foresaw would be very necessary to me.

It was in vain to sit still and wish for what was not to be had, and this extremity roused my application. We had several spare yards, and two or three large spars of wood, and a spare top-mast or two in the ship. I resolved to fall to work with these, and flung as many of them overboard as I could manage of their weight, tying every one with a rope that they might not drive away. When this was done, I went down the ship's side, and pulling them to me, I tied four of them fast together at both ends as well as I could, in the form of a raft, and laying two or three short pieces of plank upon them crossways, I found I could walk upon it very well, but that it was not able to bear any great weight, the pieces being too light. So I went to work, and with the carpenter's saw I cut a spare top-mast into three lengths, and added them to my raft, with a great deal of labour and pains; but hope of furnishing myself with necessaries encouraged me to

¹ Some of the timbers struck off so as to cause a leak.
A RAFT CONSTRUCTED.

51

go beyond what I should have been able to have done upon another occasion.

My raft was now strong enough to bear any reasonable weight. My next care was what to load it with, and how to preserve what I laid upon it from the surf of the sea. But I was not long considering this. I first laid all the planks or boards upon it that I could get, and having considered well what I most wanted, I first got three of the seamen's chests, which I had broken open and emptied, and lowered them down upon my raft. The first of these I filled with provisions—namely, bread, rice, three Dutch cheeses, five pieces of dried goat's flesh, which we lived much upon, and a little remainder of European corn which had been laid by for some fowls which we brought to sea with us; but the fowls were killed. There had been some barley and wheat together, but to my great disappointment I found afterwards that the rats had eaten or spoiled it all. As for liquors, I found several cases of bottles belonging to our skipper, in which were some cordial waters, and in all about five or six gallons of rack.¹ These I stowed by themselves, there being no need to put them into the chest, nor no room for them. While I was doing this I found the tide began to flow, though very calm, and I had the mortification to see my coat, shirt, and waistcoat, which I had left on shore upon the sand, swim away; as for my breeches, which were only linen and open-kneed, I swam on board in them and my stockings. However, this put me upon rummaging for clothes, of which I found enough, but took no more than I wanted for present use, for I had other things which my eye was more upon—as, first, tools to work with on shore, and it was after long searching that I found out the carpenter's chest, which was indeed a very useful prize to me, and much more valuable than a ship loading of gold would have been at that time. I got it down to my raft even whole as it was, without losing time to look into it, for I knew in general what it contained.

My next care was for some ammunition and arms. There were two very good fowling-pieces in the great cabin, and two pistols; these I secured first, with some powder-horns, and a

¹ Arrack, a spirit distilled from rice or other grain, resembling gin or whisky.
small bag of shot, and two old rusty swords. I knew there were three barrels of powder in the ship, but knew not where the gunner had stowed them; but with much search I found the two of them dry and good, the third had taken water. The two I got to my raft with the arms; and now I thought myself pretty well freighted, and began to think how I should get shore with them, having neither sail, oar, nor rudder, and least capful of wind would have overset all my navigation.

I had three encouragements—first, a smooth calm sea; seco the tide rising and setting in to the shore; third, what little there was blew me towards the land. And thus, having for two or three broken oars belonging to the boat, and besides tools which were in the chest, I found two saws, an axe, an hammer, and with this cargo I put to sea. For a mile or th
about my raft went very well, only that I found it drive a little
distant from the place where I had landed before; by which
I perceived that there was some indraught of the water, and
consequently I hoped to find some creek or river there,
which I might make use of as a port to get to land with my
cargo.

As I imagined, so it was. There appeared before me a little
opening of the land, and I found a strong current of the tide set
into it; so I guided my raft as well as I could to keep in the
middle of the stream. But here I had like to have suffered a
second shipwreck, which if I had, I think verily would have broken
my heart; for, knowing nothing of the coast, my raft ran aground
at one end of it upon a shoal, and not being aground at the other
end, it wanted but a little that all my cargo had slipped off
towards that end that was afloat, and so fallen into the water. I
did my utmost, by setting my back against the chests, to keep
them in their places, but could not thrust off the raft with all my
strength, neither durst I stir from the posture I was in, but holding
up the chests with all my might, stood in that manner near
half an hour, in which time the rising of the water brought me a
little more upon a level; and a little after, the water still rising,
my raft floated again, and I thrust her off with the oar I had into
the channel, and then driving up higher, I at length found myself
in the mouth of a little river, with land on both sides, and a strong
current or tide running up. I looked on both sides for a proper
place to get to shore, for I was not willing to be driven too high
up the river, hoping in time to see some ship at sea, and therefore
resolve to place myself as near the coast as I could.

At length I spied a little cove on the right shore of the creek,
to which with great pain and difficulty I guided my raft, and at
last got so near as that, reaching ground with my oar, I could
thrust her directly in. But here I had like to have dipped all my
cargo in the sea again; for that shore lying pretty steep—that is
to say, sloping—there was no place to land, but where one end of
my float if it ran on shore, would lie so high, and the other sink
lower as before, that it would endanger my cargo again. All that
I could do was to wait till the tide was at the highest, keeping the
raft with my oar like an anchor to hold the side of it fast to the shore, near a flat piece of ground, which I expected the water would flow over; and so it did. As soon as I found water enough—for my raft drew about a foot of water—I thrust her on upon that flat piece of ground, and there fastened or moored her by sticking my two broken oars into the ground, one on one side near one end, and one on the other side near the other end; and thus I lay till the water ebbed away, and left my raft and all my cargo safe on shore.

My next work was to view the country, and seek a proper place for my habitation, and where to stow my goods to secure them from whatever might happen. Where I was I yet knew not, whether on the continent or on an island, whether inhabited or not inhabited, whither in danger of wild beasts or not. There was a hill not above a mile from me, which rose up very steep and high, and which seemed to overtop some other hills which lay as in a ridge from it northward. I took out one of the fowling-pieces and one of the pistols, and a horn of powder, and thus armed I travelled for discovery up to the top of that hill, where, after I had with great labour and difficulty got to the top, I saw my fate to my great affliction—namely, that I was in an island environed every way with the sea, no land to be seen, except some rocks which lay a great way off, and two small islands, less than this, which lay about three leagues to the west.

I found also that the island I was in was barren, and, as I saw good reason to believe, uninhabited, except by wild beasts—of whom, however, I saw none; yet I saw abundance of fowls, but knew not their kinds, neither when I killed them could I tell what was fit for food, and what not. At my coming back, I shot at a great bird which I saw sitting upon a tree on the side of a great wood. I believe it was the first gun that had been fired there since the creation of the world. I had no sooner fired, but from all the parts of the wood there arose an innumerable number of fowls of many sorts, making a confused screaming, and crying every one according to his usual note; but not one of them of any kind that I knew. As for the creature I killed, I took it to be a kind of a hawk, its colour and beak resembling it, but had no
HE VISITS THE WRECK.

55

talons or claws more than common; its flesh was carrion, and fit
for nothing.

Contented with this discovery, I came back to my raft, and fell
to work to bring my cargo on shore, which took me up the rest
of that day. And what to do with myself at night I knew not,
nor indeed where to rest; for I was afraid to lie down on the
ground, not knowing but some wild beast might devour me,
though, as I afterwards found, there was really no need for those
fears.

However, as well as I could, I barricaded myself round with
the chests and boards that I had brought on shore, and made a
kind of hut for that night’s lodging. As for food, I yet saw not
which way to supply myself, except that I had seen two or three
creatures like hares run out of the wood where I shot the fowl.

I now began to consider that I might yet get a great many
things out of the ship which would be useful to me, and particu-
larly some of the rigging and sails, and such other things as might
come to land; and I resolved to make another voyage on board
the vessel, if possible; and as I knew that the first storm that
blew must necessarily break her all in pieces, I resolved to set all
other things apart, till I got everything out of the ship that I
could get. Then I called a council—that is to say, in my thoughts
—whether I should take back the raft; but this appeared imprac-
ticable. So I resolved to go as before, when the tide was down;
and I did so, only that I stripped before I went from my hut,
having nothing on but a checkered shirt, and a pair of linen
drawers, and a pair of pumps on my feet. I got on board the
ship as before, and prepared a second raft; and having had ex-
perience of the first, I neither made this so unwieldy nor loaded
it so hard, but yet I brought away several things very useful to
me. At first, in the carpenter’s stores, I found two or three bags
full of nails and spikes, a great screw-jack, a dozen or two of
hatchets, and, above all, that most useful thing called a grind-stone.
All these I secured together, with several things belonging to the
gunner, particularly two or three iron crows, and two barrels of
musket bullets, seven muskets, and another fowling-piece, with
some small quantity of powder more, a large bag full of small
shot, and a great roll of sheet lead. But this last was so heavy I
could not hoist it up to get it over the ship's side.

Besides these things, I took all the men's clothes that I could
find, and a spare fore-topsail, a hammock and some bedding; and
with this I loaded my second raft, and brought them all safe on
shore, to my very great comfort.

I was under some apprehensions during my absence from the
land that at least my provisions might be devoured on shore; but
when I came back I found no sign of any visitor, only there sat a
creature like a wild cat upon one of the chests, which, when I
came towards it, ran away a little distance, and then stood still.
She sat very composed and unconcerned, and looked full in my
face, as if she had a mind to be acquainted with me. I presented
my gun at her, but as she did not understand it, she was perfectly
unconcerned at it, nor did she offer to stir away. Upon which I
tossed her a bit of biscuit—though, by the way, I was not very
free of it, for my store was not great. However, I spared her a
bit, I say, and she went to it, smelled of it, and ate it, and looked,
as pleased, for more; but I thanked her, and could spare no more.
So she marched off.

Having got my second cargo on shore, though I was fain to
open the barrels of powder, and bring them by parcels—for they
were too heavy, being large casks—I went to work to make me a
little tent with the sail and some poles which I cut for that pur-
pose; and into this tent I brought everything that I knew would
spoil either with rain or sun, and I piled all the empty chests and
casks up in a circle round the tent, to fortify it from any sudden
attempt either from man or beast.

When I had done this, I blocked up the door of the tent with
some boards within, and an empty chest set up on end without,
and spreading one of the beds upon the ground, laying my two
pistols just at my head, and my gun at length by me, I went to
bed for the first time, and slept very quietly all night, for I was
very weary and heavy; for the night before I had slept little, and
had laboured very hard all day, as well to fetch all those things
from the ship as to get them on shore.

I had the biggest magazine of all kinds now that ever were laid
up, I believe, for one man; but I was not satisfied still, for while the ship sat upright in that posture, I thought I ought to get everything out of her that I could; so every day at low water I went on board, and brought away some thing or other. But particularly the third time I went I brought away as much of the rigging as I could, as also all the small ropes and rope-twine I could get, with a piece of spare canvas, which was to mend the sails upon occasion, the barrel of wet gunpowder; in a word, I brought away all the sails first and last, only that I was fain to cut them in pieces, and bring as much at a time as I could, for they were no more useful to be sails, but as mere canvas only.

But that which comforted me more still was, that at last of all, after I had made five or six such voyages as these, and thought I had nothing more to expect from the ship that was worth my meddling with—I say, after all this, I found a great hogshead of bread,¹ and three large runlets of rum or spirits, and a box of sugar,

¹ Biscuits are called ship's "bread."
and a barrel of fine flour. This was surprising to me, because I had given over expecting any more provisions, except what was spoiled by the water. I soon emptied the hogshead of that bread, and wrapped it up parcel by parcel in pieces of the sails, which I cut out; and in a word, I got all this safe on shore also.

The next day I made another voyage, and now having plundered the ship of what was portable and fit to hand out, I began with the cables; and cutting the great cable into pieces such as I could move, I got two cables and a hawser on shore, with all the iron-work I could get; and having cut down the spritsail-yard, and the mizzen-yard, and everything I could to make a large raft, I loaded it with all those heavy goods, and came away. But my good luck began now to leave me; for this raft was so unwieldy and so overladen, that after I was entered the little cove where I had landed the rest of my goods, not being able to guide it so handily as I did the other, it overset, and threw me and all my cargo into the water. As for myself it was no great harm, for I was near the shore; but as to my cargo, it was great part of it lost, especially the iron, which I expected would have been of great use to me. However, when the tide was out, I got most of the pieces of cable ashore and some of the iron, though with infinite labour: for I was fain to dip for it into the water, a work which fatigued me very much. After this I went every day on board, and brought away what I could get.

I had been now thirteen days on shore, and had been eleven times on board the ship, in which time I had brought away all that one pair of hands could well be supposed capable to bring; though I believe verily, had the calm weather held, I should have brought away the whole ship piece by piece. But preparing the twelfth time to go on board, I found the wind begin to rise. However, at low water I went on board; and though I thought I had rummaged the cabin so effectually as that nothing more could be found, yet I discovered a locker with drawers in it, in one of which I found two or three razors and one pair of large scissors, with some ten or a dozen of good knives and forks; in another I found about thirty-six pounds value in money, some European coin, some Brazil, some pieces of eight, some gold, some silver.
I smiled to myself at the sight of this money. "O drug!" said I aloud, "what art thou good for? Thou art not worth to me, no not the taking off of the ground; one of those knives is worth all this heap. I have no manner of use for thee; even remain where thou art, and go to the bottom as a creature whose life is not worth saving." However, upon second thoughts, I took it away, and wrapping all this in a piece of canvas, I began to think of making another raft; but while I was preparing this, I found the sky overcast, and the wind began to rise, and in a quarter of an hour it blew a fresh gale from the shore. It presently occurred to me that it was in vain to pretend to make a raft with the wind off shore, and that it was my business to be gone before the tide of flood began, otherwise I might not be able to reach the shore at all. Accordingly I let myself down into the water, and swam across the channel which lay between the ship and the sands, and even that with difficulty enough, partly with the weight of the things I had about me, and partly the roughness of the water, for the wind rose very hastily, and before it was quite high water it blew a storm.

But I was gotten home to my little tent, where I lay with all my wealth about me very secure. It blew very hard all that night; and in the morning when I looked out, behold, no more ship was to be seen! I was a little surprised, but recovered myself with this satisfactory reflection, namely, that I had lost no time nor abated any diligence to get everything out of her that could be useful to me, and that indeed there was little left in her that I was able to bring away, if I had had more time.

I now gave over any more thoughts of the ship, or of anything out of her, except what might drive on shore from her wreck, as indeed divers pieces of her afterwards did; but those things were of small use to me.

My thoughts were now wholly employed about securing myself against either savages, if any should appear, or wild beasts, if any were in the island; and I had many thoughts of the method how to do this, and what kind of dwelling to make, whether I should make me a cave in the earth, or a tent upon the earth. And, in short, I resolved upon both, the manner and description of which it may not be improper to give an account of.
I soon found the place I was in was not for my settlement, particularly because it was upon a low moorish ground near the sea, and I believed could not be wholesome, and more particularly, because there was no fresh water near it; so I resolved to find a more healthy and more convenient spot of ground.

I consulted several things in my situation which I found would be proper for me. First, health, and fresh water I just now mentioned. Secondly, shelter from the heat of the sun. Thirdly, security from ravenous creatures, whether men or beasts. Fourthly, a view to the sea, that if God sent any ship in sight I might not lose any advantage for my deliverance, of which I was not willing to banish all my expectation yet.

In search of a place proper for this, I found a little plain on the side of a rising hill, whose front towards this little plain was steep as a house-side, so that nothing could come down upon me from the top. On the side of this rock there was a hollow place worn a little way in like the entrance or door of a cave; but there was not really any cave or way into the rock at all.

On the flat of the green, just before this hollow place, I resolved to pitch my tent. This plain was not above an hundred yards broad, and about twice as long, and lay like a green before my door, and at the end of it descended irregularly every way down into the low grounds by the sea-side. It was on the north-north-west side of the hill, so that I was sheltered from the heat every day till it came to a west and by south sun, or thereabouts, which in those countries is near the setting.

Before I set up my tent, I drew a half-circle before the hollow place, which took in about ten yards in its semi-diameter from the rock, and twenty yards in its diameter from its beginning and ending.

In this half-circle I pitched two rows of strong stakes, driving them into the ground till they stood very firm like piles, the biggest end being out of the ground about five foot and a half, and sharpened on the top. The two rows did not stand above six inches from one another.

Then I took the pieces of cable which I had cut in the ship, and laid them in rows one upon another within the circle, between
deal of time and labour, especially to cut the piles in the woods, bring them to the place, and drive them into the earth.

"I pitched two rows of strong stakes."
have the account above. And I made me a large tent, which, to preserve me from the rains that in one part of the year are very violent there, I made double—namely one smaller tent within, and one larger tent above it, and covered the uppermost with a large tarpaulin which I had saved among the sails.

And now I lay no more for a while in the bed which I had brought on shore, but in a hammock; which was indeed a very good one, and belonged to the mate of the ship.

Into this tent I brought all my provisions and everything that would spoil by the wet; and having thus enclosed all my goods I made up the entrance, which till now I had left open, and so passed and repassed, as I said, by a short ladder.

When I had done this, I began to work my way into the rock, and bringing all the earth and stones that I dug down out through my tent, I laid them up within my fence in the nature of a terrace, that so it raised the ground within about a foot and a half; and thus I made me a cave just behind my tent, which served me like a cellar to my house.

It cost me much labour and many days before all these things were brought to perfection, and therefore I must go back to some other things which took up some of my thoughts. At the same time it happened after I had laid my scheme for the setting up my tent, and making the cave, that a storm of rain falling from a thick dark cloud, a sudden flash of lightning happened, and after that a great clap of thunder, as is naturally the effect of it. I was not so much surprised with the lightning as I was with a thought which darted into my mind as swift as the lightning itself—O my powder! My very heart sank within me when I thought that at one blast all my powder might be destroyed, on which not my defence only, but the providing me food, as I thought, entirely depended. I was nothing near so anxious about my own danger, though had the powder taken fire, I had never known who had hurt me.

Such impression did this make upon me, that after the storm was over I laid aside all my works, my building and fortifying, and applied myself to make bags and boxes to separate the powder and keep it a little and a little in a parcel, in hope that whatever
might come it might not all take fire at once, and to keep it so apart that it should not be possible to make one part fire another. I finished this work in about a fortnight; and I think my powder, which in all was about two hundred and forty pounds weight, was divided in not less than a hundred parcels. As to the barrel that had been wet, I did not apprehend any danger from that; so I placed it in my new cave, which in my fancy I called my kitchen, and the rest I hid up and down in holes among the rocks, so that no wet might come to it, marking very carefully where I laid it.

In the interval of time while this was doing I went out once at least every day with my gun as well to divert myself as to see if I could kill anything fit for food, and as near as I could to
acquaint myself with what the island produced. The first time I went out I presently discovered that there were goats in the island—which was a great satisfaction to me; but then it was attended with this misfortune to me, namely, that they were so shy, so subtile, and so swift of foot, that it was the difficultest thing in the world to come at them. But I was not discouraged at this, not doubting but I might now and then shoot one, as it soon happened; for after I had found their haunts a little, I laid wait in this manner for them: I observed if they saw me in the valleys, though they were upon the rocks, they would run away as in a terrible fright; but if they were feeding in the valleys, and I was upon the rocks, they took no notice of me; from whence I concluded that by the position of their optics their sight was so directed downward that they did not readily see objects that were above them. So afterward I took this method, I always climbed the rocks first, to get above them, and then had frequently a fair mark. The first shot I made among these creatures I killed a she-goat which had a little kid by her which she gave suck to, which grieved me heartily. But when the old one fell the kid stood stock-still by her till I came and took her up; and not only so, but when I carried the old one with me upon my shoulders, the kid followed me quite to my enclosure: upon which I laid down the dam and took the kid in my arms, and carried it over my pale, in hopes to have it bred up tame; but it would not eat, so I was forced to kill it and eat it myself. These two supplied me with flesh a great while, for I ate sparingly, and saved my provisions (my bread especially) as much as possibly I could.

Having now fixed my habitation, I found it absolutely necessary to provide a place to make a fire in, and fuel to burn; and what I did for that, as also how I enlarged my cave and what conveniences I made, I shall give a full account of in its place. But I must first give some little account of myself and of my thoughts about living, which it may well be supposed were not a few.

I had a dismal prospect of my condition; for as I was not cast away upon that island without being driven, as is said, by a violent storm quite out of the course of our intended voyage, and
HOPEFUL CONSIDERATIONS. 65

a great way, namely, some hundreds of leagues, out of the ordinary course of the trade of mankind I had great reason to consider it as a determination of Heaven that in this desolate place and in this desolate manner I should end my life. The tears would run plentifully down my face when I made these reflections; and sometimes I would expostulate with myself why Providence should thus completely ruin its creatures and render them so absolutely miserable, so without help abandoned, so entirely depressed, that it could hardly be rational to be thankful for such a life.

But something always returned swift upon me to check these thoughts and to reprove me; and particularly one day, walking with my gun in my hand by the sea-side, I was very pensive upon the subject of my present condition, when reason, as it were, expostulated with me the other way, thus: Well, you are in a desolate condition it is true, but pray remember, where are the rest of you! Did you not come eleven of you into the boat,—where are the ten? Why were not they saved and you lost? Why were you singled out? Is it better to be here or there?—and then I pointed to the sea. All evils are to be considered with the good that is in them, and with what worse attends them.

Then it occurred to me again how well I was furnished for my subsistence, and what would have been my case if it had not happened, which was an hundred thousand to one, that the ship floated from the place where she first struck, and was driven so near to the shore that I had time to get all these things out of her. What would have been my case if I had been to have lived in the condition in which I at first came on shore, without necessaries of life, or necessaries to supply and procure them? Particularly, said I aloud (though to myself), what should I have done without a gun, without ammunition; without any tools to make anything, or to work with; without clothes, bedding, a tent or any manner of covering; and that now I had all these to a sufficient quantity, and was in a fair way to provide myself in such a manner, as to live without my gun when my ammunition was spent; so that I had a tolerable view of subsisting without any want as long as I lived: for I considered from the beginning
how I would provide for the accidents that might happen, and for the time that was to come, even not only after my ammunition should be spent, but even after my health or strength should decay.

I confess I had not entertained any notion of my ammunition being destroyed at one blast—I mean my powder being blown up by lightning—and so made the thoughts of it surprising to me when it lightened and thunderted, as I observed just now.

And now being to enter into a melancholy relation of a scene of silent life, such, perhaps, as was never heard of in the world before, I shall take it from its beginning, and continue it in order. It was, by my account, the 30th of September when, in the manner as above said, I first set foot upon this horrid island, when the sun being, to us, in its autumnal equinox, was almost just over my head; for I reckoned myself, by observation, to be in the latitude of 9 degrees 22 minutes north of the line.

After I had been there about ten or twelve days it came into my thoughts that I should lose my reckoning of time for want of books and pen and ink, and should even forget the Sabbath day from the working days; but, to prevent this, I cut it with my knife upon a large post, in capital letters, and making it into a great cross, I set it up on the shore where I first landed—namely, I CAME ON SHORE HERE ON THE 30TH OF SEPTEMBER 1659. Upon the sides of this square post I cut every day a notch with my knife, and every seventh notch was as long again as the rest, and every first day of the month as long again as that long one, and thus I kept my calendar, or weekly, monthly, and yearly reckoning of time.

In the next place we are to observe, that among the many things which I brought out of the ship in the several voyages which, as above mentioned, I made to it, I got several things of less value, but not all less useful to me, which I omitted setting down before; as, in particular, pens, ink, and paper, several parcels in the captain's, mate's, gunner's, and carpenter's keeping, three or four compasses, some mathematical instruments, dials, perspectives, charts, and books of navigation; all which I huddled
together, whether I might want them or no. Also, I found three very good Bibles, which came to me in my cargo from England, and which I had packed up among my things; some Portuguese books also, and among them two or three Popish prayer-books, and several other books; all which I carefully secured. And I must not forget that we had in the ship a dog and two cats, of whose eminent history I may have occasion to say something in its place: for I carried both the cats with me; and as for the dog, he jumped out of the ship of himself, and swam on shore to me the day after I went on shore with my first cargo, and was
a trusty servant to me many years. I wanted nothing that I could fetch me, nor any company that he could make up to me. I only wanted to have him talk to me, but that would not do. As I observed before, I found pen, ink, and paper, and I had banded them to the utmost; and I shall show that, while my ink lasted, I kept things very exact; but after that was gone I could not, for I could not make any ink by any means that I could devise.

And this put me in mind that I wanted many things, notwithstanding all that I had amassed together; and of these, this of ink was one; as also spade, pick-axe, and shovel, to dig or remove earth; needles, pins, and thread; as for linen, I soon learned want that without much difficulty.

This want of tools made every work I did go on heavily, and was near a whole year before I had entirely finished my little post or surrounded habitation. The piles or stakes, which were heavy as I could well lift, were a long time in cutting and preparing in the woods, and more by far in bringing home; so that I spent sometimes two days in cutting and bringing home one of those posts, and a third day in driving it into the ground: for which purpose I got a heavy piece of wood at first, but at last thought myself of one of the iron crows; which, however, though I found it, yet it made driving those posts or piles very laborious and tedious work.

But what need I have been concerned at the tediousness of anything I had to do, seeing I had time enough to do it in, nor had I any other employment if that had been over, at least that I could foresee, except the ranging the island to seek for food, which I did more or less every day.

I now began to consider seriously my condition, and the circumstance I was reduced to, and I drew up the state of my affairs in writing, not so much to leave them to any that were to come after me, for I was like to have but few heirs, as to deliver my thoughts from daily poring upon them, and afflicting my mind; and as my reason began now to master my despondency, I began to comfort myself as well as I could, and to set the good against the evil, that I might have something to distinguish my case from worse; and
stated it very impartially, like debtor and creditor, the comforts I enjoyed against the miseries I suffered, thus:—

**EVIL.**

I am cast upon a horrible desolate island, void of all hope of recovery.
I am singled out and separated, as it were, from all the world, to be misery.

I am divided from mankind, a solitary, see banished from human society.
I have not clothes to cover me.

I am without any defence or means to resist any violence of man or beast.
I have no soul to speak to, or relieve me.

**GOOD.**

But I am alive, and not drowned, as all my ship’s company was.
But I am singled out, too, from all the ship’s crew to be spared from death; and He that miraculously saved me from death can deliver me from this condition.
But I am not starved and perishing on a barren place, affording no sustenance.
But I am in a hot climate, where, if I had clothes, I could hardly wear them.
But I am cast on an island where I see no wild beasts to hurt me, as I saw on the coast of Africa; and what if I had been shipwrecked there?
But God wonderfully sent the ship in near enough to the shore, that I have gotten out so many necessary things as will either supply my wants, or enable me to supply myself even as long as I live.

Upon the whole, here was an undoubted testimony that there was scarce any condition in the world so miserable, but there was something negative or something positive to be thankful for in it; and let this stand as a direction from the experience of the most miserable of all conditions in this world, that we may always find in it something to comfort ourselves from, and to set in the description of good and evil, on the credit side of the account.

Having now brought my mind a little to relish my condition, and given over looking out to sea, to see if I could spy a ship; I say, giving over these things, I began to apply myself to accommodate my way of living, and to make things as easy to me as I could.

I have already described my habitation, which was a tent under the side of a rock, surrounded with a strong pale of posts and cables; but I might now rather call it a wall, for I raised a kind
of wall up against it of turfs, about two foot thick on the outside; and after some time, I think it was a year and a half, I raised rafters from it leaning to the rock, and thatched or covered it with boughs of trees, and such things as I could get to keep out the rain, which I found at some times of the year very violent.

I have already observed how I brought all my goods into this pale, and into the cave which I had made behind me; but I must observe, too, that at first this was a confused heap of goods, which,

"I set myself to enlarge my cave."

as they lay in no order, so they took up all my place. I had no room to turn myself, so I set myself to enlarge my cave and works farther into the earth; for it was a loose sandy rock, which yielded easily to the labour I bestowed on it: and so, when I found I was pretty safe as to beasts of prey, I worked sideways to the right hand into the rock; and then, turning to the right again, worked quite out, and made me a door to come out, on the outside of my pale or fortification.

This gave me not only egress and regress, as it were, a back-way to my tent and to my storehouse, but gave me room to stow my goods.
LESSONS IN CARPENTRY.

And now I began to apply myself to make such necessary things as I found I most wanted, as particularly a chair and a table; for without these I was not able to enjoy the few comforts I had in the world—I could not write or eat, or do several things with so much pleasure without a table.

So I went to work; and here I must needs observe, that as reason is the substance and original of the mathematics, so by stating and squaring everything by reason, and by making the most rational judgment of things, every man may be in time master of every mechanic art. I had never handled a tool in my life, and yet in time, by labour, application, and contrivance, I found at last that I wanted nothing but I could have made it, especially if I had had tools; however, I made abundance of things, even without tools, and some with no more tools than an adze and a hatchet, which perhaps were never made that way before, and that with infinite labour. For example, if I wanted a board, I had no other way but to cut down a tree, set it on an edge before me, and hew it flat on either side with my axe, till I had brought it to be thin as a plank, and then dubb it smooth with my adze. It is true, by this method I could make but one board out of a whole tree, but this I had no remedy for but patience, any more than I had for the prodigious deal of time and labour which it took me up to make a plank or board. But my time or labour was little worth, and so it was as well employed one way as another.

However, I made me a table and a chair, as I observed above, in the first place, and this I did out of the short pieces of boards that I brought on my raft from the ship. But when I had wrought out some boards, as above, I made large shelves of the breadth of a foot and a half one over another, all along one side of my cave, to lay all my tools, nails, and iron-work, and, in a word, to separate everything at large in their places, that I might come easily at them. I knocked pieces into the wall of the rock to hang my guns and all things that would hang up.

So that had my cave been to be seen, it looked like a general magazine of all necessary things; and I had everything so ready at my hand that it was a great pleasure to me to see all my goods in
such order, and especially to find my stock of all necessaries so great.

And now it was when I began to keep a journal of every day’s employment—for indeed at first I was in too much hurry, and not only hurry as to labour, but in too much discomposure of mind—

and my journal would have been full of many dull things. For example, I must have said thus:—September 30. After I got to shore and had escaped drowning, instead of being thankful to God for my deliverance—having first vomited with the great quantity of salt water which was gotten into my stomach, and recovering myself a little—I ran about the shore, 'wringing my hands and beating my head and face, exclaiming at my misery, and crying out I was undone, undone! till, tired and faint, I was forced to lie
CRUSOE'S JOURNAL

down on the ground to repose, but durst not sleep for fear of being devoured."

Some days after this, and after I had been on board the ship and got all that I could out of her, yet I could not forbear getting up to the top of a little mountain and looking out to sea in hopes of seeing a ship, then fancy at a vast distance I spied a sail, please myself with the hopes of it, and then after looking steadily till I was almost blind, lose it quite, and sit down and weep like a child, and thus increase my misery by my folly.

But having gotten over these things in some measure, and having settled my household stuff and habitation, made me a table and a chair, and all as handsome about me as I could, I began to keep my journal, of which I shall here give you the copy (though in it will be told all these particulars over again) as long as it lasted, for, having no more ink, I was forced to leave it off.

THE JOURNAL

September 30, 1659. I, poor, miserable Robinson Crusoe, being shipwrecked during a dreadful storm in the offing, came on shore on this dismal unfortunate island, which I called the Island of Despair, all the rest of the ship's company being drowned, and myself almost dead.

All the rest of that day I spent in afflicting myself at the dismal circumstances I was brought to—namely, I had neither food, house, clothes, weapon, nor place to fly to, and, in despair of any relief, saw nothing but death before me—either that I should be devoured by wild beasts, murdered by savages, or starved to death for want of food. At the approach of night I slept in a tree for fear of wild creatures, but slept soundly though it rained all night.

October 1. In the morning I saw, to my great surprise, the ship had floated with the high tide, and was driven on shore again much nearer the island; which as it was some comfort, on one hand, for, seeing her sit upright, and not broken to pieces, I hoped, if the wind abated, I might get on board and get some food and necessaries out of her for my relief; so, on the other hand, it renewed my grief at the loss of my comrades, who, I
imagined, if we had all stayed on board, might have saved the
ship, or at least that they would not have been all drowned as
they were; and that, had the men been saved, we might perhaps
have built us a boat out of the ruins of the ship to have carried
us to some other part of the world. I spent great part of this
day in perplexing myself on these things; but at length, seeing
the ship almost dry, I went upon the sand as near as I could, and
then swam on board; this day also it continued raining, though
with no wind at all.

From the 1st of October to the 24th. All these days entirely spent
in many several voyages to get all I could out of the ship, which
I brought on shore, every tide of flood, upon rafts. Much rain
also in these days, though with some intervals of fair weather;
but, it seems, this was the rainy season.

October 20. I overset my raft, and all the goods I had got upon
it; but being in shoal water, and the things being chiefly heavy, I
recovered many of them when the tide was out.

October 25. It rained all night and all day, with some gusts of
wind, during which time the ship broke in pieces, the wind blow-
ing a little harder than before, and was no more to be seen, except
the wreck of her, and that only at low water. I spent this day
in covering and securing the goods which I had saved, that the
rain might not spoil them.

October 26. I walked about the shore almost all day to find out
a place to fix my habitation, greatly concerned to secure myself
from an attack in the night either from wild beasts or men. To-
wards night I fixed upon a proper place under a rock, and marked
out a semicircle for my encampment, which I resolved to strengthen
with a work, wall, or fortification made of double piles, lined
within with cables and without with turf.

From the 26th to the 30th I worked very hard in carrying all
my goods to my new habitation, though some part of the time it
rained exceeding hard.

The 31st in the morning I went out into the island with my
gun to see for some food, and discover the country, when I killed
a she-goat, and her kid followed me home, which I afterwards
killed also, because it would not feed.
November 1. I set up my tent under a rock, and lay there for the first night, making it as large as I could with stakes driven in to swing my hammock upon.

November 2. I set up all my chests and boards, and the pieces of timber which made my rafts, and with them formed a fence round me, a little within the place I had marked out for my fortification.

November 3. I went out with my gun, and killed two fowls like ducks, which were very good food. In the afternoon went to work to make me a table.

November 4. This morning I began to order my times of work, of going out with my gun, time of sleep and time of diversion—namely every morning I walked out with my gun for two or three hours if it did not rain, then employed myself to work till about eleven o'clock, then ate what I had to live on; and from twelve to two I lay down to sleep, the weather being excessive hot; and
then in the evening to work again. The working part of this day and of the next were wholly employed in making my table; for I was yet but a very sorry workman, though time and necessity made me a complete natural mechanic soon after, as I believe it would do any one else.

November 5. This day went abroad with my gun and my dog, and killed a wild cat, her skin pretty soft, but her flesh good for nothing. Every creature I killed I took off the skins and preserved them. Coming back by the sea-shore, I saw many sorts of sea-fowls which I did not understand; but was surprised and almost frightened with two or three seals, which while I was gazing at, not well knowing what they were, got into the sea, and escaped me for that time.

November 6. After my morning walk I went to work with my table again, and finished it, though not to my liking; nor was it long before I learned to mend it.

November 7. Now it began to be settled fair weather. The 7th, 8th, 9th, 10th, and part of the 12th (for the 11th was Sunday), I took wholly up to make me a chair, and with much ado brought it to a tolerable shape, but never to please me; and even in the making I pulled it in pieces several times. Note.—I soon neglected my keeping Sundays; for, omitting my mark for them on my post, I forgot which was which.

November 13. This day it rained, which refreshed me exceedingly, and cooled the earth; but it was accompanied with terrible thunder and lightning, which frightened me dreadfully for fear of my powder. As soon as it was over I resolved to separate my stock of powder into as many little parcels as possible, that I might not be in danger.

November 14, 15, 16. These three days I spent in making little square chests or boxes, which might hold about a pound, or two pound at most, of powder; and so putting the powder in, I stowed it in places as secure and remote from one another as possible. On one of these three days I killed a large bird that was good to eat, but I know not what to call it.

November 17. This day I began to dig behind my tent into the rock, to make room for my farther conveniency. Note.—Thr
things I wanted exceedingly for this work—namely, a pick-axe, a
shovel, and a wheelbarrow or basket. So I desisted from my
work, and began to consider how to supply that want, and make
me some tools. As for a pick-axe I made use of the iron crows,
which were proper enough though heavy. But the next thing
was a shovel or spade; this was so absolutely necessary, that
indeed I could do nothing effectually without it. But what kind
of one to make I knew not.

November 18. The next day, in searching the woods, I found a
tree of that wood, or like it, which in the Brazils they call the
iron tree, for its exceeding hardness. Of this, with great labour
and almost spoiling my axe, I cut a piece, and brought it home
too with difficulty enough, for it was exceeding heavy.

The excessive hardness of the wood, and having no other way,
made me a long while upon this machine; for I worked it effec-
tually by little and little into the form of a shovel or spade, the
handle exactly shaped like ours in England, only that the broad
part having no iron shod upon it at bottom, it would not last me
so long. However, it served well enough for the uses which I
had occasion to put it to; but never was a shovel, I believe, made
after that fashion, or so long a-making.

I was still deficient, for I wanted a basket or a wheelbarrow.
A basket I could not make by any means, having no such things
as twigs that would bend to make wicker ware, at least none yet
found out. And as to a wheelbarrow, I fancied I could make all
but the wheel, but that I had no notion of, neither did I know
how to go about it; besides, I had no possible way to make the
iron gudgeons for the spindle or axis of the wheel to run in, so I
gave it over. And so, for carrying away the earth which I dug
out of the cave, I made me a thing like a hod, which the labourers
carry mortar in when they serve the bricklayers.

This was not so difficult to me as the making the shovel; and
yet this and the shovel, and the attempt which I made in vain to
make a wheelbarrow, took me up no less than four days—I mean
always excepting my morning walk with my gun, which I seldom
failed, and very seldom failed also bringing home something fit to
eat.
November 23. My other work having now stood still because of my making these tools, when they were finished I went on, and working every day as my strength and time allowed, I spent eighteen days entirely in widening and deepening my cave, that it might hold my goods commodiously.

Note.—During all this time I worked to make this room or cave spacious enough to accommodate me as a warehouse or magazine, a kitchen, a dining-room, and a cellar. As for my lodging, I kept to the tent, except that sometimes, in the wet season of the year, it rained so hard that I could not keep myself dry; which caused me afterwards to cover all my place within my pale with long poles in the form of rafters, leaning against the rock, and load them with flags and large leaves of trees like a thatch.

December 10. I began now to think my cave or vault finished, when on a sudden (it seems I had made it too large) a great quantity of earth fell down from the top and one side, so much that, in short, it frightened me; and not without reason too, for if I had been under it, I had never wanted a grave-digger. Upon this disaster I had a great deal of work to do over again; for I had the loose earth to carry out, and, which was of more importance, I had the ceiling to prop up, so that I might be sure no more would come down.

December 11. This day I went to work with it accordingly, and got two shores or posts pitched upright to the top, with two pieces of boards across over each post. This I finished the next day, and setting more posts up with boards, in about a week more I had the roof secured; and the posts, standing in rows, served me for partitions to part off my house.

December 17. From this day to the 20th I placed shelves, and knocked up nails on the posts to hang everything up that could be hung up; and now I began to be in some order within doors.

December 20. Now I carried everything into the cave and began to furnish my house, and set up some pieces of boards, like a dresser, to order my victuals upon; but boards began to be very scarce with me. Also I made me another table.

December 24. Much rain all night and all day. No stirring out.
FINDS A LIVE GOAT.

December 25. Rain all day.

December 26. No rain, and the earth much cooler than before and pleasanter.

December 27. Killed a young goat, and lamed another so that I caught it, and led it home in a string. When I had it home I bound and splintered up its leg, which was broken. N.B.—I took such care of it that it lived, and the leg grew well and as strong as ever; but by my nursing it so long it grew tame, and fed upon the little green at my door, and would not go away. This was the first time that I entertained a thought of breeding up some tame creatures, that I might have food when my powder and shot was all spent.

December 28, 29, 30. Great heats and no breeze, so that there
was no stirring abroad, except in the evening, for food. That time I spent in putting all my things in order within doors.

January 1. Very hot still, but I went abroad early and laden with my gun, and lay still in the middle of the day. This evening, going farther into the valleys which lay towards the centre of the island, I found there was plenty of goats, though exceeding shy and hard to come at. However, I resolved to try if I could not bring my dog to hunt them down.

January 2. Accordingly, the next day I went out with my dog and set him upon the goats; but I was mistaken, for they all faced about upon the dog, and he knew his danger too well, for he would not come near them.

January 3. I began my fence or wall, which, being still jealous of my being attacked by somebody, I resolved to make very thick and strong.

N.B. This wall being described before, I purposely omit what was said in the journal. It is sufficient to observe that I was no less time than from the 3rd of January to the 14th of April working, finishing, and perfecting this wall, though it was no more than about twenty-four yards in length, being a half circle from one place in the rock to another place about eight yards from it, the door of the cave being in the centre behind it.

All this time I worked very hard, the rains hindering me many days, nay, sometimes weeks together; but I thought I should never be perfectly secure till this wall was finished. And it is scarce credible what inexpressible labour everything was done with, especially the bringing piles out of the woods and driving them into the ground, for I made them much bigger than I need to have done.

When this wall was finished, and the outside double fenced with a turf wall raised up close to it, I persuaded myself that if any people were to come on shore there, they would not perceive anything like a habitation. And it was very well I did so, as may be observed hereafter upon a very remarkable occasion.

During this time I made my rounds in the woods for game every day when the rain admitted me, and made frequent discoveries in these walks of something or other to my advantage.
Particularly I found a kind of wild pigeons, who built not as wood-pigeons, in a tree, but rather as house-pigeons in the holes of the rocks; and taking some young ones, I endeavoured to breed them up tame, and did so; but when they grew older they flew all away, which perhaps was at first for want of feeding them, for I had nothing to give them. However, I frequently found their nests, and got their young ones, which were very good meat.

And now, in the managing my household affairs, I found myself wanting in many things, which I thought at first was impossible for me to make, as indeed as to some of them it was. For instance, I could never make a cask to be hooped. I had a small runlet or two, as I observed before, but I could never arrive to the capacity of making one by them, though I spent many weeks about it. I could neither put in the heads, nor joint the staves so true to one another as to make them hold water. So I gave that also over.

In the next place, I was at a great loss for candle; so that as soon as ever it was dark, which was generally by seven o'clock, I was obliged to go to bed. I remembered the lump of bees-wax with which I made candles in my African adventure, but I had none of that now. The only remedy I had was, that when I had killed a goat, I saved the tallow; and with a little dish made of clay, which I baked in the sun, to which I added a wick of some oakum, I made me a lamp, and this gave me light, though not a clear, steady light, like a candle. In the middle of all my labours it happened that, rummaging my things, I found a little bag, which, as I hinted before, had been filled with corn for the feeding of poultry, not for this voyage, but before, as I suppose, when the ship came from Lisbon. What little remainder of corn had been in the bag was all devoured with the rats, and I saw nothing in the bag but husks and dust; and being willing to have the bag for some other use (I think it was to put powder in, when I divided it for fear of the lightning, or some such use), I shook the husks of corn out of it on one side of my fortification under the rock.

It was a little before the great rains just now mentioned that I
threw this stuff away, taking no notice of anything, and not so much as remembering that I had thrown anything there; when, about a month after, or thereabout, I saw some few stalks of something green shooting out of the ground, which I fancied might be some plant I had not seen; but I was surprised and perfectly astonished when, after a longer time, I saw about ten or twelve ears come out, which were perfect green barley, of the same kind as our European, nay, as our English barley.

It is impossible to express the astonishment and confusion of my thoughts on this occasion. I had hitherto acted upon no religious foundation at all; indeed, I had very few notions of religion in my head, nor had entertained any sense of anything that had befallen me otherwise than as a chance, or, as we lightly say, what pleases God; without so much as inquiring into the end of Providence in
these things, or his order in governing events in the world. But after I saw barley grow there, in a climate which I know was not proper for corn, and especially that I knew not how it came there, it startled me strangely, and I began to suggest that God had miraculously caused this grain to grow without any help of seed sown, and that it was so directed purely for my sustenance on that wild miserable place.

This touched my heart a little, and brought tears out of my eyes; and I began to bless myself that such a prodigy of nature should happen upon my account. And this was the more strange to me, because I saw near it still all along by the side of the rock some other straggling stalks, which proved to be stalks of rice, and which I knew because I had seen it grow in Africa, when I was ashore there.

I not only thought these the pure productions of Providence for my support, but not doubting but that there was more in the place, I went all over that part of the island where I had been before, peering in every corner and under every rock, to see for more of it; but I could not find any. At last it occurred to my thoughts that I had shaken a bag of chickens' meat out in that place, and then the wonder began to cease; and I must confess my religious thankfulness to God's providence began to abate too upon the discovering that all this was nothing but what was common; though I ought to have been as thankful for so strange and unforeseen providence as if it had been miraculous: for it was really the work of Providence as to me, that should order or appoint that ten or twelve grains of corn should remain unspoiled (when the rats had destroyed all the rest), as if it had been dropped from heaven; as also that I should throw it out in that particular place, where, it being in the shade of a high rock, it sprang up immediately; whereas, if I had thrown it anywhere else at that time, it had been burned up and destroyed.

I carefully saved the ears of this corn, you may be sure, in their season, which was about the end of June; and laying up every corn, I resolved to sow them all again, hoping in time to have some quantity sufficient to supply me with bread. But it was not till the fourth year that I could allow myself the least grain of this
corn to eat, and even then but sparingly, as I shall say afterwards in its order; for I lost all that I sowed the first season by not observing the proper time; for I sowed it just before the dry season, so that it never came up at all, at least not as it would have done —of which in its place.

Besides this barley there was, as above, twenty or thirty stalks of rice, which I preserved with the same care, and whose use was of the same kind or to the same purpose—namely, to make me bread, or rather food; for I found ways to cook it up without baking, though I did that also after some time. But to return to my journal.

I worked excessively hard these three or four months to get my wall done; and the 14th of April I closed it up, contriving to go into it, not by a door, but over the wall by a ladder, that there might be no sign in the outside of my habitation.

April 16. I finished the ladder; so I went up with the ladder to the top, and then pulled it up after me, and let it down on the inside. This was a complete enclosure to me—for within I had room enough, and nothing could come at me from without, unless it could first mount my wall.

The very next day after this wall was finished, I had almost had all my labour overthrown at once, and myself killed. The case was thus: As I was busy in the inside of it, behind my tent, just in the entrance into my cave, I was terribly frightened with a most dreadful surprising thing indeed; for all on a sudden I found the earth come crumbling down from the roof of my cave and from the edge of the hill over my head, and two of the posts I had set up in the cave cracked in a frightful manner. I was heartily scared, but thought nothing of what was really the cause —only thinking that the top of my cave was falling in, as some of it had done before; and for fear I should be buried in it, I ran forward to my ladder, and not thinking myself safe there neither, I got over my wall for fear of the pieces of the hill which I expected might roll down upon me. I was no sooner stepped down upon the firm ground, but I plainly saw it was a terrible earthquake, for the ground I stood on shook three times at about eight minutes' distance with three such shocks as would have
A DREADFUL HURRICANE.

overturned the strongest building that could be supposed to have stood on the earth; and a great piece of the top of a rock, which stood about half a mile from me next the sea, fell down with such a terrible noise as I never heard in all my life. I perceived also the very sea was put into violent motion by it, and I believe the shocks were stronger under the water than on the island.

I was so amazed with the thing itself—having never felt the like or discoursed with any one that had—that I was like one dead or stupified; and the motion of the earth made my stomach sick, like one that was tossed at sea. But the noise of the falling of the rock awaked me, as it were, and rousing me from the stupified condition I was in, filled me with horror, and I thought of nothing then but the hill falling upon my tent and all my household goods, and burying all at once; and this sunk my very soul within me a second time.

After the third shock was over, and I felt no more for some time, I began to take courage; and yet I had not heart enough to go over my wall again, for fear of being buried alive, but sat still upon the ground, greatly cast down and disconsolate, not knowing what to do. All this while I had not the least serious religious thought, nothing but the common "Lord have mercy upon me;" and when it was over, that went away too.

While I sat thus, I found the air overcast and grow cloudy, as if it would rain. Soon after that the wind rose by little and little, so that in less than half an hour it blew a most dreadful hurricane. The sea was all on a sudden covered over with foam and froth, the shore was covered with the breach of the water, the trees were torn up by the roots, and a terrible storm it was; and this held about three hours and then began to abate, and in two hours more it was calm and began to rain very hard.

All this while I sat upon the ground very much terrified and dejected, when on a sudden it came into my thoughts that these winds and rain being the consequences of the earthquake, the earthquake itself was spent and over, and I might venture into my cave again. With this thought my spirits began to revive, and the rain also helping to persuade me, I went in and sat down
in my tent—but the rain was so violent that my tent was ready to be beaten down with it, and I was forced to go into my cave, though very much afraid and uneasy for fear it should fall on my head.

This violent rain forced me to a new work—namely, to cut a hole through my new fortification like a sink to let the water go out, which would else have drowned my cave. After I had been in my cave some time and found still no more shocks of the earthquake follow, I began to be more composed; and now to support my spirits—which indeed wanted it very much—I went to my little store and took a small sup of rum, which however I did then and always very sparingly, knowing I could have no more when that was gone.

It continued raining all that night and great part of the next day, so that I could not stir abroad; but my mind being more composed, I began to think of what I had best do, concluding that if the island was subject to these earthquakes there would be no living for me in a cave, but I must consider of building me some little hut in an open place which I might surround with a wall as I had done here, and so make myself secure from wild beasts or men; but concluded, if I stayed where I was, I should certainly, one time or other, be buried alive.

With these thoughts I resolved to remove my tent from the place where it stood, which was just under the hanging precipice of the hill, and which, if it should be shaken again, would certainly fall upon my tent. And I spent the two next days, being the 19th and 20th of April, in contriving where and how to remove my habitation.

The fear of being swallowed up alive made me that I never slept in quiet, and yet the apprehension of lying abroad without any fence was almost equal to it; but still when I looked about and saw how everything was put in order, how pleasantly concealed I was, and how safe from danger, it made me very loath to remove.

In the meantime it occurred to me that it would require a vast deal of time for me to do this, and that I must be contented to run the venture where I was, till I had formed a camp for myself:
and had secured it so as to remove to it. So with this resolution I composed myself for a time, and resolved that I would go to work with all speed to build me a wall with piles and cables, &c., in a circle as before, and set my tent up in it when it was finished, but that I would venture to stay where I was till it was finished and fit to remove to. This was the 21st.

April 22. The next morning I began to consider of means to put this resolve in execution, but I was at a great loss about my tools. I had three large axes and abundance of hatchets (for we carried the hatchets for traffic with the Indians), but with much chopping and cutting knotty hard wood they were all full of notches and dull; and though I had a grindstone, I could not turn it and grind my tools too. This cost me as much thought as a statesman would have bestowed upon a grand point of politics, or a judge upon the life and death of a man. At length I contrived a wheel with a string to turn it with my foot, that I might have both my hands at liberty.—Note. I had never seen any such thing in England, or at least not to take notice how it was done, though since I have observed it is very common there; besides that, my grindstone was very large and heavy. This machine cost me a full week’s work to bring it to perfection.

April 28, 29. These two whole days I took up in grinding my tools, my machine for turning my grindstone performing very well.

April 30. Having perceived my bread had been low a great while, now I took a survey of it, and reduced myself to one biscuit-cake a day, which made my heart very heavy.

May 1. In the morning, looking towards the sea-side, the tide being low, I saw something lie on the shore bigger than ordinary, and it looked like a cask. When I came to it, I found a small barrel and two or three pieces of the wreck of the ship, which were driven on shore by the late hurricane; and looking towards the wreck itself, I thought it seemed to lie higher out of the water than it used to do. I examined the barrel which was driven on shore, and soon found it was a barrel of gunpowder; but it had taken water, and the powder was caked as hard as a stone. However, I rolled it further on shore for the present, and went
on upon the sands as near as I could to the wreck of the ship to look for more.

When I came down to the ship I found it strangely removed. The forecastle, which lay before buried in sand, was heaved up at least six foot; and the stern, which was broken to pieces and parted from the rest by the force of the sea soon after I had left

rummaging her, was tossed, as it were, up and cast on one side; and the sand was thrown so high on that side next her stern, that whereas there was a great place of water before, so that I could not come within a quarter of a mile of the wreck without swimming, I could now walk quite up to her when the tide was out. I was surprised with this at first, but soon concluded it must be done by the earthquake. And as by this violence the ship was more broken open than formerly, so many things came daily on shore which the sea had loosened, and which the winds and water rolled by degrees to the land.
WORKING ON THE WRECK.

This wholly diverted my thoughts from the design of removing my habitation; and I busied myself mightily, that day especially, in searching whether I could make any way into the ship; but I found nothing was to be expected of that kind, for that all the inside of the ship was choked up with sand. However, as I had learned not to despair of anything, I resolved to pull everything to pieces that I could of the ship, concluding that everything I could get from her would be of some use or other to me.

May 3. I began with my saw, and cut a piece of a beam through, which I thought held some of the upper part or quarter-deck together; and when I had cut it through, I cleared away the sand as well as I could from the side which lay highest; but the tide coming in, I was obliged to give over for that time.

May 4. I went a-fishing, but caught not one fish that I durst eat of, till I was weary of my sport; when just going to leave off, I caught a young dolphin. I had made me a long line of some rope yarn, but I had no hooks, yet I frequently caught fish enough, as much as I cared to eat; all which I dried in the sun, and ate them dry.

May 5. Worked on the wreck, cut another beam asunder, and brought three great fir planks off from the decks, which I tied together, and made swim on shore when the tide of flood came on.

May 6. Worked on the wreck, got several iron bolts out of her, and other pieces of iron-work, worked very hard, and came home very much tired, and had thoughts of giving it over.

May 7. Went to the wreck again, but with an intent not to work; but found the weight of the wreck had broken itself down, the beams being cut, that several pieces of the ship seemed to lie loose, and the inside of the hold lay so open that I could see into it, but almost full of water and sand.

May 8. Went to the wreck, and carried an iron crow to wrench up the deck, which lay now quite clear of the water or sand. I wrenched open two planks, and brought them on shore also with the tide. I left the iron crow in the wreck for next day.

May 9. Went to the wreck, and with the crow made way into the body of the wreck, and felt several casks, and loosened them with the crow, but could not break them up. I felt also the
roll of English lead, and could stir it, but it was too heavy to remove.

May 10, 11, 12, 13, 14. Went every day to the wreck, and got a great deal of pieces of timber and boards, or planks, and two or three hundredweight of iron.

May 15. I carried two hatchets to try if I could not cut a piece off of the roll of lead, by placing the edge of one hatchet and driving it with the other; but as it lay about a foot and a half in the water, I could not make any blow to drive the hatchet.

May 16. It had blown hard in the night, and the wreck appeared more broken by the force of the water; but I stayed so long in the woods to get pigeons for food, that the tide prevented me going to the wreck that day.

May 17. I saw some pieces of the wreck blown on shore, at a great distance, near two miles off me, but resolved to see what they were, and found it was a piece of the head, but too heavy for me to bring away.

May 24. Every day to this day I worked on the wreck, and with hard labour I loosened some things so much with the crow, that the first blowing tide several casks floated out, and two of the seamen's chests; but the wind blowing from the shore, nothing came to land that day but pieces of timber, and a hoghead which had some Brazil pork in it, but the salt water and the sand had spoiled it.

I continued this work every day to the 15th of June, except the time necessary to get food, which I always appointed, during this part of my employment, to be when the tide was up, that I might be ready when it was ebbed out; and by this time I had gotten timber and plank and iron-work enough to have built a good boat, if I had known how; and also, I got at several times and in several pieces, near one hundredweight of the sheet lead.

June 16. Going down to the seaside, I found a large tortoise or turtle. This was the first I had seen; which, it seems, was only my misfortune, not any defect of the place or scarcity; for had I happened to be on the other side of the island, I might have had hundreds of them every day, as I found afterwards; but, perhaps, had paid dear enough for them.
June 17. I spent in cooking the turtle. I found in her three-score eggs; and her flesh was to me at that time the most savoury and pleasant that ever I tasted in my life, having had no flesh, but of goats and fowls, since I landed in this horrid place.

June 18. Rained all day, and I stayed within. I thought at this time the rain felt cold, and I was something chilly, which I knew was not usual in that latitude.

June 19. Very ill, and shivering, as if the weather had been cold.

June 20. No rest all night, violent pains in my head, and feverish.

June 21. Very ill. Frightened almost to death with the apprehensions of my sad condition—to be sick and no help. Prayed to God for the first time since the storm off Hull; but scarce knew what I said, or why, my thoughts being all confused.
June 22. A little better, but under dreadful apprehensions of sickness.

June 23. Very bad again, cold and shivering, and then a violent headache.

June 24. Much better.

June 25. An ague, very violent. The fit held me seven hours, cold fit and hot, with faint sweats after it.

June 26. Better; and having no victuals to eat, took my gun, but found myself very weak. However, I killed a she-goat, and with much difficulty got it home, and broiled some of it, and ate. I would fain have stewed it, and made some broth, but had no pot.

June 27. The ague again, so violent that I lay a-bed all day, and neither ate nor drank. I was ready to perish for thirst, but so weak, I had not strength to stand up or to get myself any water to drink. Prayed to God again; but was light-headed, and when I was not, I was so ignorant that I knew not what to say; only I lay and cried, "Lord, look upon me; Lord, pity me; Lord, have mercy upon me!" I suppose I did nothing else for two or three hours, till the fit wearing off I fell asleep, and did not wake till far in the night. When I waked I found myself much refreshed, but weak and exceeding thirsty. However, as I had no water in my whole habitation, I was forced to lie till morning, and went to sleep again. In this second sleep I had this terrible dream:

I thought that I was sitting on the ground on the outside of my wall, where I sat when the storm blew after the earthquake, and that I saw a man descend from a great black cloud, in a bright flame of fire, and light upon the ground. He was all over as bright as a flame, so that I could but just bear to look towards him. His countenance was most inexpressibly dreadful, impossible for words to describe. When he stepped upon the ground with his feet, I thought the earth trembled, just as it had done before in the earthquake; and all the air looked, to my apprehension, as if it had been filled with flashes of fire.

He was no sooner landed upon the earth but he moved forward towards me, with a long spear or weapon in his hand, to kill me.
CRUSOE'S TERRIBLE DREAM.

And when he came to a rising ground at some distance, he spoke to me, or I heard a voice so terrible, that it is impossible to express the terror of it. All that I can say I understood was this, "Seeing all these things have not brought thee to repentance, now thou shalt die." At which words, I thought he lifted up the spear that was in his hand to kill me.

No one that shall ever read this account will expect that I should be able to describe the horrors of my soul at this terrible vision. I mean, that even while it was a dream, I even dreamed of those horrors. Nor is it any more possible to describe the impression that remained upon my mind, when I awaked and found it was but a dream.

I had, alas! no divine knowledge. What I had received by the good instruction of my father was then worn out by an uninterrupted series, for eight years, of sea-faring wickedness, and a constant conversation with nothing but such as were like myself, wicked and profane to the last degree. I do not remember that I had in all that time one thought that so much as tended either to looking upwards toward God, or inwards towards a reflection upon my own ways. But a certain stupidity of soul, without desire of good or conscience of evil, had entirely overwhelmed me, and I was all that the most hardened, unthinking, wicked creature among our common sailors can be supposed to be, not having the least sense, either of the fear of God in danger, or of thankfulness to God in deliverances.

In the relating what is already past of my story, this will be the more easily believed, when I shall add, that through all the variety of miseries that had to this day befallen me, I never had so much as one thought of it being the hand of God, or that it was a just punishment for my sin, my rebellious behaviour against my father, or my present sins, which were great; or so much as a punishment for the general course of my wicked life. When I was on the desperate expedition on the desert shores of Africa, I never had so much as one thought of what would become of me; or one wish to God to direct me whither I should go, or to keep me from the danger which apparently surrounded me, as well from voracious creatures as cruel savages. But I was merely thoughtless
of a God, or a Providence; acted like a mere brute from the principles of nature, and by the dictates of common sense only, and indeed hardly that.

When I was delivered and taken up at sea by the Portuguese captain, well used, and dealt justly and honourably with, as well as charitably, I had not the least thankfulness on my thoughts. When again I was shipwrecked, ruined, and in danger of drowning on this island, I was as far from remorse, or looking on it as a judgment; I only said to myself often that I was an unfortunate dog, and born to be always miserable.

It is true, when I got on shore first here, and found all my ship's crew drowned, and myself spared, I was surprised with a kind of ecstasy and some transports of soul, which, had the grace of God assisted, might have come up to true thankfulness. But it ended where it begun, in a mere common flight of joy, or, as I may say, being glad I was alive, without the least reflection upon the distinguishing goodness of the hand which had preserved me, and had singled me out to be preserved, when all the rest were destroyed; or an inquiry why Providence had been thus merciful to me—even just the same common sort of joy which seamen generally have after they have got safe ashore from a shipwreck, which they drown all in the next bowl of punch, and forget almost as soon as it is over; and all the rest of my life was like it.

Even when I was afterwards, on due consideration, made sensible of my condition, how I was cast on this dreadful place, out of the reach of human kind, out of all hope of relief or prospect of redemption, as soon as I saw but a prospect of living, and that I should not starve and perish for hunger, all the sense of my affliction wore off, and I begun to be very easy, applied myself to the works proper for my preservation and supply, and was far enough from being afflicted at my condition, as a judgment from heaven, or as the hand of God against me. These were thoughts which very seldom entered into my head.

The growing up of the corn, as is hinted in my journal, had at first some little influence upon me, and began to affect me with seriousness, as long as I thought it had something miraculous in it; but as soon as ever that part of the thought was removed,
all the impression which was raised from it wore off also, as I have noted already.

Even the earthquake, though nothing could be more terrible in its nature, or more immediately directing to the Invisible Power which alone directs such things, yet no sooner was the first fright over, but the impression it had made went off also. I had no more sense of God or his judgments, much less of the present affliction of my circumstances being from his hand, than if I had been in the most prosperous condition of life.

But now when I began to be sick, and a leisurely view of the miseries of death came to place itself before me; when my spirits began to sink under the burden of a strong distemper, and nature was exhausted with the violence of the fever; conscience, that had slept so long, began to awake, and I began to reproach myself with my past life, in which I had so evidently, by uncommon wickedness, provoked the justice of God to lay me under uncommon strokes, and to deal with me in so vindictive a manner.

These reflections oppressed me for the second or third day of my distemper, and in the violence, as well of the fever as of the dreadful reproaches of my conscience, extorted some words from me like praying to God, though I cannot say they were either a prayer attended with desires or with hopes; it was rather the voice of mere fright and distress. My thoughts were confused, the convictions great upon my mind, and the horror of dying in such a miserable condition raised vapours into my head with the mere apprehensions; and in these hurries of my soul I know not what my tongue might express. But it was rather exclamation, such as, "Lord, what a miserable creature am I! If I should be sick, I shall certainly die for want of help, and what will become of me?" Then the tears burst out of my eyes, and I could say no more for a good while.

In this interval, the good advice of my father came to my mind, and presently his prediction, which I mentioned at the beginning of this story, namely that if I did take this foolish step, God would not bless me, and I would have leisure hereafter to reflect upon having neglected his counsel, when there might be none to assist in my recovery. "Now," said I aloud, "my dear father's words
are come to pass: God's justice has overtaken me, and I have none to help or hear me. I rejected the voice of Providence, which had mercifully put me in a posture or station of life wherein I might have been happy and easy; but I would neither see it myself nor learn to know the blessing of it from my parents. I left them to mourn over my folly, and now I am left to mourn under the consequences of it. I refused their help and assistance who would have lifted me into the world, and would have made everything easy to me; and now I have difficulties to struggle with, too great for even nature itself to support, and no assistance, no help, no comfort, no advice." Then I cried out, "Lord, be my help; for I am in great distress."

This was the first prayer, if I may call it so, that I had made for many years. But I return to my journal.

**June 28.** Having been somewhat refreshed with the sleep I had had, and the fit being entirely off, I got up; and though the fright and terror of my dream was very great, yet I considered that the fit of the ague would return again the next day, and now was my time to get something to refresh and support myself when I should be ill. And the first thing I did, I filled a large square case-bottle with water, and set it upon my table, in reach of my bed; and to take off the chill or anguish disposition of the water, I put about a quarter of a pint of rum into it and mixed them together. Then I got me a piece of the goat's flesh and broiled it on the coals, but could eat very little. I walked about, but was very weak, and withal very sad and heavy-hearted in the sense of my miserable condition, dreading the return of my distemper the next day. At night I made my supper of three of the turtle's eggs, which I roasted in the ashes, and ate, as we call it, in the shell: and this was the first bit of meat I had ever asked God's blessing to, even as I could remember, in my whole life.

After I had eaten I tried to walk, but found myself so weak that I could hardly carry the gun (for I never went out without that); so I went but a little way, and sat down upon the ground, looking out upon the sea, which was just before me, and very calm and smooth. As I sat here, some such thoughts as these occurred to me:—
THE VOICE OF CONSCIENCE.

What is this earth and sea of which I have seen so much, whence is it produced; and what am I and all the other creatures, wild and tame, human and brutal, whence are we?

Sure we are all made by some secret Power, who formed the earth and sea, the air and sky; and who is that?

Then it followed most naturally, It is God that has made it all. Well, but then it came on strangely, If God has made all these things, he guides and governs them all, and all things that concern them; for the Power that could make all things must certainly have power to guide and direct them.

If so, nothing can happen in the great circuit of his works, either without his knowledge or appointment.

And if nothing happens without his knowledge, he knows that I am here, and am in this dreadful condition; and if nothing happens without his appointment, he has appointed all this to befall me.

Nothing occurred to my thought to contradict any of these conclusions; and therefore it rested upon me with the greater force, that it must needs be that God had appointed all this to befall me; that I was brought to this miserable circumstance by his direction, he having the sole power, not of me only, but of everything that happened in the world. Immediately it followed,—

Why has God done this to me? What have I done to be thus used?

My conscience presently checked me in that inquiry, as if I had blasphemed, and methought it spoke to me like a voice: Wretch! dost thou ask what thou hast done? Look back upon a dreadful mis-spent life, and ask thyself what thou hast not done! Ask, Why is it that thou wast not long ago destroyed? Why was thou not drowned in Yarmouth Roads? killed in the fight when the ship was taken by the Sallee man-of-war? devoured by the wild beasts on the coast of Africa? or, drowned here, when all the crew perished but thyself? Dost thou ask, What have I done?

I was struck dumb with these reflections, as one astonished, and had not a word to say—no, not to answer to myself; but rose up pensive and sad, walked back to my retreat, and went up over my wall, as if I had been going to bed; but my thoughts were sadly
disturbed, and I had no inclination to sleep; so I sat down in my chair, and lighted my lamp, for it began to be dark. Now as the apprehension of the return of my distemper terrified me very much, it occurred to my thought that the Brazilians take no physic but their tobacco for almost all distempers; and I had a piece of a roll of tobacco in one of the chests, which was quite cured, and some also that was green and not quite cured.

I went, directed by Heaven no doubt; for in this chest I found a cure both for soul and body. I opened the chest and found what I looked for, namely, the tobacco; and as the few books I had saved lay there too, I took out one of the Bibles which I mentioned before, and which to this time I had not found leisure, or so much as inclination to look into—I say, I took it out, and brought both that and the tobacco with me to the table.

What use to make of the tobacco I knew not, as to my distemper, or whether it was good for it or no; but I tried several experiments with it, as if I was resolved it should hit one way or other. I first took a piece of a leaf and chewed it in my mouth, which indeed at first almost stupified my brain, the tobacco being green and strong and that I had not been much used to it; then I took some and steeped it an hour or two in some rum, and resolved to take a dose of it when I lay down; and lastly I burned some upon a pan of coals, and held my nose close over the smoke of it as long as I could bear it, as well for the heat as almost for suffocation.

In the interval of this operation, I took up the Bible and began to read; but my head was too much disturbed with the tobacco to bear reading, at least that time. Only, having opened the book casually, the first words that occurred to me were these, "Call upon me in the day of trouble; I will deliver thee, and thou shalt glorify me."

The words were very apt to my case, and made some impression upon my thoughts at the time of reading them, though not so much as they did afterwards; for, as for being delivered, the word had no sound, as I may say, to me; the thing was so remote, so impossible in my apprehension of things, that I began to say as

1 Psalm 1. 15.
of Israel did, when they were promised flesh to eat, spread a table in the wilderness?" so I began to say, myself deliver me from this place? and as it was not for that any hope appeared, this prevailed very often upon me; but, however, the words made a great impression and I mused upon them very often. It grew now late,acco had, as I said, dozed my head so much that I sleep; so I sat up burnave lest I anything and went, before I did what I done in. I kneeled and prayed to fill the me, that upon him of trouble, deliver me. broken and prayer was the rum had steeped the tobacco, which was so strong and rankacco that indeed I could scarce get it down. Impon this I went to bed. I found presently it flew up violently, but I fell into a sound sleep, and waked no the sun, it must necessarily be near three o'clock in the next day. Nay, to this hour I am partly of the I slept all the next day and night, and till almost a after; for otherwise I knew not how I should lose my reckoning in the days of the week, as it appeared after I had done. For if I had lost it by crossing and he line, I should have lost more than one day; but, lost a day in my account, and never knew which way.
HE BEGINS TO RECOVER.

Be that, however, one way or the other, when I awaked I found myself exceedingly refreshed, and my spirits lively and cheerful; when I got up I was stronger than I was the day before, and my stomach better, for I was hungry; and, in short, I had no fit the next day, but continued much altered for the better. This was the 29th.

The 30th was my well-day, of course, and I went abroad with my gun, but did not care to travel too far. I killed a sea-fowl or two, something like a brand-goose,¹ and brought them home, but was not very forward to eat them; so I ate some more of the turtle's eggs, which were very good. This evening I renewed the medicine which I had supposed did me good the day before—namely, the tobacco steeped in rum; only I did not take so much as before, nor did I chew any of the leaf, or hold my head over the smoke. However, I was not so well the next day, which was the 1st of July, as I hoped I should have been; for I had a little spice of the cold fit, but it was not much.

July 2. I renewed the medicine all the three ways, and dosed myself with it as at first; and doubled the quantity which I drank.

July 3. I missed the fit for good and all, though I did not recover my full strength for some weeks after. While I was thus gathering strength my thoughts ran exceedingly upon this scripture, "I will deliver thee;" and the impossibility of my deliverance lay much upon my mind in bar of my ever expecting it. But as I was discouraging myself with such thoughts it occurred to my mind that I pored so much upon my deliverance from the main affliction that I disregarded the deliverance I had received; and I was, as it were, made to ask myself such questions as these—namely, Have I not been delivered, and wonderfully too, from sickness—from the most distressed condition that could be, and that was so frightful to me? And what notice I had taken of it: Had I done my part? God had delivered me, but I had not glorified him; that is to say, I had not owned and been thankful for that as a deliverance. And how could I expect greater deliverance?

¹ Or brent-goose; so called from its burnt or ashen-gray colour.
This touched my heart very much, and immediately I kneeled down and gave God thanks aloud for my recovery from my sickness.

July 4. In the morning I took the Bible, and, beginning at the New Testament, I began seriously to read it, and imposed upon myself to read a while every morning and every night, not tying myself to the number of chapters, but as long as my thoughts should engage me. It was not long after I set seriously to this work, but I found my heart more deeply and sincerely affected with the wickedness of my past life. The impression of my dream revived, and the words, "All these things have not brought thee to repentance," ran seriously in my thought. I was earnestly begging of God to give me repentance, when it happened providentially the very day that, reading the Scripture, I came to these words, "He is exalted a Prince and a Saviour, to give repentance, and to give remission." I threw down the book and with my heart as well as my hands lifted up to heaven, in a kind of ecstasy of joy, I cried out aloud, "Jesus, thou son of David, Jesus, thou exalted Prince and Saviour, give me repentance!"

This was the first time that I could say, in the true sense of the words, that I prayed in all my life; for now I prayed with a sense of my condition, and with a true Scripture view of hope founded on the encouragement of the Word of God; and from this time, I may say, I began to have hope that God would hear me.

Now I began to construe the words mentioned above, "Call on me, and I will deliver thee," in a different sense from what I had ever done before; for then I had no notion of anything being called deliverance but my being delivered from the captivity I was in: for though I was indeed at large in the place, yet the island was certainly a prison to me, and that in the worst sense in the world; but now I learned to take it in another sense. Now I looked back upon my past life with such horror, and my sins appeared so dreadful, that my soul sought nothing of God but deliverance from the load of guilt that bore down all my comfort. As for my solitary life, it was nothing; I did not so much as pray to be delivered from it, or think of it; it was all of no consideration in comparison to this. And I add this part here, to hint to
102 INWARD COMFORT.

whoever shall read it, that whenever they come to a true sense of things, they will find deliverance from sin a much greater blessing than deliverance from affliction.

But leaving this part, I return to my journal.

My condition began now to be, though not less miserable as to my way of living, yet much easier to my mind; and my thoughts being directed, by a constant reading the Scripture and praying to God, to things of a higher nature, I had a great deal of comfort within, which till now I knew nothing of. Also as my health and strength returned, I bestirred myself to furnish myself with everything that I wanted, and make my way of living as regular as I could.

From the 4th of July to the 14th I was chiefly employed in walking about with my gun in my hand, a little and a little at a time, as a man that was gathering up his strength after a fit of sickness; for it is hardly to be imagined how low I was, and to what weakness I was reduced. The application which I made use of was perfectly new, and perhaps what had never cured an ague before, neither can I recommend it to any one to practise, by this experiment; and though it did carry off the fit, yet it rather contributed to weakening me, for I had frequent convulsions in my nerves and limbs for some time.

I learned from it also this in particular, that being abroad in the rainy season was the most pernicious thing to my health that could be, especially in those rains which came attended with storms and hurricanes of wind; for as the rain which came in the dry season was always most accompanied with such storms, so I found that rain was much more dangerous than the rain which fell in September and October.

I had been now in this unhappy island above ten months; all possibility of deliverance from this condition seemed to be entirely taken from me, and I firmly believed that no human shape had ever set foot upon that place. Having now secured my habitation, as I thought, fully to my mind, I had a great desire to make a more perfect discovery of the island, and to see what other productions I might find which I yet knew nothing of.

It was the 15th of July that I began to take a more particular
survey of the island itself. I went up the creek first, where, as I hinted, I brought my rafts on shore. I found, after I came about two miles up, that the tide did not flow any higher, and that it was no more than a little brook of running water, and very fresh and good; but this being the dry season, there was hardly any water in some parts of it, at least not enough to run in any stream so as it could be perceived. On the bank of this brook I found many pleasant savannas, or meadows, plain, smooth, and covered with grass; and on the rising parts of them, next to the higher grounds, where the water, as it might be supposed, never overflowed, I found a great deal of tobacco, green, and growing to a great and very strong stalk. There were divers other plants which I had no notion of, or understanding about, and might perhaps have virtues of their own, which I could not find out.

I searched for the cassava root, which the Indians in all that climate make their bread of; but I could find none. I saw large plants of aloes, but did not then understand them. I saw several sugar canes, but wild, and, for want of cultivation, imperfect. I contented myself with these discoveries for this time, and came back musing with myself what course I might take to know the virtue and goodness of any of the fruits or plants which I should discover, but could bring it to no conclusion; for in short, I had made so little observation while I was in the Brazils, that I knew little of the plants in the field, at least very little that might serve me to any purpose now in my distress.

The next day, the 16th, I went up the same way again, and after going something farther than I had gone the day before, I found the brook, and the savannas began to cease, and the country became more woody than before. In this part I found different fruits, and, particularly, I found melons upon the ground in great abundance, and grapes upon the trees; the vines had spread indeed over the trees, and the clusters of grapes were just now in their primo, very ripe and rich. This was a surprising discovery, and I was exceeding glad of them; but I was warned by my experience to eat sparingly of them, remembering that, when I was ashore in Barbary, the eating of grapes killed several of our Englishmen, who were slaves there, by throwing them into fluxes
and fevers. But I found an excellent use for these grapes, that was to cure or dry them in the sun, and keep them as dry as grapes or raisins are kept; which I thought would be, as inde

"I found grapes upon the tree."

they were, as wholesome as agreeable to eat, when no might be to be had.

I spent all that evening there, and went not back to my tion, which, by the way, was the first night, as I might say lain from home. In the night I took my first contrivance, got up into a tree, where I slept well; and the next morn ceeded upon my discovery, travelling near four miles, as judge by the length of the valley, keeping still due north ridge of hills on the south and north side of me.

At the end of this march I came to an opening,
country seemed to descend to the west, and a little spring of fresh water, which issued out of the side of the hill by me, ran the other way, that is due east; and the country appeared so fresh, so green, so flourishing, everything being in a constant verdure, or flourish of spring, that it looked like a planted garden.

I descended a little on the side of that delicious vale, surveying it with a secret kind of pleasure (though mixed with my other afflicting thoughts)—to think that this was all my own, that I was king and lord of all this country indefeasibly, and had a right of possession; and if I could convey it, I might have it in inheritance, as completely as any lord of a manor in England. I saw here abundance of cocoa trees, orange, and lemon, and citron trees, but all wild, and very few bearing any fruit, at least not then. However, the green limes that I gathered were not only pleasant to eat, but very wholesome; and I mixed their juice afterwards with water, which made it very wholesome, and very cool, and refreshing.

I found now I had business enough to gather and carry home; and I resolved to lay up a store, as well of grapes as limes and lemons, to furnish myself for the wet season, which I knew was approaching.

In order to this, I gathered a great heap of grapes in one place, and a lesser heap in another place, and a great parcel of limes and lemons in another place; and, taking a few of each with me, I travelled homeward, and resolved to come again, and bring a bag or sack, or what I could make to carry the rest home.

Accordingly, having spent three days in this journey, I came home;—so I must now call my tent and my cave. But, before I got thither the grapes were spoiled—the richness of the fruits and the weight of the juice having broken them, and bruised them, they were good for little or nothing; as to the limes, they were good, but I could bring but a few.

The next day, being the 19th, I went back, having made me two small bags to bring home my harvest. But I was surprised when, coming to my heap of grapes, which were so rich and fine when I gathered them, I found them all spread about, trod to pieces, and dragged about, some here, some there, and abundance
eaten and devoured. By this I concluded there were some wild creatures thereabouts which had done this, but what they were I knew not.

However, as I found that there was no laying them up on heaps, and no carrying them away in a sack, but that one way they would be destroyed, and the other way they would be crushed with their own weight, I took another course; for I gathered a large quantity of the grapes, and hung them up upon the out branches of the trees, that they might cure and dry in the sun; and as for the limes and lemons, I carried as many back as I could well stand under.

When I came home from this journey I contemplated with great pleasure the fruitfulness of that valley and the pleasantness of the situation, the security from storms on that side the water, and the wood, and concluded that I had pitched upon a place to fix my abode which was by far the worst part of the country. Upon the whole I began to consider of removing my habitation, and to look out for a place equally safe as where I now was situate, if possible, in that pleasant fruitful part of the island.

This thought ran long in my head, and I was exceeding fond of it for some time, the pleasantness of the place tempting me; but when I came to a nearer view of it, and to consider that I was now by the sea-side, where it was at least possible that something might happen to my advantage, and by the same ill fate that brought me hither might bring some other unhappy wretches to the same place; and though it was scarce probable that any such thing should ever happen, yet to enclose myself among the hills and woods, in the centre of the island, was to anticipate my bondage, and to render such an affair not only improbable but impossible; and that, therefore, I ought not by any means to remove.

However, I was so enamoured of this place, that I spent much of my time there for the whole remaining part of the month of July; and though, upon second thoughts, I resolved as above, not to remove, yet I built me a little kind of a bower, and surrounded it at a distance with a strong fence, being a double hedge, as high as I could reach, well staked, and filled between with brushwood; and here I lay very secure, sometimes two or three nights together,
always going over it with a ladder as before; so that I fancied
now I had my country house and my sea-coast house. And this
work took me up to the beginning of August.

I had but newly finished my fence and begun to enjoy my
labour, but the rains came on, and made me stick close to my
first habitation. For though I had made me a tent like the other,
with a piece of a sail, and spread it very well, yet I had not the
shelter of a hill to keep me from storms, nor a cave behind me to
retreat into when the rains were extraordinary.

About the beginning of August, as I said, I had finished my
bower and began to enjoy myself. The 3rd of August I found
the grapes I had hung up were perfectly dried, and, indeed, were
excellent good raisins of the sun; so I began to take them down
from the trees, and it was very happy that I did so, for the rains
which followed would have spoiled them, and I had lost the best
part of my winter food, for I had above two hundred large bunched
of them. No sooner had I taken them all down, and carried most
of them home to my cave, but it began to rain, and from hence,
which was the 14th of August, it rained more or less every day
till the middle of October; and sometimes so violently that I could
not stir out of my cave for several days.

In this season I was much surprised with the increase of my
family. I had been concerned for the loss of one of my cats,
who ran away from me, or as I thought had been dead, and I
heard no more tale or tidings of her till, to my astonishment, she
came home about the end of August with three kittens! This
was the more strange to me because, though I had killed a wild
cat, as I called it, with my gun, yet I thought it was a quite
different kind from our European cats; yet the young cats were
the same kind of house breed like the old one; and both my cats
being females, I thought it very strange. But from these three
cats I afterwards came to be so pestered with cats that I was
forced to kill them like vermin or wild beasts, and to drive them
from my house as much as possible.

From the 14th of August to the 26th incessant rain, so that I
could not stir, and was now very careful not to be much wet. In
this confinement I began to be straitened for food, but venturing
out twice, I one day killed a goat, and the last day, which was the 26th, found a very large tortoise, which was a treat to me; and my food was regulated thus:—I eat a bunch of raisins for my breakfast, a piece of the goat's flesh or of the turtle for my dinner broiled—for to my great misfortune I had no vessel to boil or stew anything—and two or three of the turtle's eggs for my supper.

"To my astonishment she came home with three kittens!"

During this confinement in my cover by the rain I worked daily two or three hours at enlarging my cave, and by degrees worked it on towards one side till I came to the outside of the hill, and made a door or way out, which came beyond my fence or wall, and so I came in and out this way. But I was not perfectly easy at lying so open; for as I had managed myself before, I was in a perfect enclosure, whereas now I thought I lay exposed and open for anything to come in upon me. And yet I could not perceive that there was any living thing to fear, the biggest creature that I had yet seen upon the island being a goat.

September the 30th. I was now come to the unhappy anni-
versary of my landing. I cast up the notches on my post, and found I had been on shore 365 days. I kept this day as a solemn fast, setting it apart to religious exercise, prostrating myself on the ground with the most serious humiliation, confessing my sins to God, acknowledging his righteous judgments upon me, and praying to him to have mercy on me through Jesus Christ. And having not tasted the least refreshment for twelve hours, even till the going down of the sun, I then eat a biscuit cake and a bunch of grapes, and went to bed, finishing the day as I began it.

I had all this time observed no Sabbath day; for as at first I had no sense of religion upon my mind, I had after sometime omitted to distinguish the weeks by making a longer notch than ordinary for the Sabbath-day, and so did not really know what any of the days were. But now having cast up the days as above, I found I had been there a year, so I divided it into weeks, and set apart every seventh day for a Sabbath; though I found at the end of my account I had lost a day or two in my reckoning.

A little after this my ink began to fail me, and so I contented myself to use it more sparingly, and to write down only the most remarkable events of my life, without continuing a daily memorandum of other things.

The rainy season and the dry season began now to appear regular to me; and I learned to divide them, so as to provide for them accordingly. But I bought all my experience before I had it; and this I am going to relate was one of the most discouraging experiments that I made at all. I have mentioned that I had saved the few ears of barley and rice which I had so surprisingly found springing up, as I thought of themselves, and believe there were about thirty stalks of rice, and about twenty of barley. And now I thought it a proper time to sow it after the rains, the sun being in its southern position going from me.

Accordingly I dug up a piece of ground as well as I could with my wooden spade, and dividing it into two parts, I sowed my grain; but as I was sowing it casually occurred to my thoughts that I would not sow it all at first, because I did not know when was the proper time for it, so I sowed about two-thirds of the seed, leaving about a handful of each.
110

THE TIME FOR SOWING.

It was a great comfort to me afterwards that I did so, for not one grain of that I sowed this time came to anything; for the dry months following, the earth having had no rain after the seed was sown, it had no moisture to assist its growth, and never came up at all till the wet season had come again, and then it grew as if it had been but newly sown.

Finding my first seed did not grow, which I easily imagined was by the drought, I sought for a moister piece of ground to make another trial in; and I dug up a piece of ground near my new bower, and sowed the rest of my seed in February, a little before the vernal equinox; and this having the rainy months of March and April to water it, sprung up very pleasantly, and yielded a very good crop. But having part of the seed left only, and not daring to sow all that I had, I had but a small quantity at last, my whole crop not amounting to above half a peck of each kind.

But by this experiment I was made master of my business, and knew exactly when the proper season was to sow; and that I might expect two seed-times and two harvests every year.

While this corn was growing I made a little discovery, which was of use to me afterwards. As soon as the rains were over and the weather began to settle, which was about the month of November, I made a visit up the country to my bower, where, though I had not been some months, yet I found all things just as I left them. The circle, or double hedge, that I had made was not only firm and entire, but the stakes, which I had cut out of some trees that grew thereabouts, were all shot out and grown with long branches, as much as a willow-tree usually shoots the first year after lopping its head. I could not tell what tree to call it that these stakes were cut from. I was surprised and yet very well pleased to see the young trees grow; and I pruned them, and led them up to grow as much alike as I could; and it is scarce credible how beautiful a figure they grew into in three years. So that, though the hedge made a circle of about twenty-five yards in diameter, yet the trees (for such I might now call them) soon covered it; and it was a complete shade, sufficient to lodge under all the dry season.
DIVISIONS OF THE SEASONS.

This made me resolve to cut some more stakes, and make me a hedge like this in a semicircle round my wall—I mean that of my first dwelling—which I did; and placing the trees or stakes in a double row, at about eight yards distance from my first fence, they grew presently, and were at first a fine cover to my habitation, and afterwards served for a defence also, as I shall observe in its order.

I found now that the seasons of the year might generally be divided, not into summer and winter, as in Europe, but into the rainy seasons and the dry seasons, which were generally thus:—

- Half February, March, Rainy—the sun being then on or near the Equinox.
- Half April, 
- Half April, May, June, July, Dry—the sun being then to the north of the Line.
- Half August, 
- Half August, September, Rainy—the sun being then come back.
- Half October, 
- Half October, November, December, January, Dry—the sun being then to the south of the Line.
- Half February, 

The rainy season sometimes held longer or shorter, as the winds happened to blow, but this was the general observation I made. After I had found, by experience, the ill consequence of being abroad in the rain, I took care to furnish myself with provisions beforehand, that I might not be obliged to go out; and I sat within doors as much as possible during the wet months.

In this time I found much employment (and very suitable also to the time), for I found great occasion of many things which I had no way to furnish myself with but by hard labour and constant application; particularly I tried many ways to make myself a basket, but all the twigs I could get for the purpose proved so brittle that they would do nothing. It proved of excellent advantage to me now, that when I was a boy I used to take great
delight in standing at a basket-maker's in the town where my father lived to see them make their wicker-ware; and being boys usually are, very officious to help, and a great observer in manner how they worked those things, and sometimes lending a hand, I had by this means full knowledge of the method that I wanted nothing but the materials, when it came in

"I employed myself in making baskets."

mind that the twigs of that tree from whence I cut my boughs might possibly be as tough as the sallows, and osiers in England, and I resolved to try.

Accordingly the next day I went to my country called it, and cutting some of the smaller twigs, I found it my purpose as much as I could desire; whereupon next time prepared with a hatchet to cut down a tree. I soon found, for there was great plenty of them. I took to dry within my circle or hedge, and when they
I carried them to my cave, and here during the next season I employed myself in making, as well as I could, a great many baskets, both to carry earth, or to carry or lay up anything as I had occasion; and though I did not finish them very handsomely, yet I made them sufficiently serviceable for my purpose; and thus afterwards I took care never to be without them. And as my wicker-ware decayed I made more; especially I made strong deep baskets to place my corn in instead of sacks, when I should come to have any quantity of it.

Having mastered this difficulty, and employed a world of time about it, I bestirred myself to see if possible how to supply two wants. I had no vessels to hold anything that was liquid except two runlets, which were almost full of rum, and some glass bottles, some of the common size, and others which were case-bottles square, for the holding of water, spirits, &c. I had not so much as a pot to boil anything, except a great kettle, which I saved out of the ship, and which was too big for such use as I designed—namely, to make broth, and stew a bit of meat by itself. The second thing I would fain have had was a tobacco-pipe, but it was impossible to me to make one; however I found a contrivance for that too at last.

I employed myself in planting my second rows of stakes or piles and in this wicker-working, all the summer or dry season, when another business took me up more time than it could be imagined I could spare.

I mentioned before that I had a great mind to see the whole island, and that I had travelled up the brook, and so on to where I built my bower, and where I had an opening quite to the sea on the other side of the island. I now resolved to travel quite across to the sea-shore on that side; so taking my gun, a hatchet, and my dog, and a larger quantity of powder and shot than usual, with two biscuit cakes, and a great bunch of raisins in my pouch for my store, I began my journey. When I had passed the vale where my bower stood as above, I came within view of the sea on the west, and it being a very clear day I fairly descried land, whether an island or a continent I could not tell; but it lay very high, extending from the west to the west-south-west at a very
great distance. By my guess it could not be less than fifteen or twenty leagues off.

I could not tell what part of the world this might be, otherwise than that I knew it must be part of America, and, as I concluded by all my observations, must be near the Spanish dominions; and perhaps was all inhabited by savages, where, if I should have landed, I had been in a worse condition than I was now; and therefore I acquiesced in the dispositions of Providence, which I began now to own and to believe ordered everything for the best; I say I quieted my mind with this, and left afflicting myself with fruitless wishes of being there.

Besides, after some pause upon this affair, I considered that if this land was the Spanish coast, I should certainly, one time or other, see some vessel pass or repass one way or other; but if not, then it was the savage coast between the Spanish country and Brazil, which are indeed the worst of savages, for they are cannibals, or men-eaters, and fail not to murder and devour all the human bodies that fall into their hands.

With these considerations I walked very leisurely forward. I found that side of the island where I now was much pleasanter than mine; the open or savanna fields sweet, adorned with flowers
and grass, and full of very fine woods. I saw abundance of parrots, and fain I would have caught one, if possible, to have kept it to be tame, and taught it to speak to me. I did, after some pains-taking, catch a young parrot, for I knocked it down with a stick, and having recovered it I brought it home; but it was some years before I could make him speak. However, at last I taught him to call me by my name very familiarly. But the accident that followed, though it be a trifle, will be very diverting in its place.

I was exceedingly diverted with this journey. I found in the low grounds hares, as I thought them to be, and foxes; but they differed greatly from all the other kinds I had met with, nor could I satisfy myself to eat them, though I killed several. But I had no need to be venturous, for I had no want of food, and of that which was very good too; especially these three sorts—namely, goats, pigeons, and turtle or tortoise, which, added to my grapes, Leadenhall Market could not have furnished a table better than I in proportion to the company. And though my case was deplorable enough, yet I had great cause for thankfulness, and that I was not driven to any extremities for food, but rather plenty, even to dainties.

I never travelled in this journey above two miles outright in a day, or thereabouts. But I took so many turns and returns to see what discoveries I could make that I came weary enough to the place where I resolved to sit down for all night; and then I either reposed myself in a tree, or surrounded myself with a row of stakes set upright in the ground, either from one tree to another, or so as no wild creature could come at me without waking me.

As soon as I came to the sea-shore I was surprised to see that I had taken up my lot on the worst side of the island; for here, indeed, the shore was covered with innumerable turtles, whereas on the other side I had found but three in a year and a half. Here was also an infinite number of fowls of many kinds; some which I had seen, and some which I had not seen of before—and many of them very good meat—but such as I knew not the names of, except those called penguins.

I could have shot as many as I pleased, but was very sparing of
he adherents of the House of Stuart, and in order to ruin him by publishing an ironical pamphlet under the title of "An Address to the Dissenters," which offended the High Church party that was in power. The House of Commons ordered the pamphlet to be delivered to the common hangman, and a warrant was issued for the arrest of Defoe, with the proclamation of a public whip to bring him to justice.

This proclamation gives us a description of Defoe's appearance—"A middle-sized, spare, ungainly man, with a sallow brown complexion and dark brown hair, a hooked nose, sharp chin, and small mouth." He was soon arrested, and it was determined that he should stand in the pillory. He put up sureties for his good behaviour, was imprisoned in Newgate till all his money was paid, and an inland platform set up on which to the. His hands were secured to a pole, and, standing there to be the object of ridicule, who pelted him with filth. The pillories in London: one in front of the Conduit in Cheapside, and another opposite the churchyard of All Hallows. It made a great mistake in regarding him as the champion of the people, and in a kind of triumphal procession, where the pillories stood. It mounted one of these platforms to be had, the pillory stages were brought to him, and the crowd accompanying him on the penance was over.

On his courage and industry, and among other things,
REACHES HOME AGAIN. 117

which might supply me when my powder and shot should be all spent.

I made a collar to this little creature, and with a string which I made of some rope-yarn, which I always carried about me, I led him along, though with some difficulty, till I came to my bower; and there I enclosed him and left him, for I was very impatient to be at home, from whence I had been absent above a month.

I cannot express what a satisfaction it was to me to come into my old hutch and lie down in my hammock-bed. This little wandering journey, without settled place of abode, had been so unpleasant to me, that my own house, as I called it to myself, was a perfect settlement to me compared to that; and it rendered everything about me so comfortable that I resolved I would never go a great way from it again while it should be my lot to stay on the island.

I repose myself here a week, to rest and regale myself after my long journey; during which most of the time was taken up in the weighty affair of making a cage for my poll, who began now to be a mere domestic, and to be mighty well acquainted with me. Then I began to think of the poor kid which I had penned in within my little circle, and resolved to go and fetch it home or give it some food. Accordingly I went, and found it where I left it; for, indeed, it could not get out, but almost starved for want of food. I went and cut boughs of trees, and branches of such shrubs as I could find, and threw it over; and having fed it, I tied it as I did before, to lead it away. But it was so tame with being hungry that I had no need to have tied it, for it followed me like a dog; and as I continually fed it, the creature became so loving, so gentle, and so fond, that it became from that time one of my domestics also, and would never leave me afterwards.

The rainy season of the autumnal equinox was now come, and I kept the 30th of September in the same solemn manner as before; being the anniversary of my landing on the island, having now been there two years, and no more prospect of being delivered than the first day I came there. I spent the whole day in humble and thankful acknowledgments of the many wonderful mercies which my solitary condition was attended with, and without which
it might have been infinitely more miserable. I gave humble and hearty thanks that God had been pleased to discover to me even that it was possible I might be more happy in this solitary condition than I should have been in a liberty of society and in all the pleasures of the world; that he could fully make up to me the deficiencies of my solitary state, and the want of human society, by his presence, and the communications of his grace to my soul—supporting, comforting, and encouraging me to depend upon his providence here, and hope for his eternal presence hereafter.

It was now that I began sensibly to feel how much more happy this life I now led was, with all its miserable circumstances, than the wicked, cursed, abominable life I led all the past part of my days. And now I changed both my sorrows and my joys: my very desires altered, my affections changed their gusts, and my delights were perfectly new from what they were at my first coming, or indeed for the two years past.

Before, as I walked about, either on my hunting or for viewing the country, the anguish of my soul at my condition would break out upon me on a sudden, and my very heart would die within me to think of the woods, the mountains, the deserts I was in, and how I was a prisoner locked up with the eternal bars and bolts of the ocean, in an uninhabited wilderness, without redemption. In the midst of the greatest composes of my mind, this would break out upon me like a storm, and make me wring my hands and weep like a child. Sometimes it would take me in the middle of my work; and I would immediately sit down and sigh, and look upon the ground for an hour or two together. And this was still worse to me; for if I could burst out into tears or vent myself by words it would go off, and the grief, having exhausted itself, would abate.

But now I began to exercise myself with new thoughts. I daily read the Word of God, and applied all the comforts of it to my present state. One morning, being very sad, I opened the Bible upon these words, "I will never leave thee, nor forsake thee."¹ Immediately it occurred that these words were to me. Why else should they be directed in such a manner, just at the

¹ Hebrews xiii. 5.
moment when I was mourning over my condition as one forsaken of God and man? "Well, then," said I, "if God does not forsake me, of what ill consequence can it be, or what matters it, though the world should all forsake me, seeing on the other hand if I had all the world, and should lose the favour and blessing of God, there would be no comparison in the loss?"

From this moment I began to conclude in my mind that it was possible for me to be more happy in this forsaken, solitary condition, than it was probable I should ever have been in any other particular state in the world; and with this thought I was going to give thanks to God for bringing me to this place. I know not what it was, but something shocked my mind at that thought, and I durst not speak the words. "How canst thou be such a hypocrite," said I, even audibly, "to pretend to be thankful for a condition which, however thou mayst endeavour to be contented with, thou wouldst rather pray heartily to be delivered from?"

So I stopped there. But though I could not say I thanked God for being there, yet I sincerely gave thanks to God for opening my eyes, by whatever afflicting providences, to see the former condition of my life, and to mourn for my wickedness and repent. I never opened the Bible or shut it but my very soul within me blessed God for directing my friend in England, without any order of mine, to pack it up among my goods, and for assisting me afterwards to save it out of the wreck of the ship.

Thus, and in this disposition of mind, I began my third year. And though I have not given the reader the trouble of so particular account of my works this year as the first, yet in general it may be observed that I was very seldom idle, but having regularly divided my time according to the several daily employments that were before me—such as, first, my duty to God and the reading the Scriptures, which I constantly set apart some time for thrice every day; secondly, the going abroad with my gun for food, which generally took me up three hours in every morning when it did not rain; thirdly, the ordering, curing, preserving, and cooking what I had killed or caught for my supply,—these took up great part of the day. Also it is to be considered that the middle of the day, when the sun was in the zenith, the violence of the
heat was too great to stir out, so that about four hours in the evening was all the time I could be supposed to work in; with this exception, that sometimes I changed my hours of hunting and working, and went to work in the morning and abroad with my gun in the afternoon.

To this short time allowed for labour I desire may be added the exceeding laboriousness of my work—the many hours which, for want of tools, want of help, and want of skill, everything I did took up out of my time. For example, I was full two-and-forty days making me a board for a long shelf which I wanted in my cave; whereas two sawyers, with their tools and a saw-pit, would have cut six of them out of the same tree in half a day.

My case was this: It was to be a large tree which was to be cut down, because my board was to be a broad one. This tree I was three days a cutting down, and two more cutting off the boughs, and reducing it to a log or piece of timber. With inexpressible hacking and hewing I reduced both the sides of it into chips till it begun to be light enough to move; then I turned it, and made one side of it smooth and flat as a board from end to end; then, turning that side downward, cut the other side, till I brought the plank to be about three inches thick, and smooth on both sides. Any one may judge the labour of my hands in such a piece of work; but labour and patience carried me through that and many other things. I only observe this in particular, to show the reason why so much of my time went away with so little work—namely, that what might be a little to be done with help and tools, was a vast labour and required a prodigious time to do alone and by hand.

But notwithstanding this, with patience and labour I went through many things; and, indeed, everything that my circumstances made necessary to me to do, as will appear by what follows. I was now—in the months of November and December—expecting my crop of barely and rice. The ground I had manured or dug up for them was not great; for, as I observed, my seed of each was not above the quantity of half a peck, for I had lost one whole crop by sowing in the dry season. But now my crop promised very well, when on a sudden I found I was in danger of...
HIS CROP THREATENED.

losing it all again by enemies of several sorts, which it was scarce possible to keep from it: as, first, the goats, and wild creatures which I called hares, who, tasting the sweetness of the blade, lay in it night and day as soon as it came up, and ate it so close that it could get no time to shoot up into stalk. This I saw no remedy for but by making an enclosure about it with a hedge; which I did with a great deal of toil, and the more because it required speed. However, as my arable land was but small, suited to my crop, I got it totally well fenced in about three weeks' time; and shooting some of the creatures in the day-time, I set my dog to guard it in the night, tying him up to a stake at the gate, where he would stand and bark all night long. So in a little time the enemies forsook the place, and the corn grew very strong and well, and began to ripen apace.

But as the beasts ruined me before while my corn was in the blade, so the birds were as likely to ruin me now when it was in the ear; for going along by the place to see how it throve, I saw my little crop surrounded with fowls of I know not how many sorts, who stood as it were watching till I should be gone. I immediately let fly among them, for I always had my gun with me. I had no sooner shot but there rose up a little cloud of fowls—which I had not seen at all—from among the corn itself.

This touched me sensibly, for I foresaw that in a few days they would devour all my hopes; that I should be starved, and never be able to raise a crop at all: and what to do I could not tell. However, I resolved not to lose my corn, if possible, though I should watch it night and day. In the first place, I went among it to see what damage was already done; and found they had spoiled a good deal of it, but that, as it was yet too green for them, the loss was not so great but that the remainder was like to be a good crop if it could be saved.

I stayed by it to load my gun; and then coming away I could easily see the thieves sitting upon all the trees about me, as if they only waited till I was gone away. And the event proved it to be so; for as I walked off as if I was gone, I was no sooner out of their sight but they dropped down one by one into the corn again. I was so provoked that I could not have patience to stay till more
came on, knowing that every grain that they ate now was, as it might be said, a peck loaf to me in the consequence; but coming up to the hedge I fired again, and killed three of them. This was what I wished for: so I took them up, and served them as we serve notorious thieves in England—namely, hanged them in chains for a terror to others. It is impossible to imagine almost

"There rose up a little cloud of fowls."

that this should have such an effect as it had; for the fowls would not only not come at the corn, but, in short, they forsook all that part of the island, and I could never see a bird near the place as long as my scarecrows hung there.

This I was very glad of, you may be sure; and about the latter end of December, which was our second harvest of the year, I reaped my crop. I was sadly put to it for a scythe or a sickle to cut it down; and all I could do was to make one as well as I could out of one of the broad swords or cutlasses which I saved among the arms out of the ship. However, as my first crop was
had no great difficulty to cut it down. In short, I 
way, for I cut nothing off but the ears, and carried 
great basket which I had made, and so rubbed it out 
ds; and at the end of all my harvesting I found that 
alfeck of seed I had near two bushels of rice and 
shels and a half of barley—that is to say, by my guess, 
measure at that time.
this was a great encouragement to me, and I foresaw 
it would please God to supply me with bread. And 
as perplexed again: for I neither knew how to grind 
of my corn, or, indeed, how to clean it and part it; 
into meal, how to make bread of it; and if how to 
t I knew not how to bake it. These things being 
y desire of having a good quantity of store, and to 
stant supply, I resolved not to taste any of this 
serve it all for seed against the next season; and 
time to employ all my study and hours of working to 
this great work of providing myself with corn and 
be truly said that now I worked for my bread. It is 
derful, and what I believe few people have thought 
—namely, the strange multitude of little things neces-
providing, producing, curing, dressing, making, and 
s one article of bread. I that was reduced to a mere 
are found this to my daily discouragement, and was 
and more sensible of it every hour, even after I had 
handful of seed-corn; which, as I have said, came up 
y, and indeed to a surprise.
ad no plough to turn up the earth, no spade or shovel 
Well, this I conquered by making a wooden spade, as 
before. But this did my work in but a wooden 
though it cost me a great many days to make it, yet 
iron it not only wore out the sooner, but made my 
or, and made it be performed much worse. How-
sore with, and was content to work it out with patience, 
th the badness of the performance. When the corn 
I had no harrow, but was forced to go over it myself,
and drag a great heavy bough of a tree over it, to scratch it, as it may be called, rather than rake or harrow it.

When it was growing and grown, I have observed already, how many things I wanted, to fence it, secure it, mow or reap it, cure and carry it home, thrash, part it from the chaff, and save it. Then I wanted a mill to grind it, sieves to dress it, yeast and salt to make it into bread, and an oven to bake it; and yet all these things I did without, as shall be observed; and yet the corn was an inestimable comfort and advantage to me too. All this, as I said, made everything laborious and tedious to me, but that there was no help for, neither was my time so much loss to me, because, as I had divided it, a certain part of it was every day appointed to these works. And as I resolved to use none of the corn for bread till I had a greater quantity by me, I had the next six months to apply myself wholly by labour and invention to furnish myself with utensils proper for the performing all the operations necessary for the making the corn (when I had it) fit for my use.

But, first, I was to prepare more land, for I had now seed enough to sow above an acre of ground. Before I did this I had a week's work at least to make me a spade; which, when it was done, was but a sorry one indeed, and very heavy, and required double labour to work with it. However, I went through that, and sowed my seed in two large flat pieces of ground as near my house as I could find them to my mind, and fenced them in with a good hedge, the stakes of which were all cut of that wood which I had set before, and knew it would grow; so that in one year's time I knew I should have a quick or living hedge, that would want but little repair. This work was not so little as to take me up less than three months, because great part of that time was of the wet season, when I could not go abroad.

Within doors—that is, when it rained, and I could not go out—I found employment on the following occasions, always observing that all the while I was at work I diverted myself with talking to my parrot, and teaching him to speak; and I quickly learned him to know his own name, and at last to speak it out pretty loud—Poll, which was the first word I ever heard spoken in the
island by any mouth but my own. This, therefore, was not my work, but an assistant to my work; for now, as I said, I had a great employment upon my hands, as follows—namely, I had long studied by some means or other to make myself some earthen vessels, which indeed I wanted sorely, but knew not where to come at them. However, considering the heat of the climate, I did not doubt but if I could find out any such clay, I might botch up some such pot as might, being dried in the sun, be hard enough and strong enough to bear handling, and to hold anything that was dry and required to be kept so. And as this was necessary in the preparing corn, meal, &c., which was the thing I was upon,
I resolved to make some as large as I could, and fit only to stand like jars to hold what should be put into them.

It would make the reader pity me, or rather laugh at me, to tell how many awkward ways I took to raise this paste; what odd, misshapen, ugly things I made; how many of them fell in, and how many fell out, the clay not being stiff enough to bear its own weight; how many cracked by the over-violent heat of the sun, being set out too hastily; and how many fell in pieces with only removing as well before as after they were dried; and, in a word, how, after having laboured hard to find the clay, to dig it, to temper it, to bring it home and work it, I could not make above two large earthen ugly things—I cannot call them jars—in about two months' labour.

However, as the sun baked these two very dry and hard, I lifted them very gently up, and set them down again in two great wicker baskets which I had made on purpose for them, that they might not break; and as between the pot and the basket there was a little room to spare, I stuffed it full of the rice and barley straw. And these two pots being to stand always dry, I thought would hold my dry corn, and perhaps the meal, when the corn was bruised.

Though I miscarried so much in my design for large pots, yet I made several smaller things with better success—such as little round pots, flat dishes, pitchers, and pipkins, and any things my hand turned to; and the heat of the sun baked them strangely hard.

But all this would not answer my end, which was to get an earthen pot to hold what was liquid, and bear the fire, which none of these could do. It happened after some time, making a pretty large fire for cooking my meat, when I went to put it out after I had done with it, I found a broken piece of one of my earthenware vessels in the fire burned as hard as a stone, and red as a tile. I was agreeably surprised to see it, and said to myself that certainly they might be made to burn whole if they would burn broken.

This set me to studying how to order my fire, so as to make it burn me some pots. I had no notion of a kiln, such as the potters
burn in; or of glazing them with lead, though I had some lead to do it with; but I placed three large pipkins and two or three pots in a pile, one upon another, and placed my fire-wood all round it, with a great heap of embers under them. I plied the fire with fresh fuel round the outside and upon the top, till I saw the pots in the inside red hot quite through, and observed that they did not crack at all. When I saw them clear red, I let them stand in that heat about five or six hours, till I found one of them, though it did not crack, did melt or run; for the sand which was mixed with the clay melted by the violence of the heat, and would have run into glass if I had gone on, so I slack'd my fire gradually, till the pots began to abate of the red colour; and watching them all night that I might not let the fire abate too fast, in the morning I had three very good—I will not say handsome—pipkins and two other earthen pots as hard burned as
could be desired, and one of them perfectly glazed with the running of the sand.

After this experiment I need not say that I wanted no sort of earthenware for my use; but I must needs say, as to the shapes of them, they were very indifferent, as any one may suppose, when I had no way of making them but as the children make dirt-pies, or as a woman would make pies that never learned to raise paste.

No joy at a thing of so mean a nature was ever equal to mine when I found I had made an earthen pot that would bear the fire; and I had hardly patience to stay till they were cold before I set one upon the fire again with some water in it to boil me some meat, which it did admirably well. And with a piece of a kid I made some very good broth, though I wanted oatmeal, and several other ingredients requisite to make it so good as I would have had it been.

My next concern was, to get me a stone mortar to stamp or beat some corn in; for as to the mill, there was no thought at arriving to that perfection of art with one pair of hands. To supply this want I was at a great loss; for of all trades in the world, I was as perfectly unqualified for a stone-cutter as for any whatever; neither had I any tools to go about it with. I spent many a day to find out a great stone big enough to cut hollow, and make fit for a mortar, and could find none at all, except what was in the solid rock, and which I had no way to dig or cut out; nor, indeed, were the rocks in the island of hardness sufficient, but were all of a sandy, crumbling stone, which neither would bear the weight of a heavy pestle, or would break the corn without filling it with sand. So after a great deal of time lost in searching for a stone, I gave it over, and resolved to look out for a great block of hard wood, which I found indeed much easier; and getting one as big as I had strength to stir, I rounded it, and formed it in the outside with my axe and hatchet, and then, with the help of fire and infinite labour, made a hollow place in it, as the Indians in Brazil make their canoes. After this I made a great heavy pestle or beater of the wood called the iron-wood, and this I prepared and laid by against I had my next crop of corn, when I
MILLING AND BAKING.

proposed to myself to grind, or rather pound, my corn into meal to make my bread.

My next difficulty was to make a sieve, or search, to dress my meal, and to part it from the bran and the husk, without which I did not see it possible I could have any bread. This was a most difficult thing so much as but to think on; for to be sure I had nothing like the necessary thing to make it—I mean fine thin canvas, or stuff to search the meal through. And here I was at a full stop for many months; nor did I really know what to do. Linen I had none left, but what was mere rags. I had goats’ hair, but neither knew I how to weave it or spin it; and had I known how, there were no tools to work it with. All the remedy that I found for this was, that at last I did remember I had among the seamen’s clothes which were saved out of the ship some neckcloths of calico or muslin; and with some pieces of these I made three small sieves, but proper enough for the work. And thus I made shift for some years. How I did afterwards I shall show in its place.

The baking part was the next thing to be considered, and how I should make bread when I came to have corn; for, first, I had no yeast. As to that part, as there was no supplying the want, so I did not concern myself much about it; but for an oven I was indeed in great pain. At length I found out an experiment for that also, which was this—I made some earthen vessels very broad, but not deep; that is to say, about two foot diameter, and not above nine inches deep, these I burned in the fire, as I had done the other, and laid them by; and when I wanted to bake, I made a great fire upon my hearth, which I had paved with some square tiles of my own making and burning also—but I should not call them square.

When the firewood was burned pretty much into embers, or live coals, I drew them forward upon this hearth, so as to cover it all over, and there I let them lie till the hearth was very hot; then sweeping away all the embers, I set down my loaf or loaves, and whelmimg down the earthen pot upon them, drew the embers all round the outside of the pot, to keep in and add to the heat; and thus, as well as in the best oven in the world, I baked my
barley loafs, and became in little time a mere pastry-cook into the bargain; for I made myself several cakes of the rice, and puddings. Indeed I made no pies, neither had I anything to put into them supposing I had, except the flesh either of fowls or goats.

It need not be wondered at if all these things took me up most part of the third year of my abode here; for it is to be observed that, in the intervals of these things, I had my new harvest and husbandry to manage; for I reaped my corn in its season, and carried it home as well as I could, and laid it up in the ear in my large baskets till I had time to rub it out, for I had no floor to thrash it on, or instrument to thrash it with.

And now indeed my stock of corn increasing, I really wanted to build my barns bigger. I wanted a place to lay it up in, for the increase of the corn now yielded me so much that I had of the barley about twenty bushels, and of the rice as much or more; insomuch that now I resolved to begin to use it freely, for my bread had been quite gone a great while. Also I resolved to see what quantity would be sufficient for me a whole year, and to sow but once a year.

Upon the whole, I found that the forty bushels of barley and rice was much more than I could consume in a year, so I resolved to sow just the same quantity every year that I sowed the last, in hopes that such a quantity would fully provide me with bread, &c.

All the while these things were doing you may be sure my thoughts ran many times upon the prospect of land which I had seen from the other side of the island; and I was not without secret wishes that I were on shore there, fancying the seeing the mainland, and in an inhabited country I might find some way or other to convey myself farther, and perhaps at last find some means of escape.

But all this while I made no allowance for the dangers of such a condition, and how I might fall into the hands of savages, and perhaps such as I might have reason to think far worse than the lions and tigers of Africa. That if I once came into their power, I should run a hazard more than a thousand to one of being killed, and perhaps of being eaten; for I had heard that the people of the
Caribbean coasts were cannibals, or man-eaters; and I knew by the latitude that I could not be far off from that shore: that suppose they were not cannibals, yet that they might kill me, as many Europeans who had fallen into their hands had been served, even when they had been ten or twenty together, much more I that was but one, and could make little or no defence; all these things, I say, which I ought to have considered well of, and did cast up in my thoughts afterwards, yet took up none of my apprehensions at first; but my head ran mightily upon the thought of getting over to the shore.

Now I wished for my boy Xury and the long-boat with the shoulder-of-mutton sail, with which I sailed above a thousand miles on the coast of Africa; but this was in vain. Then I thought I would go and look at our ship’s boat, which, as I have said, was blown up upon the shore a great way in the storm when we were first cast away. She lay almost where she did at first, but not quite; and was turned by the force of the waves and the winds almost bottom upward against a high ridge of beachy rough sand, but no water about her as before.
If I had had hands to have refitted her, and to have launched her into the water, the boat would have done well enough, and I might have gone back into the Brazils with her easily enough; but I might have foreseen that I could no more turn her and set her upright upon her bottom than I could remove the island. However, I went to the woods and cut levers and rollers, and brought them to the boat, resolved to try what I could do, suggesting to myself that if I could but turn her down, I might easily repair the damage she had received, and she would be a very good boat, and I might go to sea in her very easily.

I spared no pains indeed in this piece of fruitless toil, and spent, I think, three or four weeks about it. At last, finding it impossible to heave it up with my little strength, I fell to digging away the sand to undermine it, and so to make it fall down, setting pieces of wood to thrust and guide it right in the fall.

But when I had done this I was unable to stir it up again or to get under it, much less to move it forward towards the water, so I was forced to give it over; and yet, though I gave over the hopes of the boat, my desire to venture over for the main increased rather than decreased as the means for it seemed impossible.

This at length put me upon thinking whether it was not possible to make myself a canoe, or perigagua,¹ such as the natives of those climates make, even without tools, or, as I might say, without hands—namely, of the trunk of a great tree. This I not only thought possible but easy, and pleased myself extremely with the thoughts of making it, and with my having much more convenience for it than any of the negroes or Indians; but not at all considering the particular inconveniences which I lay under more than the Indians did—namely, want of hands to move it, when it was made, into the water, a difficulty much harder for me to surmount than all the consequences of want of tools could be to them. For what was it to me, that when I had chosen a vast tree in the woods, I might with much trouble cut it down, if after I might be able with my tools to hew and dub the outside into the proper shape of a boat, and burn or cut out the inside to make it hollow, so to make a boat of it,—if, after all this, I must leave it just

¹ Or, pirogue.
there where I found it, and was not able to launch it into the water.

One would have thought I could not have had the least reflection upon my mind of my circumstance, while I was making this boat, but I should have immediately thought how I should get it into the sea. But my thoughts were so intent upon my voyage over the sea in it, that I never once considered how I should get it off of the land; and it was really in its own nature more easy for me to guide it over forty-five miles of sea, than about forty-five fathom of land, where it lay, to set it afloat in the water.

I went to work upon this boat the most like a fool that ever man did who had any of his senses awake. I pleased myself with the design, without determining whether I was ever able to undertake it; not but that the difficulty of launching my boat came often into my head, but I put a stop to my own inquiries into it, by this foolish answer which I gave myself, "Let's first make it; I'll warrant I'll find some way or other to get it along when 'tis done."

This was a most preposterous method; but the eagerness of my fancy prevailed, and to work I went. I felled a cedar tree—
question much whether Solomon ever had such a one for the building of the temple at Jerusalem! It was five feet ten inches diameter at the lower part next the stump, and four feet eleven inches diameter at the end of twenty-two feet, after which it lessened for a while, and then parted into branches. It was not without infinite labour that I felled this tree. I was twenty days hacking and hewing at it at the bottom. I was fourteen more getting the branches and limbs and the vast spreading head of it cut off, which I hacked and hewed through with axe and hatchet, and inexpressible labour. After this it cost me a month to shape it and dub it to a proportion, and to something like the bottom of a boat, that it might swim upright as it ought to do. It cost me near three months more to clear the inside, and work it out so as to make an exact boat of it. This I did indeed without fire, by mere mallet and chisel, and by the dint of hard labour, till I had brought it to be a very handsome periagua, and big enough to have carried six-and-twenty men, and consequently big enough to have carried me and all my cargo.

When I had gone through this work I was extremely delighted with it. The boat was really much bigger than I ever saw a canoe or periagua, that was made of one tree, in my life. Many a weary stroke it had cost, you may be sure, and there remained nothing but to get it into the water; and had I gotten it into the water, I make no question but I should have begun the maddest voyage, and the most unlikely to be performed, that ever was undertaken.

But all my devices to get it into the water failed me, though they cost me infinite labour too. It lay about one hundred yards from the water, and not more; but the first inconvenience was, it was up-hill towards the creek. Well, to take away this discouragement, I resolved to dig into the surface of the earth, and so make a declivity. This I began, and it cost me a prodigious deal of pains;—but who grudge pains that have their deliverance in view? But when this was worked through, and this difficulty managed, it was still much at one; for I could no more stir the canoe than I could the other boat.

Then I measured the distance of ground, and resolved to cut a dock or canal to bring the water up to the canoe, seeing I could
A FAILURE.

not bring the canoe down to the water. Well, I began this work, and when I began to enter into it, and calculate how deep it was to be dug, how broad, how the stuff to be thrown out, I found, that by the number of hands I had, being none but my own, it must have been ten or twelve years before I should have gone through with it; for the shore lay high, so that at the upper end it must have been at least twenty foot deep. So at length, though with great reluctance, I gave this attempt over also.

This grieved me heartily; and now I saw, though too late, the folly of beginning a work before we count the cost, and before we judge rightly of our own strength to go through with it.

In the middle of this work I finished my fourth year in this place, and kept my anniversary with the same devotion, and with as much comfort as ever before; for by a constant study and serious application of the Word of God, and by the assistance of his grace, I gained a different knowledge from what I had before. I entertained different notions of things. I looked now upon the world as a thing remote, which I had nothing to do with, no expectation from, and indeed no desires about: in a word, I had nothing indeed to do with it, nor was ever like to have. So I thought it looked as we may perhaps look upon it hereafter—namely, as a place I had lived in, but was come out of it; and well might I say, as Father Abraham to Dives, "Between me and thee is a great gulf fixed."

In the first place, I was removed from all the wickedness of the world here; I had neither the lust of the flesh, the lust of the eye, nor the pride of life. I had nothing to covet, for I had all that I was now capable of enjoying. I was lord of the whole manor; or, if I pleased, I might call myself king or emperor over the whole country which I had possession of. There were no rivals; I had no competitor, none to dispute sovereignty or command with me. I might have raised ship-loadings of corn, but I had no use for it; so I let as little grow as I thought enough for my occasion. I had tortoise or turtles enough; but now and then one was as much as I could put to any use. I had timber enough to have built a fleet of ships. I had grapes enough to have made wine, or to have cured into raisins, to have loaded that fleet when they had been built.
But all I could make use of was all that was valuable. I had enough to eat and to supply my wants, and what was all the rest to me? If I killed more flesh than I could eat, the dog must eat it, or the vermin. If I sowed more corn than I could eat, it must be spoiled. The trees that I cut down were lying to rot on the ground; I could make no more use of them than for fuel, and that I had no occasion for but to dress my food.

In a word, the nature and experience of things dictated to me, upon just reflection, that all the good things of this world are no further good to us than they are for our use; and that whatever we may heap up indeed to give others, we enjoy just as much as we can use, and no more. The most covetous gripping miser in the world would have been cured of the vice of covetousness if he had been in my case, for I possessed infinitely more than I knew what to do with. I had no room for desire, except it was of things which I had not, and they were but trifles, though indeed of great use to me. I had, as I hinted before, a parcel of money, as well gold as silver, about thirty-six pounds sterling. Alas! there the nasty, sorry, useless stuff lay; I had no manner of business for it; and I often thought with myself that I would have given a handful of it for a gross of tobacco pipes, or for a hand-mill to grind my corn; nay, I would have given it all for sixpenny-worth of turnip.
and carrot seed out of England, or for a handful of pease and beans
and a bottle of ink. As it was, I had not the least advantage by
it or benefit from it, but there it lay in a drawer, and grew mouldy
with the damp of the cave in the wet season; and if I had had the
drawer full of diamonds it had been the same case, and they had
been of no manner of value to me, because of no use.

I had now brought my state of life to be much easier in itself
than it was at first, and much easier to my mind, as well as to my
body. I frequently sat down to my meat with thankfulness, and
admired the hand of God’s providence, which had thus spread my
table in the wilderness. I learned to look more upon the bright
side of my condition and less upon the dark side, and to consider
what I enjoyed rather than what I wanted; and this gave me
sometimes such secret comforts that I cannot express them, and
which I take notice of here to put those discontented people in
mind of it who cannot enjoy comfortably what God has given them
because they see and covet something that he has not given them.
All our discontents about what we want appeared to me to spring
from the want of thankfulness for what we have.

Another reflection was of great use to me, and doubtless would
be so to any one that should fall into such distress as mine was,
and this was, to compare my present condition with what I at first
expected it should be, nay, with what it would certainly have been
if the good providence of God had not wonderfully ordered the ship
to be cast up nearer to the shore, where I not only could come at
her, but could bring what I got out of her to the shore, for my
relief and comfort; without which I had wanted for tools to
work, weapons for defence, or gunpowder and shot for getting
my food.

I spent whole hours, I may say whole days, in representing to
myself in the most lively colours how I must have acted if I had
got nothing out of the ship; how I could not have so much as got
any food except fish and turtles, and that as it was long before I
found any of them, I must have perished first: that I should have
lived, if I had not perished, like a mere savage; that if I had
killed a goat or a fowl by any contrivance, I had no way to flay or
open them, or part the flesh from the skin and the bowels, or to
cut it up, but must gnaw it with my teeth, and pull it with my claws like a beast.

These reflections made me very sensible of the goodness of Providence to me, and very thankful for my present condition, with all its hardships and misfortunes. And this part also I cannot but recommend to the reflection of those who are apt in their misery to say, "Is any affliction like mine?" Let them consider how much worse the cases of some people are, and their case have been if Providence had thought fit.

I had another reflection which assisted me also to comfort my mind with hopes, and this was, comparing my present condition with what I had deserved, and had therefore reason to expect from the hand of Providence. I had lived a dreadful life, perfectly destitute of the knowledge and fear of God. I had been well instructed by father and mother, neither had they been wanting to me, in their early endeavours, to infuse a religious awe of God into my mind, a sense of my duty, and of what the nature and end of my being required of me. But, alas! falling early into the seafaring life, which of all the lives is the most destitute of the fear of God, though his terrors are always before them; I say, falling early into the seafaring life, and into seafaring company, all that little sense of religion which I had entertained was laughed out of me by my messmates, by a hardened despising of dangers and the views of death, which grew habitual to me, by my long absence from all manner of opportunities to converse with anything but what was like myself, or to hear anything that was good, or tended towards it.

So void was I of everything that was good, or of the least sense of what I was, or was to be, that in the greatest deliverances I enjoyed—such as my escape from Sallee, my being taken up by the Portuguese master of the ship, my being planted so well in the Brazils, my receiving the cargo from England, and the like—I never had once the word "Thank God" so much as on my mind, or in my mouth; nor in the greatest distress had I so much as a thought to pray to him, or so much as to say, "Lord, have mercy upon me;" no, nor to mention the name of God, unless it was to swear by and blaspheme it.
RESIGNATION TO GOD.

I had terrible reflections upon my mind for many months, as I have already observed, on the account of my wicked and hardened life past; and when I looked about me, and considered what particular providences had attended me since my coming into this place, and how God had dealt bountifully with me—had not only punished me less than my iniquity had deserved, but had so plenteously provided for me; this gave me great hopes that my repentance was accepted, and that God had yet mercy in store for me.

With these reflections I worked my mind up not only to resignation to the will of God in the present disposition of my circumstances, but even to a sincere thankfulness for my condition; and that I, who was yet a living man, ought not to complain, seeing I had not the due punishment of my sins; that I enjoyed so many mercies which I had no reason to have expected in that place; that I ought never more to repine at my condition, but to rejoice, and to give daily thanks for that daily bread which nothing but a crowd of wonders could have brought: that I ought to consider I had been fed even by miracle, even as great as that of feeding Elijah by ravens; nay, by a long series of miracles: and that I could hardly have named a place in the uninhabitable part of the world where I could have been cast more to my advantage—a place where, as I had no society, which was my affliction on one hand, so I found no ravenous beasts, no furious wolves or tigers, to threaten my life, no venomous creatures or poisonous, which I might feed on to my hurt, no savages to murder and devour me.

In a word, as my life was a life of sorrow one way, so it was a life of mercy another; and I wanted nothing to make it a life of comfort but to be able to make my sense of God's goodness to me and care over me in this condition be my daily consolation. And after I did make a just improvement of these things, I went away and was no more sad.

I had now been here so long that many things which I brought on shore for my help were either quite gone or very much wasted and near spent.

My ink, as I observed, had been gone for some time, all but a very little, which I eked out with water a little and a little till it was so pale it scarce left any appearance of black upon the paper.
As long as it lasted I made use of it to minute down the days of the month on which any remarkable thing happened to me, and first by casting up times past. I remember that there was a strange concurrence of days in the various providences which befell me, and which, if I had been superstitiously inclined to observe days as fatal or fortunate, I might have had reason to have looked upon with a great deal of curiosity.

First, I had observed that the same day that I broke away from my father and my friends, and ran away to Hull, in order to go to sea, the same day afterwards I was taken by the Sallee man-of-war, and made a slave.

The same day of the year that I escaped out of the wreck of that ship in Yarmouth Roads, that same day-year afterwards I made my escape from Sallee in the boat.

The same day of the year I was born on—namely the 30th of September—the same day I had my life so miraculously saved twenty-six years after, when I was cast on shore on this island, so that my wicked life and my solitary life began both on a day.

The next thing to my ink's being wasted was that of my bread—I mean the biscuit which I brought out of the ship. This I had husbanded to the last degree, allowing myself but one cake of bread a day for above a year, and yet I was quite without bread for near a year before I got any corn of my own; and great reason I had to be thankful that I had any at all, the getting it being, as has been already observed, next to miraculous.

My clothes began to decay too mightily. As to linen, I had had none a good while, except some checkered shirts which I found in the chests of the other seamen, and which I carefully preserved, because many times I could bear no other clothes on but a shirt: and it was a very great help to me that I had among all the men's clothes of the ship almost three dozen of shirts. There were also several thick watch-coats of the seamen's, which were left indeed, but they were too hot to wear. And though it is true that the weather was so violently hot that there was no need of clothes, yet I could not go quite naked: no, though I had been inclined to it, which I was not, nor could not abide the thoughts of it, though I was all alone.
CRUSOE'S CLOTHING.

The reason why I could not go quite naked was, I could not bear the heat of the sun so well when quite naked as with some clothes on; nay, the very heat frequently blistered my skin, whereas, with a shirt on, the air itself made some motion, and whistling under that shirt, was twofold cooler than without it. No more could I ever bring myself to go out in the heat of the sun without a cap or a hat, the heat of the sun beating with such violence as it does in that place would give me the headache presently, by darting so directly on my head without a cap or hat on, so that I could not bear it, whereas, if I put on my hat, it would presently go away.

Upon those views I began to consider about putting the few rags I had, which I called clothes, into some order. I had worn out all the waistcoats I had, and my business was now to try if I could not make jackets out of the great watch-coats which I had by me, and with such other materials as I had; so I set to work a-tailoring, or rather indeed a-botching, for I made most piteous work of it. However I made shift to make two or three new waistcoats, which I hoped would serve me a great while. As for breeches or drawers, I made but a very sorry shift indeed till afterward.

I have mentioned that I saved the skins of all the creatures that I killed—I mean four-footed ones—and I had hung them up stretched out with sticks in the sun, by which means some of them were so dry and hard that they were fit for little, but others it seemed were very useful. The first thing I made of these was a great cap for my head, with the hair on the outside to shoot off the rain; and this I performed so well, that after this I made me a suit of clothes wholly of these skins—that is to say, a waistcoat, and breeches open at knees, and both loose, for they were rather wanting to keep me cool than to keep me warm. I must not omit to acknowledge that they were wretchedly made; for if I was a bad carpenter, I was a worse tailor. However, they were such as I made very good shift with. And when I was abroad, if it happened to rain, the hair of my waistcoat and cap being outermost I was kept very dry.

After this I spent a great deal of time and pains to make me
an umbrella. I was indeed in great want of one, and had a great mind to make one. I had seen them made in the Brazils, where they are very useful in the great heats which are there; and I felt the heats every jot as great here, and greater too, being nearer the equinox. Besides, as I was obliged to be much abroad, it was a most useful thing to me, as well for the rains as the heats. I took a world of pains at it, and was a great while before I could make anything likely to hold; nay, after I thought I had hit the way, I spoiled two or three before I made one to my mind, but at last I made one that answered indifferently well. The main difficulty I found was to make it to let down. I could make it to spread, but if it did not let down too and draw in, it was not portable for me any way but just over my head, which would not do. How-
ever, at last, as I said, I made one to answer, and covered it with skins, the hair upwards, so that it cast off the rains like a pent-house, and kept off the sun so effectually that I could walk out in the hottest of the weather with greater advantage than I could before in the coolest; and when I had no need of it, could close it and carry it under my arm.

Thus I lived mighty comfortably, my mind being entirely composed by resigning to the will of God, and throwing myself wholly upon the disposal of his providence. This made my life better than sociable; for when I began to regret the want of conversation I would ask myself whether thus conversing mutually with my own thoughts, and, as I hope I may say, with even God himself by ejaculations, was not better than the utmost enjoyment of human society in the world.

I cannot say that after this, for five years, any extraordinary thing happened to me, but I lived on in the same course, in the same posture and place, just as before. The chief things I was employed in, besides my yearly labour of planting my barley and rice and curing my raisins, of both which I always kept up just enough to have sufficient stock of one year's provisions beforehand; I say, besides this yearly labour and my daily labour of going out with my gun, I had one labour to make me a canoe, which at last I finished; so that, by digging a canal to it of six feet wide and four feet deep, I brought it into the creek, almost half a mile. As for the first, which was so vastly big, as I made it without considering beforehand, as I ought to do, how I should be able to launch it, so never being able to bring it to the water, or bring the water to it, I was obliged to let it lie where it was, as a memorandum to teach me to be wiser next time. Indeed, the next time, though I could not get a tree proper for it, and in a place where I could not get the water to it, at any less distance than as I have said, near half a mile; yet, as I saw it was practicable at last, I never gave it over; and though I was near two years about it, yet I never grudged my labour, in hopes of having a boat to go off to sea at last.

However, though my little periagua was finished, yet the size of it was not at all answerable to the design which I had in view
when I made the first—I mean, of venturing over to the terra firma, where it was above forty miles broad. Accordingly, the smallness of my boat assisted to put an end to that design, and now I thought no more of it. But as I had a boat, my next design was to make a tour round the island; for as I had been on the other side in one place, crossing, as I have already described it, over the land, so the discoveries I made in that little journey made me very eager to see other parts of the coast; and now I had a boat, I thought of nothing but sailing round the island.

For this purpose, that I might do everything with discretion and consideration, I fitted up a little mast to my boat, and made a sail to it out of some of the pieces of the ship's sail, which lay in store, and of which I had a great stock by me.

Having fitted my mast and sail, and tried the boat, I found she would sail very well. Then I made little lockers, or boxes, at either end of my boat, to put provisions, necessaries, and ammunition, &c., into, to be kept dry either from rain or the spray of the sea; and a little long hollow place I cut in the inside of the boat, where I could lay my gun, making a flap to hang down over it to keep it dry.

I fixed my umbrella also in a step at the stern, like a mast, to stand over my head, and keep the heat of the sun off me like an awning; and thus I every now and then took a little voyage upon the sea, but never went far out, not far from the little creek. But at last, being eager to view the circumference of my little kingdom, I resolved upon my tour, and accordingly I victualled my ship for the voyage, putting in two dozen of my loaves (cakes I should rather call them) of barley bread, an earthen pot full of parched rice—a food I ate a great deal of—a little bottle of rum, half a goat, and powder and shot for killing more, and two large watch-coats of those which, as I mentioned before, I had saved out of the seamen's chests: these I took, one to lie upon, and the other to cover me in the night.

It was the 6th of November, in the sixth year of my reign, or my captivity, which you please, that I set out on this voyage, and I found it much longer than I expected. For though the island
AN OBSTACLE.

itself was not very large, yet, when I came to the east side of it, I found a great ledge of rocks lie out above two leagues into the sea, some above water, some under it; and beyond that a shoal of sand, lying dry half a league more. So that I was obliged to go a great way out to sea to double the point.

When first I discovered them I was going to give over my enterprise and come back again, not knowing how far it might oblige me to go out to sea; and above all, doubting how I should get back again; so I came to an anchor—for I had made me a kind of an anchor with a piece of a broken grapling, which I got out of the ship.

Having secured my boat, I took my gun and went on shore, climbing up upon a hill which seemed to overlook that point, where I saw the full extent of it, and resolved to venture.
A DANGEROUS CURRENT.

In my viewing the sea from that hill where I stood, I perceived a strong, and indeed a most furious current, which ran to the east, and even came close to the point. And I took the more notice of it, because I saw there might be some danger that when I came into it I might be carried out to sea by the strength of it, and not be able to make the island again. And, indeed, had I not gotten first up upon this hill, I believe it would have been so; for there was the same current on the other side the island, only that it set off at a farther distance. And I saw there was a strong eddy under the shore; so I had nothing to do but to get in out of the first current, and I should presently be in an eddy.

I lay here, however, two days, because the wind blowing pretty fresh at east-south-east, and that being just contrary to the said current, made a great breach of the sea upon the point; so that it was not safe for me to keep too close to the shore for the breach, nor to go too far off because of the stream.

The third day, in the morning, the wind having abated over-night, the sea was calm, and I ventured. But I am a warning piece again to all rash and ignorant pilots; for no sooner was I come to the point, when even I was not my boat's length from the shore, but I found myself in a great depth of water, and a current like the sluice of a mill. It carried my boat along with it with such violence that all I could do could not keep her so much as on the edge of it; but I found it hurried me farther and farther out from the eddy, which was on my left hand. There was no wind stirring to help me; and all I could do with my paddlers signified nothing. And now I began to give myself over for lost; for as the current was on both sides the island, I knew in a few leagues distance they must join again, and then I was irrecoverably gone. Nor did I see any possibility of avoiding it; so that I had no prospect before me but of perishing—not by the sea, for that was calm enough, but of starving for hunger. I had, indeed, found a tortoise on the shore as big almost as I could lift, and had tossed it into the boat; and I had a great jar of fresh water—that is to say, one of my earthen pots; but what was all this to being driven into the vast ocean, where, to be sure, there was no shore, no mainland or island for a thousand leagues at least!
CRUSOE'S DESPAIR.

And now I saw how easy it was for the providence of God to make the most miserable condition mankind could be in, worse. Now I looked back upon my desolate solitary island as the most pleasant place in the world, and all the happiness my heart could wish for was to be but there again. I stretched out my hands to it with eager wishes. "O happy desert," said I, "I shall never see thee more! O miserable creature," said I, "whither am I going?" Then I reproached myself with my unthankful temper, and how I had repined at my solitary condition; and now what would I give to be on shore there again! Thus we never see the true state of our condition, till it is illustrated to us by its contraries; nor know how to value what we enjoy, but by the want of it. It is scarce possible to imagine the consternation I was now in, being driven from my beloved island (for so it appeared to me now to be) into the wide ocean, almost two leagues, and in the utmost despair of ever recovering it again. However, I worked hard, till indeed my strength was almost exhausted, and kept my boat as much to the northward—that is, towards the side of the
current which the eddy lay on—as possibly I could; when about noon, as the sun passed the meridian, I thought I felt a little breeze of wind in my face, springing up from the south-south-east. This cheered my heart a little, and especially when in about half an hour more it blew a pretty small gentle gale. By this time I was gotten at a frightful distance from the island, and had the least cloud or hazy weather intervened, I had been undone another way too; for I had no compass on board, and should never have known how to have steered towards the island, if I had but once lost sight of it. But the weather continuing clear, I applied myself to get up my mast again, and spread my sail, standing away to the north as much as possible, to get out of the current.

Just as I had set my mast and sail, and the boat began to stretch away, I saw even by the clearness of the water some alteration of the current was near; for where the current was so strong, the water was foul; but perceiving the water clear, I found the current abate, and presently I found to the east, at about half a mile, a breach of the sea upon some rocks. These rocks, I found, caused the current to part again, and as the main stress of it ran away more southerly, leaving the rocks to the north-east, so the other returned by the repulse of the rocks, and made a strong eddy, which ran back again to the north-west, with a very strong stream.

They who know what it is to have a reprieve brought to them upon the ladder, or to be rescued from thieves just going to murder them, or who have been in such like extremities, may guess what my present surprise of joy was, and how gladly I put my boat into the stream of this eddy, and the wind also freshened how gladly I spread my sail to it, running cheerfully before wind, and with a strong tide or eddy under foot.

This eddy carried me about a league in my way back directly towards the island, but about two leagues more northward than the current which carried me away at first that when I came near the island, I found myself open northern shore of it—that is to say, the other end of the opposite to that which I went out from.
REACHES THE ISLAND.

When I had made something more than a league of way by the help of this current or eddy, I found it was spent, and served me no farther. However, I found that being between the two great currents, namely, that on the south side, which had hurried me away, and that on the north, which lay about a league on the other side: I say, between these two, in the wake of the island, I found the water at least still and running no way; and having still a breeze of wind fair for me, I kept on steering directly for the island, though not making such fresh way as I did before.

About four o'clock in the evening, being then within about a league of the island, I found the point of the rocks which occa- sioned this disaster stretching out, as is described before, to the southward, and casting off the current more southwardly had of course made another eddy to the north; and this I found very strong, but not directly setting the way my course lay, which was due west, but almost full north. However, having a fresh gale, I stretched across this eddy slanting north-west, and in about an hour came within about a mile of the shore, where, it being smooth water, I soon got to land.

When I was on shore, I fell on my knees and gave God thanks for my deliverance, resolving to lay aside all thoughts of my deliverance by my boat; and refreshing myself with such things as I had, I brought my boat close to the shore in a little cove that I had spied under some trees, and laid me down to sleep, being quite spent with the labour and fatigue of the voyage.

I was now at a great loss which way to get home with my boat. I had run so much hazard, and knew too much the case, to think of attempting it by the way I went out; and what might be at the other side (I mean the west side) I knew not, nor had I any mind to run any more ventures; so I only resolved in the morning to make my way westward along the shore, and to see if there was no creek where I might lay up my frigate in safety, so as to have her again if I wanted her. In about three mile, or thereabout, coasting the shore, I came to a very good inlet or bay about a mile over, which narrowed till it came to a very little rivulet or brook, where I found a very convenient harbour for my boat, and where she lay as if she had been in a little dock made on purpose.
for her. Here I put in, and having stowed my boat very safe, I went on shore to look about me and see where I was.

I soon found I had but a little passed by the place where I had been before, when I travelled on foot to that shore; so taking nothing out of my boat but my gun and my umbrella, for it was exceeding hot, I began my march. The way was comfortable enough after such a voyage as I had been upon, and I reached my old bower in the evening, where I found everything standing as I left it; for I always kept it in good order, being, as I said before, my country house.

I got over the fence, and laid me down in the shade to rest my limbs, for I was very weary, and fell asleep. But judge you, if you can, that read my story, what a surprise I must be in, when I was waked out of my sleep by a voice calling me by my name several times, “Robin, Robin, Robin Crusoe; poor Robin Crusoe! Where are you, Robin Crusoe? Where are you? Where have you been?”

I was so dead asleep at first, being fatigued with rowing, or paddling, as it is called, the first part of the day, and with walking the latter part, that I did not wake thoroughly; but dozing between sleeping and waking, thought I dreamed that somebody spoke to me. But as the voice continued to repeat, “Robin Crusoe, Robin Crusoe,” at last I began to wake more perfectly,
and was at first dreadfully frightened, and started up in the utmost consternation. But no sooner were my eyes open, but I saw my Poll sitting on the top of the hedge, and immediately knew that it was he that spoke to me; for just in such bemoaning language I had used to talk to him, and teach him; and he had learned it so perfectly, that he would sit upon my finger, and lay his bill close to my face, and cry, "Poor Robin Crusoe, where are you! Where have you been? How come you here?" and such things as I had taught him.

However, even though I knew it was the parrot, and that indeed it could be nobody else, it was a good while before I could compose myself: first, I was amazed how the creature got thither, and then how he should just keep about the place, and nowhere else. But as I was well satisfied it could be nobody but honest Poll, I got it over; and holding out my hand, and calling him by his name Poll, the sociable creature came to me, and sat upon my thumb, as he used to do, and continued talking to me, "Poor Robin Crusoe," and "How did I come here?" and "Where had I been?" just as if he had been overjoyed to see me again; and so I carried him home along with me.

I had now had enough of rambling to sea for some time, and had enough to do for many days to sit still and reflect upon the danger I had been in. I would have been very glad to have had my boat again on my side of the island; but I knew not how it was practicable to get it about. As to the east side of the island, which I had gone round, I knew well enough there was no venturing that way; my very heart would shrink, and my very blood run chill but to think of it. And as to the other side of the island, I did not know how it might be there; but supposing the current ran with the same force against the shore at the east as it passed by it on the other, I might run the same risk of being driven down the stream, and carried by the island, as I had been before of being carried away from it; so with these thoughts I contented myself to be without any boat, though it had been the product of so many months' labour to make it, and of so many more to get it unto the sea.

In this government of my temper I remained near a year—lived
a very sedate, retired life, as you may well suppose; and my thoughts being very much composed as to my condition, and fully comforted in resigning myself to the dispositions of Providence, I thought I lived really very happily in all things, except that of society.

I improved myself in this time in all the mechanic exercises which my necessities put me upon applying myself to, and I believe could, upon occasion, make a very good carpenter, especially considering how few tools I had.

Besides this, I arrived at an unexpected perfection in my earthenware, and contrived well enough to make them with a wheel, which I found infinitely easier and better; because I made things round and shapesable, which before were filthy things indeed to look on. But I think I was never more vain of my own performance, or more joyful for anything I found out, than for my being able to make a tobacco-pipe. And though it was a very ugly clumsy thing when it was done, and only burned red like other earthenware, yet, as it was hard and firm, and would draw the smoke, I was exceedingly comforted with it; for I had been always used to smoke, and there were pipes in the ship, but I forgot them at first, not knowing that there was tobacco in the island; and afterwards, when I searched the ship again, I could not come at any pipes at all.

In my wicker ware, also, I improved much, and made abundance of necessary baskets, as well as my invention showed me. Though not very handsome, yet they were such as were very handy and convenient for my laying things up in, or fetching things home in. For example, if I killed a goat abroad, I could hang it up in a tree, flay it, and dress it, and cut it in pieces, and bring it home in a basket; and the like by a turtle,—I could cut it up, take out the eggs, and a piece or two of the flesh, which was enough for me, and bring them home in a basket, and leave the rest behind me. Also large deep baskets were my receivers for my corn, which I always rubbed out as soon as it was dry, and cured, and kept it in great baskets.

I began now to perceive my powder abated considerably, and this was a want which it was impossible for me to supply, and I
HE TRAPS SOME GOATS.

began seriously to consider what I must do when I should have no more powder; that is to say, how I should do to kill any goat. I had, as is observed in the third year of my being here, kept a young kid, and bred her up tame, and I was in hope of getting a he-goat, but I could not by any means bring it to pass, till my kid grew an old goat; and I could never find in my heart to kill her, till she died at last of mere age.

But being now in the eleventh year of my residence, and, as I have said, my ammunition growing low, I set myself to study some art to trap and snare the goats, to see whether I could not catch some of them alive, and particularly I wanted a she-goat great with young.

To this purpose I made snares to hamper them; and I do believe they were more than once taken in them; but my tackle was not good, for I had no wire, and I always found them broken, and my bait devoured.

At length I resolved to try a pit-fall. So I dug several large pits in the earth, in places where I had observed the goats used to feed; and over these pits I placed hurdles of my own making too, with a great weight upon them. And several times I put ears of barley, and dry rice, without setting the trap; and I could easily perceive that the goats had gone in and eaten up the corn, for I could see the mark of their feet. At length I set three traps in one night; and going the next morning, I found them all standing, and yet the bait eaten and gone. This was very discouraging. However, I altered my trap; and, not to trouble you with particulars, going one morning to see my trap, I found in one of them a large old he-goat; and in one of the other, three kids—a male and two females.

As to the old one, I knew not what to do with him; he was so fierce I durst not go into the pit to him—that is to say, to go about to bring him away alive, which was what I wanted. I could have killed him; but that was not my business, nor would it answer my end. So I even let him out, and he ran away as if he had been frightened out of his wits. But I had forgot then what I learned afterwards—that hunger will tame a lion. If I had let him stay there three or four days without food, and then have
carried him some water to drink, and then a little corn, he would have been as tame as one of the kids—for they are mighty sagacious, tractable creatures where they are well used.

However, for the present I let him go, knowing no better at that time. Then I went to the three kids; and taking them one by one, I tied them with strings together, and with some difficulty brought them all home.

It was a good while before they would feed; but throwing them some sweet corn, it tempted them, and they began to be tame. And now I found that if I expected to supply myself with goat-flesh when I had no powder or shot left, breeding some up tame was my only way; when, perhaps, I might have them about my house like a flock of sheep.

But then it presently occurred to me that I must keep the tame from the wild, or else they would always run wild when they grew up. And the only way for this was to have some enclosed piece of ground, well fenced either with hedge or pale, to keep them in so effectually, that those within might not break out, or those without break in.

This was a great undertaking for one pair of hands. Yet, as I saw there was an absolute necessity of doing it, my first piece of work was to find out a proper piece of ground—namely, where there was likely to be herbage for them to eat, water for them to drink, and cover to keep them from the sun.

Those who understand such enclosures will think I had very little contrivance when I pitched upon a place very proper for all these, being a plain open piece of meadow-land or savanna (as our people call it in the western colonies), which had two or three little rills of fresh water in it, and at one end was very woody. I say they will smile at my forecast, when I shall tell them I began my enclosing of this piece of ground in such a manner that my hedge or pale must have been at least two mile about! Nor was the madness of it so great as to the compass, for if it was ten mile about, I was like to have time enough to do it in. But I did not consider that my goats would be as wild in so much compass as if they had had the whole island, and I should have so much room to chase them in that I should never catch them.
GOATS’ FLESH AND MILK.

My hedge was begun and carried on, I believe, about fifty yards, when this thought occurred to me. So I presently stopped short, and for the first beginning I resolved to enclose a piece of about one hundred and fifty yards in length, and one hundred yards in breadth; which, as it would maintain as many as I should have in my reasonable time, so, as my flock increased, I could add more ground to my enclosure.

This was acting with some prudence, and I went to work with courage. I was about three months hedging in the first piece; and till I had done it, I tethered the three kids in the best part of it, and used them to feed as near me as possible, to make them familiar; and very often I would go and carry them some ears of barley, or a handful of rice, and feed them out of my hand; so that, after my enclosure was finished and I let them loose, they would follow me up and down, bleating after me for a handful of corn.

This answered my end. And in about a year and half I had a flock of about twelve goats—kids and all; and in two years more, I had three-and-forty—besides several that I took and killed for my food. And after that I enclosed five several pieces of ground to feed them in, with little pens to drive them into, to take them as I wanted, and gates out of one piece of ground into another.

But this was not all; for now I not only had goat’s flesh to feed on when I pleased, but milk too—a thing which, indeed, in my beginning, I did not so much as think of, and which, when it came into my thoughts, was really an agreeable surprise. For now I set up my dairy, and had sometimes a gallon or two of milk in a day. And as Nature, who gives supplies of food to every creature, dictates even naturally how to make use of it; so I that had never milked a cow, much less a goat, or seen butter or cheese made, very readily and handily, though after a great many essays and miscarriages, made me both butter and cheese at last, and never wanted it afterwards.

How mercifully can our great Creator treat his creatures, even in those conditions in which they seem to be overwhelmed in destruction! How can he sweeten the bitterest providences, and give us cause to praise him for dungeons and prisons! What a
table was here spread for me in a wilderness, where I saw nothing at first but to perish for hunger!

It would have made a Stoic smile to have seen me and my little family sit down to dinner. There was my Majesty, the prince and lord of the whole island. I had the lives of all my subjects at my absolute command—I could hang, draw, give liberty, and take it away; and no rebels among all my subjects.

Then to see how like a king I dined, too, all alone, attended by my servants. Poll, as if he had been my favourite, was the only person permitted to talk to me. My dog—who was now grown very old and crazy, and had found no species to multiply his kind upon—sat always at my right hand; and two cats, one on one side the table and one on the other, expecting now and then a bit from my hand, as a mark of special favour.
But these were not the two cats which I brought on shore at first—for they were both of them dead, and had been interred near my habitation by my own hand; but one of them having multiplied by I know not what kind of creature, these were two which I had preserved tame, whereas the rest ran wild in the woods, and became indeed troublesome to me at last—for they would often come into my house, and plunder me too, till at last I was obliged to shoot them, and did kill a great many. At length they left me with this attendance, and in this plentiful manner I lived. Neither could I be said to want anything but society; and of that, in some time after this, I was like to have too much.

I was something impatient, as I have observed, to have the use of my boat—though very loath to run any more hazards; and therefore sometimes I sat contriving ways to get her about the island, and at other times I sat myself down contented enough without her. But I had a strange uneasiness in my mind to go down to the point of the island where, as I have said, in my last ramble, I went up the hill to see how the shore lay and how the current set, that I might see what I had to do. This inclination increased upon me every day, and at length I resolved to travel thither by land, following the edge of the shore. I did so. But had any one in England been to meet such a man as I was, it must either have frightened them, or raised a great deal of laughter. And as I frequently stood still to look at myself, I could not but smile at the notion of my travelling through Yorkshire with such an equipage and in such a dress. Be pleased to take a sketch of my figure as follows.

I had a great high shapeless cap, made of a goat’s skin, with a flap hanging down behind, as well to keep the sun from me as to shoot the rain off from running into my neck—nothing being so hurtful in these climates as the rain upon the flesh under the clothes.

I had a short jacket of goat-skin, the skirts coming down to about the middle of my thighs; and a pair of open-kneed breeches of the same—the breeches were made of the skin of an old he-goat, whose hair hung down such a length on either side, that like pantaloons it reached to the middle of my legs; stockings and shoes
I had none, but had made me a pair of somethings, I scarce know what to call them, like buskins, to flap over my legs and lace on either side like spatterdashes, but of a most barbarous shape—as indeed were all the rest of my clothes.

I had on a broad belt of goat-skin dried, which I drew together with two thongs of the same, instead of buckles, and in a kind of a frog\(^1\) on either side of this. Instead of a sword and a dagger hung a little saw and a hatchet, one on one side, one on the other. I had another belt not so broad, and fastened in the same manner, which hung over my shoulder; and at the end of it, under my left arm, hung two pouches, both made of goat’s skin too—in one of which hung my powder, in the other my shot. At my back I carried my basket; on my shoulder my gun; and over my head a great clumsy, ugly goat-skin umbrella—but which, after all, was the most necessary thing I had about me, next to my gun. As for my face, the colour of it was really not so Mulatto-like as one might expect from a man not at all careful of it, and living within nineteen degrees of the equinox. My beard I had once suffered to grow till it was about a quarter of a yard long; but as I had both scissors and razors sufficient, I had cut it pretty short, except what grew on my upper lip, which I had trimmed into a large pair of Mohammedan whiskers, such as I had seen worn by some Turks whom I saw at Sallee; for the Moors did not wear such, though the Turks did. Of these moustaches or whiskers I will not say they were long enough to hang my hat upon them; but they were of a length and shape monstrous enough, and such as in England would have passed for frightful.

But all this is by-the-by. For as to my figure, I had so few to observe me, that it was of no manner of consequence; so I say no more to that part. In this kind of figure I went my new journey, and was out five or six days. I travelled first along the sea-shore, directly to the place where I first brought my boat to an anchor to get up upon the rocks; and having no boat now to take care of, I went over the land a nearer way to the same height

\(^1\) \textit{Frog}, a tassel or small bobbin of silk, cloth, or braid used instead of a button by passing over it a loop which is sewn to the other side of the coat. The word is derived from the Portuguese \textit{froco}, a tuft or flock of wool or silk.
that I was upon before; when looking forward to the point of the rocks which lay out, and which I was obliged to double with my boat, as is said above, I was surprised to see the sea all smooth and quiet—no rippling, no motion, no current any more there than in other places.

I was at a strange loss to understand this, and resolved to spend some time in the observing it, to see if nothing from the sets of the tide had occasioned it; but I was presently convinced how it was—namely, that the tide of ebb setting from the west, and joining with the current of waters from some great river on the shore, must be the occasion of this current; and that according as the wind blew more forcibly from the west, or from the north, this current came near, or went farther from the shore. For waiting thereabouts till evening, I went up to the rock again; and then the tide of ebb being made, I plainly saw the current again as before, only that it ran farther off, being near half a league from the shore; whereas in my case it set close upon the shore, and hurried me and my canoe along with it, which at another time it would not have done.

This observation convinced me that I had nothing to do but to observe the ebbing and the flowing of the tide, and I might very easily bring my boat about the island again. But when I began to think of putting it in practice, I had such a terror upon my spirits at the remembrance of the danger I had been in, that I could not think of it again with any patience. But on the contrary, I took up another resolution, which was more safe, though more laborious; and this was, that I would build, or rather make me another periagua or canoe, and so have one for one side of the island, and one for the other.

You are to understand that now I had, as I may call it, two plantations in the island: one my little fortification or tent, with the wall about it under the rock, with the cave behind me, which by this time I had enlarged into several apartments, or caves, one within another. One of these, which was the driest and largest, and had a door out beyond my wall or fortification—that is to say beyond where my wall joined to the rock—was all filled up with the large earthen pots of which I have given an account, and with
fourteen or fifteen great baskets, which would hold five or six bushels each, where I laid up my stores of provision, especially my corn, some in the ear cut off short from the straw, and the other rubbed out with my hand.

As for my wall, made, as before, with long stakes or piles, those piles grew all like trees, and were by this time grown so big, and spread so very much, that there was not the least appearance to any one's view of any habitation behind them.

Near this dwelling of mine, but a little farther within the land, and upon lower ground, lay my two pieces of corn-ground, which I kept duly cultivated and sowed, and which duly yielded me their harvest in its season; and whenever I had occasion for more corn, I had more land adjoining as fit as that.

Besides this I had my country seat, and I had now a tolerable plantation there also; for first, I had my little bower, as I called it, which I kept in repair—that is to say, I kept the hedge which circled it in constantly fitted up to its usual height, the ladder standing always in the inside. I kept the trees, which at first were no more than my stakes, but were now grown very firm and tall—I kept them always so cut that they might spread and grow thick and wild, and make the more agreeable shade, which they did effectually to my mind. In the middle of this I had my tent always standing, being a piece of a sail spread over poles set up for that purpose, and which never wanted any repair or renewing; and under this I had made me a squab or couch, with the skins of the creatures I had killed, and with other soft things, and a blanket laid on them; such as belonged to our sea-beding, which I had saved, and a great watch-coat to cover me; and here, whenever I had occasion to be absent from my chief seat, I took up my country habitation.

Adjoining to this I had my enclosures for my cattle, that is to say, my goats; and as I had taken an inconceivable deal of pains to fence and enclose this ground, so I was so uneasy to see it kept entire, lest the goats should break through, that I never left off till with infinite labour I had stuck the outside of the hedge so full of small stakes, and so near to one another, that it was rather a pale than a hedge, and there was scarce room to put a hand
through between them; which, afterwards, when those stakes grew, as they all did in the next rainy season, made the enclosure strong like a wall; indeed, stronger than any wall.

This will testify for me that I was not idle, and that I spared no pains to bring to pass whatever appeared necessary for my comfortable support; for I considered the keeping up a breed of tame creatures thus at my hand would be a living magazine of flesh, milk, butter, and cheese for me as long as I lived in the place, if it were to be forty years; and that keeping them in my reach depended entirely upon my perfecting my enclosures to such a degree that I might be sure of keeping them together; which by this method, indeed, I so effectually secured, that when these little stakes began to grow, I had planted them so very thick I was forced to pull some of them up again.

In this place, also, I had my grapes growing, which I principally depended on for my winter store of raisins; and which I never failed to preserve very carefully, as the best and most agreeable dainty of my whole diet; and, indeed, they were not agreeable only, but physical, wholesome, nourishing, and refreshing to the last degree.

As this was also about half way between my other habitation and the place where I had laid up my boat, I generally stayed and lay here in my way thither; for I used frequently to visit my boat, and I kept all things about or belonging to her in very good order. Sometimes I went out in her to divert myself; but no more hazardous voyages would I go, nor scarce ever above a stone’s cast or two from the shore, I was so apprehensive of being hurried out of my knowledge again by the currents, or winds, or any other accident. But now I come to a new scene of my life.

It happened one day about noon, going towards my boat, I was exceedingly surprised with the print of a man’s naked foot on the shore, which was very plain to be seen in the sand. I stood like one thunderstruck, or as if I had seen an apparition. I listened, I looked round me; I could hear nothing, nor see anything. I went up to a rising ground to look farther. I went up the shore and down the shore; but it was all one, I could see no other im-

(248)
pression but that one. I went to it again to see if there were any more, and to observe if it might not be my fancy; but there was no room for that, for there was exactly the very print of a foot, toes, heel, and every part of a foot;—how it came thither I knew not, nor could in the least imagine. But after innumerable fluttering thoughts, like a man perfectly confused and out of myself, I

"I stood as if I had seen an apparition."

came home to my fortification, not feeling, as we say, the ground I went on, but terrified to the last degree, looking behind me at every two or three steps, mistaking every bush and tree, and fancying every stump at a distance to be a man. Nor is it possible to describe how many various shapes affrighted imagination represented things to me in; how many wild ideas were found every moment in my fancy, and what strange unaccountable whimsies came into my thoughts by the way.

When I came to my castle, for so I think I called it ever after this, I fled into it like one pursued. Whether I went over by the ladder as first contrived, or went in at the hole in the rock which
I called a door, I cannot remember; no, nor could I remember the next morning; for never frightened hare fled to cover, or fox to earth, with more terror of mind than I to this retreat.

I slept none that night. The further I was from the occasion of my fright the greater my apprehensions were, which is something contrary to the nature of such things, and especially to the usual practice of all creatures in fear. But I was so embarrassed with my own frightful ideas of the thing, that I formed nothing but dismal imaginations to myself, even though I was now a great way off it. Sometimes I fancied it must be the devil; and reason joined in with me upon this supposition. For how should any other thing in human shape come into the place? Where was the vessel that brought them? What marks were there of any other footsteps? And how was it possible a man should come there? But, then, to think that Satan should take human shape upon him in such a place, where there could be no manner of occasion for it but to leave the print of his foot behind him, and that even for no purpose, too, for he could not be sure I should see it; this was an amusement\(^1\) the other way. I considered that the devil might have found out abundance of other ways to have terrified me, than this of the single print of a foot;—that, as I lived quite on the other side of the island, he would never have been so simple to leave a mark in a place where it was ten thousand to one whether I should ever see it or not; and in the sand, too, which the first surge of the sea upon a high wind would have defaced entirely. All this seemed inconsistent with the thing itself, and with all the notions we usually entertain of the subtilty of the devil.

Abundance of such things as these assisted to argue me out of all apprehensions of its being the devil. And I presently concluded, then, that it must be some more dangerous creature—namely, that it must be some of the savages of the mainland over against me, who had wandered out to sea in their canoes, and either driven by the currents, or by contrary winds, had made the island; and had been on shore, but were gone away again to

\(^{1}\) A _Amusement_ here means taking off the thoughts or changing the theme of meditation.
sea, being as loath, perhaps, to have stayed in this desolate island as I would have been to have had them.

While these reflections were rolling upon my mind, I was very thankful in my thoughts that I was so happy as not to be thereabouts at that time, or that they did not see my boat, by which they would have concluded that some inhabitants had been in the place, and perhaps have searched farther for me. Then terrible thoughts racked my imagination about their having found my boat, and that there were people here; and that if so, I should certainly have them come again in greater numbers and devour me; that if it should happen so that they should not find me, yet they would find my enclosure, destroy all my corn, carry away all my flock of tame goats, and I should perish at last for mere want.

Thus my fear banished all my religious hope; all that former confidence in God which was founded upon such wonderful experience as I had had of his goodness, now vanished, as if he that had fed me by miracle hitherto could not preserve by his power the provision which he had made for me by his goodness. I reproached myself with my easiness, that would not sow any more corn one year than would just serve me till the next season, as if no accident could intervene to prevent my enjoying the crop that was upon the ground; and this I thought so just a reproof, that I resolved for the future to have two or three years' corn beforehand, so that whatever might come, I might not perish for want of bread.

How strange a checker-work of providence is the life of man! and by what secret differing springs are the affections hurried about, as differing circumstances present! To-day we love what to-morrow we hate; to-day we seek what to-morrow we shun; to-day we desire what to-morrow we fear—nay, even tremble at the apprehensions of. This was exemplified in me at this time in the most lively manner imaginable: for I, whose only affliction was that I seemed banished from human society, that I was alone, circumscribed by the boundless ocean, cut off from mankind, and condemned to what I called silent life—that I was as one whom Heaven thought not worthy to be numbered among the living, or to appear among the rest of his creatures; that to have seen one
"I WAS TERRIFIED TO THE LAST DEGREE."
DIVINE COMFORT.

of my own species would have seemed to me a raising me from death to life, and the greatest blessing that Heaven itself, next to the supreme blessing of salvation, could bestow;—I say, that I should now tremble at the very apprehensions of seeing a man, and was ready to sink into the ground at but the shadow or silent appearance of a man's having set his foot in the island.

Such is the uneven state of human life. And it afforded me a great many curious speculations afterwards, when I had a little recovered my first surprise. I considered that this was the station of life the infinitely wise and good providence of God had determined for me; that as I could not foresee what the ends of divine wisdom might be in all this, so I was not to dispute his sovereignty, who, as I was his creature, had an undoubted right by creation to govern and dispose of me absolutely as he thought fit; and who, as I was a creature who had offended him, had likewise a judicial right to condemn me to what punishment he thought fit; and that it was my part to submit to bear his indignation, because I had sinned against him.

I then reflected that God, who was not only righteous but omnipotent, as he had thought fit thus to punish and afflict me, so he was able to deliver me; that if he did not think fit to do it, it was my unquestioned duty to resign myself absolutely and entirely to his will; and, on the other hand, it was my duty also to hope in him, pray to him, and quietly to attend the dictates and directions of his daily providence.

These thoughts took me up many hours, days, nay, I may say, weeks and months; and one particular effect of my cogitations on this occasion I cannot omit—namely, one morning early, lying in my bed, and filled with thought about my danger from the appearance of savages, I found it discomposed me very much; upon which those words of the Scripture came into my thoughts, "Call upon me in the day of trouble, and I will deliver, and thou shalt glory me."

Upon this, rising cheerfully out of my bed, my heart was not only comforted, but I was guided and encouraged to pray earnestly to God for deliverance. When I had done praying I took up my Bible, and opening it to read, the first words that presented to me
were, "Wait on the Lord and be of good cheer, and he shall strengthen thy heart; wait, I say, on the Lord." It is impossible to express the comfort this gave me. In answer, I thankfully laid down the book, and was no more sad—at least, not on that occasion.

In the middle of these cogitations, apprehensions, and reflections, it came into my thought one day that all this might be a mere chimera of my own; and that this foot might be the print of my own foot when I came on shore from my boat. This cheered me up a little, too, and I began to persuade myself it was all a delusion; that it was nothing else but my own foot; and why might not I come that way from the boat as well as I was going that way to the boat? Again, I considered also that I could by no means tell for certain where I had trod and where I had not; and that if at last this was only the print of my own foot, I had played the part of those fools who strive to make stories of spectres and apparitions, and then are frightened at them more than anybody.

Now I began to take courage, and to peep abroad again; for I had not stirred out of my castle for three days and nights, so that I began to starve for provision; for I had little or nothing within doors but some barley cakes and water. Then I knew that my goats wanted to be milked, too, which usually was my evening diversion; and the poor creatures were in great pain and inconvenience for want of it: and, indeed, it almost spoiled some of them, and almost dried up their milk.

Heartening myself therefore with the belief that this was nothing but the print of one of my own feet, and so I might be truly said to start at my own shadow, I began to go abroad again, and went to my country house to milk my flock; but to see with what fear I went forward, how often I looked behind me, how I was ready every now and then to lay down my basket and run for my life, it would have made any one have thought I was haunted with an evil conscience, or that I had been lately most terribly frightened, and so indeed I had.

However, as I went down thus two or three days, and having seen nothing, I began to be a little bolder, and to think there was
really nothing in it but my own imagination. But I could not persuade myself fully of this till I should go down to the shore again and see this print of a foot, and measure it by my own, and see if there was any similitude or fitness, that I might be assured it was my own foot. But when I came to the place, First, It appeared evidently to me that when I laid up my boat I could not possibly be on shore anywhere thereabout. Secondly, When I came to measure the mark with my own foot, I found my foot not so large by a great deal. Both these things filled my head with new imaginations, and gave me the vapours again to the highest degree; so that I shook with cold like one in an ague. And I went home again; filled with the belief that some man or men had been on shore there; or, in short, that the island was inhabited, and I might be surprised before I was aware—and what course to take for my security I knew not.
Oh, what ridiculous resolution men take when possessed with fear! It deprives them of the use of those means which reason offers for their relief. The first thing I proposed to myself was to throw down my enclosures, and turn all my tame cattle wild into the woods, that the enemy might not find them, and then frequent the island in prospect of the same or the like booty; then to the simple thing of digging up my two corn-fields, that they might not find such a grain there, and still be prompted to frequent the island; then to demolish my bower and tent, that they might not see any vestiges of habitation, and be prompted to look farther, in order to find out the persons inhabiting.

These were the subject of the first night's cogitation, after I was come home again, while the apprehensions which had so overrun my mind were fresh upon me, and my head was full of vapours, as above. Thus fear of danger is ten thousand times more terrifying than danger itself, when apparent to the eyes; and we find the burden of anxiety greater by much than the evil which we are anxious about; and, which was worse than all this, I had not that relief in this trouble from the resignation I used to practise that I hoped to have. I looked, I thought, like Saul, who complained not only that the Philistines were upon him, but that God had forsaken him; for I did not now take due ways to compose my mind, by crying to God in my distress, and resting upon his providence, as I had done before, for my defence and deliverance; which if I had done, I had at least been more cheerfully supported under his new surprise, and perhaps carried through it with more resolution.

This confusion of my thoughts kept me waking all night; but in the morning I fell asleep, and having by the amusement of my mind been as it were tired, and my spirits exhausted, I slept very soundly, and waked much better composed than I had ever been before; and now I began to think sedately. And upon the utmost debate with myself, I concluded, That this island, which was so exceeding pleasant, fruitful, and no farther from the mainland than as I had seen, was not so entirely abandoned as I might imagine. That although there were no stated inhabitants who lived on the spot, yet that there might sometimes come boats
off from the shore, who either with design, or perhaps never but when they were driven by cross winds, might come to this place.

That I had lived here fifteen years now, and had not met with the least shadow or figure of any people yet; and that if at any time they should be driven here, it was probable they went away again as soon as ever they could, seeing they had never thought fit to fix there upon any occasion, to this time.

That the most I could suggest any danger from was, from any such casual accidental landing of straggling people from the main, who, as it was likely, if they were driven hither, were here against their wills; so they made no stay here, but went off again with all possible speed, seldom staying one night on shore, lest they should not have the help of the tides and daylight back again; and that, therefore, I had nothing to do but to consider of some safe retreat, in case I should see any savages land upon the spot.

Now I began sorely to repent that I had dug my cave so large as to bring a door through again; which door, as I said, came out beyond where my fortification joined to the rock. Upon maturely considering this, therefore, I resolved to draw me a second fortification, in the same manner of a semicircle, at a distance from my wall, just where I had planted a double row of trees about twelve years before, of which I made mention. These trees having been planted so thick before, they wanted but a few piles to be driven between them that they should be thicker and stronger, and my wall would be soon finished.

So that I had now a double wall, and my outer wall was thickened with pieces of timber, old cables, and everything I could think of to make it strong; having in it seven little holes about as big as I might put my arm out at. In the inside of this I thickened my wall to above ten foot thick, with continual bringing earth out of my cave and laying it at the foot of the wall and walking upon it; and through the seven holes I contrived to plant the muskets, of which I took notice that I got seven on shore out of the ship; these, I say, I planted like my cannon, and fitted them into frames that held them like a carriage, that so I could fire all the seven guns in two minutes' time. This wall I was
many a weary month in finishing, and yet never thought myself safe till it was done.

When this was done I stuck all the ground without my wall, for a great way every way, as full with stakes or sticks of the osierlike wood, which I found so apt to grow, as they could well stand; insomuch that I believe I might set in near twenty thousand of them, leaving a pretty large space between them and my wall, that I might have room to see an enemy, and they might have no shelter from the young trees, if they attempted to approach my outer wall.

Thus in two years' time I had a thick grove, and in five or six years' time I had a wood before my dwelling, growing so monstrous thick and strong, that it was indeed perfectly impassable; and no men, of what kind soever, would ever imagine that there was anything beyond it, much less a habitation. As for the way which I proposed to myself to go in and out (for I left no avenue), it was
by setting two ladders: one to a part of the rock which was low, and then broke in, and left room to place another ladder upon that. So, when the two ladders were taken down, no man living could come down to me without mischieving himself; and if they had come down, they were still on the outside of my outer wall.

Thus I took all the measures human prudence could suggest for my own preservation; and it will be seen at length that they were not altogether without just reason, though I foresaw nothing at that time more than my mere fear suggested to me.

While this was doing, I was not altogether careless of my other affairs; for I had a great concern upon me for my little herd of goats. They were not only a present supply to me upon every occasion, and began to be sufficient to me, without the expense of powder and shot, but also without the fatigue of hunting after the wild ones; and I was loath to lose the advantage of them, and to have them all to nurse up over again.

To this purpose, after long consideration, I could think of but two ways to preserve them: one was, to find another convenient place to dig a cave underground, and to drive them into it every night; and the other was, to enclose two or three little bits of land, remote from one another, and as much concealed as I could, where I might keep about half-a-dozen young goats in each place; so that, if any disaster happened to the flock in general, I might be able to raise them again with little trouble and time. And this, though it would require a great deal of time and labour, I thought was the most rational design.

Accordingly I spent some time to find out the most retired parts of the island; and I pitched upon one which was as private indeed as my heart could wish for. It was a little damp piece of ground in the middle of the hollow and thick woods where, as is observed, I almost lost myself once before, endeavouring to come back that way from the eastern part of the island. Here I found a clear piece of land—near three acres—so surrounded with woods that it was almost an enclosure by nature; at least, it did not want near so much labour to make it so as the other pieces of ground I had worked so hard at.

I immediately went to work with this piece of ground; and in
less than a month's time I had so fenced it round that my flock or herd—call it which you please—who were not so wild now as at first they might be supposed to be, were well enough secured in it. So, without any further delay, I removed ten young she-goats and two he-goats to this piece; and when they were there I continued to perfect the fence till I had made it as secure as the other; which, however, I did at more leisure, and it took me up more time by a great deal.

All this labour I was at the expense of purely from my apprehensions on the account of the print of a man's foot which I had seen; for as yet I never saw any human creature come near the island, and I had now lived two years under these uneasinesses, which indeed made my life much less comfortable than it was before—as may well be imagined by any who know what it is to live in the constant snare of the fear of man. And this I must observe with grief, too, that the discomposure of my mind had too great impressions also upon the religious part of my thoughts; for the dread and terror of falling into the hands of savages and cannibals lay so upon my spirits that I seldom found myself in a due temper for application to my Maker—at least, not with the sedate calmness and resignation of soul which I was wont to do. I rather prayed to God as under great affliction and pressure of mind, surrounded with danger, and in expectation every night of being murdered and devoured before morning. And I must testify from my experience that a temper of peace, thankfulness, love, and affection, is much more the proper frame for prayer than that of terror and discomposure; and that, under the dread of mischief impending, a man is no more fit for a comforting performance of the duty of praying to God than he is for repentance on a sickbed: for these discompositions affect the mind as the others do the body; and the discomposure of the mind must necessarily be as great a disability as that of the body—and much greater, praying to God being properly an act of the mind, not of the body.

But to go on. After I had thus secured one part of my little living stock, I went about the whole island searching for another private place to make such another deposit, when, wandering more to the west point of the island than I had ever done yet, and
looking out to sea, I thought I saw a boat upon the sea at a great
distance. I had found a prospective-glass or two in one of the
seamen's chests which I saved out of our ship; but I had it not
about me, and this was so remote that I could not tell what to
make of it, though I looked at it till my eyes were not able to
hold to look any longer. Whether it was a boat or not I do not
know; but as I descended from the hill I could see no more of it;
so I gave it over—only I resolved to go no more out without a
prospective-glass in my pocket.

When I was come down the hill to the end of the island—
where, indeed, I had never been before—I was presently convinced
that the seeing the print of a man's foot was not such a strange
thing in the island as I imagined. And but that it was a special
providence that I was cast upon the side of the island where the
savages never came, I should easily have known that nothing
was more frequent than for the canoes from the main, when they
happened to be a little too far out at sea, to shoot over to that side
of the island for harbour; likewise, as they often met and fought
in their canoes, the victors having taken any prisoners would bring
them over to the shore, where, according to their dreadful customs,
being all cannibals, they would kill and eat them: of which here-
after.

When I was come down the hill to the shore, as I said above,
being the south-west point of the island, I was perfectly confounded
and amazed—nor is it possible for me to express the horror of my
mind—at seeing the shore spread with skulls, hands, feet, and
other bones of human bodies; and particularly I observed a place
where there had been a fire made, and a circle dug in the earth
like a cockpit, where it is supposed the savage wretches had sat
down to their inhuman feastings upon the bodies of their fellow-
creatures.

I was so astonished with the sight of these things that I enter-
tained no notions of any danger to myself from it for a long while.
All my apprehensions were buried in the thoughts of such a pitch
of inhuman, hellish brutality, and the horror of the degeneracy of
human nature; which though I had heard of often, yet I never
had so near a view of before. In short, I turned away my face
from the horrid spectacle: my stomach grew sick, and I was just
at the point of fainting, when nature discharged the disorder from
my stomach; and having vomited with an uncommon violence, I
was a little relieved, but could not bear to stay in the place a
moment. So I gat me up the hill again with all the speed I could,
and walked on towards my own habitation.

When I came a little out of that part of the island, I stood still
a while as amazed; and then recovering myself, I looked up with
the utmost affection of my soul, and, with a flood of tears in my
eyes, gave God thanks that had cast my first lot in a part of the
world where I was distinguished from such dreadful creatures as
these; and that though I had esteemed my present condition very
miserable, had yet given me so many comforts in it that I had still
more to give thanks for than to complain of; and this above all,
that I had, even in this miserable condition, been comforted with
the knowledge of himself and the hope of his blessing—which was a felicity more than sufficiently equivalent to all the misery which I had suffered or could suffer.

In this frame of thankfulness I went home to my castle, and began to be much easier now as to the safety of my circumstances than ever I was before; for I observed that these wretches never came to this island in search of what they could get—perhaps not seeking, not wanting, or not expecting anything here, and having often, no doubt, been up in the covered woody part of it without finding anything to their purpose. I knew I had been here now almost eighteen years, and never saw the least footsteps of human creature there before; and I might be here eighteen more, as entirely concealed as I was now, if I did not discover myself to them—which I had no manner of occasion to do, it being my only business to keep myself entirely concealed where I was, unless I found a better sort of creatures than cannibals to make myself known to.

Yet I entertained such an abhorrence of the savage wretches that I have been speaking of, and of the wretched inhuman custom of their devouring and eating one another up, that I continued pensive and sad, and kept close within my own circle for almost two years after this. When I say my own circle, I mean by it my three plantations—namely, my castle, my country seat, which I called my bower, and my enclosure in the woods. Nor did I look after this for any other use than as an enclosure for my goats; for the aversion which nature gave me to these hellish wretches was such that I was fearful of seeing them as of seeing the devil himself. Nor did I so much as go to look after my boat in all this time, but began rather to think of making me another; for I could not think of ever making any more attempts to bring the other boat round the island to me, lest I should meet with some of these creatures at sea, in which, if I had happened to have fallen into their hands, I knew what would have been my lot.

Time, however, and the satisfaction I had that I was in no danger of being discovered by these people, began to wear off my uneasiness about them; and I began to live just in the same composed manner as before—only with this difference, that I used more
caution, and kept my eyes more about me than I did before, lest I should happen to be seen by any of them; and, particularly, I was more cautious of firing my gun, lest any of them being on the island should happen to hear of it. And it was therefore a very good providence to me that I had furnished myself with a tame breed of goats, that I needed not hunt any more about the woods or shoot at them; and if I did catch any of them after this, it was by traps and snares, as I had done before: so that for two years after this I believe I never fired my gun once off, though I never went out without it. And, which was more, as I had saved three pistols out of the ship, I always carried them out with me—or at least two of them—sticking them in my goat-skin belt; also I furnished up one of the great cutlasses that I had out of the ship, and made me a belt to put it on also: so that I was now a most formidable fellow to look at when I went abroad, if you add to the former description of myself the particular of two pistols, and a great broadsword hanging at my side in a belt, but without a scabbard.

Things going on thus, as I have said, for some time, I seemed, excepting these cautions, to be reduced to my former calm, sedate way of living. All these things tended to showing me more and more how far my condition was from being miserable, compared to some others; nay, to many other particulars of life which it might have pleased God to have made my lot. It put me upon reflecting how little repining there would be among mankind at any condition of life, if people would rather compare their condition with those that are worse, in order to be thankful, than be always comparing them with those which are better, to assist their murmuring and complainings.

As in my present condition there were not really many things which I wanted, so indeed I thought that the frights I had been in about these savage wretches, and the concern I had been in for my own preservation, had taken off the edge of my invention for my own conveniences; and I had dropped a good design which I had once bent my thoughts too much upon, and that was to try if I could not make some of my barley into malt, and then try to brew myself some beer. This was really a whimsical thought,
and I reproved myself often for the simplicity of it; for I presently saw there would be the want of several things necessary to the making my beer that it would be impossible for me to supply. As, first, casks to preserve it in; which was a thing that, as I have observed already, I could never compass—no, though I spent, not many days, but weeks, nay months, in attempting it, but to no purpose. In the next place, I had no hope to make it keep, no yeast to make it work, no copper or kettle to make it boil. And yet all these things notwithstanding, I verily believe had not these things intervened—I mean the frights and terrors I was in about the savages—I had undertaken it, and perhaps brought it to pass too; for I seldom gave anything over without accomplishing it, when I once had it in my head enough to begin it.

But my invention now run quite another way; for night and day I could think of nothing but how I might destroy some of these monsters in their cruel, bloody entertainment, and, if possible, save the victim they should bring hither to destroy. It would take up a larger volume than this whole work is intended to be, to set down all the contrivances I hatched, or rather brooded upon in my thought, for the destroying these creatures, or at least frightening them, so as to prevent their coming hither any more. But all was abortive: nothing could be possible to take effect unless I was to be there to do it myself. And what could one man do among them when perhaps there might be twenty or thirty of them together, with their darts or their bows and arrows, with which they could shoot as true to a mark as I could with my gun?

Sometimes I contrived to dig a hole under the place where they made their fire, and put in five or six pound of gunpowder, which when they kindled their fire would consequently take fire, and blow up all that was near it. But as, in the first place, I should be very loath to waste so much powder upon them, my store being now within the quantity of one barrel, so neither could I be sure of its going off at any certain time, when it might surprise them, and at best that it would do little more than just blow the fire about their ears and fright them, but not sufficient

(248)
to make them forsake the place: so I laid it aside, and then pro-
posed that I would place myself in ambush, in some convenient
place, with my three guns all double-loaded, and in the middle of
their bloody ceremony, let fly at them, when I should be sure to
kill or wound perhaps two or three at every shot; and then fall-
ing in upon them with my three pistols and my sword, I made no
doubt but that if there was twenty I should kill them all. This
fancy pleased my thoughts for some weeks, and I was so full of
it that I often dreamed of it, and sometimes that I was just going
to let fly at them in my sleep.

I went so far with it in my imagination, that I employed my-
self several days to find out proper places to put myself in ambus-
cade, as I said, to watch for them; and I went frequently to the
place itself, which was now grown more familiar to me: and
especially while my mind was thus filled with thoughts of revenge,
and of a bloody putting twenty or thirty of them to the sword, as
I may call it; the horror I had at the place, and at the signals of
the barbarous wretches devouring one another, abated my malice.

Well, at length I found a place in the side of the hill, where I
was satisfied I might securely wait till I saw any of their boats
coming, and might then, even before they would be ready to come
on shore, convey myself unseen into thickets of trees, in one of
which there was a hollow large enough to conceal me entirely, and
where I might sit and observe all their bloody doings, and take
my full aim at their heads, when they were so close together as
that it would be next to impossible that I should miss my shot,
or that I could fail wounds three or four of them at the first
shoot.

In this place, then, I resolved to fix my design, and accordingly
I prepared two muskets and my ordinary fowling-piece. The two
muskets I loaded with a brace of slugs each, and four or five
smaller bullets, about the size of pistol bullets; and the fowling-
piece I loaded with near a handful of swan-shot, of the largest size;
I also loaded my pistols with about four bullets each, and in this
posture, well provided with ammunition for a second and third
charge, I prepared myself for my expedition.

After I had thus laid the scheme of my design, and in my
imagination put it in practice, I continually made my tour every morning up to the top of the hill, which was from my castle, as I called it, about three miles, or more, to see if I could observe any boats upon the sea, coming near the island, or standing over towards it. But I began to tire of this hard duty, after I had for two or three months constantly kept my watch, but come always back without any discovery, there having not in all that time been the least appearance, not only on or near the shore, but not on the whole ocean, so far as my eyes or glasses could reach every way.

As long as I kept up my daily tour to the hill to look out, so long also I kept up the vigour of my design, and my spirits seemed to be all the while in a suitable form for so outrageous an execution as the killing twenty or thirty naked savages, for an offence which I had not at all entered into a discussion of in my thoughts, any farther than my passions were at first fired by the horror I conceived at the unnatural custom of that people of the country, who it seems had been suffered by Providence, in his wise disposition of the world, to have no other guide than that of their own abominable and vitiated passions; and consequently were left, and perhaps had been so for some ages, to act such horrid things, and receive such dreadful customs, as nothing but nature entirely
abandoned of Heaven and acted by some hellish degeneracy, could have run them into. But now, when, as I have said, I began to be weary of the fruitless excursion which I had made so long, and so far, every morning in vain, so my opinion of the action itself began to alter, and I began with cooler and calmer thoughts to consider what it was I was going to engage in;—what authority or call I had to pretend to be judge and executioner upon these men as criminals, whom Heaven had thought fit for so many ages to suffer unpunished, to go on, and to be, as it were, the executioners of his judgments one upon another. How far these people were offenders against me, and what right I had to engage in the quarrel of that blood, which they shed promiscuously one upon another. I debated this very often with myself thus: How do I know what God himself judges in this particular case? It is certain these people do not commit this as a crime; it is not against their own consciences reproving or their light reproaching them. They do not know it to be an offence, and then commit it in defiance of divine justice, as we do in almost all the sins we commit. They think it no more a crime to kill a captive taken in war, than we do to kill an ox; nor to eat human flesh, than we do to eat mutton.

When I had considered this a little, it followed necessarily that I was certainly in the wrong in it; that these people were not murderers in the sense that I had before condemned them in my thoughts; any more than those Christians were murderers who often put to death the prisoners taken in battle; or, more frequently, upon many occasions put whole troops of men to the sword, without giving quarter, though they threw down their arms and submitted.

In the next place, it occurred to me that albeit the usage they thus gave one another was thus brutish and inhuman, yet it was really nothing to me; these people had done me no injury. That if they attempted me, or I saw it necessary for my immediate preservation to fall upon them, something might be said for it; but that as I was yet out of their power, and they had really no knowledge of me, and consequently no design upon me; and therefore it could not be just for me to fall upon them. That
A WISE CONCLUSION.

this would justify the conduct of the Spaniards in all their barbarities practised in America, and where they destroyed millions of these people, who, however they were idolaters, and barbarians, and had several bloody and barbarous rites in their customs, such as sacrificing human bodies to their idols, were yet, as to the Spaniards, very innocent people; and that the rooting them out of the country is spoken of with the utmost abhorrence and detestation, by even the Spaniards themselves, at this time, and by all other Christian nations of Europe, as a mere butchery, a bloody and unnatural piece of cruelty, unjustifiable either to God or man; and such as for which the very name of a Spaniard is reckoned to be frightful and terrible to all people of humanity, or of Christian compassion—as if the kingdom of Spain were particularly eminent for the product of a race of men who were without principles of tenderness, or the common bowels of pity to the miserable, which is reckoned to be a mark of generous temper in the mind.

These considerations really put me to a pause, and to a kind of a full stop; and I began by little and little to be off of my design, and to conclude I had taken wrong measures in my resolutions to attack the savages; that it was not my business to meddle with them, unless they first attacked me, and this it was my business if possible to prevent; but that, if I were discovered and attacked, then I knew my duty.

On the other hand, I argued with myself, that this really was the way not to deliver myself, but entirely to ruin and destroy myself; for unless I was sure to kill every one that not only should be on shore at that time, but that should ever come on shore afterwards, if but one of them escaped to tell their country-people what had happened, they would come over again by thousands to revenge the death of their fellows, and I should only bring upon myself a certain destruction, which at present I had no manner of occasion for.

Upon the whole, I concluded, that neither in principles nor in policy I ought one way or other to concern myself in this affair;—that my business was by all possible means to conceal myself from them, and not to leave the least signal to them to guess by that
there were any living creatures upon the island,—I mean of human
shape.

Religion joined in with this prudential, and I was convinced
now many ways that I was perfectly out of my duty, when I was
laying all my bloody schemes for the destruction of innocent crea-
tures,—I mean innocent as to me. As to the crimes they were
guilty of towards one another, I had nothing to do with them;
they were national, and I ought to leave them to the justice of
God, who is the Governor of nations, and knows how by national
punishments to make a just retribution for national offences, and
to bring public judgments upon those who offend in a public man-
er, by such ways as best pleases him.

This appeared so clear to me now, that nothing was a greater
satisfaction to me than that I had not been suffered to do a thing
which I now saw so much reason to believe would have been no
less a sin than that of wilful murder, if I had committed it. And
I give most humble thanks on my knees to God, that had thus
delivered me from blood-guiltiness; beseeching him to grant me
the protection of his providence, that I might not fall into the
hands of the barbarians; or that I might not lay my hands upon
them, unless I had a more clear call from Heaven to do it, in
defence of my own life.

In this disposition I continued for near a year after this, and so
far was I from desiring an occasion for falling upon these wretches,
that in all that time I never once went up the hill to see whether
there were any of them in sight, or to know whether any of them
had been on shore there or not, that I might not be tempted to
renew any of my contrivances against them, or be provoked by
any advantage which might present itself, to fall upon them; only
this I did, I went and removed my boat, which I had on the other
side the island, and carried it down to the east end of the whole
island, where I ran it into a little cove which I found under some
high rocks, and where I knew, by reason of the currents, the
savages durst not, at least would not, come with their boats upon
any account whatsoever.

With my boat I carried away everything that I had left there
belonging to her, though not necessary for the bare going thither—
FURTHER PRECAUTIONS.

namely, a mast and sail which I had made for her, and a thing like an anchor, but indeed which could not be called either anchor or grapling—however, it was the best I could make of its kind. All these I removed, that there might not be the least shadow of any discovery, or any appearance of any boat or of any human habitation upon the island.

Besides this, I kept myself, as I said, more retired than ever, and seldom went from my cell, other than upon my constant employment—namely, to milk my she-goats and manage my little flock in the wood; which, as it was quite on the other part of the island, was quite out of danger; for certain it is, that these savage people who sometimes haunted this island, never came with any thoughts of finding anything here, and consequently never wandered off from the coast. And I doubt not but they might have been several times on shore after my apprehensions of them had made me cautious as well as before; and, indeed, I looked back with some horror upon the thoughts of what my condition would have been, if I had chopped upon them, and been discovered before that, when naked and unarmed, except with one gun, and that loaded often only with small shot. I walked everywhere peeping and peeping about the island to see what I could get;—what a surprise should I have been in, if, when I discovered the print of a man's foot, I had instead of that seen fifteen or twenty savages, and found them pursuing me, and, by the swiftness of their running, no possibility of my escaping them!

The thoughts of this sometimes sunk my very soul within me, and distressed my mind so much that I could not soon recover it, to think what I should have done, and how I not only should not have been able to resist them, but even should not have had presence of mind enough to do what I might have done; much less what now, after so much consideration and preparation, I might be able to do. Indeed, after serious thinking of these things, I should be very melancholy, and sometimes it would last a great while; but I resolved it at last all into thankfulness to that Providence which had delivered me from so many unseen dangers, and had kept me from those mischiefs which I could no way have

1 Grapling or grapnel, a kind of anchor with four flukes used for boats.
been the agent in delivering myself from, because I had not the least notion of any such thing depending, or the least supposition of it being possible.

This renewed a contemplation which often had come to my thoughts in former time, when first I began to see the merciful dispositions of Heaven in the dangers we run through in this life; How wonderfully we are delivered when we know nothing of it: how, when we are in a quandary, as we call it, a doubt or hesitation whether to go this way or that way, a secret hint shall direct us this way when we intended to go that way; nay, when sense, our own inclination, and perhaps business, has called to go the other way, yet a strange impression upon the mind, from we know not what springs, and by we know not what power, shall overrule us to go this way; and it shall afterwards appear that had we gone that way which we should have gone, and even to our imagination ought to have gone, we should have been ruined and lost. Upon these and many like reflections, I afterwards made it a certain rule with me, that whenever I found those secret hints or pressings of my mind to doing or not doing anything that presented, or to going this way or that way, I never failed to obey the secret dictate, though I knew no other reason for it than that such a pressure or such a hint hung upon my mind. I could give many examples of the success of this conduct in the course of my life, but more especially in the latter part of my inhabiting this unhappy island, besides many occasions which it is very likely I might have taken notice of if I had seen with the same eyes then that I saw with now. But it is never too late to be wise; and I cannot but advise all considering men, whose lives are attended with such extraordinary incidents as mine, or even though not so extraordinary, not to slight such secret intimations of Providence. Let them come from what invisible intelligence they will—that I shall not discuss, and perhaps cannot account for—but certainly they are a proof of the converse of spirits, and the secret communication between those embodied and those unembodied, and such a proof as can never be withstood. Of which I shall have occasion to give some very remarkable instances in the remainder of my solitary residence in this dismal place.
I believe the reader of this will not think strange if I confess that these anxieties, these constant dangers I lived in, and the concern that was now upon me, put an end to all invention and to all the contrivances that I had laid for my future accommodations and conveniences. I had the care of my safety more now upon my hands than that of my food. I cared not to drive a nail or chop a stick of wood now, for fear the noise I should make should be heard; much less would I fire a gun, for the same reason. And, above all, I was intolerably uneasy at making any fire, lest the smoke, which is visible at a great distance in the day, should betray me; and for this reason I removed that part of my business which required fire, such as burning of pots and pipes, &c., into my new apartment in the woods, where, after I had been some time, I found to my unspeakable consolation a mere natural cave in the earth, which went in a vast way, and where, I dare say, no savage, had he been at the mouth of it, would be so hardy as to venture in, nor indeed would any man else; but one who, like me, wanted nothing so much as a safe retreat.

The mouth of this hollow was at the bottom of a great rock, where, by mere accident (I would say, if I did not see abundant reason to ascribe all such things now to Providence), I was cutting down some thick branches of trees to make charcoal. And before I go on I must observe the reason of my making this charcoal, which was thus:—

I was afraid of making a smoke about my habitation, as I said before; and yet I could not live there without baking my bread, cooking my meat, &c. So I contrived to burn some wood here, as I had seen done in England, under turf, till it became chark, or dry coal; and then putting the fire out, I preserved the coal to carry home and perform the other services which fire was wanting for at home without danger of smoke.

But this by-the-by. While I was cutting down some wood here, I perceived that behind a very thick branch of low brushwood or underwood there was a kind of hollow place. I was curious to look into it, and getting with difficulty into the mouth of it, I found it was pretty large; that is to say, sufficient for me to stand upright in it, and perhaps another with me. But I must confess
to you I made more haste out than I did in, when looking further into the place, and which was perfectly dark, I saw two broad shining eyes of some creature, whether devil or man I knew not, which twinkled like two stars, the dim light from the cave’s mouth shining directly in and making the reflection.

However, after some pause, I recovered myself, and began to call myself a thousand fools, and tell myself that he that was afraid to see the devil was not fit to live twenty years in an island all alone; and that I durst to believe there was nothing in this cave that was more frightful than myself. Upon this, plucking up my courage, I took up a great firebrand and in I rushed again, with the stick flaming in my hand. I had not gone three steps in but I was almost as much frightened as I was before; for I heard a very loud sigh, like that of a man in some pain; and it was followed by a broken noise, as if of words half expressed, and then a deep sigh again. I stepped back, and was indeed struck with such a surprise that it put me into a cold sweat; and if I had had a hat on my head, I will not answer for it that my hair might not have lifted it off! But still, plucking up my spirits as well as I could, and encouraging myself a little with considering that the power and presence of God was everywhere, and was able to protect me, upon this I stepped forward again, and by the light of the firebrand, holding it up a little over my head, I saw lying on the ground a most monstrous frightful old he-goat, just making his
DISCOVERS A CAVE. 187

will, as we say, and gasping for life, and dying indeed of mere old age.

I stirred him a little to see if I could get him out, and he essayed to get up, but was not able to raise himself. And I thought with myself he might even lie there; for if he had frightened me so, he would certainly fright any of the savages, if any of them should be so hardy as to come in there while he had any life in him.

I was now recovered from my surprise, and began to look round me, when I found the cave was but very small; that is to say, it might be about twelve foot over, but in no manner of shape, either round or square, no hands having ever been employed in making it but those of mere Nature. I observed also that there was a place at the farther side of it that went in farther, but was so low that it required me to creep upon my hands and knees to go into it, and whither I went I knew not. So, having no candle, I gave it over for some time, but resolved to come again the next day, provided with candles and a tinder-box, which I had made of the lock of one of the muskets, with some wildfire\(^1\) in the pan.

Accordingly, the next day I came provided with six large candles of my own making—for I made very good candles now of goat's tallow—and going into this low place, I was obliged to creep upon all-fours, as I have said, almost ten yards; which, by the way, I thought was a venture bold enough, considering that I knew not how far it might go, nor what was beyond it. When I was got through the strait I found the roof rose higher up—I believe near twenty foot. But never was such a glorious sight seen in the island, I dare say, as it was to look round the sides and roof of this vault or cave. The walls reflected a hundred thousand lights to me from my two candles. What it was in the rock, whether diamonds or any other precious stones, or gold, which I rather supposed it to be, I knew not.

The place I was in was a most delightful cavity or grotto of its kind as could be expected, though perfectly dark. The floor was dry and level, and had a sort of small loose gravel upon it, so that there was no nauseous or venomous creature to be seen, neither

\(^1\) Gunpowder wetted and made into a paste so that it burns more slowly, but can be lighted by a spark struck from a flint.
was there any damp or wet on the sides or roof. The only difficulty in it was the entrance, which, however, as it was a place of security, and such a retreat as I wanted, I thought that was a convenience; so that I was really rejoiced at the discovery, and resolved without any delay to bring some of those things which I was most anxious about to this place. Particularly, I resolved to bring hither my magazine of powder and all my spare arms—namely, two fowling-pieces, for I had three in all; and three muskets, for of them I had eight in all. So I kept at my castle only five, which stood ready mounted, like pieces of cannon, on my utmost fence, and were ready also to take out upon any expedition.

Upon this occasion of removing my ammunition, I took occasion to open the barrel of powder which I took up out of the sea, and which had been wet; and I found that the water had penetrated about three or four inches into the powder on every side, which, caking and growing hard, had preserved the inside like a kernel in a shell. So that I had near sixty pounds of very good powder in the centre of the cask, and this was an agreeable discovery to me at that time. So I carried all away thither, never keeping above two or three pound of powder with me in my castle for fear of a surprise of any kind. I also carried thither all the lead I had left, for bullets.

I fancied myself now like one of the ancient giants, which were said to live in caves and holes in the rocks, where none could come at them. For I persuaded myself, while I was here, if five hundred savages were to hunt me, they could never find me out; or if they did, they would not venture to attack me here.

The old goat, who I found expiring, died in the mouth of the cave the next day after I made this discovery; and I found it much easier to dig a great hole there, and throw him in and cover him with earth, than to drag him out. So I interred him there to prevent offence to my nose.

I was now in my twenty-third year of residence in this island, and was so naturalized to the place and to the manner of living, that could I have but enjoyed the certainty that no savages would come to the place to disturb me, I could have been content to
have capitulated for spending the rest of my time there even to
the last moment, till I had laid me down and died, like the old
goat in the cave. I had also arrived to some little diversions and
amusements, which made the time pass more pleasantly with me
a great deal than it did before. As first, I had taught my Poll,
as I noted before, to speak; and he did it so familiarly, and talked
so articulately and plain, that it was very pleasant to me: and he
lived with me no less than six-and-twenty years. How long he
might live afterwards I know not; though I know they have a
notion in the Brazils that they live a hundred years. Perhaps
poor Poll may be alive there still, calling after poor Robin
Crusoe to this day. I wish no Englishman the ill-luck to come
there and hear him; but if he did, he would certainly believe it
was the devil. My dog was a very pleasant and loving companion
to me for no less than sixteen years of my time, and then died of
mere old age. As for my cats, they multiplied, as I have observed,
to that degree that I was obliged to shoot several of them at first,
to keep them from devouring me and all I had. But at length,
when the two old ones I brought with me were gone, and after
some time continually driving them from me, and letting them
have no provision with me, they all ran wild into the woods except
two or three favourites, which I kept tame, and whose young,
when they had any, I always drowned. And these were part of
my family. Besides these, I always kept two or three household
kids about me, which I taught to feed out of my hand. And I
had two more parrots which talked pretty well, and would all call
Robin Crusoe, but none like my first. Nor indeed did I take the
pains with any of them that I had done with him. I had also
several tame sea-fowls, whose names I know not, which I caught
upon the shore and cut their wings. And the little stakes which
I had planted before my castle wall being now grown up to a good
thick grove, these fowls all lived among these low trees, and bred
there; which was very agreeable to me. So that, as I said above,
I began to be very well contented with the life I led, if it might
but have been secured from the dread of the savages.

But it was otherwise directed. And it may not be amiss for
all people who shall meet with my story to make this just obser-
vation from it—namely, how frequently in the course of our lives the evil which in itself we seek most to shun, and which, when we are fallen into is the most dreadful to us, is oftentimes the very means or door of our deliverance, by which alone we can be raised again from the affliction we are fallen into. I could give many examples of this in the course of my unaccountable life, but in nothing was it more particularly remarkable than in the circumstances of my last years of solitary residence in this island.

It was now the month of December, as I said above, in my twenty-third year; and this being the southern solstice,¹ for winter I cannot call it, was the particular time of my harvest, and required my being pretty much abroad in the fields: when going out pretty early in the morning, even before it was thorough daylight, I was surprised with seeing a light of some fire upon the shore, at a distance from me of about two mile, towards the end of the island where I had observed some savages had been as before; but not on the other side, but, to my great affliction, it was on my side of the island.

I was indeed terribly surprised at the sight, and stepped short within my grove, not daring to go out lest I might be surprised; and yet I had no more peace within, from the apprehensions I had that if these savages, in rambling over the island, should find my corn standing or cut, or any of my works and improvements, they would immediately conclude that there were people in the place, and would then never give over till they had found me out. In this extremity I went back directly to my castle, pulled up the ladder after me, and made all things without look as wild and natural as I could.

Then I prepared myself within, putting myself in a posture of defence. I loaded all my cannon, as I called them—that is to say, my muskets, which were mounted upon my new fortification—and all my pistols, and resolved to defend myself to the last gasp; not forgetting seriously to commend myself to the divine protection, and earnestly to pray to God to deliver me out of the

¹ Juan Fernandez, or Masatierra, the island of the Pacific which it is believed the author intended as the island of Robinson Crusoe, is situated in 33° 40′ S. latitude, and about 100° W. longitude.
hands of the barbarians. And in this posture I continued about two hours, but began to be mighty impatient for intelligence abroad, for I had no spies to send out.

After sitting a while longer, and musing what I should do in this case, I was not able to bear sitting in ignorance any longer; so setting up my ladder to the side of the hill, where there was a flat place, as I observed before, and then pulling the ladder up after me, I set it up again, and mounted to the top of the hill, and pulling out my perspective-glass, which I had taken on purpose, I laid me down flat on my belly on the ground, and began to look for the place. I presently found there was no less than nine naked savages, sitting round a small fire they had made, not to warm them, for they had no need of that, the weather being extreme hot, but, as I supposed, to dress some of their barbarous diet of human flesh, which they had brought with them, whether alive or dead I could not know.

1 *Posture, situation or condition.*
They had two canoes with them, which they had hauled up upon the shore; and as it was then tide of ebb, they seemed to me to wait for the return of the flood to go away again. It is not easy to imagine what confusion this sight put me into, especially seeing them come on my side the island, and so near me too; but when I observed their coming must be always with the current of the ebb, I began afterwards to be more sedate in my mind, being satisfied that I might go abroad with safety all the time of the tide of flood, if they were not on shore before. And having made this observation, I went abroad about my harvest-work with the more composure.

As I expected, so it proved; for as soon as the tide made to the westward, I saw them all take boat, and row, or paddle, as we call it, all away. I should have observed that for an hour and more before they went off they went to dancing, and I could easily discern their postures and gestures by my glasses. I could not perceive, by my nicest observation, but that they were stark naked, and had not the least covering upon them; but whether they were men or women, that I could not distinguish.

As soon as I saw them shipped and gone, I took two guns upon my shoulders, and two pistols at my girdle, and my great sword by my side without a scabbard, and with all the speed I was able to make, I went away to the hill where I had discovered the first appearance of all; and as soon as I got thither, which was not less than two hours (for I could not go apace, being so laden with arms as I was), I perceived there had been three canoes more of savages on that place; and looking out farther, I saw they were all at sea together, making over for the main.

This was a dreadful sight to me, especially when, going down to the shore, I could see the marks of horror which the dismal work they had been about had left behind it—namely, the blood, the bones, and part of the flesh of human bodies, eaten and devoured by those wretches with merriment and sport. I was so filled with indignation at the sight, that I began now to premeditate the destruction of the next that I saw there, let them be who or how many soever.

It seemed evident to me that the visits which they thus maka
to this island are not very frequent; for it was above fifteen months before any more of them came on shore there again;—that is to say, I never saw them, or any footsteps or signals of them, in all that time; for as to the rainy seasons, then they are sure not to come abroad, at least not so far. Yet all this while I lived uncomfortably, by reason of the constant apprehensions I was in of their coming upon me by surprise; from whence I observe that the expectation of evil is more bitter than the suffering, especially if there is no room to shake off that expectation or those apprehensions.

During all this time I was in the murdering humour, and took up most of my hours, which should have been better employed, in contriving how to circumvent and fall upon them the very next time I should see them, especially if they should be divided, as they were the last time, into two parties. Nor did I consider at all that if I killed one party—suppose ten or a dozen—I was still the next day, or week, or month, to kill another, and so another, even ad infinitum, till I should be at length no less a murderer than they were in being man-eaters, and perhaps much more so.

I spent my days now in great perplexity and anxiety of mind, expecting that I should one day or other fall into the hands of these merciless creatures; and if I did at any time venture abroad, it was not without looking round me with the greatest care and caution imaginable. And now I found to my great comfort how happy it was that I provided for a tame flock or herd of goats; for I durst not upon any account fire my gun, especially near that side of the island where they usually came, lest I should alarm the savages; and if they had fled from me now, I was sure to have them come back again, with perhaps two or three hundred canoes with them, in a few days, and then I knew what to expect.

However, I wore out a year and three months more before I ever saw any more of the savages, and then I found them again, as I shall soon observe. It is true they might have been there once or twice, but either they made no stay, or at least I did not hear them; but in the month of May, as near as I could calculate, and in my four-and-twentieth year, I had a very strange encounter with them, of which in its place.

(248)
The perturbation of my mind during this fifteen or sixteen months' interval was very great. I slept unquiet, dreamed always frightful dreams, and often started out of my sleep in the night. In the day great troubles overwhelmed my mind, and in the night I dreamed often of killing the savages, and of the reasons why I might justify the doing of it. But to waive all this for a while, it was in the middle of May, on the sixteenth day, I think, as well as my poor wooden calendar would reckon; for I marked all upon the post still. I say it was the sixteenth of May, that it blew a very great storm of wind all day, with a great deal of lightning and thunder, and a very foul night it was after it. I know not what was the particular occasion of it; but as I was reading in the Bible, and taken up with very serious thoughts about my present condition, I was surprised with a noise of a gun, as I thought, fired at sea.

This was, to be sure, a surprise of a quite different nature from any I had met with before; for the notions this put into my thoughts were quite of another kind. I started up in the greatest haste imaginable, and in a trice clapped my ladder to the middle place of the rock, and pulled it after me, and mounting it the second time, got to the top of the hill, the very moment that a flash of fire bid me listen for a second gun, which accordingly in about half a minute I heard, and by the sound knew that it was from that part of the sea where I was driven down the current in my boat.

I immediately considered that this must be some ship in distress, and that they had some comrade or some other ship in company, and fired these guns for signals of distress and to obtain help. I had this presence of mind at that minute as to think that though I could not help them, it may be they might help me; so I brought together all the dry wood I could get at hand, and making a good handsome pile, I set it on fire upon the hill. The wood was dry and blazed freely, and though the wind blew very hard, yet it burned fairly out, that I was certain if there was any such thing as a ship they must needs see it; and no doubt they did, for as soon as ever my fire blazed up I heard another gun, and after that several others, all from the same quarter. I plied my fire all night
long till day broke; and when it was broad day, and the air cleared up, I saw something at a great distance at sea, full east of the island, whether a sail or a hull I could not distinguish, no not with my glasses, the distance was so great, and the weather still something hazy also; at least, it was so out at sea.

I looked frequently at it all that day, and soon perceived that it did not move; so I presently concluded that it was a ship at an anchor; and being eager, you may be sure, to be satisfied, I took my gun in my hand, and ran toward the south side of the island, to the rocks where I had formerly been carried away with the current; and getting up there, the weather by this time being perfectly clear, I could plainly see, to my great sorrow, the wreck of a ship cast away in the night upon those concealed rocks which I found when I was out in my boat; and which rocks, as they checked the violence of the stream, and made a kind of counter-stream or eddy, were the occasion of my recovering from the most desperate hopeless condition that ever I had been in in all my life.

Thus, what is one man's safety is another man's destruction; for it seems these men, whoever they were, being out of their knowledge, and the rocks being wholly under water, had been driven upon them in the night, the wind blowing hard at east and east-north-east. Had they seen the island, as I must necessarily suppose they did not, they must, as I thought, have endeavoured to have saved themselves on shore by the help of their boat. But their firing of guns for help, especially when they saw, as I imagined, my fire, filled me with many thoughts. First, I imagined that upon seeing my light they might have put themselves into their boat, and have endeavoured to make the shore; but that the sea going very high, they might have been cast away. Other times I imagined that they might have lost their boat before, as might be the case many ways, as particularly by the breaking of the sea upon their ship, which many times obliges men to stave or take in pieces their boat, and sometimes to throw it overboard with their own hands. Other times I imagined they had some other ship or ships in company, who, upon the signals of distress they had made, had taken them up and carried them off.
THANKFULNESS TO GOD.

Other whiles I fancied they were all gone off to sea in the current that I had been in, were carried out into the great ocean, where there was misery and perishing, and that perhaps they might time think of starving, and of being in a condition to another.

As all these were but conjectures at best, so in the course of my voyage I could do no more than look on upon the miseries of men and pity them; which had still this good effect, that it gave me more and more cause to give thanks to him who had so happily and comfortingly provided for me in my condition; and that of two ships' companies who were away upon this part of the world, not one life should but mine. I learned here again to observe that it is that the providence of God casts us into any condition low, or any misery so great, but we may see something to be thankful for, and may see others in worse circumstances of our own.

Such certainly was the case of these men, of whom I so much as see room to suppose any of them were saved. I could make it rational, so much as to wish or expect that not all perish there, except the possibility only of their being picked up by another ship in company; and this was but mere speculation; indeed, for I saw not the least signal or appearance of thing.

I cannot explain by any possible energy of words what longing or hankering of desires I felt in my soul upon the breaking out sometimes thus: "Oh that there had been but two—one! or but one soul saved out of this ship, to have come to me; that I might but have had one companion, one creature to have spoken to me, and to have conversed with all the time of my solitary life I never felt so earnest, so desire after the society of my fellow-creatures, or so deep at the want of it.

There are some secret moving springs in the affection when they are set agoin' by some object in view, or by an object, though not in view, yet rendered present to the
the power of imagination, that motion carries out the soul by its impetuosity to such violent eager embracings of the object, that the absence of it is insupportable.

Such were these earnest wishings that but one man had been saved! "Oh, that it had been but one!" I believe I repeated the words, "Oh, that it had been but one!" a thousand times; and the desires were so moved by it, that when I spoke the words my hands would clinch together, and my fingers press the palms of my hands, that if I had had any soft thing in my hand, it would have crushed it involuntarily; and my teeth in my head would strike together, and set against one another so strong, that for some time I could not part them again.

Let the naturalists explain these things, and the reason and manner of them. All I can say to them is, to describe the fact, which was even surprising to me when I found it; though I knew not from what it should proceed. It was doubtless the effect of ardent wishes and of strong ideas formed in my mind, realizing the comfort which the conversation of one of my fellow-Christians would have been to me.

But it was not to be. Either their fate or mine, or both, forbid it; for until the last year of my being on this island, I never knew whether any were saved out of that ship or no; and had only the affliction some days after, to see the corpse of a drowned boy come on shore, at the end of the island which was next the shipwreck. He had on no clothes, but a seaman's waistcoat, a pair of open-kneed linen drawers, and a blue linen shirt; but nothing to direct me so much as to guess what nation he was of. He had nothing in his pocket but two pieces of eight and a tobacco pipe. The last was to me of ten times more value than the first.

It was now calm, and I had a great mind to venture out in my boat to this wreck; not doubting that I might find something on board that might be useful to me. But that did not altogether press me so much as the possibility that there might be yet some living creature on board, whose life I might not only save, but might, by saving that life, comfort my own to the last degree; and this thought clung so to my heart that I could not be quiet, night nor day, but I must venture out in my boat on board this
wreck; and committing the rest to God's providence, I thought the impression was so strong upon my mind that it could not be resisted, that it must come from some invisible direction, and that I should be wanting to myself if I did not go.

Under the power of this impression, I hastened back to my castle, prepared everything for my voyage, took a quantity of bread, a great pot for fresh water, a compass to steer by, a bottle of rum,—for I had still a great deal of that left,—a basket full of raisins. And thus loading myself with everything necessary, I went down to my boat, got the water out of her, and got her afloat, loaded all my cargo in her, and then went home again for more. My second cargo was a great bag full of rice, the umbrella to set up over my head for shade, another large pot full of fresh water, and about two dozen of my small loaves, or barley cakes, more than before, with a bottle of goat's milk, and a cheese; all which, with great labour and sweat, I brought to my boat; and praying to God to direct my voyage, I put out, and rowing or paddling the canoe along the shore, I came at last to the utmost point of the island on that side—namely, north-east. And now I was to launch out into the ocean, and either to venture, or not to venture. I looked on the rapid currents which ran constantly on both sides of the island, at a distance, and which were very terrible to me, from the remembrance of the hazard I had been in before, and my heart began to fail me; for I foresaw that if I was driven into either of those currents, I should be carried a vast way out to sea, and perhaps out of my reach or sight of the island again; and that then, as my boat was but small, if any little gale of wind should rise, I should be inevitably lost.

These thoughts so oppressed my mind, that I began to give over my enterprise, and having hauled my boat into a little creek on the shore, I stepped out, and sat me down upon a little rising bit of ground, very pensive and anxious, between fear and desire about my voyage; when, as I was musing, I could perceive that the tide was turned and the flood come on, upon which my going was for so many hours impracticable. Upon this, presently it occurred to me that I should go up to the highest piece of ground I could find, and observe, if I could, how the sets of the tide or currents
lays when the flood came in, that I might judge whether, if I was
driven one way out, I might not expect to be driven another way
home, with the same rapidness of the currents. This thought was
no sooner in my head, but I cast my eye upon a little hill, which
sufficiently overlooked the sea both ways, and from whence I had
a clear view of the currents, or sets of the tide, and which way I
was to guide myself in my return. Here I found that as the cur-
rent of the ebb set out close by the south point of the island, so
the current of the flood set in close by the shore of the north side,
and that I had nothing to do but to keep to the north of the island
in my return, and I should do well enough.

Encouraged with this observation, I resolved the next morning
to set out with the first of the tide; and reposing myself for the
night in the canoe, under the great watch-coat I mentioned, I
launched out. I made first a little out to sea full north, till I
began to feel the benefit of the current, which set eastward, and
which carried me at a great rate, and yet did not so hurry me as
the southern side current had done before, and so as to take from
me all government of the boat; but having a strong steerage with
my paddle, I went at a great rate, directly for the wreck, and in
less than two hours I came up to it.

It was a dismal sight to look at. The ship, which by its build-
ing was Spanish, stuck fast, jammed in between two rocks; all
the stern and quarter of her was beaten to pieces with the sea;
and as her forecastle, which stuck in the rocks, had run on with
great violence, her mainmast and foremast were brought by the
board—that is to say, broken short off; but her boltsprit was
sound, and the head and bow appeared firm. When I came close to
her, a dog appeared upon her, who seeing me coming, yelped and
cried; and as soon as I called him, jumped into the sea to come
to me, and I took him into the boat, but found him almost dead
for hunger and thirst. I gave him a cake of my bread, and he
teat it like a ravenous wolf that had been starving a fortnight
in the snow. I then gave the poor creature some fresh water,
with which, if I would have let him, he would have burst himself.

After this I went on board; but the first sight I met with was
two men drowned in the cook-room, or forecastle of the ship,
with their arms fast about one another. I concluded, as is indeed probable, that when the ship struck, it being in a storm, the sea broke so high and so continually over her, that the men were not able to bear it, and were strangled with the constant rushing in of the water, as much as if they had been under water. Besides the dog, there was nothing left in the ship that had life; nor any goods that I could see, but what were spoiled by the water. There were some casks of liquor—whether wine or brandy, I knew not—which lay lower in the hold, and which, the water being ebbed out, I could see; but they were too big to meddle with. I saw several chests, which I believed belonged to some of the seamen, and I got two of them into the boat, without examining what was in them.

Had the stern of the ship been fixed and the fore part broken off, I am persuaded I might have made a good voyage; for by what I found in these two chests, I had room to suppose the ship had a great deal of wealth on board; and if I may guess by the course she steered, she must have been bound from the Buenos Ayres or the Rio de la Plata, in the south part of America, beyond the Brazils, to the Havannah, in the Gulf of Mexico, and so, perhaps, to Spain. She had, no doubt, a great treasure in her, but of no use at that time to anybody; and what became of the rest of her people I then knew not.

I found, besides these chests, a little cask full of liquor, of about twenty gallons, which I got into my boat with much difficulty. There were several muskets in a cabin, and a great powder-horn, with about four pounds of powder in it. As for the muskets, I had no occasion for them—so I left them; but took the powder-horn. I took a fire-shovel and tongs, which I wanted extremely; as also two little brass kettles, a copper pot to make chocolate, and a gridiron. And with this cargo and the dog I came away, the tide beginning to make home again. And the same evening, about an hour within night, I reached the island again, weary and fatigued to the last degree.

I reposed that night in the boat, and in the morning I resolved to harbour what I had gotten in my new cave, not to carry it home to my castle. After refreshing myself, I got all my cargo on shore,
and began to examine the particulars. The cask of liquor I found to be a kind of rum, but not such as we had at the Brazils—and, in a word, not at all good; but when I came to open the chests, I found several things of great use to me. For example, I found in one a fine case of bottles, of an extraordinary kind, and filled with cordial waters, fine, and very good; the bottles held about three pints each, and were tipped with silver: I found two pots of very good succades, or sweetmeats, so fastened also on top that the salt water had not hurt them; and two more of the same which the water had spoiled: I found some very good shirts, which were very welcome to me, and about a dozen and half of linen white handkerchiefs, and coloured neckcloths—the former were also very welcome, being exceeding refreshing to wipe my face in a hot day: besides this, when I came to the till in the chests, I found there three great bags of pieces of eight, which held out about eleven hundred pieces in all; and in one of them, wrapped up in a paper, six doubloons of gold,\textsuperscript{1} and some small bars or wedges of gold; I suppose they might all weigh near a pound.

The other chest I found had some clothes in it, but of little value; but by the circumstances it must have belonged to the

\textsuperscript{1}Spanish gold doubloons are worth about 65s. English, or at that time three guineas. Pieces of eight were Spanish coins of Peru and Mexico, worth about 4s. 4d. to 4s. 6d. each.
gunner's mate, though there was no powder in it but about two pound of fine glazed powder in three small flasks, kept, I suppose, for charging their fowling-pieces on occasion. Upon the whole, I got very little by this voyage that was of any use to me: for as to the money, I had no manner of occasion for it; it was to me as the dirt under my feet; and I would have given it all for three or four pair of English shoes and stockings, which were things I greatly wanted, but had not had on my feet now for many years. I had, indeed, gotten two pair of shoes now, which I took off of the feet of the two drowned men who I saw in the wreck; and I found two pair more in one of the chests, which were very welcome to me; but they were not like our English shoes, either for ease or service, being rather what we call pumps than shoes. I found in this seaman's chest about fifty pieces of eight in royals, but no gold. I suppose this belonged to a poorer man than the other, which seemed to belong to some officer.

Well, however, I lugged this money home to my cave, and laid it up, as I had done that before which I brought from our own ship; but it was great pity, as I said, that the other part of this ship had not come to my share—for I am satisfied I might have loaded my canoe several times over with money, which, if I had ever escaped to England, would have lain here safe enough till I might have come again and fetched it.

Having now brought all my things on shore and secured them, I went back to my boat, and rowed or paddled her along the shore to her old harbour, where I laid her up, and made the best of my way to my old habitation, where I found everything safe and quiet: so I began to repose myself, live after my old fashion, and take care of my family affairs; and for a while I lived easy enough; only that I was more vigilant than I used to be, looked out oftener, and did not go abroad so much; and if at any time I did stir with any freedom, it was always to the east part of the island, where I was pretty well satisfied the savages never came, and where I could go without so many precautions, and such a load of arms and ammunition, as I always carried with me if I went the other way.

I lived in this condition near two years more. But my unlucky
head, that was always to let me know it was born to make my body miserable, was all the two years filled with projects and designs how, if it were possible, I might get away from this island: for sometimes I was for making another voyage to the wreck, though my reason told me that there was nothing left there worth the hazard of my voyage; sometimes for a ramble one way, sometimes another; and I believe verily, if I had had the boat that I went from Sallee in, I should have ventured to sea, bound anywhere, I knew not whither.

I have been, in all my circumstances, a memento to those who are touched with the general plague of mankind, whence, for aught I know, one-half of their miseries flow—I mean, that of not being satisfied with the station wherein God and nature hath placed them. For, not to look back upon my primitive condition, and the excellent advice of my father, the opposition to which was, as I may call it, my original sin; my subsequent mistakes of the same kind had been the means of my coming into this miserable condition: for had that Providence which so happily had seated me at the Brazils as a planter, blessed me with confined desires, and I could have been contented to have gone on gradually, I might have been by this time, I mean in the time of my being in this island, one of the most considerable planters in the Brazila. Nay, I am persuaded that, by the improvements I had made in that little time I lived there, and the increase I should probably have made if I had stayed, I might have been worth a hundred thousand moidores. And what business had I to leave a settled fortune, a well-stocked plantation, improving and increasing, to turn supercargo to Guinea to fetch negroes, when patience and time would have so increased our stock at home that we could have bought them at our own door from those whose business it was to fetch them? And though it had cost us something more, yet the difference of that price was by no means worth saving at so great a hazard.

But as this is ordinarily the fate of young heads, so reflection upon the folly of it is as ordinarily the exercise of more years or of the dear-bought experience of time. And so it was with me now. And yet so deep had the mistake taken root in my temper
that I could not satisfy myself in my station, but was continually poring upon the means and possibility of my escape from this place. And that I may, with the greater pleasure to the reader, bring on the remaining part of my story, it may not be improper to give some account of my first conceptions on the subject of this foolish scheme for my escape, and how and upon what foundation I acted.

I am now to be supposed retired into my castle after my late voyage to the wreck, my frigate laid up and secured under water as usual, and my condition restored to what it was before. I had more wealth, indeed, than I had before, but was not at all the richer: for I had no more use for it than the Indians of Peru had before the Spaniards came there.

It was one of the nights in the rainy season in March, the four-and-twentieth year of my first setting foot in this island of solitariness. I was lying in my bed or hammock awake, very well in health; had no pain, no distemper, no uneasiness of body; no, nor any uneasiness of mind, more than ordinary: but could by no means close my eyes; that is, so as to sleep; no, not a wink all night long: otherwise that as follows.

It is as impossible as needless to set down the innumerable crowd of thoughts that whirled through that great thoroughfare of the brain, the memory, in this night's time. I ran over the whole history of my life in miniature, or by abridgment, as I may call it, to my coming to this island, and also of the part of my life since I came to this island. In my reflections upon the state of my case since I came on shore on this island, I was comparing the happy posture of my affairs in the first years of my habitation here, compared to the life of anxiety, fear, and care which I had lived ever since I had seen the print of a foot in the sand. Not that I did not believe the savages had frequented the island even all the while, and might have been several hundreds of them at times on shore there; but I had never known it, and was incapable of any apprehensions about it. My satisfaction was perfect, though my danger was the same; and I was as happy in not knowing my danger as if I had never really been exposed to it. This furnished my thoughts with many very profitable reflections, and particularly
this one: How infinitely good that Providence is which has pro-
vided, in its government of mankind, such narrow bounds to his
sight and knowledge of things; and though he walks in the midst
of so many thousand dangers, the sight of which, if discovered to
him, would distract his mind and sink his spirits, he is kept serene
and calm by having the events of things hid from his eyes, and
knowing nothing of the dangers which surround him.

After these thoughts had for some time entertained me, I came
to reflect seriously upon the real danger I had been in for so many
years in this very island, and how I had walked about in the
greatest security and with all possible tranquillity, even when
perhaps nothing but a brow of a hill, a great tree, or the casual
approach of night, had been between me and the worst kind of
destruction; namely, that of falling into the hands of cannibals and
savages, who would have seized on me with the same view as I
did of a goat or a turtle, and have thought it no more a crime to
kill and devour me than I did of a pigeon or a curlew. I would
unjustly slander myself if I should say I was not sincerely thank-
ful to my great Preserver, to whose singular protection I acknow-
ledged, with great humility, that all these unknown deliverances
were due, and without which I must inevitably have fallen into
their merciless hands.

When these thoughts were over, my head was for some time
taken up in considering the nature of these wretched creatures, I
mean, the savages; and how it came to pass in the world that the
wise Governor of all things should give up any of his creatures to
such inhumanity, nay, to something so much below even brutality
itself, as to devour its own kind. But as this ended in some, at
that time fruitless, speculations, it occurred to me to inquire what
part of the world these wretches lived in; how far off the coast
was from whence they came; what they ventured over so far from
home for; what kind of boats they had; and why I might not
order myself and my business so that I might be as able to go
over thither as they were to come to me.

I never so much as troubled myself to consider what I should
do with myself when I came thither, what would become of me if
I fell into the hands of the savages, or how I should escape from
Mental Excitement.

them if they attempted me; no, nor so much as how it was possible for me to reach the coast and not be attempted by some or other of them without any possibility of delivering myself; and if I should not fall into their hands, what I should do for provision, or whither I should bend my course;—none of these thoughts, I say, so much as came in my way, but my mind was wholly bent upon the notion of my passing over in my boat to the mainland. I looked back upon my present condition as the most miserable that could possibly be: that I was not able to throw myself into anything but death that could be called worse; that if I reached the shore of the main I might perhaps meet with relief, or I might coast along, as I did on the shore of Africk, till I came to some inhabited country, and where I might find some relief; and, after all, perhaps I might fall in with some Christian ship that might take me in; and if the worse came to the worst I could but die, which would put an end to all these miseries at once. Pray note, all this was the fruit of a disturbed mind, an impatient temper, made as it were desperate by the long continuance of my troubles, and the disappointments I had met in the wreck I had been on board of, and where I had been so near the obtaining what I so earnestly longed for, namely, somebody to speak to, and to learn some knowledge from of the place where I was, and of the probable means of my deliverance: I say, I was agitated wholly by these thoughts; all my calm of mind in my resignation to Providence, and waiting the issue of the dispositions of Heaven, seemed to be suspended; and I had, as it were, no power to turn my thoughts to anything but to the project of a voyage to the main, which came upon me with such force and such an impetuosity of desire that it was not to be resisted.

When this had agitated my thoughts for two hours or more with such violence that it set my very blood into a ferment, and my pulse beat as high as if I had been in a fever, merely with the extraordinary fervour of my mind about it—nature, as if I had been fatigued and exhausted with the very thought of it, threw me into a sound sleep. One would have thought I should have dreamed of it; but I did not, nor of anything relating to it. But I dreamed that as I was going out in the morning as usual from
my castle, I saw upon the shore two canoes and eleven savages
coming to land, and that they brought with them another savage;
who they were going to kill in order to eat him; when on a
sudden the savage that they were going to kill jumped away and
ran for his life. And I thought in my sleep that he came running
into my little thick grove before my fortification to hide himself;
and that I, seeing him alone, and not perceiving that the others
sought him that way, showed myself to him, and, smiling upon
him, encouraged him: that he kneeled down to me, seeming to
pray me to assist him; upon which I showed my ladder, made him
go up, and carried him into my cave, and he became my servant:
and that, as soon as I had gotten this man I said to myself; Now
I may certainly venture to the mainland, for this fellow will serve
me as a pilot, and will tell me what to do, and whither to go for
provisions, and whither not to go for fear of being devoured; what
places to venture into, and what to escape.—I waked with this
thought, and was under such inexpressible impressions of joy at
the prospect of my escape in my dream, that the disappointments
which I felt upon coming to myself and finding it was no more
than a dream were equally extravagant the other way, and threw
me into a very great dejection of spirit.

Upon this, however, I made this conclusion, that my only way
to go about an attempt for an escape was, if possible, to get a
savage into my possession, and, if possible, it should be one of
their prisoners who they had condemned to be eaten and should
bring thither to kill. But these thoughts still were attended with
this difficulty, that it was impossible to effect this without attacking
a whole caravan of them, and killing them all. And this was
not only a very desperate attempt and might miscarry, but, on the
other hand, I had greatly scrupled the lawfulness of it to me; and
my heart trembled at the thoughts of shedding so much blood,
though it was for my deliverance. I need not repeat the argu-
tments which occurred to me against this, they being the same
mentioned before. But though I had other reasons to offer now
—namely, that those men were enemies to my life, and would
devour me if they could; that it was self-preservation in the
highest degree to deliver myself from this death of a life, and was
acting in my own defence as much as if they were actually assaulting me, and the like;—I say, though these things argued for it, yet the thoughts of shedding human blood for my deliverance were very terrible to me, and such as I could by no means reconcile myself to a great while.

However, at last, after many secret disputes with myself, and after great perplexities about it—for all these arguments one way and another struggled in my head a long time—the eager, prevailing desire of deliverance at length mastered all the rest, and I resolved, if possible, to get one of those savages into my hands, cost what it would. My next thing then was to contrive how to do it; and this, indeed, was very difficult to resolve on. But as I could pitch upon no probable means for it, so I resolved to put myself upon the watch to see them when they came on shore, and leave the rest to the event, taking such measures as the opportunity should present, let be what would be.

With these resolutions in my thoughts, I set myself upon the scout as often as possible; and indeed so often till I was heartily tired of it, for it was above a year and half that I waited, and for great part of that time went out to the west end and to the south-west corner of the island almost every day to see for canoes, but none appeared. This was very discouraging, and began to trouble me much; though I cannot say that it did in this case as it had done some time before that—namely, wear off the edge of my desire to the thing. But the longer it seemed to be delayed, the more eager I was for it: in a word, I was not at first so careful to shun the sight of these savages, and avoid being seen by them, as I was now eager to be upon them.

Besides, I fancied myself able to manage one, nay, two or three savages, if I had them, so as to make them entirely slaves to me, to do whatever I should direct them, and to prevent their being able at any time to do me any hurt. It was a great while that I pleased myself with this affair; but nothing still presented. All my fancies and schemes came to nothing, for no savages came near me for a great while.

About a year and half after I had entertained these notions, and by long musing had, as it were, resolved them all into nothing
THE SAVAGES LAND.

of an occasion to put them in execution, I was surprised
ning early with seeing no less than five canoes all on shore
on my side the island, and the people who belonged to
landed and out of my sight! The number of them broke
measures; for seeing so many, and knowing that they
ame four or six, or sometimes more, in a boat, I could not
it to think of it, or how to take my measures to attack
or thirty men single-handed; so I lay still in my castle,
and discomforted. However, I put myself into all the
tures for an attack that I had formerly provided, and was
ly for action if anything had presented. Having waited
while, listening to hear if they made any noise, at length,
my impatient, I set my guns at the foot of my ladder, and
ed up to the top of the hill by my two stages, as usual;
so, however, that my head did not appear above the hill,
hey could not perceive me by any means. Here I observed,
elp of my perspective-glass, that they were no less than
number, that they had a fire kindled, that they had had
ased. How they had cooked it, that I knew not, or what
but they were all dancing, in I know not how many bar-
estures and figures, their own way round the fire.
I was thus looking on them I perceived by my perspec-
o miserable wretches dragged from the boats, where it
hey were laid by, and were now brought out for the
. I perceived one of them immediately fell, being
down, I suppose, with a club or wooden sword,—for that
way,—and two or three others were at work immediately
him open for their cookery, while the other victim was
ring by himself till they should be ready for him. In
moment this poor wretch, seeing himself a little at
ature inspired him with hopes of life, and he started
them, and ran with incredible swiftness along the sands
towards me; I mean, towards that part of the coast where
ation was.

dreadfully frightened, that I must acknowledge, when I
him to run my way; and especially when, as I thought,
 pursued by the whole body; and now I expected that
part of my dream was coming to pass, and that he would cer-
take shelter in my grove; but I could not depend by any
upon my dream for the rest of it—namely, that the other as
would not pursue him thither and find him there. Howe-
kept my station, and my spirits began to recover when I
that there were not above three men that followed him; and
more was I encouraged, when I found that he outstripped
exceedingly in running, and gained ground of them, so that
could but hold it for half an hour, I saw easily he would fair
away from them all.

There was between them and my castle the creek, which I
ioned often at the first part of my story, when I landed m
goes out of the ship; and this I saw plainly he must neces
swim over, or the poor wretch would be taken there. But
the savage escaping came thither, he made nothing of it, th
the tide was then up, but plunging in, swam through in
thirty strokes or thereabouts, landed and ran on with exes
strength and swiftness. When the three persons came t
creek, I found that two of them could swim, but the third
not, and that standing on the other side, he looked at the
but went no farther; and soon after went softly back again,
as it happened, was very well for him in the main.

I observed that the two who swam were yet more th
as long swimming over the creek as the fellow was that fled
them. It came now very warmly upon my thoughts, and ir
 irresistibly, that now was my time to get me a servant, an
haps a companion or assistant; and that I was called plain
Providence to save this poor creature's life. I immediate
down the ladders with all possible expedition, fetches m
guns, for they were both but at the foot of the ladders
observed above; and getting up again with the same haste
of the hill, I crossed toward the sea; and having a very
cut and all down hill, clapped myself in the way between th
suers and the pursued; halloowing aloud to him that fled,
looking back, was at first perhaps as much frightened at
at them: but I beckoned with my hand to him to come
and in the meantime I slowly advanced towards the two ti
CRUSOE MEETS FRIDAY.

lowed; then rushing at once upon the foremost, I knocked him down with the stock of my piece. I was loath to fire, because I would not have the rest hear; though at that distance it would not have been easily heard, and being out of sight of the smoke too, they would not have easily known what to make of it. Hav-

ing knocked this fellow down, the other who pursued with him stopped, as if he had been frightened, and I advanced apace towards him; but as I came nearer, I perceived presently he had a bow and arrow, and was fitting it to shoot at me; so I was then necessitated to shoot at him first, which I did and killed him at the first shoot. The poor savage who fled, but had stopped, though he saw both his enemies fallen, and killed, as he thought, yet was so frightened with the fire and noise of my piece, that he stood stockstill, and neither came forward nor went backward, though

"He stood trembling, as if he had been taken prisoner."

he seemed rather inclined to fly still than to come on. I hallooed again to him, and made signs to come forward, which he easily understood, and came a little way, then stopped again, and then a little farther, and stopped again, and I could then perceive that he stood trembling, as if he had been taken prisoner, and had just been to be killed as his two enemies were. I beckoned him again to come to me, and gave him all the signs of encouragement that I could think of, and he came nearer and nearer, kneeling down every ten or twelve steps in token of acknowledgment for my saving his life. I smiled at him, and looked pleasantly, and beckoned to him to come still nearer. At length he came close to me, and then he kneeled down again, kissed the ground, and laid his head upon the ground, and taking me by the foot, set my foot upon his head: this, it seems, was in token of swearing to be my slave for ever. I took him up and made much of him, and encouraged him all I could. But there was more work to do yet; for I perceived the savage whom I knocked down was not killed, but stunned, with the blow, and began to come to himself; so I pointed to him, and showing him the savage, that he was not dead. Upon this he spoke some words to me, and though I could not understand them yet I thought they were pleasant to hear, for they were the first sound of a man's voice that I had heard, my own excepted, for above twenty-five years. But there was no time for such reflections now. The savage who was knocked down recovered himself so far as to sit up upon the ground, and I perceived that my savage began to be afraid; but when I saw that, I presented my other piece at the man, as if I would shoot him. Upon this my savage, for so I called him now, made a motion to me to lend him my sword, which hung naked in a belt by my side; so I did. He no sooner had it, but he runs to his enemy, and at one blow cut off his head as cleverly, no executioner in Germany could have done it sooner or better; which I thought very strange for one who I had reason to believe never saw a sword in his life before, except their own wooden swords. However, it seems, as I learned afterwards, they made their wooden swords so sharp, so heavy, and the wood is so hard, that they will cut off heads even with them, ay, and arms, and that at one blow.
THE SAVAGES BURIED.

When he had done this, he comes laughing to me in sign of 
the, and brought me the sword again, and with abundance of 
as, which I did not understand, laid it down with the head 
savage that he had killed just before me.

that which astonished him most, was to know how I had 
the other Indian so far off. So pointing to him, he made 
o me to let him go to him; so I bade him go as well as I

When he came to him he stood like one amazed, looking 
turned him first on one side, then on the other, looked at 
the bullet had made, which it seems was just in his

where it had made a hole, and no great quantity of blood
flowed; but he had bled inwardly, for he was quite dead.

k up his bow and arrows and came back, so I turned to go
and beckoned to him to follow me, making signs to him
ore might come after them.

in this he signed to me that he should bury them with sand,
ey might not be seen by the rest if they followed; and so
signs again to him to do so. He fell to work, and in an

he had scraped a hole in the sand with his hands, big
to bury the first in, and then dragged him into it, and

him, and did so also by the other. I believe he had
them both in a quarter of an hour. Then calling him away

him, not to my castle, but quite away to my cave, on the
part of the island. So I did not let my dream come to
that part; namely, that he came into my grove for shelter.

I gave him bread and a bunch of raisins to eat, and a

of water, which I found he was indeed in great distress
his running. And having refreshed him, I made signs for
go lie down and sleep, pointing to a place where I had laid

parcel of rice straw, and a blanket upon it, which I used to
pon myself sometimes; so the poor creature lay down and

sleep.

was a comely, handsome fellow, perfectly well made, with
strong limbs, not too large, tall and well shaped, and as I
about twenty-six years of age. He had a very good coun-
not a fierce and surly aspect; but seemed to have some-
ery manly in his face; and yet he had all the sweetness and
"He buried them both in a quarter of an hour."

but of a bright kind of a dun olive colour, that had in it something very agreeable, though not very easy to describe. His was round and plump; his nose small, not flat like the negro.
last he lays his head flat upon the ground, close to my foot, and sets my other foot upon his head, as he had done before; and after this made all the signs to me of subjection, servitude, and submission imaginable, to let me know how he would serve me as long as he lived. I understood him in many things, and let him know I was very well pleased with him. In a little time I began to speak to him, and teach him to speak to me. And first, I made him know his name should be Friday, which was the day I saved his life. I called him so for the memory of the time. I likewise taught him to say Master, and then let him know that was to be my name. I likewise taught him to say Yes and No, and to know the meaning of them. I gave him some milk in an earthen pot, and let him see me drink it before him, and sop my bread in it. And I gave him a cake of bread to do the like, which he quickly complied with, and made signs that it was very good for him.

I kept there with him all that night; but as soon as it was day I beckoned to him to come with me, and let him know I would give him some clothes; at which he seemed very glad, for he was stark naked. As we went by the place where he had buried the two men he pointed exactly to the place, and showed me the marks that he had made to find them again, making signs to me that we should dig them up again and eat them! At this I appeared very angry, expressed my abhorrence of it, made as if I would vomit at the thoughts of it, and beckoned with my hand to him to come away; which he did immediately, with great submission. I then led him up to the top of the hill, to see if his enemies were gone; and, pulling out my glass, I looked and saw plainly the place where they had been, but no appearance of them, or of their canoes; so that it was plain that they were gone, and had left their two comrades behind them, without any search after them.

But I was not content with this discovery; but having now more courage, and consequently more curiosity, I takes my man Friday with me, giving him the sword in his hand with the bow and arrows at his back, which I found he could use very dexterously, making him carry one gun for me, and I two for myself, and away we marched to the place where these creatures had been,
for I had a mind now to get some fuller intelligence of them. When I came to the place, my very blood ran chill in my veins, and my heart sunk within me at the horror of the spectacle. Indeed it was a dreadful sight—at least it was so to me; though Friday made nothing of it. The place was covered with human bones, the ground dyed with their blood, great pieces of flesh left here and there, half-eaten, mangled and scorched; and, in short, all the tokens of the triumphant feast they had been making there, after a victory over their enemies. I saw three skulls, five hands, and the bones of three or four legs and feet, and abundance of other parts of the bodies; and Friday, by his signs, made me understand that they brought over four prisoners to feast upon; that three of them were eaten up, and that he, pointing to himself, was the fourth: That there had been a great battle between them and their next king, whose subjects it seems he had been one of; and that they had taken a great number of prisoners, all which were carried to several places by those that had taken them in the fight, in order to feast upon them, as was done here by these wretches upon those they brought hither.

I caused Friday to gather all the skulls, bones, flesh, and whatever remained, and lay them together on a heap, and make a great fire upon it, and burn them all to ashes. I found Friday had still a hankering stomach after some of the flesh, and was still a cannibal in his nature; but I discovered so much abhorrence at the very thoughts of it, and at the least appearance of it, that he durst not discover it; for I had by some means let him know that I would kill him if he offered it.

When we had done this, we came back to our castle, and there I fell to work for my man Friday; and first of all I gave him a pair of linen drawers, which I had out of the poor gunner's chest I mentioned, and which I found in the wreck, and which with a little alteration fitted him very well. Then I made him a jerkin of goat-skin, as well as my skill would allow, and I was now grown a tolerable good tailor; and I gave him a cap which I had made of a hare-skin, very convenient and fashionable enough; and thus he was clothed for the present tolerably well, and was mighty well pleased to see himself almost as well clothed as his master. It is
CRUSOE’S PRECAUTIONS.

true, he went awkwardly in these things at first: wearing the drawers was very awkward to him, and the sleeves of the waistcoat galled his shoulders and the inside of his arms; but a little easing them where he complained they hurt him, and using himself to them, at length he took to them very well.

The next day after I came home to my hutch with him, I began to consider where I should lodge him; and that I might do well for him, and yet be perfectly easy myself, I made a little tent for him in the vacant place between my two fortifications, in the inside of the last, and in the outside of the first. And as there was a door or entrance there into my cave, I made a formal framed door-case, and a door to it of boards, and set it up in the passage, a little within the entrance; and causing the door to open on the inside, I barred it up in the night, taking in my ladders too; so that Friday could no way come at me in the inside of my innermost wall without making so much noise in getting over, that it must needs waken me. For my first wall had now a complete roof over it of long poles covering all my tent, and leaning up to the side of the hill, which was again laid cross with smaller sticks instead of laths, and then thatched over a great thickness with the rice straw, which was strong like reeds; and at the hole or place which was left to go in or out by the ladder, I had placed a kind of trap-door, which, if it had been attempted on the outside, would not have opened at all, but would have fallen down and made a great noise; and as to weapons, I took them all in to my side every night.

But I needed none of all this precaution; for never man had a more faithful, loving, sincere servant than Friday was to me; without passions, sullenness, or designs, perfectly obliged and engaged; his very affections were tied to me, like those of a child to a father, and I daresay he would have sacrificed his life for the saving mine upon any occasion whatsoever. The many testimonies he gave me of this, put it out of doubt, and soon convinced me that I needed to use no precautions as to my safety on his account.

This frequently gave me occasion to observe, and that with wonder, that however it had pleased God, in his providence, and
in the government of the works of his hands, to take from so great a part of the world of his creatures the best uses to which their faculties and the powers of their souls are adapted; yet that he has bestowed upon them the same powers, the same reason, the same affections, the same sentiments of kindness and obligation, the same passions and resentments of wrongs, the same sense of gratitude, sincerity, fidelity, and all the capacities of doing good and receiving good, that he has given to us; and that when he pleases to offer to them occasions of exerting these, they are as ready, nay, more ready, to apply them to the right uses for which they were bestowed than we are. And this made me very melancholy sometimes, in reflecting, as the several occasions presented, how mean a use we make of all these, even though we have these powers enlightened by the great Lamp of instruction, the Spirit of God, and by the knowledge of his Word, added to our understanding; and why it has pleased God to hide the like saving knowledge from so many millions of souls, who, if I might judge by this poor savage, would make a much better use of it than we did.

From hence I sometimes was led too far, to invade the sovereignty of Providence, and, as it were, arraign the justice of so arbitrary a disposition of things, that should hide that light from some, and reveal it to others, and yet expect a like duty from both. But I shut it up, and checked my thoughts with this conclusion: first, That we did not know by what light and law these should be condemned; but that as God was necessarily, and by the nature of his being, infinitely holy and just, so it could not be but that if these creatures were all sentenced to absence from himself, it was on account of sinning against that light which, as the Scripture says, was a law to themselves; and by such rules as their consciences would acknowledge to be just, though the foundation was not discovered to us. And, secondly, That still as we are all the clay in the hand of the Potter, no vessel could say to him, Why hast thou formed me thus?

But to return to my new companion. I was greatly delighted with him, and made it my business to teach him everything that was proper to make him useful, handy, and helpful; but especially to make him speak, and understand me when I spake: and he was
st scholar that ever was, and particularly was so merry, so
diligent, and so pleased, when he could but understand
me to understand him, that it was very pleasant to me
him. And now my life began to be so easy; that I began
to myself, that could I but have been safe from more
I cared not if I was never to remove from the place while

I had been two or three days returned to my castle, I
that, in order to bring Friday off from his horrid way of
and from the relish of a cannibal’s stomach, I ought to let
other flesh; so I took him out with me one morning to
day. I went, indeed, intending to kill a kid out of my own
and bring him home and dress it; but, as I was going, I saw
at lying down in the shade, and two young kids sitting
I caught hold of Friday. “Hold,” says I, “stand still;”
de signs to him not to stir. Immediately I presented my
hot, and killed one of the kids. The poor creature, who
a distance indeed seen me kill the savage his enemy, but
know, or could imagine, how it was done, was sensibly
trembled, and shook, and looked so amazed, that I
he would have sunk down. He did not see the kid I had
or perceive I had killed it, but ripped up his waistcoat to
was not wounded, and, as I found, presently thought I
olved to kill him; for he came and kneeled down to me,
bracing my knees, said a great many things I did not
and, but I could easily see that the meaning was to pray
to kill him.

I found a way to convince him that I would do him no
taking him up by the hand, laughed at him, and point-
the kid which I had killed, beckoned to him to run and
which he did; and while he was wondering and looking
how the creature was killed, I loaded my gun again, and
by I saw a great fowl like a hawk sit upon a tree within
o, to let Friday understand a little what I would do, I
im to me again, pointing at the fowl, which was indeed a
though I thought it had been a hawk. I say, pointing to
rot, and to my gun, and to the ground under the parrot,
to let him see I would make it fall, I made him understand I would shoot and kill that bird. Accordingly I fired, so that he saw the parrot fall. He was frightened again, notwithstanding all I had said to him. I found he was the more amazed because he did not see anything into the gun, but thought that there must

"The poor creature trembled and shook."

wonderful fund of death and destruction in that thing, a by man, beast, bird, or anything, near or far off; and the ment this created in him was such as could not wear long time; and I believe, if I would have let him, he would worshipped me and my gun! As for the gun itself, he was so much as touch it for several days after; but would speak and talk to it as if it had answered him, when he was by which, as I afterwards learned of him, was to desire it in him.
HE IS SET TO WORK.

Well, after his astonishment was a little over at this, I pointed to him to run and fetch the bird I had shot; which he did, but stayed some time; for the parrot, not being quite dead, was fluttered a good way off from the place where she fell; however, he found her, took her up, and brought her to me; and, as I had perceived his ignorance about the gun before, I took this advantage to charge the gun again, and not let him see me do it, that I might be ready for any other mark that might present. But nothing more offered at that time; so I brought home the kid, and the same evening I took the skin off, and cut it out as well as I could; and having a pot for that purpose, I boiled or stewed some of the flesh, and made some very good broth; and after I had begun to eat some, I gave some to my man, who seemed very glad of it, and liked it very well. But that which was strangest to him was to see me eat salt with it. He made a sign to me that the salt was not good to eat, and putting a little into his own mouth, he seemed to nauseate it, and would spit and sputter at it, washing his mouth with fresh water after it. On the other hand, I took some meat in my mouth without salt, and I pretended to spit and sputter for want of salt as fast as he had done at the salt. But it would not do, he would never care for salt with his meat, or in his broth; at least, not a great while, and then but a very little.

Having thus fed him with boiled meat and broth, I was resolved to feast him the next day with roasting a piece of the kid. This I did by hanging it before the fire in a string, as I had seen many people do in England, setting two poles up, one on each side the fire, and one cross on the top, and tying the string to the cross-stick, letting the meat turn continually. This Friday admired very much; but, when he came to taste the flesh, he took so many ways to tell me how well he liked it, that I could not but understand him; and at last he told me he would never eat man's flesh any more—which I was very glad to hear.

The next day I set him to work to beating some corn out, and sifting it in the manner I used to do, as I observed before; and he soon understood how to do it as well as I, especially after he had seen what the meaning of it was, and that it was to make bread of; for after that I let him see me make my bread, and bake it
too, and in a little time Friday was able to do all the work for me as well as I could do it myself.

I began now to consider that, having two mouths to feed instead of one, I must provide more ground for my harvest, and plant a larger quantity of corn than I used to do; so I marked out a larger piece of land, and began the fence in the same manner as before;

in which Friday not only worked very willingly and very hard, but did it very cheerfully. And I told him what it was for; that it was for corn to make more bread, because he was now with me, and that I might have enough for him and myself too. He appeared very sensible of that part, and let me know that he thought I had much more labour upon me on his account than I had for myself; and that he would work the harder for me, if I would tell him what to do.

This was the pleasantest year of all the life I led in this place. Friday began to talk pretty well, and understand the names of
HE IS INTERROGATED.

Everything I had occasion to call for, and of every place I
end him to, and talk a great deal to me; so that, in
began now to have some use for my tongue again, which
had very little occasion for before—that is to say, about
Besides the pleasure of talking to him, I had a singular
in the fellow himself. His simple unfeigned honesty
to me more and more every day, and I began really to
creature; and, on his side, I believe he loved me more
as possible for him ever to love anything before.

mind once to try if he had any hankering inclination to
country again; and having learned him English so well
could answer me almost any questions, I asked him
the nation that he belonged to never conquered in battle?
he smiled, and said, "Yes, yes; we always fight the
that is, he meant always get the better in fight; and so
a the following discourse:—"You always fight the
said I; "how came you to be taken prisoner, then,

. My nation beat much, for all that.
. How beat; if your nation beat them, how come you to

. They more many than my nation in the place where
they take one, two, three, and me. My nation over beat
he yonder place, where me no was; there my nation take
great thousand.

But why did not your side recover you from the hands
nemies then?
. They run one, two, three, and me, and make go in the
y nation have no canoe that time.
. Well, Friday, and what does your nation do with the
take; do they carry them away and eat them, as these

. Yes; my nation eat mans too, eat all up.
. Where do they carry them?
. Go to other place where they think.
. Do they come hither?
. Yes, yes, they come hither; come other else place.
Master. Have you been here with them?

Friday. Yes, I been here (points to the north-west side of the island, which it seems was their side).

By this I understood that my man Friday had formerly been among the savages who used to come on shore on the farther part of the island on the said man-eating occasions that he was now brought for. And some time after, when I took the courage to carry him to that side, being the same I formerly mentioned, he presently knew the place, and told me he was there once when they eat up twenty men, two women, and one child. He could not tell twenty in English; but he numbered them by laying so many stones on a row, and pointing to me to tell them over.

I have told this passage because it introduces what follows; that, after I had had this discourse with him, I asked him how far it was from our island to the shore, and whether the canoes were not often lost? He told me there was no danger, no canoes ever lost; but that, after a little way out to the sea, there was a current, and a wind, always one way in the morning, the other in the afternoon.

This I understood to be no more than the sets of the tide, as going out, or coming in. But I afterwards understood it was occasioned by the great draught and reflux of the mighty river Orinoco, in the mouth of the gulf of which river, as I found afterwards, our island lay; and this land which I perceived to the west and north-west was the great island Trinidad, on the north point of the mouth of the river. I asked Friday a thousand questions about the country, the inhabitants, the sea, the coast, and what nations were near. He told me all he knew with the greatest openness imaginable. I asked him the names of the several nations of his sort of people, but could get no other name than Caribs; from whence I easily understood that these were the Caribbees, which our maps place on the part of America which reaches from the mouth of the river Orinoco to Guiana, and onwards to St. Martha. He told me that up a great way beyond the moon, that was, beyond the setting of the moon, which must be west from their country, there dwelt white bearded men like me, and pointed to my great whiskers, which I mentioned before;
and that they had killed much mans,—that was his word. By all
which I understood he meant the Spaniards, whose cruelties in
America had been spread over the whole countries, and were
remembered by all the nations from father to son.

I enquired if he could tell me how I might come from this
island, and get among those white men. He told me, "Yes, yes,
I might go in two canoe." I could not understand what he
meant, or make him describe to me what he meant by two canoe,
till at last, with great difficulty, I found he meant it must be in a
large, great boat, as big as two canoes.

This part of Friday's discourse began to relish with me very
well, and from this time I entertained some hopes that, one time
or other, I might find an opportunity to make my escape from
this place, and that this poor savage might be a means to help me
to do it.

During the long time that Friday has now been with me, and
that he began to speak to me, and understand me, I was not
wanting to lay a foundation of religious knowledge in his mind.
Particularly, I asked him one time, "Who made him?" The poor
creature did not understand me at all, but thought I had asked
who was his father! But I took it by another handle, and asked
him who made the sea, the ground we walked on, and the hills
and woods! He told me it was one old Benamuckee, that lived
beyond all. He could describe nothing of this great person, but
that he was very old; much older, he said, than the sea or the
land, than the moon or the stars. I asked him then, "If this old
person had made all things, why did not all things worship him?"
He looked very grave, and with a perfect look of innocence said,
"All things said O to him." I asked him if the people who die
in his country went away anywhere? He said, "Yes; they all
went to Benamuckee." Then I asked him whether these they eat
up went thither too? He said, "Yes."

From these things I began to instruct him in the knowledge of
the true God. I told him that the great Maker of all things lived
up there, pointing up towards heaven; that he governs the world
by the same power and providence by which he had made it; that
he was omnipotent—could do everything for us, give everything to

(248)
us, take everything from us: and thus, by degrees, I opened his eyes. He listened with great attention, and received with pleasure the notion of Jesus Christ being sent to redeem us; and of the manner of making our prayers to God, and his being able to hear us, even into heaven. He told me one day that if our God could hear us up beyond the sun, he must needs be a greater God than their Benamuckee, who lived but a little way off, and yet could not hear, till they went up to the great mountains where he dwelt, to speak to him. I asked him if ever he went thither to speak to him? He said, "No, they never went that were young men;" none went thither but the old men, who he called their Owookakee—that is, as I made him explain it to me, their religious, or clergy; and that they went to say O (so he called saying prayers), and then came back and told them what Benamuckee said. By this I observed that there is priesthood even amongst the most blinded ignorant pagans in the world; and the policy of making a secret religion, in order to preserve the veneration of the people to the clergy, is not only to be found in the Roman, but perhaps among all religions in the world, even among the most brutish and barbarous savages.

I endeavoured to clear up this fraud to my man Friday, and told him that the pretence of their old men going up to the mountains to say O to their god Benamuckee was a cheat, and their bringing word from thence what he said was much more so; that if they met with any answer, or spoke with any one there, it must be with an evil spirit. And then I entered into a long discourse with him about the devil—the original of him, his rebellion against God, his enmity to man, the reason of it, his setting himself up in the dark parts of the world to be worshipped instead of God, and as God; and the many stratagems he made use of to delude mankind to their ruin—how he had a secret access to our passions, and to our affections, to adapt his snares so to our inclinations as to cause us even to be our own tempters, and to run upon our destruction by our own choice.

I found it was not so easy to imprint right notions in his mind about the devil as it was about the being of a God. Nature assisted all my arguments to evidence to him even the necessity of
FRIDAY'S REASONING.

...great first Cause and overruling governing Power, a secret directing Providence, and of the equity and justice of paying homage to him that made us, and the like. But there appeared nothing of all this in the notion of an evil spirit, of his original, his being, his nature, and, above all, of his inclination to do evil, and to draw us in to do so too; and the poor creature puzzled me once in such a manner, by a question merely natural and innocent, that I scarce knew what to say to him. I had been talking a great deal to him of the power of God, his omnipotence, his dreadful aversion to sin, his being a consuming fire to the workers of iniquity; how, as he had made us all, he could destroy us and all the world in a moment; and he listened with great seriousness to me all the while.

After this I had been telling him how the devil was God's enemy in the hearts of men, and used all his malice and skill to defeat the good designs of Providence, and to ruin the kingdom of Christ in the world, and the like. "Well," says Friday; "but you say God is so strong, so great, is he not much strong, much might as the devil?" "Yes, yes," says I, "Friday, God is stronger than the devil, God is above the devil, and therefore we say to God to tread him down under our feet, and enable us to resist his temptations, and quench his fiery darts." "But," says he again, "if God much strong, much might as the devil, why God o kill the devil, so make him no more do wicked?"

I was strangely surprised at his question; and, after all, though was now an old man, yet I was but a young doctor, and ill-nough qualified for a casuist, or a solver of difficulties. And at first I could not tell what to say; so I pretended not to hear him, and asked him what he said. But he was too earnest for an answer to forget his question; so that he repeated it in the very same broken words as above. By this time I had recovered myself a little, and I said, "God will at last punish him severely; he reserved for the judgment, and is to be cast into the bottomless pit to dwell with everlasting fire." This did not satisfy Friday; it he returns upon me, repeating my words, "'Reserve—at last,' I no understand. But why not kill the devil now, not kill him at ago?" "You may as well ask me," said I, "why God does
not kill you and me when we do wicked things here that offend him. We are preserved to repent and be pardoned.” He muses a while at this. “Well, well,” says he, mighty affectionately, “that well; so you, I, devil, all wicked, all preserve, repent, God pardon all.” Here I was run down again by him to the last degree; and it was a testimony to me how the mere notions of nature, though they will guide reasonable creatures to the knowledge of a God, and of a worship or homage due to the supreme being of God, as the consequence of our nature, yet nothing but divine revelation can form the knowledge of Jesus Christ, and of a redemption purchased for us, of a Mediator of the new covenant, and of an Intercessor at the footstool of God’s throne;—I say, nothing but a revelation from heaven can form these in the soul; and that, therefore, the Gospel of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ, I mean the Word of God, and the Spirit of God, promised for the guide and sanctifier of his people, are the absolutely necessary instructors of the souls of men in the saving knowledge of God and the means of salvation.

I therefore diverted the present discourse between me and my man, rising up hastily, as upon some sudden occasion of going out; then sending him for something a good way off, I seriously prayed to God that he would enable me to instruct savagely this poor savage; assisting, by his Spirit, the heart of the poor ignorant creature to receive the light of the knowledge of God in Christ, reconciling him to himself; and would guide me to speak so to him from the Word of God, as his conscience might be convinced, his eyes opened, and his soul saved. When he came again to me I entered into a long discourse with him upon the subject of the redemption of man by the Saviour of the world, and of the doctrine of the gospel preached from Heaven; namely, of repentance towards God and faith in our blessed Lord Jesus. I then explained to him, as well as I could, why our blessed Redeemer took not on him the nature of angels, but the seed of Abraham, and how, for that reason, the fallen angels had no share in the redemption; that he came only to the lost sheep of the house of Israel, and the like.

I had, God knows, more sincerity than knowledge in all the
A SECRET JOY.

...for this poor creature's instruction; and must
that I believe all that act upon the same principle
laying things open to him, I really informed and
lif in many things that either I did not know or
considered before, but which occurred naturally to
my searching into them for the information of this
end I had more affection in my inquiry after things
ion than ever I felt before; so that whether this
h was the better for me or no, I had great reason
that ever he came to me. My grief set lighter
habitation grew comfortable to me beyond measure;
edected that in this solitary life which I had been
had not only been moved myself to look up to
seek to the hand that had brought me there, but
made an instrument under Providence to save the
ight I know, the soul of a poor savage, and bring
knowledge of religion and of the Christian doc-
right know Christ Jesus, to know whom is life
when I reflected upon all these things, a secret
every part of my soul; and I frequently rejoiced
as brought to this place, which I had so often
est dreadful of all afflictions that could possibly

cful frame I continued all the remainder of my
conversation which employed the hours between
was such as made the three years which we lived
perfectly and completely happy, if any such thing
hiness can be formed in a sublunary state. The
a good Christian—a much better than I, though
ope, and bless God for it, that we were equally
forted, restored penitents; we had here the Word
and no farther off from his Spirit to instruct than
in England.
lied myself to reading the Scripture, to let him
a I could, the meaning of what I read; and he,
rious inquiries and questions, made me, as I said
better scholar in the Scripture knowledge than I
should ever have been by my own private mere reading. Another thing I cannot refrain from observing here, also from experience in this retired part of my life—namely, how infinite and inexpressible a blessing it is that the knowledge of God, and of the doctrine of salvation by Christ Jesus, is so plainly laid down in the Word of God, so easy to be received and understood, that as the bare reading the Scripture made me capable of understanding enough of my duty to carry me directly on to the great work of sincere repentance for my sins and laying hold of a Saviour for life and salvation, to a stated reformation in practice and obedience to all God's commands, and this without any teacher or instructor (I mean human), so the same plain instruction sufficiently served to the enlightening this savage creature, and bringing him to be such a Christian as I have known few equal to him in my life.

As to all the disputes, wrangling, strife and contention which has happened in the world about religion, whether niceties in doctrines or schemes of church government, they were all perfectly useless to us, as, for aught I can yet see, they have been to all the rest in the world. We had the sure guide to heaven—namely, the Word of God; and we had, blessed be God, comfortable views of the Spirit of God, teaching and instructing us by his Word, leading us into all truth, and making us both willing and obedient to the instruction of his Word; and I cannot see the least use that the greatest knowledge of the disputed points in religion, which have made such confusions in the world, would have been to us if we could have obtained it. But I must go on with the historical part of things, and take every part in its order.

After Friday and I became more intimately acquainted, and that he could understand almost all I said to him, and speak fluently, though in broken English, to me, I acquainted him with my own story, or at least so much of it as related to my coming into the place, how I had lived there, and how long. I let him into the mystery, for such it was to him, of gunpowder and bullet, and taught him how to shoot. I gave him a knife, which he was wonderfully delighted with; and I made him a belt, with a frog hanging to it, such as in England we wear hangers in; and in the
frog, instead of a hanger, I gave him a hatchet, which was not only as good a weapon in some cases, but much more useful upon other occasions.

I described to him the country of Europe, and particularly England, which I came from; how we lived, how we worshipped God, how we behaved to one another, and how we traded in ships to all parts of the world. I gave him an account of the wreck which I had been on board of, and showed him as near as I could the place where she lay; but she was all beaten in pieces before, and gone.

I showed him the ruins of our boat which we lost when we escaped, and which I could not stir with my whole strength then, but was now fallen almost all to pieces. Upon seeing this boat, Friday stood musing a great while, and said nothing. I asked him what it was he studied upon. At last says he, “Me see such boat like come to place at my nation.”

I did not understand him a good while; but at last, when I had examined farther into it, I understood by him that a boat, such as that had been, came on shore upon the country where he lived; that is, as he explained it, was driven thither by stress of weather. I presently imagined that some European ship must have been cast away upon their coast, and the boat might get loose and drive ashore; but was so dull, that I never once thought of men making escape from a wreck thither, much less whence they might come; so I only inquired after a description of the boat.

Friday described the boat to me well enough; but brought me better to understand him when he added, with some warmth, “We save the white mans from drown.” Then I presently asked him if there were any white mans, as he called them, in the boat. “Yes,” he said; “the boat full of white mans.” I asked him how many. He told upon his fingers seventeen. I asked him then what became of them. He told me, “They live, they dwell at my nation.”

This put new thoughts into my head; for I presently imagined that these might be the men belonging to the ship that was cast away in sight of my island, as I now call it; and who, after the ship was struck on the rock, and they saw her inevitably lost, had
saved themselves in their boat, and were landed upon that wild
shore among the savages.

Upon this I enquired of him more critically what was become
of them. He assured me they lived still there; that they had
been there about four years; that the savages let them alone, and
gave them victuals to live. I asked him how it came to pass they
did not kill them and eat them. He said, "No, they make
brother with them;" that is, as I understood him, a truce. And
then he added, "They no eat mans but when make the war fight;"
that is to say, they never eat any men but such as come to fight
with them and are taken in battle.

It was after this some considerable time, that being on the top
of the hill, at the east side of the island, from whence, as I have
said, I had in a clear day discovered the main, or continent of
America, Friday, the weather being very serene, looks very
earnestly towards the mainland, and in a kind of surprise falls a
jumping and dancing, and calls out to me, for I was at some
distance from him. I asked him what was the matter. "Oh,
joy!" says he, "oh, glad! There see my country, there my
nation!"

I observed an extraordinary sense of pleasure appeared in his
face, and his eyes sparkled, and his countenance discovered a
strange eagerness, as if he had a mind to be in his own country
again; and this observation of mine put a great many thoughts
into me, which made me at first not so easy about my new man
Friday as I was before; and I made no doubt but that if Friday
could get back to his own nation again, he would not only forget
all his religion, but all his obligation to me; and would be forward
enough to give his countrymen an account of me, and come back
perhaps with a hundred or two of them, and make a feast upon
me, at which he might be as merry as he used to be with those of
his enemies when they were taken in war.

But I wronged the poor honest creature very much, for which
I was very sorry afterwards. However, as my jealousy increased,
and held me some weeks, I was a little more circumspect, and not
so familiar and kind to him as before; in which I was certainly
in the wrong, too, the honest grateful creature having no thought
about it, but what consisted with the best principles, both as a religious Christian and as a grateful friend, as appeared afterwards to my full satisfaction.

While my jealousy of him lasted, you may be sure I was every day pumping him, to see if he would discover any of the new thoughts which I suspected were in him; but I found everything he said was so honest, and so innocent, that I could find nothing to nourish my suspicion; and, in spite of all my uneasiness, he made me at last entirely his own again; nor did he in the least perceive that I was uneasy, and therefore I could not suspect him of deceit.

One day walking up the same hill, but the weather being hazy at sea, so that we could not see the continent, I called to him, and said, "Friday, do not you wish yourself in your own country, your own nation?" "Yes," he said; "I be much O glad to be at my own nation." "What would you do there?" said I. "Would you turn wild again, eat men's flesh again, and be a savage as you were before?" He looked full of concern, and shaking his head, said, "No, no; Friday tell them to live good, tell them to pray God, tell them to eat corn-bread, cattle-flesh, milk, no eat man again." "Why then," said I to him, "they will kill you." He looked grave at that, and then said, "No, they no kill me, they willing love learn." He meant by this, they would be willing to learn. He added, they learned much of the bearded mans that come in the boat. Then I asked him if he would go back to them. He smiled at that, and told me he could not swim so far. I told him I would make a canoe for him. He told me he would go if I would go with him. "I go!" says I; "why, they will eat me if I come there." "No, no," says he; "me make they no eat you; me make them much love you." He meant he would tell them how I had killed his enemies, and saved his life, and so he would make them love me. Then he told me as well as he could how kind they were to seventeen white men, or bearded men, as he called them, who came on shore there in distress.

From this time, I confess, I had a mind to venture over, and see if I could possibly join with these bearded men, who, I made no doubt, were Spaniards or Portuguese; not doubting but, if I
could, we might find some method to escape from thence, being
upon the continent, and a good company together, better than I
could from an island forty miles off the shore and alone without
help. So, after some days, I took Friday to work again, by way
of discourse, and told him I would give him a boat to go back to
his own nation; and accordingly I carried him to my frigate, which
lay on the other side of the island, and having cleared it of water,
for I always kept it sunk in the water, I brought it out, showed
it him, and we both went into it.

I found he was a most dexterous fellow at managing it, would
make it go almost as swift and fast again as I could. So when he
was in, I said to him, “Well now, Friday, shall we go to your
nation?” He looked very dull at my saying so; which it seems
was because he thought the boat too small to go so far. I told
him then I had a bigger. So the next day I went to the place
where the first boat lay which I had made, but which I could not
get into water. He said that was big enough. But then, as I
had taken no care of it, and it had lain two or three and twenty
years there, the sun had split and dried it, that it was in a manner
rotten. Friday told me such a boat would do very well, and
would carry “much enough vittle, drink, bread;” that was his
way of talking.

Upon the whole, I was by this time so fixed upon my design of
going over with him to the continent, that I told him we would
go and make one as big as that, and he should go home in it. He
answered not one word, but looked very grave and sad. I asked
him, “What was the matter with him?” He asked me again thus,
“Why you angry mad with Friday, what me done?” I asked
him what he meant; I told him I was not angry with him at all.
“No angry! no angry!” says he, repeating the words several
times; “why send Friday home away to my nation?” “Why,”
says I, “Friday, did you not say you wished you were there?”
“Yes, yes,” says he; “wish be both there—no wish Friday there,
no master there.” In a word, he would not think of going there
without me. “I go there, Friday!” says I; “what shall I do
there?” He turned very quick upon me at this. “You do great
deal much good,” says he; “you teach wild mans be good sober
tame man; you tell them know God, pray God, and live new life." "Alas! Friday," says I, "thou knowest not what thou sayest; I am but an ignorant man myself." "Yes, yes," says he; "you teachee me good, you teachee them good." "No, no, Friday," says I; "you shall go without me; leave me here to live by myself, as I did before." He looked confused again at that word, and running to one of the hatchets which he used to wear, he takes it up hastily, and gives it me. "What must I do with this!" says I to him. "You take kill Friday," says he. "What must I kill you for?" said I again. He returns very quick, "What you send Friday away for?—take kill Friday, no send Friday away." This he spoke so earnestly, that I saw tears stand in his eyes. In a word, I so plainly discovered the utmost affection in him to me, and a firm resolution in him, that I told him then, and often after, that I would never send him away from me, if he was willing to stay with me.

Upon the whole, as I found by all his discourse a settled affection to me, and that nothing should part him from me, so I found all the foundation of his desire to go to his own country was laid in his ardent affection to the people and his hopes of my doing them good; a thing which, as I had no notion of myself, so I had not been at thought or intention or desire of undertaking it. But till I found a strong inclination to my attempting an escape, as above, founded on the supposition gathered from the discourse—namely, that there were seventeen bearded men there; and therefore, without any more delay, I went to work with Friday to find out a great tree proper to fell, and make a large periagua or canoe to undertake the voyage. There were trees enough in the island to have built a little fleet, not of periaguas and canoes, but even of good large vessels. But the main thing I looked at, was to get me so near the water that we might launch it when it was made, to avoid the mistake I committed at first.

At last Friday pitched upon a tree, for I found he knew much better than I what kind of wood was fittest for it; nor can I tell, this day, what wood to call the tree we cut down, except that it was very like the tree we call fustic, or between that and the faragua wood, for it was much of the same colour and smell.
Friday was for burning the hollow or cavity of this tree out to make it for a boat; but I showed him how rather to cut it out with tools; which, after I had showed him how to use, he did very handily; and in about a month's hard labour, we finished it, and made it very handsome, especially when with our axes, which I showed him how to handle, we cut and hewed the outside into the true shape of a boat. After this, however, it cost us near a fortnight's time to get her along, as it were, inch by inch upon great rollers into the water. But when she was in, she would have carried twenty men with great ease.

When she was in the water, and though she was so big, it amazed me to see with what dexterity and how swift my man Friday would manage her, turn her, and paddle her along; so I asked him if he would, and if we might venture over in her. "Yes," he said; "he venture over in her very well, though great blow wind." However, I had a farther design that he knew nothing of; and that was, to make a mast and sail, and to fit her with an anchor and cable. As to a mast, that was easy enough to get; so I pitched upon a straight young cedar-tree, which I found near the place, and which there was great plenty of in the island; and I set Friday to work to cut it down, and gave him directions how to shape and order it. But as to the sail, that was my particular care. I knew I had old sails, or rather pieces of old sails enough; but as I had had them now twenty-six years by me, and had not been very careful to preserve them, not imagining that I should ever have this kind of use for them, I did not doubt but they were all rotten; and, indeed, most of them were so. However, I found two pieces which appeared pretty good, and with these I went to work, and with a great deal of pains, and awkward tedious stitching (you may be sure) for want of needles, I at length made a three-cornered ugly thing, like what we call in England a shoulder-of-mutton-sail, to go with a boom at bottom, and a little short sprit at the top, such as usually our ships' long-boats sail with; and such as I best knew how to manage, because it was such a one as I had to the boat in which I made my escape from Barbary, as related in the first part of my story.

I was near two months performing this last work—namely, rig-
FRIDAY TAUGHT NAVIGATION.

and fitting my mast and sails; for I finished them very ete, making a small stay, and a sail or fore-sail to it, to if we should turn to windward. And, which was more than irx a rudder to the stern of her, to steer with; and though but a bungling shipwright, yet as I knew the usefulness, and necessity of such a thing, I applied myself with so much
to do it, that at last I brought it to pass, though considering any dull contrivances I had for it that failed, I think it cost nost as much labour as making the boat.

or all this was done, too, I had my man Friday to teach as it belonged to the navigation of my boat; for though he very well how to paddle a canoe, he knew nothing what to a sail and a rudder, and was the most amazed when me work the boat to and again in the sea by the rudder; ow the sail jibed, and filled this way or that way, as the we sailed changed;—I say, when he saw this he stood like

"He was amazed when he saw me work the boat."
one astonished and amazed. However, with a little use, I made these things familiar to him; and he became an expert sailor, so that, as to the compass, I could make him understand very well of that. On the other hand, as there was very little of weather, and seldom or never any fogs in those parts, there was but little occasion for a compass, seeing the stars were always to be by night and the shore by day, except in the rainy season then nobody cared to stir abroad, either by land or sea.

I was now entered on the seven-and-twentieth year of my captivity in this place; though the three last years that this creature with me ought rather to be left out of the account, my habitation being quite of another kind than in all the rest of the time. I kept the anniversary of my landing here with the same thankfulness to God for his mercies as at first. And if such cause of acknowledgment at first, I had much more so now, having such additional testimonies of the care of Providence for me, and the great hopes I had of being effectually and speedily delivered; for I had an invincible impression upon my thoughts that my deliverance was at hand, and that I should not bear another year in this place. However, I went on with my husband digging, planting, fencing, as usual; I gathered and cured grapes, and did every necessary thing, as before.

The rainy season was in the meantime upon me, when more within doors than at other times. So I had stowed out a vessel as secure as we could, bringing her up into the creek as I said, in the beginning I landed my rafts from the ship, hauling her up to the shore at high-water mark, I made my Friday dig a little dock, just big enough to hold her, and just enough to give her water enough to float in: and then, when the tide was out, we made a strong dam across the end of it, to keep the water out; and so she lay dry, as to the tide from the sea to keep the rain off, we laid a great many boughs of trees so that she was as well thatched as a house; and thus we waited the months of November and December, in which I设计 make my adventure.

When the settled season began to come in, as the thought design returned with the fair weather, I was preparing di
the voyage. And the first thing I did was to lay by a certain quantity of provisions, being the stores for our voyage; and intended, in a week or a fortnight's time, to open the dock and launch out our boat. I was busy one morning upon something of this kind, when I called to Friday, and bid him go to the seashore and see if he could find a turtle or tortoise—a thing which we generally got once a week, for the sake of the eggs as well as the flesh. Friday had not been long gone, when he came running back, and flew over my outer wall or fence like one that felt not the ground or the steps he set his feet on; and before I had time to speak to him, he cries out to me, "O master! O master!—O sorrow!—O bad!" "What's the matter, Friday?" says I. "O—yonder—there," says he; "one, two, three canoe!—one, two, three!" By his way of speaking I concluded there were six; but on inquiry, I found it was but three. "Well, Friday," says I, "do not be frightened." So I heartened him up as well as I could. However, I saw the poor fellow was most terribly scared; for nothing ran in his head but that they were come to look for him, and would cut him in pieces and eat him; and the poor fellow trembled so, that I scarce knew what to do with him. I comforted him as well as I could, and told him I was in as much danger as he, and that they would eat me as well as him. "But," says I, "Friday, we must resolve to fight them. Can you fight, Friday?" "Me shoot," says he; "but there come many great number." "No matter for that," said I again; "our guns will fright them that we do not kill;" so I asked him, "Whether, if I resolved to defend him, he would defend me, and stand by me, and do just as I bid him?" He said, "Me die, when you bid die, master." So I went and fetched a good dram of rum and gave him; for I had been so good a husband of my rum that I had a great deal left. When he had drank it, I made him take the two bowling-pieces, which we always carried, and load them with large wan-shot, as big as small pistol bullets; then I took four muskets, and loaded them with two slugs and five small bullets each; and my two pistols I loaded with a brace of bullets each; I hung my neat sword as usual naked by my side, and gave Friday his trabet.
When I had thus prepared myself, I took my perspective-glass, and went up to the side of the hill to see what I could discover. And I found quickly, by my glass, that there were one-and-twenty savages, three prisoners, and three canoes; and that their whole business seemed to be the triumphal banquet upon these three human bodies (a barbarous feast indeed), but nothing more than as I had observed was usual with them.

I observed, also, that they were landed, not where they had done when Friday made his escape, but nearer to my creek, where the shore was low, and where a thick wood came close almost down to the sea. This, with the abhorrence of the inhuman errand these wretches came about, filled me with such indignation, that I came down again to Friday and told him I was resolved to go down to them and kill them all; and asked him if he would stand by me? He was now gotten over his fright, and his spirits being a little raised with the dram I had given him, he was very cheerful, and told me, as before, “he would die, when I bid die.”

In this fit of fury, I took first and divided the arms which I had charged, as before, between us. I gave Friday one pistol to stick in his girdle, and three guns upon his shoulder; and I took one pistol and the other three myself; and in this posture we marched out. I took a small bottle of rum in my pocket, and gave Friday a large bag with more powder and bullet. And as to orders, I charged him to keep close behind me, and not to stir, or shoot, or do anything till I bid him; and in the meantime not to speak a word. In this posture I fetched a compass to my right hand of near a mile, as well to get over the creek as to get into the wood; so that I might come within shot of them before I should be discovered, which I had seen by my glass it was easy to do.

While I was making this march, my former thoughts returning, I began to abate my resolution. I do not mean that I entertained any fear of their number; for as they were naked, unarmed wretches, it is certain I was superior to them—nay, though I had been alone; but it occurred to my thoughts, what call, what occasion, much less what necessity, I was in to go and dip my hands in blood, to attack people who had neither done nor in-
CRUSOE'S PREPARATIONS.

headed me any wrong—who as to me were innocent; and whose
barbarous customs were their own disaster, being in them a token,
used, of God's having left them, with the other nations of that
part of the world, to such stupidity and to such inhuman courses,
and not call me to take upon me to be a judge of their actions,
neither an executioner of his justice: that whenever he thought
the would take the cause into his own hands, and by national
vengeance punish them as a people for national crimes; but that,
in the meantime, it was none of my business: that it was true
Friday might justify it, because he was a declared enemy, and in
state of war with those very particular people, and it was lawful
to him to attack them; but I could not say the same with respect
to me. These things were so warmly pressed upon my thoughts,
that the way as I went, that I resolved I would only go and place
myself near them, that I might observe their barbarous feast, and
at I would act then as God should direct; but that unless some-
ing offered that was more a call to me than yet I knew of, I
would not meddle with them.

With this resolution I entered the wood, and with all possible
prudence and silence, Friday following close at my heels, I marched
I came to the skirt of the wood, on the side which was next to
them; only that one corner of the wood lay between me and them.
Here I called softly to Friday, and showing him a great tree, which
was just at the corner of the wood, I bade him go to the tree and
speak to me word if he could see there plainly what they were doing.
I did so, and came immediately back to me and told me they
ought be plainly viewed there; that they were all about their fire,
and the flesh of one of their prisoners; and that another lay
upon the sand, a little from them, which he said they would
kill next, and which fired all the very soul within me. He told
me it was not one of their nation, but one of the bearded men
who he had told me of, that came to their country in the boat.
I was filled with horror at the very naming the white bearded man,
and going to the tree I saw plainly by my glass a white man who
lay upon the beach of the sea, with his hands and his feet tied
with flax, or things like rushes; and that he was a European, and
had clothes on.
There was another tree, and a little thicket beyond it, about fifty yards nearer to them than the place where I was, which, by going a little way about, I saw I might come at undiscovered, and that then I should be within half shot of them: so I withheld my passion, though I was, indeed, enraged to the highest degree, and going back about twenty paces, I got behind some bushes, which held all the way till I came to the other tree; and then I came to a little rising ground, which gave me a full view of them, at the distance of about eighty yards.

I had now not a moment to lose; for nineteen of the dreadful wretches sat upon the ground, all close huddled together, and had just sent the other two to butcher the poor Christian, and bring him perhaps limb by limb to their fire, and they were stooped down to untie the bands at his feet. I turned to Friday. "Now, Friday," said I, "do as I bid thee." Friday said he would. "Then, Friday," says I, "do exactly as you see me do—fail in nothing." So I set down one of the muskets and the fowling-piece upon the ground, and Friday did the like by his; and with the other musket I took my aim at the savages, bidding him do the like. Then asking him if he was ready, he said, "Yes." "Then fire at them," said I; and the same moment I fired also.

Friday took his aim so much better than I, that on the side that he shot he killed two of them, and wounded three more; and on my side, I killed one and wounded two. They were, you may be sure, in a dreadful consternation; and all of them who were not hurt jumped up upon their feet, but did not immediately know which way to run or which way to look—for they knew not from whence their destruction came. Friday kept his eyes close upon me, that, as I had bid him, he might observe what I did. So as soon as the first shot was made, I threw down the piece and took up the fowling-piece, and Friday did the like; he sees me cock and present; he did the same again. "Are you ready, Friday!" said I. "Yes," says he. "Let fly, then," says I, "in the name of God!" and with that I fired again among the amazed wretches, and so did Friday. And as our pieces were now loaded with what I called swan-shot, or small pistol bullets, we found only to drop; but so many were wounded, that they ran about yelling
and screaming, like mad creatures, all bloody and miserably wounded, most of them; whereof three more fell quickly after, though not quite dead.

"Now, Friday," says I, laying down the discharged pieces, and taking up the musket which was yet loaded, "follow me," says I; which he did, with a great deal of courage. Upon which I rushed out of the wood and showed myself, and Friday close at my foot. As soon as I perceived they saw me, I shouted as loud as I could, and bade Friday do so too; and running as fast as I could,—which, by the way, was not very fast, being laden with arms as I was,—I made directly towards the poor victim, who was, as I said, lying upon the beach or shore, between the place where they sat and the sea. The two butchers, who were just going to work with him, had left him at the surprise of our first fire, and fled in a terrible fright to the sea-side and had jumped into a canoe, and three more of the rest made the same way. I turned to Friday, and bid him step forward and fire at them. He understood me immediately, and running about forty yards to be near them, he shot at them, and I thought he had killed them all; for I saw them all fall of a heap into the boat; though I saw two of them up again quickly. However, he killed two of them, and wounded the third; so that he lay down in the bottom of the boat, as if he had been dead.

While my man Friday fired at them, I pulled out my knife and cut the flags that bound the poor victim, and loosing his hands and feet, I lifted him up, and asked him in the Portuguese tongue, "What he was?" He answered in Latin, "Christianus;" but was so weak and faint, that he could scarce stand or speak. I took my bottle out of my pocket and gave it him, making signs should drink, which he did; and I gave him a piece of bread, which he eat. Then I asked him, "What countryman he was?" And he said "Espagnole;" and being a little recovered, let me know, by all the signs he could possibly make, how much he was in my debt for his deliverance. "Seignior," said I, with as much Spanish as I could make up, "we will talk afterwards, but we must fight now. If you have any strength left, take this pistol and sword and lay about you." He took them
very thankfully; and no sooner had he the arms in his hands, but, as if they had put new vigour into him, he flew upon his murderers like a fury, and had cut two of them in pieces in an instant. For the truth is, as the whole was a surprise to them, the poor creatures were so much frightened with the noise of our pieces, that they fell down for mere amazement and fear; and had no more power to attempt their own escape than their flesh had to resist our shot. And that was the case of those five that Friday shot at in the boat; for as three of them fell with the hurt they received, so the other two fell with the fright.

I kept my piece in my hand still, without firing, being willing to keep my charge ready, because I had given the Spaniard my pistol and sword. So I called to Friday, and bade him run up to the tree from whence we first fired, and fetch the arms which lay there that had been discharged—which he did with great swiftness and then giving him my musket, I sat down myself to load all the rest again, and bade them come to me when they wanted. While I was loading these pieces, there happened a fierce engagement between the Spaniard and one of the savages, who made at him with one of their great wooden swords,—the same weapon that was to have killed him before, if I had not prevented it. The Spaniard, who was as bold and as brave as could be imagined though weak, had fought this Indian a good while, and had cut him two great wounds on his head; but the savage, being a stout lusty fellow, closing in with him, had thrown him down (being faint and was wringing my sword out of his hand, when the Spaniard though undermost, wisely quitting the sword, drew the pistol from his girdle, shot the savage through the body and killed him upon the spot, before I, who was running to help him, could come near him.

Friday, being now left to his liberty, pursued the flying wretch with no weapon in his hand but his hatchet; and with that he despatched those three who, as I said before, were wounded first and fallen, and all the rest he could come up with. And the Spaniard coming to me for a gun, I gave him one of the fowling pieces, with which he pursued two of the savages, and wounded them both: but as he was not able to run, they both got fr
him into the wood, where Friday pursued them and killed one of them; but the other was too nimble for him, and though he was wounded, yet had plunged himself into the sea, and swam with all his might off to those two who were left in the canoe; which three in the canoe, with one wounded, who we know not whether he died or no, were all that escaped our hands of one-and-twenty. The account of the rest is as follows:—

3 Killed at our first shot from the tree.
2 Killed at the next shot.
2 Killed by Friday in the boat.
2 Killed by ditto, of those at first wounded.
1 Killed by ditto, in the wood.
3 Killed by the Spaniard.
4 Killed, being found dropped here and there of their wounds, or killed by Friday in his chase of them.
4 Escaped in the boat, whereof one wounded, if not dead.

21 In all.

Those that were in the canoe worked hard to get out of gun-shot; and though Friday made two or three shot at them, I did not find that he hit any of them. Friday would fain have had me take one of their canoes, and pursue them; and indeed I was very anxious about their escape, lest, carrying the news home to their people, they should come back, perhaps, with two or three hundred of their canoes, and devour us by mere multitude. So I consented to pursue them by sea, and running to one of their canoes, I jumped in, and bade Friday follow me; but when I was in the canoe I was surprised to find another poor creature lie there alive, bound hand and foot, as the Spaniard was, for the slaughter, and almost dead with fear, not knowing what the matter was; for he had not been able to look up over the side of the boat, he was tied so hard, neck and heels, and had been tied so long, that he had really but little life in him.

I immediately cut the twisted flags, or rushes, which they had bound him with, and would have helped him up; but he could not stand or speak, but groaned most piteously, believing, it seems still, that he was only unbound in order to be killed.
FRIDAY FINDS HIS FATHER.

When Friday came to him, I bade him speak to him, and tell him of his deliverance, and pulling out my bottle, made him give the poor wretch a dram; which, with the news of his being delivered, revived him, and he sat up in the boat. But when Friday came to hear him speak, and look in his face, it would have moved any one to tears to have seen how Friday kissed him, embraced him, hugged him, cried, laughed, hallooed, jumped about, danced, sung, then cried again, wrung his hands, beat his own face and head, and then sung and jumped about again like a distracted creature. It was a good while before I could make him speak to me, or tell me what was the matter; but when he came a little to himself, he told me that it was his father!

It is not easy for me to express how it moved me to see what ecstasy and filial affection had worked in this poor savage at the sight of his father, and of his being delivered from death; nor indeed can I describe half the extravagances of his affection after this—for he went into the boat and out of the boat a great many
a some rum out of my bottle to rub them with, which did great deal of good. action put an end to our pursuit of the canoe with the vages, who were now gotten almost out of sight. And it spy for us that we did not; for it blew so hard within rs after, and before they could be gotten a quarter of their d continued blowing so hard all night, and that from the est, which was against them, that I could not suppose sat could live, or that they ever reached to their own

o return to Friday, he was so busy about his father that I ot find in my heart to take him off for some time. But bought he could leave him a little, I called him to me, and jumping and laughing and pleased to the highest extreme. asked him if he had given his father any bread? He shook and said, “None. Ugly dog eat all up self.” So I gave take of bread out of a little pouch I carried on purpose; I le him a dram for himself, but he would not taste it, but it to his father. I had in my pocket also two or three of my raisins, so I gave him a handful of them for his He had no sooner given his father these raisins but I saw e out of the boat and run away as if he had been bewitched, t such a rate—for he was the swiftest fellow of his foot that aw; I say, he run at such a rate that he was out of sight,
me, but the water he carried to his father. However, as I was very thirsty too, I took a little sup of it. This water revived his father more than all the rum or spirits I had given him; for he was just fainting with thirst.

When his father had drank, I called to him to know if there was any water left? He said "Yes;" and I bade him give it to the poor Spaniard, who was in as much want of it as his father; and I sent one of the cakes that Friday brought to the Spaniard too, who was indeed very weak, and was reposing himself upon a green place under the shade of a tree, and whose limbs were also very stiff and very much swelled with the rude bandage he had been tied with. When I saw that upon Friday's coming to him with the water, he sat up and drank, and took the bread and began to eat, I went to him and gave him a handful of raisins. He looked up in my face with all the tokens of gratitude and thankfulness that could appear in any countenance; but was so weak, notwithstanding he had so exerted himself in the fight, that he could not stand up upon his feet. He tried to do it two or three times, but was really not able, his ankles were so swelled and so painful to him; so I bade him sit still, and caused Friday to rub his ankles and bathe them with rum, as he had done his father's.

I observed the poor affectionate creature every two minutes, or perhaps less, all the while he was here, turned his head about, to see if his father was in the same place and posture as he left him sitting; and at last he found he was not to be seen; at which he started up, and without speaking a word, flew with that swiftness to him, that one could scarce perceive his feet to touch the ground as he went. But when he came, he only found he had laid himself down to ease his limbs; so Friday came back to me presently, and I then spoke to the Spaniard to let Friday help him up if he could, and lead him to the boat, and then he should carry him to our dwelling, where I would take care of him. But Friday, a lusty strong fellow, took the Spaniard quite up upon his back, and carried him away to the boat, and set him down softly upon the side or gunwale of the canoe, with his feet in the inside of it, and then lifted him quite in, and set him close to his father, and presently stepping out again, launched the boat off, and paddled it
along the shore faster than I could walk, though the wind blew pretty hard too. So he brought them both safe into our creek; and leaving him in the boat, runs away to fetch the other canoe. And as he passed me I spoke to him, and asked him whither he went? He told me, "Go fetch more boat." So away he went like the wind, for sure never man or horse run like him; and he had the other canoe in the creek almost as soon as I got to it by land. So he wafted me over, and then went to help our new guests out of the boat, which he did. But they were neither of them able to walk, so that poor Friday knew not what to do.

To remedy this, I went to work in my thought, and calling to Friday to bid them sit down on the bank while he came to me, I soon made a kind of hand-barrow to lay them on, and Friday and I carried them up both together upon it between us. But when we got them to the outside of our wall or fortification, we were at a worse loss than before, for it was impossible to get them over; and I was resolved not to break it down. So I set to work again; and Friday and I, in about two hours' time, made a very handsome tent, covered with old sails, and above that with boughs of trees, being in the space without our outward fence, and between that and the grove of young wood which I had planted. And here we made them two beds of such things as I had; namely, of good rice straw, with blankets laid upon it to lie on, and another to cover them on each bed.

My island was now peopled, and I thought myself very rich in subjects. And it was a merry reflection which I frequently made, how like a king I looked. First of all, the whole country was my own mere property; so that I had an undoubted right of dominion. Secondly, my people were perfectly subjected; I was absolute lord and lawgiver; they all owed their lives to me, and were ready to lay down their lives, if there had been occasion of it, for me. It was remarkable, too, we had but three subjects, and they were of three different religions. My man Friday was a Protestant, his father was a Pagan and a cannibal, and the Spaniard was a Papist.

However, I allowed liberty of conscience throughout my dominions. But this is by the way.

As soon as I had secured my two weak rescued prisoners, and
given them shelter and a place to rest them upon, I began to think of making some provision for them. And the first thing I did, I ordered Friday to take a yearling goat—betwixt a kid and a goat—out of my particular flock, to be killed, when I cut off the hinder quarter, and chopping it into small pieces, I set Friday to work to boiling and stewing, and made them a very good dish, I assure you, of flesh and broth, having put some barley and rice also into the broth; and as I cooked it without doors, for I made no fire within my inner wall, so I carried it all into the new tent; and having set a table there for them, I sat down and eat my own dinner also with them, and, as well as I could, cheered them and encouraged them; Friday being my interpreter, especially to his father, and indeed to the Spaniard too, for the Spaniard spoke the language of the savages pretty well.

After we had dined, or rather supperd, I ordered Friday to take one of the canoes, and go and fetch our muskets and other fire-arms, which for want of time we had left upon the place of battle: and the next day I ordered him to go and bury the dead bodies of the savages, which lay open to the sun and would presently be offensive; and I also ordered him to bury the horrid remains of their barbarous feast, which I knew were pretty much, and which I could not think of doing myself; nay, I could not bear to see them if I went that way. All which he punctually performed, and defaced the very appearance of the savages being there; so that, when I went again, I could scarce know where it was, otherwise than by the corner of the wood pointing to the place.

I then began to enter into a little conversation with my two new subjects. And first I set Friday to inquire of his father what he thought of the escape of the savages in that canoe, and whether we might expect a return of them with a power too great for us to resist. His first opinion was, that the savages in the boat never could live out the storm which blew that night they went off, but must of necessity be drowned or driven south to those other shores where they were as sure to be devoured as they were to be drowned if they were cast away. But as to what they would do if they came safe on shore, he said he knew not; but it was his opinion that they were so dreadfully frightened with
the manner of their being attacked—the noise and the fire—that he believed they would tell their people they were all killed by thunder and lightning, not by the hand of man; and that the two which appeared—namely, Friday and me—were two heavenly spirits or furies come down to destroy them, and not men with weapons. This he said he knew, because he heard them all cry out so in their language to one another; for it was impossible to them to conceive that a man could dart fire and speak thunder, and kill at a distance without lifting up the hand, as was done now. And this old savage was in the right; for, as I understood since by other hands, the savages never attempted to go over to the island afterwards; they were so terrified with the accounts given by those four men (for it seems they did escape the sea) that they believed whoever went to that enchanted island would be destroyed with fire from the gods!

This, however, I knew not, and therefore was under continual apprehensions for a good while, and kept always upon my guard, me and all my army; for as we were now four of us, I would have ventured upon a hundred of them fairly in the open field at any time.

In a little time, however, no more canoes appearing, the fear of their coming wore off, and I began to take my former thoughts of a voyage to the main into consideration, being likewise assured by Friday's father that I might depend upon good usage from their nation on his account, if I would go.

But my thoughts were a little suspended when I had a serious discourse with the Spaniard, and when I understood that there were sixteen more of his countrymen and Portuguese, who, having been cast away and made their escape to that side, lived there at peace indeed with the savages, but were very sore put to it for necessaries, and indeed for life. I asked him all the particulars of their voyage, and found they were a Spanish ship bound from the Rio de la Plata to the Havannah, being directed to leave their loading there, which was chiefly hides and silver, and to bring back what European goods they could meet with there; that they had five Portuguese seamen on board, who they took out of another wreck; that five of their own men were
drowned when the first ship was lost, and that these escaped through infinite dangers and hazards, and arrived almost starved on the Cannibal coast, where they expected to have been devoured every moment.

He told me they had some arms with them, but they were per-

fectly useless, for that they had neither powder nor ball, the washing of the sea having spoiled all their powder but a little, which they used at their first landing to provide themselves some food.

I asked him what he thought would become of them there, and if they had formed no design of making any escape? He said they had many consultations about it, but that having neither vessel nor tools to build one, nor provisions of any kind, their counsels always ended in tears and despair.
CRUSOE'S PROPOSAL

I asked him how he thought they would receive a proposal from me which might tend towards an escape? and whether, if they were all here, it might not be done? I told him with freedom I feared mostly their treachery and ill usage of me if I put my life in their hands; for that gratitude was no inherent virtue in the nature of man; nor did men always square their dealings by the obligations they had received, so much as they did by the advantages they expected. I told him it would be very hard that I should be the instrument of their deliverance and that they should afterwards make me their prisoner in New Spain, where an Englishman was certain to be made a sacrifice, what necessity or what accident soever brought him thither; and that I had rather be delivered up to the savages and be devoured alive, than fall into the merciless claws of the priests, and be carried into the Inquisition. I added, that otherwise I was persuaded, if they were all here, we might with so many hands build a bark large enough to carry us all away, either to the Brazils southward, or to the islands or Spanish coast northward; but that if in requital they should, when I had put weapons into their hands, carry me by force among their own people, I might be ill used for my kindness to them, and make my case worse than it was before.

He answered, with a great deal of candour and ingenuity, that their condition was so miserable, and they were so sensible of it, that he believed they would abhor the thought of using any man unkindly that should contribute to their deliverance; and that if I pleased, he would go to them with the old man, and discourse with them about it, and return again, and bring me their answer: that he would make conditions with them upon their solemn oath, that they should be absolutely under my leading as their commander and captain; and that they should swear upon the holy sacraments and the gospel to be true to me, and go to such Christian country as that I should agree to, and no other; and to be directed wholly and absolutely by my orders, till they were landed safely in such country as I intended; and that he would bring a contract from them under their hands for that purpose.

Then he told me he would first swear to me himself, that he would never stir from me as long as he lived till I gave him
orders; and that he would take my side to the last drop of his blood if there should happen the least breach of faith among his countrymen.

He told me they were all of them very civil, honest men, and they were under the greatest distress imaginable, having neither weapons nor clothes nor any food, but at the mercy and discretion of the savages; out of all hopes of ever returning to their own country; and that he was sure, if I would undertake their relief, they would live and die by me.

Upon these assurances, I resolved to venture to relieve them if possible, and to send the old savage and the Spaniard over to them to treat; but when we had gotten all things in a readiness to go, the Spaniard himself started an objection, which had so much prudence in it on one hand, and so much sincerity on the other hand, that I could not but be very well satisfied in it; and by his advice put off the deliverance of his comrades for at least half a year. The case was thus:—

He had been with us now about a month, during which time I had let him see in what manner I had provided, with the assistance of Providence, for my support; and he saw evidently what stock of corn and rice I had laid up, which, as it was more than sufficient for myself, so it was not sufficient, at least without good husbandry, for my family, now it was increased to number four. But much less would it be sufficient if his countrymen, who were, as he said, fourteen still alive, should come over. And least of all would it be sufficient to victual our vessel, if we should build one, for a voyage to any of the Christian colonies of America. So he told me he thought it would be more advisable to let him and the two other dig and cultivate some more land, as much as I could spare seed to sow; and that we should wait another harvest, that we might have a supply of corn for his countrymen when they should come; for want might be a temptation to them to disagree, or not to think themselves delivered otherwise than out of one difficulty into another. "You know," says he, "the children of Israel, though they rejoiced at first for their being delivered out of Egypt, yet rebelled even against God himself that delivered them, when they came to want bread in the wilderness."
SEASONABLE CAUTION.

His caution was so seasonable, and his advice so good, that I could not but be very well pleased with his proposal, as well as I was satisfied with his fidelity. So we fell to digging, all four of us, as well as the wooden tools we were furnished with permitted; and in about a month's time, by the end of which it was seed-time, we had gotten as much land cured and trimmed up as we sowed twenty-two bushels of barley on and sixteen jars of rice—which is, in short, all the seed we had to spare: nor, indeed, did we ourselves barley sufficient for our own food for the six months at we had to expect our crop; that is to say reckoning from the we set our seed aside for sowing, for it is not to be supposed is six months in the ground in that country.

Having now society enough, and our number being sufficient to us out of fear of the savages if they had come, unless theirumber had been very great, we went freely all over the island wherever we found occasion; and as here we had our escape or deliverance upon our thoughts, it was impossible, at least for me, to have the means of it out of mine. To this purpose I marked a several trees which I thought fit for our work, and I set Friday and his father to cutting them down; and then I caused the Spaniard, to whom I imparted my thought on that affair, to oversee and direct their work. I showed them with what indefatigable arts I had hewed a large tree into single planks, and I caused them to do the like, till they had made about a dozen large planks of good oak, near two foot broad, thirty-five foot long, and from six inches to four inches thick. What prodigious labour it took, any one may imagine.

At the same time I contrived to increase my little flock of tame beasts as much as I could, and to this purpose I made Friday and the Spaniard go out one day, and myself with Friday the next; for we took our turns: and by this means we got above twenty young kids to breed up with the rest; for whenever we lost the dam, we saved the kids, and added them to our flock. But above all, the season for curing the grapes coming on, I caused such a prodigious quantity to be hung up in the sun, that I believe had we been at Alicant, where the raisins of the sun are cured, we could have filled sixty or eighty barrels. And these
with our bread was a great part of our food; and very good too, I assure you, for it is an exceeding nourishing food.

It was now harvest, and our crop in good order. It was the most plentiful increase I had seen in the island, but it was enough to answer our end; for from our twenty-two bushels of barley we brought in and thrashed out above two hundred and twenty bushels, and the like in proportion of the rice; which store enough for our food to the next harvest, though all sixteen Spaniards had been on shore with me; or if we had been ready for a voyage, it would very plentifully have victualled ship to have carried us to any part of the world—that is, of America.

When we had thus housed and secured our magazine, we fell to work to make more wicker-work, namely, greater in which we kept it; and the Spaniard was very handy at this part, and often blamed me that I did not get some things for defence of this kind of work; but I saw no need of it.

And now having a full supply of food for all the guests expected, I gave the Spaniard leave to go over to the main, what he could do with those he had left behind him that gave him a strict charge in writing not to bring any man, him who would not first swear in the presence of himself and the old savage, that he would no way injure, fight with, or assist him he should find in the island, who was so kind for them in order to their deliverance; but that they would defend him against all such attempts, and wherever he went would be entirely under and subjected to his command and that this should be put in writing, and signed with hands. How we were to have this done, when I knew to neither pen or ink—that indeed was a question which we asked.

Under these instructions, the Spaniard and the old savage, father of Friday, went away in one of the canoes which the be said to come in, or rather were brought in, when they prisoners to be devoured by the savages.

I gave each of them a musket with a firelock on it, an
eight charges of powder and ball, charging them to be very good husbands of both, and not to use either of them but upon urgent occasion.

This was a cheerful work, being the first measures used by me in view of my deliverance for now twenty-seven years and some days. I gave them provisions of bread and of dried grapes sufficient for themselves for many days, and sufficient for all their countrymen for about eight days' time; and wishing them a good voyage, I see them go, agreeing with them about a signal they should hang out at their return, by which I should know them again when they came back at a distance, before they came on shore.

They went away with a fair gale on the day that the moon was at full by my account, in the month of October. But as for an exact reckoning of days, after I had once lost it, I could never recover it again; nor had I kept even the number of years so punctually as to be sure that I was right, though, as it proved when I afterwards examined my account, I found I had kept a true reckoning of years.

It was no less than eight days I had waited for them, when a strange and unforeseen accident intervened, of which the like has not perhaps been heard of in history. I was fast asleep in my hutch one morning, when my man Friday came running in to me and called aloud, "Master, master, they are come, they are come!"

I jumped up, and regardless of danger, I went out as soon as I could get my clothes on, through my little grove, which, by the way, was by this time grown to be a very thick wood; I say, regardless of danger, I went without my arms, which was not my custom to do; but I was surprised, when, turning my eyes to the sea, I presently saw a boat at about a league and half's distance, standing in for the shore with a shoulder-of-mutton sail, as they call it; and the wind blowing pretty fair to bring them in; also I observed, presently, that they did not come from that side which the shore lay on, but from the southernmost end of the island. Upon this I called Friday in, and bid him lie close, for these were not the people we looked for, and that we might not know yet whether they were friends or enemies.

In the next place, I went in to fetch my perspective-glass to see
what I could make of them; and having taken the ladder out, I
climbed up to the top of the hill, as I used to do when I was appre-
hensive of anything, and to take my view the plainer without being
discovered.

I had scarce set my foot on the hill, when my eye plainly dis-
covered a ship lying at an anchor, at about two leagues and a half's
distance from me south-south-east, but not above a league and a half

from the shore. By my observation it appeared plainly to be an
English ship, and the boat appeared to be an English long-boat.

I cannot express the confusion I was in, though the joy of see-
ing a ship, and one who I had reason to believe was manned by
my own countrymen and consequently friends, was such as I can-
not describe. But yet I had some secret doubts hung about me, I
cannot tell from whence they came, bidding me keep upon my
guard. In the first place, it occurred to me to consider what busi-
ness an English ship could have in that part of the world, since it
was not the way to or from any part of the world where the Eng-
lish had any traffic; and I knew there had been no storms to drive
them in there as in distress; and that if they were English really,
it was most probable that they were here upon no good design, and that I had better continue as I was than fall into the hands of thieves and murderers.

Let no man despise the secret hints and notices of danger, which sometime are given him when he may think there is no possibility of its being real. That such hints and notices are given us, I believe few that have made any observations of things can deny; that they are certain discoveries of an invisible world, and a converse of spirits, we cannot doubt; and if the tendency of them seems to be to warn us of danger, why should we not suppose they are from some friendly agent—whether supreme, or inferior and subordinate, is not the question; and that they are given for our good?

The present question abundantly confirms me in the justice of this reasoning; for had I not been made cautious by this secret admonition, come it from whence it will, I had been undone inevitably, and in a far worse condition than before, as you will see presently.

I had not kept myself long in this posture, but I saw the boat draw near the shore, as if they looked for a creek to thrust in at for the convenience of landing. However, as they did not come quite far enough, they did not see the little inlet where I formerly landed my rafts, but run their boat on shore upon the beach, at about half a mile from me; which was very happy for me, for otherwise they would have landed just, as I may say, at my door, and would soon have beaten me out of my castle, and perhaps have plundered me of all I had.

When they were on shore, I was fully satisfied that they were Englishmen, at least most of them. One or two I thought were Dutch; but it did not prove so. There were in all eleven men, whereof three of them I found were unarmed, and, as I thought, bound; and when the first four or five of them were jumped on shore, they took these three out of the boat as prisoners. One of the three I could perceive using the most passionate gestures of entreaty, affliction, and despair, even to a kind of extravagance; the other two, I could perceive, lifted up their hands sometimes, and appeared concerned indeed, but not to such a degree as the first.
I was perfectly confounded at the sight, and knew not what the meaning of it should be. Friday called out to me in English as well as he could, "O master! you see English mans eat prisoner as well as savage mans."—"Why," says I, "Friday, do you think they are a going to eat them, then?"—"Yes," says Friday, "they will eat them."—"No, no," says I, "Friday; I am afraid they will murder them, indeed, but you may be sure they will not eat them."

All this while I had no thought of what the matter really was, but stood trembling with the horror of the sight, expecting every moment when the three prisoners should be killed; nay, once I saw one of the villains lift up his arm with a great cutlass, as the seamen call it, or sword, to strike one of the poor men; and I expected to see him fall every moment, at which all the blood in my body seemed to run chill in my veins.

I wished heartily now for my Spaniard, and the savage that was gone with him, or that I had any way to have come undiscovered within shot of them, that I might have rescued the three men, for I saw no firearms they had among them; but it fell out to my mind another way.

After I had observed the outrageous usage of the three men by the insolent seamen, I observed the fellows run scattering about the land, as if they wanted to see the country. I observed that the three other men had liberty to go also where they pleased; but they sat down all three upon the ground, very pensive, and looked like men in despair.

This put me in mind of the first time when I came on shore and began to look about me; how I gave myself over for lost; how wildly I looked round me; what dreadful apprehensions I had; and how I lodged in the tree all night for fear of being devoured by wild beasts.

As I knew nothing that night of the supply I was to receive by the providential driving of the ship nearer the land by the storms and tide, by which I have since been so long nourished and supported; so these three poor desolate men knew nothing how certain of deliverance and supply they were, how near it was to them, and how effectually and really they were in a condition of
safety, at the same time that they thought themselves lost, and their case desperate.

So little do we see before us in the world, and so much reason have we to depend cheerfully upon the great Maker of the world, that he does not leave his creatures so absolutely destitute, but that in the worst circumstances they have always something to be thankful for, and sometimes are nearer their deliverance than they imagine; nay, are even brought to their deliverance by the means by which they seem to be brought to their destruction.

It was just at the top of high-water when these people came on shore, and while partly they stood parleying with the prisoners they brought, and partly while they rambled about to see what kind of a place they were in, they had carelessly stayed till the tide was spent, and the water was ebbed considerably away, leaving their boat aground.

They had left two men in the boat, who, as I found afterwards, having drank a little too much brandy, fell asleep; however, one of them waking sooner than the other, and finding the boat too fast aground for him to stir it, hallooed for the rest who were straggling about, upon which they all soon came to the boat; but it was past all their strength to launch her, the boat being very heavy, and the shore on that side being a soft oozy sand, almost like a quicksand.

In this condition, like true seamen, who are perhaps the least of all mankind given to forethought, they gave it over, and away they strolled about the country again; and I heard one of them say aloud to another, calling them off from the boat, "Why, let her alone, Jack, can't ye; she will float next tide;"—by which I was fully confirmed in the main inquiry of what countrymen they were.

All this while I kept myself very close, not once daring to stir out of my castle any farther than to my place of observation near the top of the hill; and very glad I was to think how well it was fortified. I knew it was no less than ten hours before the boat could be on float again, and by that time it would be dark, and I might be at more liberty to see their motions, and to hear their discourse, if they had any.
In the meantime I fitted myself up for a battle as before; though with more caution, knowing I had to do with another kind of enemy than I had at first. I ordered Friday also, who I had made an excellent marksman with his gun, to load himself with arms. I took myself two fowling-pieces, and I gave him three muskets. My figure indeed was very fierce: I had my formidable goat-skin coat on, with the great cap I have mentioned, a naked sword by my side, two pistols in my belt, and a gun upon each shoulder.

It was my design, as I said above, not to have made any attempt till it was dark; but about two o'clock, being the heat of the day, I found that in short they were all gone straggling into the woods, and, as I thought, were laid down to sleep. The three poor distressed men, too anxious for their condition to get any sleep, were, however, set down under the shelter of a great tree, at about a quarter of a mile from me, and, as I thought, out of sight of any of the rest.

Upon this I resolved to discover myself to them, and learn something of their condition. Immediately I marched in the figure as above, my man Friday at a good distance behind me, as formidable for his arms as I, but not making quite so staring a spectre-like figure as I did.

I came as near them undiscovered as I could, and then, before any of them saw me, I called aloud to them in Spanish, "What are ye, gentlemen?"

They started up at the noise, but were ten times more confounded when they saw me, and the uncouth figure that I made. They made no answer at all, but I thought I perceived them just going to fly from me, when I spoke to them in English. "Gentlemen," said I, "do not be surprised at me; perhaps you may have a friend near you when you did not expect it."—"He must be sent directly from heaven then," said one of them very gravely to me, and pulling off his hat at the same time to me, "for our condition is past the help of man."—"All help is from heaven, sir," said I; "but can you put a stranger in the way how to help you, for you seem to me to be in some great distress? I saw you when you landed; and when you seemed to make applications to the
THE PRISONERS' ASTONISHMENT.

brutes that came with you, I saw one of them lift up his sword to kill you."

The poor man, with tears running down his face, and trembling, looking like one astonished, returned, "Am I talking to God or man! Is it a real man or an angel?"—"Be in no fear about that, sir," said I; "if God had sent an angel to relieve you, he
could have come better clothed, and armed after another manner
than you see me in. Pray lay aside your fears; I am a man, an
Englishman, and disposed to assist you, you see. I have one
servant only; we have arms and ammunition; tell us freely. Can
I serve you? What is your case?"

"Our case," said he, "sir, is too long to tell you while our
ruderers are so near; but in short, sir, I was commander of that
ship; my men have mutinied against me; they have been hardly
sailed on not to murder me, and at last have set me on shore
this desolate place, with these two men with me; one my mate,
the other a passenger, where we expected to perish, believing the place to be uninhabited, and know not yet what to think of it."

"Where are those brutes, your enemies?" said I; "do you know where they are gone?"—"There they lie, sir," said he, pointing to a thicket of trees. "My heart trembles for fear they have seen us and heard you speak; if they have, they will certainly murder us all."

"Have they any firearms?" said I. He answered they had only two pieces, and one which they left in the boat. "Well then," said I, "leave the rest to me; I see they are all asleep; it is an easy thing to kill them all; but shall we rather take them prisoners?" He told me there were two desperate villains among them that it was scarce safe to show any mercy to; but if they were secured, he believed all the rest would return to their duty. I asked him which they were. He told me he could not at that distance describe them; but he would obey my orders in anything I would direct. "Well," says I, "let us retreat out of their view or hearing, lest they awake, and we will resolve further;" so they willingly went back with me, till the woods covered us from them.

"Look you, sir," said I, "if I venture upon your deliverance, are you willing to make two conditions with me?" He anticipated my proposals by telling me that both he and the ship, if recovered, should be wholly directed and commanded by me in everything; and if the ship was not recovered, he would live and die with me in what part of the world soever I would send him, and the two other men said the same.

"Well," says I, "my conditions are but two. 1. That while you stay on this island with me you will not pretend to any authority here; and if I put arms into your hands, you will upon all occasions give them up to me, and do no prejudice to me or mine upon this island, and in the mean time be governed by my orders.

2. "That if the ship is, or may be recovered, you will carry me and my man to England passage free."

He gave me all the assurances that the invention and faith of man could devise, that he would comply with these most reason-
THE MUTINEERS ATTACKED. 265

...mands, and besides would owe his life to me, and acknow-

e, then,” said I, “here are three muskets for you, with

He showed all the testimony of his gratitude that he was

it was hard venturing anything; but the best method I

what you think is proper to be

and ball; tell me next what you think is proper to be

He showed all the testimony of his gratitude that he was

but offered to be wholly guided by me. I told him I

it was hard venturing anything; but the best method I

think of was to fire upon them at once as they lay; and if

not killed at the first volley, and offered to submit, we

and so put it wholly upon God’s providence to

save them, and so put it wholly upon God’s providence to

he shot.

aid very modestly, that he was loath to kill them if he

help it, but that those two were incorrigible villains, and

in the authors of all the mutiny in the ship, and if they

we should be undone still; for they would go on board

of the whole ship’s company, and destroy us all. “Well

says I, “necessity legitimates my advice, for it is the only

save our lives.” However, seeing him still cautious of

g blood, I told him they should go themselves, and manage

found convenient.

e middle of this discourse we heard some of them awake,

n after we saw two of them on their feet. I asked him if

f them were of the men who he had said were the heads

mutiny? He said, “No.” “Well then,” said I, “you may

escape; and Providence seems to have wakened them on

be to save themselves. Now,” says I, “if the rest escape

is your fault.”

ated with this, he took the musket I had given him in his

nd a pistol in his belt, and his two comrades with him,

ch man a piece in his hand. The two men who were with

ing first, made some noise, at which one of the seamen who

ake turned about, and seeing them coming, cried out to

But it was too late then; for the moment he cried out,

ed—I mean the two men, the captain wisely reserving his

ee. They had so well aimed their shot at the men they

hat one of them was killed on the spot, and the other very

rounded; but not being dead, he started up upon his feet,
and called eagerly for help to the other; but the captain, stepping to him, told him it was too late to cry for help, he should call upon God to forgive his villany, and with that word knocked him down with the stock of his musket, so that he never spoke more. There were three more in the company, and one of them was also slightly wounded. By this time I was come, and when they saw their danger, and that it was in vain to resist, they begged for mercy. The captain told them he would spare their lives, if they would give him any assurance of their abhorrence of the treachery they had been guilty of, and would swear to be faithful to him in recovering the ship, and afterwards in carrying her back to Jamaica, from whence they came. They gave him all the protestations of their sincerity that could be desired, and he was willing to believe them and spare their lives, which I was not against; only I obliged him to keep them bound hand and foot while they were upon the island.

While this was doing, I sent Friday with the captain's mate to the boat, with orders to secure her and bring away the oars and sail; which they did. And by-and-by, three straggling men, that were (happily for them) parted from the rest, came back upon hearing the guns fired; and seeing their captain, who before was their prisoner, now their conqueror, they submitted to be bound also, and so our victory was complete.
THE CAPTAIN'S DIFFICULTY.

It now remained that the captain and I should inquire into one another's circumstances. I began first, and told him my whole history, which he heard with an attention even to amazement; and particularly at the wonderful manner of my being furnished with provisions and ammunition. And, indeed, as my story is a whole collection of wonders, it affected him deeply. But when he reflected from thence upon himself, and how I seemed to have been preserved there on purpose to save his life, the tears ran down his face, and he could not speak a word more.

After this communication was at end I carried him and his two men into my apartment, leading them in just where I came out, namely, at the top of the house; where I refreshed them with such provisions as I had, and showed them all the contrivances I had made during my long, long inhabiting that place.

All I showed them, all I said to them, was perfectly amazing; but above all, the captain admired my fortification, and how perfectly I had concealed my retreat with a grove of trees, which, having been now planted near twenty years, and the trees growing much faster than in England, was become a little wood, and so thick, that it was unpassable in any part of it but at that one side where I had reserved my little winding passage into it. I told him this was my castle and my residence, but that I had a seat in the country, as most princes have, whither I could retreat upon occasion, and I would show him that too another time, but at present our business was to consider how to recover the ship. He agreed with me as to that, but told me he was perfectly at a loss what measures to take; for that there were still six-and-twenty hands on board, who, having entered into a cursed conspiracy, by which they had all forfeited their lives to the law, would be hardened in it now by desperation, and would carry it on, knowing that if they were reduced they should be brought to the gallows as soon as they came to England, or to any of the English colonies; and that therefore there would be no attacking them with so small a number as we were.

I mused for some time upon what he had said, and found it was a very rational conclusion; and that therefore something was to be resolved on very speedily, as well to draw the men on board
into some snare for their surprise as to prevent their landing upon
us and destroying us. Upon this it presently occurred to me that
in a little while the ship's crew, wondering what was become of
their comrades and of the boat, would certainly come on shore in
their other boat to see for them, and that then perhaps they
might come armed, and be too strong for us. This he allowed
was rational.

Upon this I told him the first thing we had to do was to stave
the boat which lay upon the beach, so that they might not carry
her off; and taking everything out of her, leave her so far useless
as not to be fit to swim. Accordingly we went on board, took
the arms which were left on board out of her, and whatever else
we found there, which was a bottle of brandy and another of rum,
a few biscuit cakes, a horn of powder, and a great lump of sugar
in a piece of canvas—the sugar was five or six pounds; all which
was very welcome to me, especially the brandy and sugar, of which
I had had none left for many years.

When we had carried all these things on shore (the oars, mast,
sail, and rudder of the boat, were carried away before, as above),
we knocked a great hole in her bottom, that if they had come
strong enough to master us, yet they could not carry off the
boat.

Indeed it was not much in my thoughts that we could be able
to recover the ship; but my view was, that if they went away
without the boat, I did not much question to make her fit again
to carry us away to the Leeward Islands, and call upon our
friends the Spaniards, in my way, for I had them still in my
thoughts.

While we were thus preparing our designs, and had first by
main strength heaved the boat up upon the beach, so high that the
tide would not float her off at high-water mark; and besides, had
broke a hole in her bottom too big to be quickly stopped, and
were sat down musing what we should do; we heard the ship fire
a gun, and saw her make a waft with her ancient, as a signal for
the boat to come on board; but no boat stirred; and they fired
several times, making other signals for the boat.

At last, when all their signals and firings proved fruitless, and
they found the boat did not stir, we saw them, by the help of my glasses, hoist another boat out, and row towards the shore; and we found as they approached that there was no less than ten men in her, and that they had firearms with them.

As the ship lay almost two leagues from the shore, we had a full view of them as they came, and a plain sight of the men, even of their faces; because the tide having set them a little to the east of the other boat, they rowed up under shore to come to the same place where the other had landed, and where the boat lay.

By this means, I say, we had a full view of them, and the captain knew the persons and characters of all the men in the boat, of whom he said that there were three very honest fellows, who, he was sure, were led into this conspiracy by the rest, being overpowered and frightened.

But that as for the boatswain, who it seems was the chief officer among them, and all the rest, they were as outrageous as any of the ship's crew, and were no doubt made desperate in their new enterprise; and terribly apprehensive he was that they would be too powerful for us.

I smiled at him, and told him that men in our circumstances were past the operation of fear: that seeing almost every condition that could be was better than that which we were supposed to be in, we ought to expect that the consequence, whether death or life, would be sure to be a deliverance. I asked him what he thought of the circumstances of my life, and whether a deliverance were not worth venturing for? "And where, sir," said I, "is your belief of my being preserved here on purpose to save your life, which elevated you a little while ago? For my part," said I, "there seems to be but one thing amiss in all the prospect of it." "What's that?" says he. "Why," said I, "'tis that, as you say, there are three or four honest fellows among them, which should be spared. Had they been all of the wicked part of the crew, I should have thought God's providence had singled them out to deliver them into your hands; for, depend upon it, every man of them that comes ashore are our own, and shall die or live as they behave to us."

As I spoke this with a raised voice and cheerful countenance, I
found it greatly encouraged him; so we set vigorously to our business. We had upon the first appearance of the boat's coming from the ship considered of separating our prisoners, and had indeed secured them effectually.

Two of them, of whom the captain was less assured than ordinary, I sent with Friday, and one of the three (delivered men) to my cave, where they were remote enough, and out of danger of being heard or discovered, or of finding their way out of the woods if they could have delivered themselves. Here they left them bound, but gave them provisions, and promised them if they continued there quietly, to give them their liberty in a day or two; but that if they attempted their escape, they should be put to death without mercy. They promised faithfully to bear their confinement with patience, and were very thankful that they had such good usage as to have provisions and a light left them; for Friday gave them candles (such as we made ourselves) for their comfort; and they did not know but that he stood sentinel over them at the entrance.

The other prisoners had better usage. Two of them were kept pinioned indeed, because the captain was not free to trust them, but the other two were taken into my service upon their captain's recommendation, and upon their solemnly engaging to live and die with us. So with them and the three honest men, we were seven men, well armed; and I made no doubt we should be able to deal well enough with the ten that were a-coming, considering that the captain had said there were three or four honest men among them also.

As soon as they got to the place where their other boat lay, they run their boat into the beach, and came all on shore, haling the boat up after them; which I was glad to see, for I was afraid they would rather have left the boat at an anchor some distance from the shore, with some hands in her to guard her, and so we should not be able to seize the boat.

Being on shore, the first thing they did, they ran all to their other boat; and it was easy to see that they were under a great surprise to find her stripped, as above, of all that was in her, and a great hole in her bottom.
A FRUITLESS SEARCH.

After they had mused a while upon this, they set up two or three great shouts, hallooing with all their might, to try if they could make their companions hear; but all was to no purpose. Then they came all close in a ring, and fired a volley of their small arms; which indeed we heard, and the echoes made the woods ring, but it was all one; those in the cave, we were sure, could not hear; and those in our keeping, though they heard it well enough, yet durst give no answer to them.

They were so astonished at the surprise of this, that, as they told us afterwards, they resolved to go all on board again to their ship, and let them know there that the men were all murdered, and the long-boat staved. Accordingly, they immediately launched their boat again, and got all of them on board.

The captain was terribly amazed, and even confounded at this, believing they would go on board the ship again, and set sail, giving their comrades up for lost, and so he should still lose the
ship, which he was in hopes we should have recovered. But he was quickly as much frightened the other way.

They had not been long put off with the boat, but we perceived them all coming on shore again; but with this new measure in their conduct, which it seems they consulted together upon—namely, to leave three men in the boat, and the rest to go on shore, and go up into the country to look for their fellows.

This was a great disappointment to us; for now we were at a loss what to do: for our seizing those seven men on shore would be no advantage to us if we let the boat escape; because they would then row away to the ship, and then the rest of them would be sure to weigh and set sail, and so our recovering the ship would be lost.

However, we had no remedy but to wait and see what the issue of things might present. The seven men came on shore, and the three who remained in the boat put her off to a good distance from the shore, and came to an anchor to wait for them; so that it was impossible for us to come at them in the boat.

Those that came on shore kept close together, marching towards the top of the little hill under which my habitation lay; and we could see them plainly, though they could not perceive us. We could have been very glad they would have come nearer to us, so that we might have fired at them, or that they would have gone farther off, that we might have come abroad.

But when they were come to the brow of the hill, where they could see a great way into the valleys and woods which lay towards the north-east part, and where the island lay lowest, they shouted and hallooed till they were weary; and not caring, it seems, to venture far from the shore, nor far from one another, they sat down together under a tree to consider of it. Had they thought fit to have gone to sleep there, as the other party of them had done, they had done the job for us; but they were too full of apprehensions of danger to venture to go to sleep, though they could not tell what the danger was they had to fear neither.

The captain made a very just proposal to me upon this consultation of theirs, namely, that perhaps they would all fire a volley again, to endeavour to make their fellows hear, and that we should
CRUSOE'S STRATAGEM.

upon them just at the juncture when their pieces were all
3, and they would certainly yield, and we should have
out bloodshed. I liked the proposal provided it was
we were near enough to come up to them before they
their pieces again.

event did not happen, and we lay still a long time very
what course to take. At length I told them there would
; to be done in my opinion till night, and then, if they
return to the boat, perhaps we might find a way to get
them and the shore, and so might use some stratagem
in the boat to get them on shore.

ated a great while, though very impatient for their re-
and were very uneasy when, after long consultations, we
start all up and march down toward the sea. It seems
such dreadful apprehensions upon them of the danger of
that they resolved to go on board the ship again, give
onions over for lost, and so go on with their intended
th the ship.

as I perceived them go towards the shore, I imagined it
really was, that they had given over their search, and
going back again; and the captain, as soon as I told him
ite, was ready to sink at the apprehensions of it; but I
thought of a stratagem to fetch them back again, and
vered my end to a tittle.

d Friday and the captain's mate to go over the little
ward, towards the place where the savages came on shore
lay was rescued; and as soon as they came to a little
and, at about half a mile distance, I bade them halloo
they could, and wait till they found the seamen heard
it as soon as ever they heard the seamen answer them
and return it again; and then, keeping out of sight, take
aways answering when the other hallooed, to draw them
the island, and among the woods, as possible; and then
ut again to me by such ways as I directed them.
ere just going into the boat when Friday and the mate
and they presently heard them, and answering, run
shore westward, towards the voice they heard, when
they were presently stopped by the creek, where the water being up, they could not get over, and called for the boat to come up and set them over, as indeed I expected.

When they had set themselves over, I observed that the boat, being gone up a good way into the creek, and, as it were, in a harbour within the land, they took one of the three men out of her to go along with them, and left only two in the boat, having fastened her to the stump of a little tree on the shore.

This was what I wished for, and immediately leaving Friday and the captain's mate to their business, I took the rest with me, and crossing the creek out of their sight, we surprised the two men before they were aware; one of them lying on shore, and the other being in the boat. The fellow on shore was between sleeping and waking, and going to start up, the captain, who was foremost, ran in upon him, and knocked him down, and then called out to him in the boat to yield, or he was a dead man.

There needed very few arguments to persuade a single man to yield when he saw five men upon him, and his comrade knocked down; besides, this was, it seems, one of the three who were not so hearty in the mutiny as the rest of the crew, and therefore was easily persuaded not only to yield, but afterwards to join very sincerely with us.

In the meantime Friday and the captain's mate so well managed their business with the rest, that they drew them, by hallooing and answering, from one hill to another, and from one wood to another, till they not only heartily tired them, but left them where they were very sure they could not reach back to the boat before it was dark; and indeed they were heartily tired themselves also by the time they came back to us.

We had nothing now to do but to watch for them in the dark, and to fall upon them, so as to make sure work with them.

It was several hours after Friday came back to me before they came back to their boat: and we could hear the foremost of them long before they came quite up, calling to those behind to come along; and could also hear them answer and complain how late and tired they were, and not able to come any faster—which was very welcome news to us.
At length they came up to the boat; but 'tis impossible to express their confusion when they found the boat fast aground in the creek, the tide ebbed out, and their two men gone! We could not call to one another in a most lamentable manner, telling one another they were gotten into an enchanted island: that either there were inhabitants in it, and they should all be murdered; else there were devils and spirits in it, and they should be all carried away, and devoured.

They hallooed again, and called their two comrades by their names many times; but no answer. After some time we could see them, by the little light there was, run about wringing their hands like men in despair; and that sometimes they would sit down in the boat to rest themselves, then come ashore and walk about again, and so the same thing over again.

My men would fain have me give them leave to fall upon them once in the dark; but I was willing to take them at some advantage, so to spare them, and kill as few of them as I could; especially I was unwilling to hazard the killing any of our men, knowing the other were very well armed. I resolved wait to see if they did not separate; and therefore to make of them, I drew my ambuscade nearer, and ordered Friday the captain to creep upon their hands and feet as close to the mud as they could, that they might not be discovered, and get ear them as they could possibly, before they offered to fire.

They had not been long in that posture but that the boatswain, was the principal ringleader of the mutiny, and had now run himself the most dejected and dispirited of all the rest, came ting towards them with two more of their crew. The captain so eager, as having this principal rogue so much in his power, he could hardly have patience to let him come so near as to be of him; for they only heard his tongue before. But when he came nearer, the captain and Friday starting up on their feet, y at them.

The boatswain was killed upon the spot, the next man was shot the body, and fell just by him, though he did not die till an or two after; and the third run for it.

The noise of the fire I immediately advanced with my whole
army, which was now eight men, namely, myself generalissimo, Friday my lieutenant-general, the captain and his two men, and the three prisoners of war, who we had trusted with arms.

We came upon them indeed in the dark, so that they could not see our number; and I made the man we had left in the boat, who was now one of us, call to them by name, to try if I could bring them to a parley, and so might perhaps reduce them to terms; which fell out just as we desired. For indeed it was easy to think, as their condition then was, they would be very willing to capitulate. So he calls out as loud as he could to one of them,

"Tom Smith, Tom Smith." Tom Smith answered immediately,

"Who's that, Robinson?" for it seems he knew his voice. The other answered, "Ay, ay; for God's sake, Tom Smith, throw down your arms and yield, or you are all dead men this moment."

"Who must we yield to? where are they?" says Smith again.

"Here they are," says he; "here's our captain, and fifty men with him, have been hunting you this two hours; the boatswain is killed, Will Frye is wounded, and I am a prisoner; and if you do not yield, you are all lost."

"Will they give us quarter, then," says Tom Smith, "and we will yield?" "I'll go and ask, if you promise to yield," says Robinson. So he asked the captain, and the captain then calls himself out, "You, Smith, you know my voice, if you lay down your arms immediately and submit, you shall have your lives—all but Will Atkins."

Upon this Will Atkins cried out, "For God's sake, captain, give me quarter; what have I done? They have been all as bad as I;"—which, by the way, was not true neither; for it seems this Will Atkins was the first man that laid hold of the captain when they first mutinied, and used him barbarously, in tying his hands and giving him injurious language. However, the captain told him he must lay down his arms at discretion, and trust to the governor's mercy; by which he meant me, for they all called me governor.

In a word, they all laid down their arms, and begged their lives; and I sent the man that had parleyed with them, and two more, who bound them all; and then my great army of fifty men,
which particularly with those three, were all but eight, came up and seized upon them all, and upon their boat—only that I kept myself and one more out of sight, for reasons of state.

Our next work was to repair the boat, and think of seizing the ship; and as for the captain, now he had leisure to parley with them, he expostulated with them upon the villany of their practices with him, and at length upon the farther wickedness of their design, and how certainly it must bring them to misery and distress in the end, and perhaps to the gallows.

They all appeared very penitent, and begged hard for their lives. As for that, he told them, they were none of his prisoners, but the commander of the island; that they thought they had set him on shore in a barren uninhabited island, but it had pleased God so to direct them, that the island was inhabited, and that the governor was an Englishman: that he might hang them all there if he pleased; but as he had given them all quarter, he supposed he would send them to England to be dealt with there, as justice required—except Atkins, who he was commanded by the governor to advise to prepare for death, for that he would be hanged in the morning.

Though this was all a fiction of his own, yet it had its desired effect. Atkins fell upon his knees to beg the captain to intercede with the governor for his life; and all the rest begged of him for God's sake that they might not be sent to England.

It now occurred to me that the time of our deliverance was come, and that it would be a most easy thing to bring these fellows in to be hearty in getting possession of the ship; so I retired in the dark from them, that they might not see what kind of a governor they had, and called the captain to me. When I called, as at a good distance, one of the men was ordered to speak again, and say to the captain, "Captain, the commander calls for you." And presently the captain replied, "Tell his excellency I am just a-coming." This more perfectly amused them; and they all believed that the commander was just by with his fifty men.

Upon the captain's coming to me I told him my project for seizing the ship, which he liked of wonderfully well, and resolved to put it in execution the next morning.
The Captain's Proposal.

But in order to execute it with more art, and secure of success, I told him we must divide the prisoners, and that he should go and take Atkins and two more of the worst of them, and send them pinioned to the cave where the others lay. This was committed to Friday and the two men who came on shore with the captain.

They conveyed them to the cave, as to a prison; and it was indeed a dismal place, especially to men in their condition.

The other I ordered to my bower, as I called it, of which I have given a full description; and as it was fenced in, and they pinioned, the place was secure enough, considering they were upon their behaviour.

To these in the morning I sent the captain, who was to enter into a parley with them; in a word, to try them, and tell me whether he thought they might be trusted or no to go on board and surprise the ship. He talked to them of the injury done him, of the condition they were brought to; and that though the governor had given them quarter for their lives as to the present action, yet that if they were sent to England they would all be hanged in chains, to be sure; but that if they would join in so just an attempt as to recover the ship, he would have the governor's engagement for their pardon.

Any one may guess how readily such a proposal would be accepted by men in their condition. They fell down on their knees to the captain, and promised, with the deepest imprecations, that they would be faithful to him to the last drop, and that they should owe their lives to him, and would go with him all over the world; that they would own him for a father to them as long as they lived.

"Well," says the captain, "I must go and tell the governor what you say, and see what I can do to bring him to consent to it." So he brought me an account of the temper he found them in, and that he verily believed they would be faithful.

However, that we might be very secure, I told him he should go back again, and choose out five of them, and tell them they might see that he did not want men, that he would take out those five to be his assistants, and that the governor would keep the
THE TERMS ACCEPTED.

other two, and the three that were sent prisoners to the castle (my
cave) as hostages, for the fidelity of those five; and that if they
proved unfaithful in the execution, the five hostages should be
hanged in chains alive upon the shore.

This looked severe, and convinced them that the governor was
in earnest. However, they had no way left them but to accept it;
and it was now the business of the prisoners, as much as of the
captain, to persuade the other five to do their duty.

Our strength was now thus ordered for the expedition: 1. The
captain, his mate, and passenger; 2. Then the two prisoners of
the first gang, to whom, having their characters from the captain,
I had given their liberty, and trusted them with arms; 3. The
other two who I had kept till now in my bower pinioned, but upon
the captain's motion had now released; 4. These five released at
last: so that they were twelve in all, besides five we kept prisoners
in the cave for hostages.

I asked the captain if he was willing to venture with these hands
on board the ship; for as for me and my man Friday, I did not
think it was proper for us to stir, having seven men left behind,
and it was employment enough for us to keep them asunder and
supply them with victuals.

As to the five in the cave, I resolved to keep them fast, but
Friday went in twice a day to them to supply them with neces-
saries; and I made the other two carry provisions to a certain
distance, where Friday was to take it.

When I showed myself to the two hostages, it was with the
captain, who told them I was the person the governor had ordered
to look after them, and that it was the governor's pleasure they
should not stir anywhere but by my direction; that if they did,
they should be fetched into the castle and be laid in irons. So
that as we never suffered them to see me as governor, so I now
appeared as another person, and spoke of the governor, the garrison,
the castle, and the like, upon all occasions.

The captain now had no difficulty before him but to furnish his
two boats, stop the breach of one, and man them. He made his
passenger captain of one, with four other men; and himself, and
his mate and five more, went in the other. And they contrived
their business very well, for they came up to the ship about midnight. As soon as they came within call of the ship, he made Robinson hail them, and tell them they had brought off the men and the boat, but that it was a long time before they had found them, and the like, holding them in a chat till they came to the ship's side; when the captain and the mate, entering first with their arms, immediately knocked down the second mate and carpenter with the butt-end of their muskets. Being very faithfully seconded by their men, they secured all the rest that were upon the main and quarter-decks, and began to fasten the hatches to keep them down who were below, when the other boat and their men, entering at the fore-chains, secured the fore-castle of the ship, and the scuttle which went down into the cook-room, making three men they found there prisoners.

When this was done, and all safe upon deck, the captain ordered the mate with three men to break into the round-house where the new rebel captain lay, and having taken the alarm, was gotten up, and with two men and a boy had gotten firearms in their hands; and when the mate with a crow split open the door, the new captain and his men fired boldly among them, and wounded the mate with a musket ball, which broke his arm, and wounded two more of the men, but killed nobody.

The mate, calling for help, rushed however into the round-house, wounded as he was, and with his pistol shot the new captain through the head, the bullet entering at his mouth and came out again behind one of his ears, so that he never spoke a word; upon which the rest yielded, and the ship was taken effectually, without any more lives lost.

As soon as the ship was thus secured, the captain ordered seven guns to be fired, which was the signal agreed upon with me to give me notice of his success; which, you may be sure, I was very glad to hear, having sat watching upon the shore for it till near two of the clock in the morning.

Having thus heard the signal plainly, I laid me down; and it

1 At that time, the upper cabin in the stern of the ship was the master's room and was called the round-house, probably because it had a round top raised above the deck.
a day of great fatigue to me, I slept very sound, till thing surprised with the noise of a gun; and presently, I heard a man call me by the name of "Governor, and presently I knew the captain's voice, when climb
the top of the hill, there he stood, and pointing to the gazed me in his arms. "My dear friend and deliverer,"

"He stood, pointing to the ship."

here's your ship; for she is all yours, and so are we and ong to her." I cast my eyes to the ship, and there she little more than half a mile of the shore; for they id her anchor as soon as they were masters of her, and being fair, had brought her to an anchor just against of the little creek; and the tide being up, the captain t the pinnace in near the place where I at first landed id so landed just at my door. first ready to sink down with the surprise; for I saw nce indeed visibly put into my hands, all things easy, ship just ready to carry me away whither I pleased to st, for some time, I was not able to answer him one
word; but as he had taken me in his arms I held fast by him, or I should have fallen to the ground.

He perceived the surprise, and immediately pulls a bottle out of his pocket, and gave me a dram of cordial, which he had brought on purpose for me. After I had drank it, I sat down upon the ground; and though it brought me to myself, yet it was a good while before I could speak a word to him.

All this while the poor man was in as great an ecstasy as I, only not under any surprise, as I was; and he said a thousand kind tender things to me, to compose me and bring me to myself; but such was the flood of joy in my breast, that it put all my spirits into confusion. At last it broke out into tears, and in a little while after, I recovered my speech.

Then I took my turn, and embraced him as my deliverer, and we rejoiced together. I told him I looked upon him as a man sent from Heaven to deliver me, and that the whole transaction seemed to be a chain of wonders; that such things as these were the testimonies we had of a secret hand of Providence governing the world, and an evidence that the eyes of an Infinite Power could search into the remotest corner of the world, and send help to the miserable whenever he pleased.

I forgot not to lift up my heart in thankfulness to Heaven: and what heart could forbear to bless him, who had not only in a miraculous manner provided for one in such a wilderness, and in such a desolate condition, but from whom every deliverance must always be acknowledged to proceed?

When he had talked a while, the captain told me he had brought me some little refreshment, such as the ship afforded, and such as the wretches that had been so long his masters had not plundered him of. Upon this, he called aloud to the boat, and bid his men bring the things ashore that were for the governor; and indeed it was a present, as if I had been one not that was to be carried away along with them, but as if I had been to dwell upon the island still, and they were to go without me.

First he had brought me a case of bottles full of excellent cordial waters, six large bottles of Madeira wine (the bottles held two quarts apiece), two pound of excellent good tobacco, twelve
good pieces of the ship's beef, and six pieces of pork, with a bag of pease, and about a hundredweight of biscuit.

He brought me also a box of sugar, a box of flour, a bag full of lemons, and two bottles of lime-juice, and abundance of other things. But besides these, and what was a thousand times more useful to me, he brought me six clean new shirts, six very good neckcloths, two pair of gloves, one pair of shoes, a hat, and one pair of stockings, and a very good suit of clothes of his own, which had been worn but very little. In a word, he clothed me from head to foot.

It was a very kind and agreeable present, as any one may imagine, to one in my circumstances. But never was anything in the world of that kind so unpleasant, awkward, and uneasy, as it was to me to wear such clothes at their first putting on.

After these ceremonies past, and after all his good things were brought into my little apartment, we began to consult what was to be done with the prisoners we had; for it was worth considering whether we might venture to take them away with us or no, especially two of them, who we knew to be incorrigible and refractory to the last degree; and the captain said, he knew they were such rogues that there was no obliging them, and if he did carry them away it must be in irons as malefactors to be delivered over to justice at the first English colony he could come at. And I found that the captain himself was very anxious about it.

Upon this, I told him that if he desired it I durst undertake to bring the two men he spoke of to make it their own request that we should leave them upon the island. "I should be very glad of hat," says the captain, "with all my heart."

"Well," says I, "I will send for them up, and talk with them or you." So I caused Friday and the two hostages—for they were now discharged, their comrades having performed their promise; I say, I caused them to go to the cave, and bring up the men, pinioned as they were, to the bower, and keep them there till I came.

After some time I came thither dressed in my new habit; and I was called governor again. Being all met, and the captain with me, I caused the men to be brought before me; and I told
them I had had a full account of their villainous behaviour to the
captain, and how they had run away with the ship, and were pre-
paring to commit farther robberies, but that Providence had en-
snared them in their own ways, and that they were fallen into the
pit which they had dugged for others.
I let them know that by my direction the ship had been seized,
that she lay now in the road; and they might see by-and-by that
their new captain had received the reward of his villany, for that
they might see him hanging at the yard-arm.
That as to them, I wanted to know what they had to say why
I should not execute them as pirates taken in the fact, as by my
commission they could not doubt I had authority to do.
One of them answered in the name of the rest, that they had
nothing to say but this, that when they were taken the captain
promised them their lives; and they humbly implored my mercy.
But I told them I knew not what mercy to show them; for as for
myself I had resolved to quit the island with all my men, and had
taken passage with the captain to go for England; and as for the
captain he could not carry them to England other than as prisoners
in irons to be tried for mutiny and running away with the ship,
the consequence of which, they must needs know, would be the
gallows: so that I could not tell which was best for them, unless
they had a mind to take their fate in the island. If they desired
that (I did not care, as I had liberty to leave it), I had some
inclination to give them their lives, if they thought they could
shift on shore.
They seemed very thankful for it, said they would much rather
venture to stay there than to be carried to England to be hanged.
So I left it on that issue.

However, the captain seemed to make some difficulty of it, as
if he durst not leave them there. Upon this I seemed a little
angry with the captain, and told him that they were my prisoners,
not his; and that seeing I had offered them so much favour, I
would be as good as my word; and that if he did not think fit
to consent to it, I would set them at liberty as I found them, and
if he did not like it, he might take them again if he could catch
them.
PREPARATIONS FOR LEAVING.

On this they appeared very thankful, and I accordingly set at liberty, and bade them retire into the woods to the place they came, and I would leave them some firearms, some provision, and some directions how they should live very well, thought fit.

On this I prepared to go on board the ship, but told the captain I would stay that night to prepare my things, and him to go on board in the meantime and keep all right in, and send the boat on shore the next day for me; ordering in the meantime to cause the new captain, who was killed, to stand at the yard-arm that these men might see him.

When the captain was gone, I sent for the men up to me to my tent, and entered seriously into discourse with them of their intentions. I told them I thought they had made a right that if the captain carried them away, they would certainly do. I showed them the new captain hanging at the yard-arm of the ship, and told them they had nothing less to expect.

As they had all declared their willingness to stay, I then let them into the story of my living there, and into the way of making it easy to them. Accordingly hem the whole history of the place and of my coming to red them my fortifications, the way I made my bread, my corn, cured my grapes; and in a word, all that was y to make them easy. I told them the story also of ten Spaniards that were to be expected; for whom I left and made them promise to treat them in common with yes.

Them my firearms, namely, five muskets, three fowling-pieces, and three swords. I had above a barrel and half of pow-
for after the first year or two I used but little and wasted gave them a description of the way I managed the goats, actions to milk and fatten them, and to make both butter use.

Word, I gave them every part of my own story. And I m I would prevail with the captain to leave them two of gunpowder more, and some garden-seeds, which I told would have been very glad of; also I gave them the bag
of pease which the captain had brought me to eat, and be sure to sow and increase them.

Having done all this I left them the next day, and wen board the ship. We prepared immediately to sail, but did weigh that night. The next morning early two of the five came swimming to the ship's side, and making a most lament complaint of the other three, begged to be taken into the ship God's sake, for they should be murdered, and begged the captain to take them on board though he hanged them immediately.

Upon this the captain pretended to have no power without But after some difficulty, and after their solemn promises ofament, they were taken on board, and were some time after sowe whipped and pickled;¹ after which they proved very honest quiet fellows.

Some time after this the boat was ordered on shore, the being up, with the things promised to the men; to which captain, at my intercession, caused their chests and clothes to added; which they took, and were very thankful for. I also encouraged them, by telling them that if it lay in my way to any vessel to take them in, I would not forget them.

When I took leave of this island I carried on board for the great goat-skin cap I had made, my umbrella, and my par also I forgot not to take the money I formerly mentioned, which had lain by me so long useless that it was grown rusty, or nished, and could hardly pass for silver till it had been well rubbed and handled; as also the money I found in the wreck the Spanish ship.

And thus I left the island the 19th of December, as I found in the ship's account, in the year 1686, after I had been upon it e and twenty years, two months, and nineteen days; being deliever from this second captivity the same day of the month that I made my escape in the Barco Longo from among the Moon Sallees.

In this vessel, after a long voyage, I arrived in England.

¹ When sailors were flogged the punishment was sometimes increased by pos salt water or brine upon the sore places made by the lash. This was a "pickling."
June, in the year 1687, having been thirty and five years

I came to England, I was as perfect a stranger to all the
if I had never been known there. My benefactor and
ward, who I had left in trust with my money, was alive,
ad great misfortunes in the world; was become a widow

"When I took leave of this island."

I time, and very low in the world. I made her easy as
he owed me, assuring her I would give her no trouble;
e contrary, in gratitude to her former care and faithful-
e, I relieved her as my little stock would afford, which
me would indeed allow me to do but little for her; but
her I would never forget her former kindness to me:
forget her when I had sufficient to help her, as shall be
in its place.
down afterwards into Yorkshire, but my father was dead,
and my mother and all the family extinct, except that I found two sisters and two of the children of one of my brothers; and as I had been long ago given over for dead, there had been no provision made for me: so that, in a word, I found nothing to relieve or assist me; and that little money I had would not do much for me as to settling in the world.

I met with one piece of gratitude, indeed, which I did not expect; and this was, that the master of the ship, who I had so happily delivered, and by the same means saved the ship and cargo, having given a very handsome account to the owners of the manner how I had saved the lives of the men, and the ship, they invited me to meet them and some other merchants concerned, and all together made me a very handsome compliment upon the subject, and a present of almost two hundred pounds sterling.

But after making several reflections upon the circumstances of my life, and how little way this would go towards settling me in the world, I resolved to go to Lisbon, and see if I might not come by some information of the state of my plantation in the Brazils, and of what was become of my partner, who I had reason to suppose had some years now given me over for dead.

With this view I took shipping for Lisbon, where I arrived in April following, my man Friday accompanying me very honestly in all these ramblings, and proving a most faithful servant upon all occasions.

When I came to Lisbon I found out by inquiry, and to my particular satisfaction, my old friend, the captain of the ship who first took me up at sea off the shore of Africk. He was now grown old, and had left off the sea, having put his son, who was far from a young man, into his ship, and who still used the Brazil trade. The old man did not know me, and indeed I hardly knew him; but I soon brought him to my remembrance, and as soon brought myself to his remembrance when I told him who I was.

After some passionate expressions of the old acquaintance, I inquired, you may be sure, after my plantation and my partner. The old man told me he had not been in the Brazils for about nine years; but that he could assure me that when he came away
MEETS AN OLD FRIEND.

... wer was living, but the trustees who I had joined with him cognizance of my part were both dead. That, however, cre that I would have a very good account of the improve- the plantation: for that, upon the general belief of my st away and drowned, my trustees had given in the account iduce of my part of the plantation to the procurator-fiscal, appropriated it, in case I never came to claim it; one the King, and two thirds to the monastery of St. Augus- e expended for the benefit of the poor, and for the conf the Indians to the Catholic faith; but that if I appeared, re for me, to claim the inheritance, it should be restored, the improvement or annual production being distributible uses could not be restored. But he assured me steward of the King's revenue (from lands) and the pro steward of the monastery, had taken great care all at the incumbent, that is to say, my partner, gave every thful account of the produce, of which they received duly y. l him if he knew to what height of improvement he had the plantation; and whether he thought it might be king after? or whether, on my going thither, I should no obstruction to my possessing my just right in the l me he could not tell exactly to what degree the planta-improved, but this he knew, that my partner was grown ; rich upon the enjoying but one half of it; and that, to yf his remembrance, he had heard that the King's third urt, which was, it seems, granted away to some other y or religious house, amounted to above two hundred a year: that as to my being restored to a quiet posses- there was no question to be made of that, my partner re to witness my title, and my name being also enrolled gister of the country. Also, he told me that the sur- my two trustees were very fair, honest people, and very and he believed I would not only have their assistance h me in possession, but would find a very considerable oney in their hands for my account; being the produce }
of the farm while their fathers held the trust, and before it was given up as above, which, as he remembered, was for about twelve years.

I showed myself a little concerned and uneasy at this account, and inquired of the old captain how it came to pass that the trustees should thus dispose my effects when he knew that I had made my will, and had made him, the Portuguese captain, my universal heir, &c.

He told me that was true; but that, as there was no proof of my being dead, he could not act as executor until some certain account should come of my death, and that, besides, he was not willing to intermeddle with a thing so remote; that it was true he had registered my will, and put in his claim; and could he have given any account of my being dead or alive, he would have acted by procuration, and taken possession of the ingenio (so they called the sugar-house), and had given his son, who was now at the Brazils, order to do it.

"But," says the old man, "I have one piece of news to tell you, which perhaps may not be so acceptable to you as the rest, and that is, that believing you were lost, and all the world believing so also, your partner and trustees did offer to account to me in your name for six or eight of the first years of profits, which I received; but there being at that time," says he, "great disbursements for increasing the works, building an ingenio, and buying slaves, it did not amount to near so much as afterwards it produced. However," says the old man, "I shall give you a true account of what I have received in all, and how I have disposed of it."

After a few days' farther conference with this ancient friend, he brought me an account of the six first years' income of my plantation, signed by my partner and the merchants' trustees, being always delivered in goods, namely, tobacco in roll, and sugar in chests, besides rum, molasses, &c., which is the consequence of a sugar work; and I found by this account that every year the income considerably increased, but, as above, the disbursement being large, the sum at first was small. However, the old man let me see that he was debtor to me 470 moidores of gold,¹ besides

¹ A gold Portuguese moidore was worth about 27s. English.
HONESTY AND KINDNESS.

60 chests of sugar and 15 double rolls of tobacco, which were lost in his ship; he having been shipwrecked coming home to Lisbon about eleven years after my leaving the place.

The good man then began to complain of his misfortunes, and how he had been obliged to make use of my money to recover his losses, and buy him a share in a new ship. "However, my old friend," says he, "you shall not want a supply in your necessity; and as soon as my son returns, you shall be fully satisfied."

Upon this he pulls out an old pouch, and gives me 160 Portugal moedores in gold; and giving me the writing of his title to the ship which his son was gone to the Brazils in, of which he was a quarter part owner and his son another, he puts them both into my hands for security of the rest.

I was too much moved with the honesty and kindness of the poor man to be able to bear this; and remembering what he had done for me, how he had taken me up at sea, and how generously he had used me on all occasions, and particularly how sincere a friend
he was now to me, I could hardly refrain weeping at to me. Therefore first I asked him if his circumstance him to spare so much money at that time, and if it straiten him? He told me he could not say but it me him a little; but, however, it was my money, and I it more than he.

Everything the good man said was full of affection, hardly refrain from tears while he spoke. In short, I dreed of the moidores, and called for a pen and ink to receipt for them; then I returned him the rest, and ever I had possession of the plantation, I would return to him also, as indeed I afterwards did: and that as the sale of his part in his son's ship, I would not take it by but that if I wanted the money, I found he was honest pay me; and if I did not, but came to receive what reason to expect, I would never have a penny more for

When this was past, the old man began to ask me put me into a method to make my claim to my plot told him I thought to go over to it myself. He said so if I pleased, but that if I did not, there were way secure my right, and immediately to appropriate the use. And as there were ships in the river of Lisbon jgo away to Brazil, he made me enter my name in a pu with his affidavit, affirming upon oath that I was ali I was the same person who took up the land for the said plantation at first.

This being regularly attested by a notary, and a affixed, he directed me to send it with a letter of his merchant of his acquaintance at the place, and then I staying with him till an account came of the return.

Never anything was more honourable than the upon this procuration; for in less than seven months large packet from the survivors of my trustees the m whose account I went to sea, in which were the follow letters and papers enclosed.

First, There was the account current of the produ or plantation from the year when their fathers had b
my old Portugal captain, being for six years. The balance appeared to be 1174 moidores in my favour.

Secondly, There was the account of four years more while they kept the effects in their hands, before the Government claimed the administration, as being the effects of a person not to be found, which they call civil death; and the balance of this, the value of the plantation increasing, amounted to as many crusadoes\(^1\) as made 3241 moidores.

Thirdly, There was the Prior of the Augustine’s account, who had received the profits for above fourteen years; but not being to account for what was disposed to the hospital, very honestly declared he had 872 moidores not distributed, which he acknowledged to my account; as to the King’s part, that refunded nothing.

There was a letter of my partner’s, congratulating me very affectionately upon my being alive; giving me an account how the estate was improved, and what it produced a year, with a particular of the number of squares or acres that it contained, how planted, how many slaves there were upon it; and making two and twenty crosses for blessings, told me he had said so many Ave Marias to thank the Blessed Virgin that I was alive; inviting me very passionately to come over and take possession of my own, and in the meantime to give him orders to whom he should deliver my effects if I did not come myself; concluding with a hearty tender of his friendship and that of his family, and sent me as a present seven fine leopards’ skins, which he had, it seems, received from Africa by some other ship which he had sent thither, and who, it seems, had made a better voyage than I. He sent me also five chests of excellent sweetmeats, and an hundred pieces of gold uncoined, not quite so large as moidores.

By the same fleet my two merchant trustees shipped me 1200 chests of sugar, 800 rolls of tobacco, and the rest of the whole account in gold.

I might well say now, indeed, that the latter end of Job was better than the beginning. It is impossible to express the fluttering

\(^1\) A Portuguese coin, so called because it had a cross stamped upon it, value about 2s. 9d. English.
nings of my very heart when I looked over these letters, and especially when I found all my wealth about me. For as the Brazil ships come all in fleets, the same ships which brought my letters brought my goods, and the effects were safe in the river before the letters came to my hand. In a word, I turned pale, and grew sick; and had not the old man run and fetched me a cordial, I believe the sudden surprise of joy had overset nature and I had died upon the spot.

Nay, after that I continued very ill, and was so some hours, till a physician being sent for, and something of the real cause of my illness being known, he ordered me to be let blood,¹ after which I had relief, and grew well; but I verily believe if it had not been eased by a vent given in that manner to the spirits,² I should have died.

I was now master, all on a sudden, of above £5000 sterling in money; and had an estate, as I might well call it, in the Brazils of above £1000 a year, as sure as an estate of lands in England. And in a word, I was in a condition which I scarce knew how to understand, or how to compose myself for the enjoyment of it.

The first thing I did was to recompense my original benefactor, my good old captain, who had been first charitable to me in my distress, kind to me in my beginning, and honest to me at the end. I showed him all that was sent me; I told him that next to the providence of Heaven, which disposes all things, it was owing to him; and that it now lay on me to reward him, which I would do a hundredfold. So I first returned to him the 100 moidores I had received of him, then I sent for a notary, and caused him to draw up a general release or discharge for the 470 moidores which he had acknowledged he owed me, in the fullest and firmest manner possible: after which I caused a procuration to be drawn empowering him to be my receiver of the annual profits of my plantation, and appointing my partner to account to him, and make the returns by the usual fleets to him in my name:

¹ Bled in the arm: the common surgical remedy for various disorders in those days.
² Doctors in those days thought that illnesses were caused by what they called "humours" or "spirits" affecting the blood or the brain and caused by excitement.
WHAT TO DO WITH IT.

A clause in the end, being a grant of 100 moidores a year to
him during his life out of the effects, and 50 moidores a year to
son after him for his life. And thus I requited my old man.
I was now to consider which way to steer my course next, and
what to do with the estate that Providence had thus put into my
hands; and indeed I had more care upon my head now than I
had in my silent state of life in the island, where I wanted nothing.
I had what I had, and had nothing but what I wanted: whereas I
now had a great charge upon me, and my business was how to
meet it. I had never a cave now to hide my money in, or a
place where it might lie without lock or key till it grew mouldy
and tarnished before anybody would meddle with it. On the
contrary, I knew not where to put it, or who to trust with it.
Old patron the captain, indeed, was honest, and that was the
only refuge I had.

In the next place, my interest in the Brazils seemed to summon
me thither; but now I could not tell how to think of going
there till I had settled my affairs, and left my effects in some
hands behind me. At first I thought of my old friend the
squire, who I knew was honest, and would be just to me; but
she was in years, and but poor, and for aught I knew might
be in debt. So that, in a word, I had no way but to go back to
land myself, and take my effects with me.

It was some months, however, before I resolved upon this; and
therefore, as I had rewarded the old captain fully and to his satis-
faction, who had been my former benefactor, so I began to think
of my poor widow whose husband had been my first benefactor,
and she while it was in her power my faithful steward and
protector. So the first thing I did, I got a merchant in Lisbon
write to his correspondent in London, not only to pay a bill,
but to go find her out, and carry her in money an hundred pounds
with me, and to talk with her, and comfort her in her poverty by
ing her she should, if I lived, have a farther supply. At the
same time I sent my two sisters in the country each of them an
hundred pounds, they being, though not in want, yet not in very
distress circumstances; one having been married and left a widow,
the other having a husband not so kind to her as he should
be. But among all my relations or acquaintances I could not yet
pitch upon one to whom I durst commit the gross of my stock,
that I might go away to the Brazils and leave things safe behind
me; and this greatly perplexed me.

I had once a mind to have gone to the Brazils, and have settled
myself there, for I was, as it were, naturalized to the place; but I
had some little scruple in my mind about religion, which insensibly
drew me back, of which I shall say more presently. However, it
was not religion that kept me from going there for the present;
and as I had made no scruple of being openly of the religion of
the country all the while I was among them, so neither did I yet;
only that now and then having of late thought more of it (than
formerly) when I began to think of living and dying among them,
I began to regret my having professed myself a Papist, and thought
it might not be the best religion to die with.

But, as I have said, this was not the main thing that kept me
from going to the Brazils; but that really I did not know with
whom to leave my effects behind me. So I resolved at last to go
to England with it; where, if I arrived, I concluded I should
make some acquaintance, or find some relations that would be
faithful to me. And accordingly I prepared to go for England with
all my wealth.

In order to prepare things for my going home, I first, the
Brazil fleet being just going away, resolved to give answers suit-
able to the just and faithful account of things I had from thence.
And, first, to the prior of St. Augustine I wrote a letter full of
thanks for their just dealings, and the offer of the 872 moidores
which was indisposed of; which I desired might be given, 500 to
the monastery, and 372 to the poor as the prior should direct,
desiring the good padre's prayers for me, and the like. I wrote
next a letter of thanks to my two trustees, with all the acknowledg-
ment that so much justice and honesty called for. As for sending
them any present, they were far above having any occasion of it.
Lastly, I wrote to my partner, acknowledging his industry in the
improving the plantation, and his integrity in increasing the stock
of the works; giving him instructions for his future government
of my part, according to the powers I had left with my old patron,
to whom I desired him to send whatever became due to me till
he should hear from me more particularly; assuring him that it
was my intention, not only to come to him, but to settle myself
there for the remainder of my life. To this I added a very
handsome present of some Italian silks for his wife and two
daughters, for such the captain’s son informed me he had; with
two pieces of fine English broadcloth, the best I could get in
Lisbon, five pieces of black baize, and some Flanders lace of a good
value.

Having thus settled my affairs, sold my cargo, and turned all
my effects into good bills of exchange, my next difficulty was
which way to go to England. I had been accustomed enough to
the sea, and yet I had a strange aversion to going to England by
cast that time; and though I could give no reason for it, yet the
difficulty increased upon me so much that though I had once
shipped my baggage in order to go, yet I altered my mind, and
that not once, but two or three times.

It is true, I had been very unfortunate by sea, and this might
be some of the reason; but let no man slight the strong impulses
of his own thoughts in cases of such moment. Two of the ships
which I had singled out to go in; I mean, more particularly
ingled out than any other, that is to say, so as in one of them to
out my things on board, and in the other to have agreed with the
captain; I say, two of these ships miscarried, namely, one was
taken by the Algerines, and the other was cast away on the Start
near Torbay, and all the people drowned except three: so that in
either of those vessels I had been made miserable; and in which
most it was hard to say.

Having been thus harassed in my thoughts, my old pilot, to
whom I communicated everything, pressed me earnestly not to go
by sea, but either to go by land to the Groyne, and cross over the
bay of Biscay to Rochelle, from whence it was but an easy and
direct journey by land to Paris, and so to Calais and Dover; or to
up to Madrid, and so all the way by land through France. In
word, I was so prepossessed against my going by sea at all,
emption from Calais to Dover, that I resolved to travel all the way
by land; which, as I was not in haste and did not value the charge,
"In this manner I set out from Lisbon."

to save the charge; and as for me, I got an English servant to travel with me as a servant, besides my man Friday, who was much a stranger to be capable of supplying the place of a servant on the road.
SEVERE WEATHER.

The severe weather we encountered on our journey was not asvere as we had expected. When we arrived in Madrid, we were all eager to explore the city, and we found the weather to be mild and pleasant. However, as we continued on our journey, the weather began to turn恶劣, with sudden storms and cold temperatures. We had to travel through mountainous terrain, where the snowfall was heavy and the roads were treacherous. The only solace was the beautiful scenery and the warm hospitality of the locals.

As we approached Pampeluna, we were faced with a difficult decision. The weather was so severe that it seemed impossible to proceed. We had to make a choice: either continue our journey or return to Pampeluna. We decided to push on, but the weather was not on our side. We encountered strong winds and icy conditions that made it difficult to travel. We were forced to take refuge in a town, where we could warm ourselves by the fire.

Despite the challenges, we continued on our journey. The weather was so severe that it seemed like winter had arrived early. We had to adapt to the changing conditions, and we learned to appreciate the beauty of the mountainous landscape. We were grateful for the kindness of the locals, who provided us with food and shelter. We finally reached our destination, where we were welcomed with open arms.

In conclusion, the severe weather we encountered on our journey was a test of our endurance and resilience. We learned to adapt to the changing conditions and to appreciate the beauty of nature. We were grateful for the opportunity to explore the beautiful mountains and to experience the culture and traditions of the local people.
gentlemen, who, having been stopped on the French side of the passes as we were on the Spanish, had found out a guide who, traversing the country near the head of Languedoc, had brought them over the mountains by such ways that they were not much incomed with the snow; and where they met with snow in any quantity, they said it was frozen hard enough to bear them and their horses. We sent for this guide, who told us he would undertake to carry us the same way with no hazard from the snow, provided we were armed sufficiently to protect us from wild beasts; for he said upon these great snows it was frequent for some wolves to show themselves at the foot of the mountains, being made ravenous for want of food, the ground being covered with snow. We told him we were well enough prepared for such creatures as they were, if he would insure us from a kind of two-legged wolves, which we were told we were in most danger from, especially on the French side of the mountains. He satisfied us there was no danger of that kind in the way that we were to go: so we readily agreed to follow him; as did also twelve other gentlemen with their servants, some French, some Spanish, who, as I said, had attempted to go, and were obliged to come back again.

Accordingly, we all set out from Pampeluna with our guide, on the 15th of November. And indeed I was surprised when, instead of going forward, he came directly back with us on the same road that we came from Madrid, above twenty miles; when, being past two rivers, and come into the plain country, we found ourselves in a warm climate again, where the country was pleasant and no snow to be seen. But on a sudden, turning to the left, he approached the mountains another way; and though, it is true, the hills and precipices looked dreadful, yet he made so many tours, such meanders, and led us by such winding ways, that we were insensibly past the height of the mountains without being much encumbered with the snow. And all on a sudden he showed us the pleasant fruitful, provinces of Languedoc and Gascony, all green and flourishing; though, indeed, it was at a great distance, and we had some rough way to pass yet.

We were a little uneasy, however, when we found it snowed one
hole day and a night so fast that we could not travel; but he
id us be easy, we should soon be past it all. We found, indeed,
at we began to descend every day, and to come more north than
store; and so, depending upon our guide, we went on.

It was about two hours before night, when, our guide being
something before us and not just in sight, out rushed three mon-
strous wolves, and after them a bear, out of a hollow way adjoin-
ing to a thick wood. Two of the wolves flew upon the guide; and
had he been half a mile before us he had been devoured indeed
before we could have helped him. One of them fastened upon his
horse; and the other attacked the man with that violence that he
had not time or not presence of mind enough to draw his pistol,
but halled and cried out to us most lustily. My man Friday
being next to me, I bid him ride up and see what was the matter.
As soon as Friday came in sight of the man, he halled as loud
as the other, "Oh master! oh master!" but, like a bold fellow,
rude directly up to the poor man, and with his pistol shot the wolf
that attacked him into the head.

It was happy for the poor man that it was my man Friday; for
he having been used to that kind of creature in his country, had
no fear upon him, but went close up to him, and shot him as
above: whereas any of us would have fired at a farther distance,
and have perhaps either missed the wolf or endangered shooting
the man.

But it was enough to have terrified a bolder man than I, and
indeed it alarmed all our company, when with the noise of Friday's
pistol we heard on both sides the dalmallest howling of wolves,
and the noise redoubled by the echo of the mountains; that it was
as if there had been a prodigious multitude of them: and
perhaps indeed there was not such a few as that we had no cause
of apprehensions.

However, as Friday had killed this wolf, the other that had
stayed upon the horse left him immediately, and fled; having
aptly fastened upon his head, where the bosses of the bridle had
nck in his teeth, so that he had not done him much hurt. The
n, indeed, was most hurt; for the raging creature had bit him
ice, once on the arm, and the other time a little above his knee;
and he was just as it were tumbling down by the disorder of his horse, when Friday came up and shot the wolf.

It is easy to suppose that at the noise of Friday's pistol we all mended our pace, and rid up as fast as the way, which was very difficult, would give us leave, to see what was the matter. As soon as we came clear of the trees, which blinded us before, we saw clearly what had been the case, and how Friday had disengaged the poor guide, though we did not presently discern what kind of creature it was he had killed.

But never was a fight managed so hardly and in such a surprising manner as that which followed between Friday and the bear, which gave us all (though at first we were surprised and afraid for him) the greatest diversion imaginable. As the bear is a heavy, clumsy creature, and does not gallop as the wolf does, who is swift and light, so he has two particular qualities, which generally are the rule of his actions. First, as to men, who are not his proper prey; I say, not his proper prey, because, though I cannot say what excessive hunger might do, which was now their case, the ground being all covered with snow; but as to men, he does not usually attempt them unless they first attack him. On the contrary, if you meet him in the woods, if you don't meddle with him he won't meddle with you. But then you must take care to be very civil to him, and give him the road; for he is a very nice gentleman, he won't go a step out of his way for a prince. Nay, if you are really afraid, your best way is to look another way, and keep going on; for sometimes if you stop and stand still, and look steadily at him, he takes it for an affront. But if you throw or toss anything at him, and it hits him, though it were but a bit of a stick as big as your finger, he takes it for an affront, and sets all his other business aside to pursue his revenge; for he will have satisfaction in point of honour. That is his first quality. The next is, that if he be once affronted, he will never leave you night or day till he has his revenge, but follows at a good round rate till he overtakes you.

My man Friday had delivered our guide, and when we came up to him he was helping him off from his horse—for the man was both hurt and frightened, and indeed the last more than the first—
n the sudden, we spied the bear come out of the wood. 
ast monstrous one it was, the biggest by far that ever I 
ere all a little surprised, when we saw him; but when 
aw him, it was easy to see joy and courage in the fellow's 
ce. "Oh! oh! oh!" says Friday, three times, pointing 
"oh, master! you give me te leave; me shakee te hand 
; me make you good laugh."

surprised to see the fellow so pleased. "You fool you," 
"he will eat you up!" "Eatee me up! eatee me up!"

day, twice over again; "me eatee him up; me make you 
ugh. You all stay here; me show you good laugh." So 
site, and gets his boots off in a moment, and put on a 
umps (as we call the flat shoes they wear, and which he 
is pocket), gives my other servant his horse, and with his 
y he flew swift like the wind.

bear was walking softly on, and offered to meddle with 
till Friday, coming pretty near, calls to him, as if the bear 
derstand him. "Hark ye! hark ye!" says Friday; "me 
wt you." We followed at a distance; for now, being 
wn on the Gascony side of the mountains, we were entered 
rest forest, where the country was plain and pretty open, 
trees in it scattered here and there.

y, who had, as we say, the heels of the bear, came up with 
ckly, and takes up a great stone and throws at him, and 
just on the head, but did him no more harm than if he 
own it against a wall. But it answered Friday's end; for 
e was so void of fear that he did it purely to make the 
low him, and show us some laugh, as he called it. As 
the bear felt the stone and saw him, he turns about and 
fter him, taking devilish long strides, and shuffling along 
ange rate, so as would have put a horse to a middling

Away runs Friday, and takes his course as if he run 
us for help. So we all resolved to fire at once upon the 
d deliver my man; though I was angry at him heartily 
ging the bear back upon us when he was going about his 
siness another way. And especially I was angry that he 
ed the bear upon us and then run away; and I called
out: "You dog," said I, "is this your making us laugh? Come away, and take your horse, that we may shoot the creature." He hears me, and cries out, "No shoot! no shoot! Stand still; you get much laugh." And as the nimble creature run two foot for the beast's one, he turned on a sudden on one side of us, and seeing a great oak-tree fit for his purpose, he beckoned to us to follow; and doubling his pace, he gets nimbly up the tree, laying his gun down upon the ground at about five or six yards from the bottom of the tree.

The bear soon came to the tree, and we followed at a distance. The first thing he did he stopped at the gun, smelt to it, but let it lie; and up he scrambles into the tree, climbing like a cat, though so monstrously heavy. I was amazed at the folly, as I thought it, of my man, and could not for my life see anything to laugh at yet, till seeing the bear get up the tree, we all rode nearer to him.

When we came to the tree, there was Friday got out to the small end of a large limb of the tree, and the bear got about half-way to him. As soon as the bear got out to that part where the limb of the tree was weaker, "Ha," says he to us, "now you see me teachee the bear dance." So he falls a jumping and shaking the bough, at which the bear began to totter, but stood still, and began to look behind him to see how he should get back; then, indeed, we did laugh heartily. But Friday had not done with him by a great deal. When he sees him stand still, he calls out to him again, as if he had supposed the bear could speak English, "What! you no come farther? Pray you come farther." So he left jumping and shaking the tree; and the bear, just as if he had understood what he said, did come a little farther; then he fell a jumping again, and the bear stopped again.

We thought now was a good time to knock him on the head, and I called to Friday to stand still and we would shoot the bear. But he cried out earnestly, "O pray! O pray! no shoot; me shoot by and then." He would have said by-and-by. However, to shorten the story, Friday danced so much, and the bear stood so ticklish, that we had laughing enough indeed, but still could not imagine what the fellow would do: for first we thought he depended upon shaking the bear off; and we found the bear was
too cunning for that too, for he would not go out far enough to be thrown down, but clings fast with his great broad claws and feet, so that we could not imagine what would be the end of it, and where the jest would be at last.

But Friday put us out of doubt quickly; for seeing the bear cling fast to the bough, and that he would not be persuaded to come any farther, "Well, well," says Friday, "you no come farther, me go, me go; you no come to me, me go come to you." And upon this he goes out to the smallest end of the bough, where it would bend with his weight, and gently lets himself down by it, sliding down the bough, till he came near enough to jump down on his feet, and away he run to his gun, takes it up, and stands still.

"Well," said I to him, "Friday, what will you do now? Why don't you shoot him?" "No shoot," says Friday, "no yet; me shoot now, me no kill; me stay, give you one more laugh." And indeed so he did, as you will see presently: for when the bear saw his enemy gone, he comes back from the bough where he stood; but did it mighty leisurely, looking behind him every step, and coming backward till he got into the body of the tree. Then

(248)
with the same hinder end foremost, he come down the tree, ing it with his claws, and moving one foot at a time, very lei. At this juncture, and just before he could set his hind feet on the ground, Friday stepped up close to him, clapped the top of his piece into his ear, and shot him dead as a stone.

Then the rogue turned about to see if we did not laugh when he saw we were pleased by our looks, he falls a lauh himself very loud. "So we kill bear in my country," says I "So you kill them!" says I. "Why, you have no guns." says he; "no gun, but shoot, great much long arrow."

This was indeed a good diversion to us; but we were still in a wild place, and our guide very much hurt, and what to do he hardly knew. The howling of wolves run much in my head, indeed, except the noise I once heard on the shore of Afr which I have said something already, I never heard anything filled me with so much horror.

These things and the approach of night called us off, or else Friday would have had us, we should certainly have taken skin of this monstrous creature off, which was worth saving, we had three leagues to go, and our guide hastened us, so him, and went forward on our journey.

The ground was still covered with snow, though not and dangerous as on the mountains; and the ravenous but not as we heard afterwards, were come down to the forest country, pressed by hunger to seek for food; and had a great deal of mischief in the villages, where they such country people, killed a great many of their sheep and some people too.

We had one dangerous place to pass, which our guide if there were any more wolves in the country, we should there; and this was in a small plain surrounded with very e every side, and a long narrow defile or lane, which pass to get through the wood, and then we should it village where we were to lodge.

It was within half an hour of sunset when we the wood, and a little after sunset when we came into met with nothing in the first wood except that
within the wood, which was not above two furlongs over, we sawive great wolves cross the road, full speed one after another, as if
ye had been in chase of some prey, and had it in view. They
took no notice of us, and were gone, and out of our sight in a few
moments.

Upon this our guide, who, by the way, was a wretched, faint-
hearted fellow, bid us keep in a ready posture, for he believed
there were more wolves a coming.

We kept our arms ready, and our eyes about us; but we saw
no more wolves till we came through that wood, which was near
half a league, and entered the plain. As soon as we came into
the plain we had occasion enough to look about us. The first
object we met with was a dead horse—that is to say, a poor horse
which the wolves had killed—and at least a dozen of them at
work, we could not say eating of him, but picking of his bones
rather, for they had eaten up all the flesh before.

We did not think fit to disturb them at their feast; neither
did they take much notice of us. Friday would have let fly at
them, but I would not suffer him by any means; for I found we
were like to have more business upon our hands than we were
aware of. We were not gone half over the plain but we began to
hear the wolves howl in the wood on our left in a frightful
manner; and presently after we saw about a hundred coming on
directly towards us, all in a body, and most of them in a line as
regularly as an army drawn up by experienced officers. I scarce
knew in what manner to receive them; but found to draw our-
seves in a close line was the only way; so we formed in a
moment. But that we might not have too much interval, I
ordered that only every other man should fire, and that the others
who had not fired should stand ready to give them a second volley
immediately if they continued to advance upon us; and that then
those who had fired at first should not pretend to load their fusees
again, but stand ready with every one a pistol, for we were all
armed with a fusee and a pair of pistols each man; so we were by
this method able to fire six volleys, half of us at a time. How-
ever, at present we had no necessity; for upon firing the first
volley the enemy made a full stop, being terrified as well with the
noise as with the fire. Four of them being shot into the head dropped, several others were wounded, and went bleeding off, as we could see by the snow. I found they stopped, but did not immediately retreat; whereupon remembering that I had been told that the fiercest creatures were terrified at the voice of a man, I caused all our company to halloo as loud as we could; and I found the notion not altogether mistaken, for upon our shout they began to retire and turn about. Then I ordered a second volley to be fired in their rear, which put them to the gallop, and away they went to the woods.

This gave us leisure to charge our pieces again, and that we might lose no time, we kept going; but we had but little more than loaded our fuses, and put ourselves into a readiness, when we heard a terrible noise in the same wood on our left, only that it was farther onward the same way we were to go.

The night was coming on, and the light began to be dusky, which made it worse on our side; but the noise increasing, we could easily perceive that it was the howling and yelling of those hellish creatures; and on a sudden we perceived two or three troops of wolves, one on our left, one behind us, and one on our front; so that we seemed to be surrounded with them. However, as they did not fall upon us, we kept our way forward as fast as we could make our horses go, which, the way being very rough, was only a good large trot; and in this manner we came in view of the entrance of a wood through which we were to pass at the farther side of the plain; but we were greatly surprised when, coming nearer the lane or pass, we saw a confused number of wolves standing just at the entrance.

On a sudden, at another opening of the wood, we heard the noise of a gun; and looking that way, out rushed a horse with a saddle and a bridle on him, flying like the wind, and sixteen or seventeen wolves after him, full speed; indeed, the horse had the heels of them, but as we supposed that he could not hold it at that rate, we doubted not but they would get up with him at last, and no question but they did.

But here we had a most horrible sight; for riding up to the entrance where the horse came out, we found the carcass of
A FIGHT WITH WOLVES.

another horse, and of two men, devoured by the ravenous creatures; and one of the men was no doubt the same who we heard fired the gun, for there lay a gun just by him fired off; but as to the man, his head and the upper part of his body was eaten up.

This filled us with horror, and we knew not what course to take; but the creatures resolved us soon, for they gathered about us presently in hopes of prey; and I verily believe there were three hundred of them. It happened very much to our advantage that at the entrance into the wood, but a little way from it, there lay some large timber trees, which had been cut down the summer before, and I suppose lay there for carriage. I drew my little troop among those trees, and placing ourselves in a line behind one long tree, I advised them all to light, and keeping that tree before us for a breastwork, to stand in a triangle, or three fronts, enclosing our horses in the centre.

We did so, and it was well we did; for never was a more furious charge than the creatures made upon us in the place. They came on us with a growling kind of a noise, and mounted the piece of timber, which, as I said, was our breastwork, as if they were only rushing upon their prey; and this fury of theirs, it seems, was principally occasioned by their seeing our horses behind us, which was the prey they aimed at. I ordered our men to fire as before, every other man; and they took their aim so sure, that indeed they killed several of the wolves at the first volley; but there was a necessity to keep a continual firing, for they came on like devils, those behind pushing on those before.

When we had fired our second volley of our fuseses, we thought they stopped a little, and I hoped they would have gone off; but it was but a moment, for others came forward again: so we fired two volleys of our pistols, and I believe in these four firings we had killed seventeen or eighteen of them, and lamed twice as many; yet they came on again.

I was loath to spend our last shot too hastily; so I called my servant—not my man Friday, for he was better employed; for,

1 Alight or dismount.
charged pistol, close to the powder, set it on fire. Those that were upon the timber were scorched with it, and six of them fell and were killed, which
and we rallied immediately upon near twenty lame ones, who we found struggling on the ground, and fell a cutting them with our swords; which answered our expectation, for the crying and howling they made was better understood by their fellows, so that they all fled and left us.

We had, first and last, killed about threescore of them; and had it been daylight, we had killed many more. The field of battle being thus cleared, we made forward again; for we had still near a league to go. We heard the ravenous creatures howl and yell in the woods, as we went, several times, and sometimes we fancied we saw some of them; but the snow dazzling our eyes, we were not certain: so in about an hour more we came to the town where we were to lodge, which we found in a terrible fright, and all in arms; for it seems that, the night before, the wolves and some bears had broken into the village in the night, and put them in a terrible fright, and they were obliged to keep guard night and day, but especially in the night, to preserve their cattle, and indeed their people.

The next morning our guide was so ill, and his limbs swelled with the rankling of his two wounds, that he could go no farther; so we were obliged to take a new guide there, and go to Toulouse, where we found a warm climate, a fruitful, pleasant country, and no snow, no wolves, or anything like them. But when we told our story at Toulouse, they told us it was nothing but what was ordinary in the great forest at the foot of the mountains, especially when the snow lay on the ground. But they inquired much what kind of a guide we had gotten that would venture to bring us that way in such a severe season; and told us it was very much we were not all devoured. When we told them how we placed ourselves, and the horses in the middle, they blamed us exceedingly, and told us it was fifty to one but we had been all destroyed: for it was the sight of the horses which made the wolves so furious, seeing their prey; and that at other times they are really afraid of a gun; but the being excessive hungry, and raging on that account, the eagerness to come at the horses had made them senseless of danger; and that if we had not by the continued fire, and at last by the stratagem of the train of powder, mastered them, it
had been great odds but that we had been torn to pieces; whereas
had we been content to have sat still on horseback, and fired as
horsemen, they would not have taken the horses for so much their
own, when men were on their backs, as otherwise: and withal
they told, that at last, if we had stood all together, and left our
horses, they would have been so eager to have devoured them, that
we might have come off safe, especially having our firearms in our
hands, and being so many in number.

For my part, I was never so sensible of danger in my life; for
seeing above three hundred devils come roaring and open-mouthed
to devour us, and having nothing to shelter us or retreat to, I gave
myself over for lost; and as it was, I believe I shall never care to
cross those mountains again. I think I would much rather go a
thousand leagues by sea, though I were sure to meet with a storm
once a week.

I have nothing uncommon to take notice of in my passage
through France, nothing but what other travellers have given an
account of with much more advantage than I can. I travelled
from Toulouse to Paris, and without any considerable stay, came
to Calais, and landed safe at Dover, the 14th of January, after
having had a severe cold season to travel in.

I was now come to the centre of my travels, and had in a little
time all my new discovered estate safe about me, the bills of
exchange which I brought with me having been very currently
paid.

My principal guide and privy counsellor was my good ancient
widow, who, in gratitude for the money I had sent her, thought
no pains too much or care too great to employ for me: and I
trusted her so entirely with everything that I was perfectly easy
as to the security of my effects; and indeed I was very happy
from my beginning, and now to the end, in the unspotted integrity
of this good gentlewoman.

And now I began to think of leaving my effects with this
woman, and setting out for Lisbon, and so to the Brazil. But
now another scruple came in my way, and that was religion; for
as I had entertained some doubts about the Roman religion, even
while I was abroad, especially in my state of solitude, so I knew
there was no going to the Brazils for me, much less going to settle there, unless I resolved to embrace the Roman Catholic religion without any reserve; unless, on the other hand, I resolved to be a sacrifice to my principles, be a martyr for religion, and die in the Inquisition. So I resolved to stay at home, and if I could find means for it, to dispose of my plantation.

To this purpose I wrote to my old friend at Lisbon; who in return gave me notice that he could easily dispose of it there, but that if I thought fit to give him leave to offer it in my name to the two merchants, the survivors of my trustees, who lived in the Brazils, who must fully understand the value of it, who lived just upon the spot, and who I knew were very rich, so that he believed they would be fond of buying it, he did not doubt but I should make 4000 or 5000 pieces of eight the more of it.

Accordingly I agreed, gave him order to offer it to them, and he did so; and in about eight months more, the ship being then returned, he sent me an account that they had accepted the offer, and had remitted 33,000 pieces of eight to a correspondent of theirs at Lisbon to pay for it.

In return, I signed the instrument of sale in the form which they sent from Lisbon, and sent it to my old man, who sent me bills of exchange for 32,800 pieces of eight to me for the estate; reserving the payment of 100 moidores a year to him, the old man, during his life, and 50 moidores afterwards to his son for his life, which I had promised them, which the plantation was to make good as a rent-charge. And thus I have given the first part of a life of fortune and adventure, a life of Providence's checker-work, and of a variety which the world will seldom be able to show the like of. Beginning foolishly, but closing much more happily than any part of it ever gave me leave so much as to hope for.

Any one would think that in this state of complicated good fortune I was past running any more hazards; and so indeed I had been, if other circumstances had concurred; but I was inured to a wandering life, had no family, not many relations, nor, however rich, had I contracted much acquaintance; and though I had sold my estate in the Brazils, yet I could not keep the country
out of my head, and had a great mind to be upon the wing again; especially I could not resist the strong inclination I had to see my island, and to know if the poor Spaniards were in being there, and how the rogues I had left there had used them.

My true friend the widow earnestly dissuaded me from it, and so far prevailed with me that for almost seven years she prevented my running abroad; during which time I took my two nephews, the children of one of my brothers, into my care. The eldest having something of his own, I bred up as a gentleman, and gave him a settlement of some addition to his estate after my decease. The other I put out to a captain of a ship; and after five years, finding him a sensible, bold, enterprising young fellow, I put him into a good ship, and sent him to sea. And this young fellow afterwards drew me in, as old as I was, to farther adventures myself.

In the meantime, I in part settled myself here; for, first of all, I married, and that not either to my disadvantage or dissatisfaction, and had three children, two sons and one daughter. But my wife dying, and my nephew coming home with good success from a voyage to Spain, my inclination to go abroad and his importunity prevailed, and engaged me to go in his ship as a private trader to the East Indies. This was in the year 1694.

In this voyage I visited my new colony in the island, saw my successors the Spaniards, had the whole story of their lives, and of the villains I left there; how at first they insulted the poor Spaniards; how they afterwards agreed, disagreed, united, separated; and how at last the Spaniards were obliged to use violence with them; how they were subjected to the Spaniards; how honestly the Spaniards used them: a history, if it were entered into, as full of variety and wonderful accidents as my own part, particularly also as to their battles with the Caribbeans, who landed several times upon the island; and as to the improvement they made upon the island itself; and how five of them made an attempt upon the mainland, and brought away eleven men and five women prisoners, by which, at my coming, I found about twenty young children on the island.

Here I stayed about twenty days, left them supplies of all necessary things, and particularly of arms, powder, shot, clothes,
tools, and two workmen, which I brought from England with me; namely, a carpenter and a smith.

Besides this, I shared the island into parts with them, reserved to myself the property of the whole, but gave them such parts respectively as they agreed on; and having settled all things with them, and engaged them not to leave the place, I left them there.

From thence I touched at the Brazils, from whence I sent a bark, which I bought there, with more people to the island; and in it, besides other supplies, I sent seven women, being such as I found proper for service, or for wives to such as would take them. As to the Englishmen, I promised them to send them some women from England, with a good cargo of necessaries, if they would supply themselves to planting; which I afterwards performed. And the fellows proved very honest and diligent after they were mastered, and had their properties set apart for them. I sent them also from the Brazils five cows, three of them being big with calf, some sheep, and some hogs; which, when I came again, were considerably increased.

But all these things, with an account how three hundred Caribbees came and invaded them, and ruined their plantations, and how they fought with that whole number twice, and were at first defeated and three of them killed; but at last a storm destroying their enemies' canoes, they famished or destroyed almost all the rest, and renewed and recovered the possession of their plantation, and still lived upon the island:

All these things, with some very surprising incidents in some new adventures of my own, for ten years more, I may perhaps give a farther account of hereafter.
THE FURTHER ADVENTURES
OF
ROBINSON CRUSOE;
BEING THE SECOND AND LAST PART OF HIS LIFE.

That homely proverb used so many occasions in England, namely, "That what is bred in the bone will not go out of the stomach," was never more verified than in the story of my life. Any one would think that after thirty-five years' affliction and a variety of unhappy circumstances, which few men, if any, ever went through before, and after near seven years of peace and enjoyment, the fulness of all things, grown old, and when, if ever, it might have allowed me to have had experience of every state of middle age, and to know which was most adapted to make a man completely happy: I say, after all this, any one would have thought that the innate propensity to rambling, which I gave an account of in my last setting out into the world, to have been so predominant in my thoughts, should be worn out, the volatile part be fully consumed, or at least condensed, and I might at sixty-one years of age have been a little inclined to stay at home, and have done nothing but live a life and fortune any more. Any farther, the common motive of foreign adventures was taken away from me; for I had no fortune to make, I had nothing to seek. I had gained ten thousand pound, I had been no richer; for I had already sufficient for me, and for those I had to leave it to: and that had was visibly increasing; for having no great family, I could spend the income of what I had, unless I would set up for an expensive way of living, such as a great family, servants, equipage, &c., and the like, which were things I had no notion of, or inclination to; so that I had nothing indeed to do but to sit still, and
fully enjoy what I had got, and see it increase daily upon my hands.

Yet all these things had no effect upon me, or at least not enough to resist the strong inclination I had to go abroad again, which hung about me like a chronic distemper; particularly, the desire of seeing my new plantation in the island, and the colony I left there, run in my head continually. I dreamed of it all night, and my imagination run upon it all day; it was uppermost in all my thoughts, and my fancy worked so steadily and strongly upon it, that I talked of it out of sleep. In short, nothing could remove it out of my mind; it even broke so violently into all my discourses, that it made my conversation tiresome: for I could talk of nothing else; all my discourse run into it, even to impertinence, and I saw it myself.

I have often heard persons of good judgment say that all the stir people make in the world about ghosts and apparitions is owing to the strength of imagination and the powerful operation of fancy in their minds; that there is no such thing as a spirit appearing, or a ghost walking, and the like: that people's poring affectionately upon the past conversation of their deceased friends so realizes it to them, that they are capable of fancying, upon some extraordinary circumstances, that they see them, talk to them, and are answered by them; when, in truth, there is nothing but shadow and vapour in the thing, and they really know nothing of the matter.

For my part, I know not to this hour whether there are any such things as real apparitions, spectres, or walking of people after they are dead: or whether there is anything in the stories they tell us of that kind more than the product of vapours, sick minds, and wandering fancies; but this I know, that my imagination worked up to such a height, and brought me into such ecstasies of vapours, or what else I may call it, that I actually supposed myself oftentimes upon the spot, at my old castle behind the trees: saw my old Spaniard, Friday's father, and the reprobate sailors I

1 In former times the body was supposed to be affected by what were called spirits or "humours" of the blood; and melancholy or strange fancies were said to be caused by "vapours" of the brain.
left upon the island; nay, I fancied I talked with them, and looked at them so steadily, though I was broad awake, as at persons just before me; and this I did till I often frightened myself with the images my fancy represented to me. One time in my sleep I had the villany of the three pirate sailors so lively related to me by the first Spaniard and Friday's father, that it was surprising. They told me how they barbarously attempted to murder all the Spaniards, and that they set fire to the provisions they had laid up, on purpose to distress and starve them; things that I had never heard of, and that indeed were never all of them true in fact. But it was so warm in my imagination, and so realized to me, that to the hour I saw them I could not be persuaded but that it was or would be true; also how I resented it, when the Spaniard complained to me, and how I brought them to justice, tried them before me, and ordered them all three to be hanged.

What there was really in this shall be seen in its place; for however I came to form such things in my dream, and what secret converse of spirits injected it, yet there was very much of it true. I say, I own that this dream had nothing in it literally and specifically true; but the general part was so true, the base, villainous behaviour of these three hardened rogues was such, and had been so much worse than all I can describe, that the dream had too much similitude of the fact; and as I would afterwards have punished them severely, so if I had hanged them all I had been much in the right, and should have been justifiable both by the laws of God and man.

But to return to my story. In this kind of temper I had lived some years; I had no enjoyment of my life, no pleasant hours, no agreeable diversion, but what had something or other of this in it; so that my wife, who saw my mind so wholly bent upon it, told me very seriously one night that she believed there was some secret powerful impulse of Providence upon me which had determined me to go thither again; and that she found nothing hindered my going but my being engaged to a wife and children. She told me that it was true she could not think of parting with me, but as she was assured that if she was dead it would be the first thing I would do, so, as it seemed to her that the thing was determined
above, she would not be the only obstruction; for if I thought fit, and resolved to go——Here she found me very intent upon her words, and that I looked very earnestly at her, so that it a little disordered her and she stopped. I asked her why she did not go on, and say out what she was going to say? But I perceived her heart was too full, and some tears stood in her eyes. “Speak out, my dear,” said I; “are you willing I should go?” “No,” says she, very affectionately, “I am far from willing. But if you are resolved to go,” says she, “and rather than I will be the only hindrance, I will go with you: for though I think it a most preposterous thing for one of your years, and in your condition, yet if it must be,” said she, again weeping, “I won’t leave you: for if it be of Heaven, you must do it—there is no resisting it; and if Heaven makes it your duty to go, he will also make it mine to go with you, or otherwise dispose of me, that I may not obstruct it.”

This affectionate behaviour of my wife’s brought me a little out
of the vapours, and I began to consider what I was doing. I corrected my wandering fancy, and began to argue with myself sedately what business I had, after threescore years, and after such a life of tedious sufferings and disasters, and closed in so happy and easy a manner, I say, what business I had to rush into new hazards, and put myself upon adventures fit only for youth and poverty to run into?

With those thoughts, I considered my new engagement, that I had a wife, one child born, and my wife then great with child of another; that I had all the world could give me, and had no need to seek hazards for gain; that I was declining in years, and ought to think rather of leaving what I had gained than of seeking to increase it; that as to what my wife had said, of its being an impulse from Heaven, and that it should be my duty to go, I had no notion of that: so, after many of these cogitations, I struggled with the power of my imagination, reasoned myself out of it, as I believe people may always do in like cases, if they will; and, in a word, I conquered it; composed myself with such arguments as occurred to my thought, and which my present condition furnished me plentifully with, and particularly, as the most effectual method, I resolved to divert myself with other things, and to engage in some business that might effectually tie me up from any more excursions of this kind; for I found that that thing return upon me chiefly when I was idle, had nothing to do, or anything of moment immediately before me.

To this purpose I bought a little farm in the country of Bedford, and resolved to remove myself thither. I had a little convenient house upon it; and the land about it I found was capable of great improvement, and that it was many ways suited to my inclination, which delighted in cultivating, managing, planting, and improving of land: and particularly, being an inland country, I was removed from conversing among ships, sailors, and things relating to the remote part of the world. In a word, I went down to my farm, settled my family, bought me ploughs, harrows, a cart, waggon, horses, cows, sheep, and, setting seriously to work, became in one half year a mere country gentleman. My thoughts were entirely taken up in managing my servants, cultivating the ground, enclos-
ing, planting, &c.; and I lived, as I thought, the most agreeable life that Nature was capable of directing, or that a man always bred to misfortunes was capable of being retreated to.

I farmed upon my own land; I had no rent to pay, was limited by no articles; I could pull up or cut down as I pleased; what I planted was for myself, and what I improved was for my family:

"I farmed upon my own land."

and having thus left off the thoughts of wandering, I had not the least discomfort in any part of life, as to this world. Now I thought indeed that I enjoyed the middle state of life that my father so earnestly recommended to me, and lived a kind of heavenly life, something like what is described by the poet upon the subject of a country life:

"Free from vices, free from care,  
Age has no pain, and youth no snare."

But in the middle of all this felicity, one blow from unforeseen Providence unhinged me at once, and not only made a breach ¹

¹ Breaking down, serious injury.
upon me inevitable and incurable, but drove me by its consequences into a deep relapse into the wandering disposition; which, as I may say, being born in my very blood, soon recovered its hold of me, and, like the returns of a violent distemper, came on with an irresistible force upon me, so that nothing could make any more impression upon me. This blow was the loss of my wife.

It is not my business here to write an elegy upon my wife, give a character of her particular virtues, and make my court to the sex by the flattery of a funeral sermon. She was, in a few words, the stay of all my affairs; the centre of all my enterprises; the engine that by her prudence reduced me to that happy compass I was in, from the most extravagant and ruinous project that fluttered in my head, as above; and did more to guide my rambling genius than a mother's tears, a father's instructions, a friend's counsel, or all my own reasoning powers could do. I was happy in listening to her tears and in being moved by her entreaties, and to the last degree desolate and dislocated in the world by the loss of her.

When she was gone, the world looked awkwardly round me. I was as much a stranger in it, in my thoughts, as I was in the Brazil when I went first on shore there; and as much alone, except as to the assistance of servants, as I was in my island. I knew neither what to do or what not to do. I saw the world busy round me; one part labouring for bread, and the other part squandering in vile excesses or empty pleasures; equally miserable, because the end they proposed still fled from them; for the man of pleasure every day surfeited of his vice, and heaped up work for sorrow and repentance, and the man of labour spent his strength in daily struggling for bread to maintain the vital strength they laboured with; so living in a daily circulation of sorrow, living but to work, and working but to live, as if daily bread were the only end of wearisome life, and a wearisome life the only occasion of daily bread.

This put me in mind of the life I lived in my kingdom, the island, where I suffered no more corn to grow because I did not want it, and bred no more goats because I had no more use for
them; where the money lay in the drawer till it grew mouldy, and had scarce the favour to be looked upon in twenty years.

All these things, had I improved them as I ought to have done, and as reason and religion had dictated to me, would have taught me to search farther than human enjoyments for a full felicity, and that there was something which certainly was the reason and end of life superior to all these things, and which was either to be possessed or at least hoped for on this side the grave.

But my sage counsellor was gone. I was like a ship without a pilot, that could only run afore the wind. My thoughts ran all away again into the old affair; my head was quite turned with the whimsies of foreign adventures; and all the pleasant innocent amusements of my farm and my garden, my cattle, and my family, which before entirely possessed me, were nothing to me, had no relish, and were like music to one that has no ear, or food to one that has no taste. In a word, I resolved to leave off house-keeping, let my farm, and return to London; and in a few months after, I did so.

When I came to London I was still as uneasy as I was before. I had no relish to the place, no employment in it, nothing to do but to saunter about like an idle person, of whom it may be said he is perfectly useless in God’s creation, and it is not one farthing matter to the rest of his kind whether he be dead or alive. This also was the life which of all circumstances of life was the most my aversion, who had been all my days used to an active life; and I would often say to myself, “A state of idleness is the very dregs of life:” and indeed I thought I was much more suitably employed when I was twenty-six days a making me a deal board.

It was now the beginning of the year 1693, when my nephew, who, as I have observed before, I had brought up to the sea, and had made him commander of a ship, was come home from a short voyage to Bilboa, being the first he had made; and he came to me, and told me that some merchants of his acquaintance had been proposing to him to go a voyage for them to the East Indies and China as private traders. “And now, uncle,” says he, “if you will go to sea with me, I’ll engage to land you upon your old habitation in the island, for we are to touch at the Brazils.”
Nothing can be a greater demonstration of a future state, and of the existence of an invisible world, than the concurrence of second causes with the ideas of things which we form in our minds perfectly reserved, and not communicated to any in the world. My nephew knew nothing how far my distemper of wandering was returned upon me, and I knew nothing of what he had in his thoughts to say, when that very morning before he came to me I had, in a great deal of confusion of thought, and revolving every part of my circumstances in my mind, come to this resolution—namely, that I would go to Lisbon, and consult with my old seacaptain, and so, if it was rational and practicable, I would go and see the island again, and see what was become of my people there. I had pleased myself with the thoughts of populating the place, and carrying inhabitants from hence, getting a patent for the possession, and I know not what; when in the middle of all this in comes my nephew, as I have said, with his project of carrying me thither in his way to the East Indies.

I paused a while at his words, and looking steadily at him, "What devil," said I "sent you of this unlucky errand?" My nephew startled as if he had been frightened at first; but perceiving I was not much displeased with the proposal, he recovered himself. "I hope it may not be an unlucky proposal, sir," says he; "I daresay you would be pleased to see your new colony there, where you once reigned with more felicity than most of your brother monarchs in the world."

In a word, the scheme hit so exactly with my temper—that is to say, the prepossession I was under, and of which I have said so much—that I told him, in few words, if he agreed with the merchants I would go with him. But I told him I would not promise to go any farther than my own island. "Why, sir," says he, "you don't want to be left there again, I hope?" "Why," said I, "can you not take me up again in your return?" He told me it could not be possible that the merchants would allow him to come that way with a laden ship of such value, it being a month's sail out of his way, and might be three or four. "Besides, sir, if I should miscarry," said he, "and not return at all, then you would be just reduced to the condition you were in before."
This was very rational; but we both found out a remedy for it, which was to carry a framed sloop\(^1\) on board the ship, which, being taken in pieces and shipped on board the ship, might, by the help of some carpenters who we agreed to carry with us, be set up again in the island and finished, fit to go to sea in a few days.

I was not long resolving; for indeed the importunities of my nephew joined in so effectually with my inclination that nothing could oppose me. On the other hand, my wife being dead, I had nobody concerned themselves so much for me as to persuade me one way or other, except my ancient good friend the widow, who earnestly struggled with me to consider my years, my easy circumstances, and the needless hazards of a long voyage; and, above all, my young children. But it was all to no purpose. I had an irresistible desire to the voyage; and I told her I thought there was something so uncommon in the impressions I had upon my mind for the voyage that it would be a kind of resisting Providence

\(^1\) A small sea vessel.
AGAIN LEAVES ENGLAND.

if I should attempt to stay at home: after which she ceased her expostulations, and joined with me not only in making provision for my voyage, but also in settling my family affairs for my absence, and providing for the education of my children.

In order to this I made my will, and settled the estate I had in such a manner for my children, and placed in such hands, that I was perfectly easy and satisfied they would have justice done them, whatever might befall me; and for their education, I left it wholly to my widow, with a sufficient maintenance to herself for her care: all which she richly deserved, for no mother could have taken more care in their education, or understand it better; and as she lived till I came home, I also lived to thank her for it.

My nephew was ready to sail about the beginning of January, 1694-5; and I with my man Friday went on board in the Downs the 8th, having, besides that sloop which I mentioned above, a very considerable cargo of all kinds of necessary things for my colony, which, if I did not find in good condition, I resolved to leave so.

First, I carried with me some servants, who I purposed to place there as inhabitants, or at least to set on work there upon my own account while I stayed, and either to leave them there or carry them forward as they should appear willing: particularly I carried two carpenters, a smith, and a very handy, ingenious fellow, who was a cooper by trade, but was also a general mechanic, for he was dexterous at making wheels, and hand-mills to grind corn, was a good turner and a good pot-maker; he also made anything that was proper to make of earth or of wood; in a word, we called him our Jack-of-all-trades.

With these I carried a tailor, who had offered himself to go passenger to the East Indies with my nephew, but afterwards consented to stay on our new plantation, and proved a most necessary handy fellow as could be desired in many other businesses besides that of this trade; for, as I observed formerly, necessity arms us for all employments.

My cargo, as near as I can collect, for I have not kept an account of the particulars, consisted of a sufficient quantity of linen, and some thin English stuffs for clothing the Spaniards that
I expected to find there, and enough of them as, by my calculation, might comfortably supply them for seven years. If I remember right, the materials I carried for clothing them with, gloves, hats, shoes, stockings, and all such things as they could want for wearing, amounted to above £200, including some beds, bedding, and household stuff, particularly kitchen utensils, with pots, kettles, pewter, brass, &c.; and near £100 more in ironwork, nails, tools of every kind, staples, hooks, hinges, and every necessary thing I could think of.

I carried also an hundred spare arms, muskets, and fuzees, besides some pistols, a considerable quantity of shot of all sizes, and two pieces of brass cannon; and because I knew not what time, and what extremities I was providing for, I carried an hundred barrels of powder, besides swords, cutlasses, and the iron part of some pikes and halberds; so that, in short, we had a large magazine of all sorts of stores. And I made my nephew carry two small quarter-deck guns more than he wanted for his ship, to leave behind, if there was occasion, that, when we came there, we might build a fort, and man it against all sorts of enemies; and, indeed, I at first thought there was need enough for it all, and much more, if we hoped to maintain our possession of the island, as shall be seen in the course of that story.

I had not such bad luck in this voyage as I had been used to meet with, and therefore shall have the less occasion to interrupt the reader, who, perhaps, may be impatient to hear how matters went with my colony; yet some odd accidents, cross winds, and bad weather happened on this first setting out, which made the voyage longer than I expected it at first: and I, who had never made but one voyage (namely, my first voyage to Guinea) in which I might be said to come back again as the voyage was at first designed, began to think the same ill fate still attended me; and that I was born to be never contented with being on shore and yet to be always unfortunate at sea.

Contrary winds first put us to the northward, and we were obliged to put in at Galway in Ireland, where we lay wind-bound two and twenty days. But we had this satisfaction with the disaster, that provisions were here exceeding cheap, and in the utmost
"A GREAT SHIP ON FIRE"
FIRE AT SEA.

that while we lay here we never touched the ship's rather added to them; here also I took in several live wo cows, and calves, which I resolved, if I had a good put on shore in my island; but we found occasion to erwise of them.

ut the 5th of February from Ireland, and had a very wind for some days. As I remember, it might be about February, in the evening late, when the mate, having came into the round-house and told us he saw a flash heard a gun fired; and while he was telling us of it, a and told us the boatswain heard another. This made out upon the quarter-deck, where, for a while, we heard ut in a few minutes we saw a very great light, and there was some very terrible fire at a distance. Im-
we had recourse to our reckonings, in which we all t there could be no land that way in which the fire self, no, not for five hundred leagues, for it appeared at west. Upon this we concluded it must be some ship sea; and as, by our hearing the noise of guns just before, fed it could not be far off, we stood directly towards re presently satisfied we should discover it, because we sailed the greater the light appeared, though the ing hazy, we could not perceive anything but the light . In about half an hour's sailing, the wind being fairugh not much of it, and the weather clearing up a little, plainly discern that it was a great ship on fire in the he sea.

ost sensibly touched with this disaster, though not ated with the persons engaged in it. I presently recol-former circumstances, and in what condition I was in u up by the Portugal captain; and how much more the circumstances of the poor creatures belonging to ust be if they had no other ship in company with them. I immediately ordered that five guns should be fired,fter another, that, if possible, we might give notice to there was help for them at hand, and that they might to save themselves in their boat; for though we could
see the flame of the ship, yet they, it being night, could see nothing of us.

We lay by some time upon this, only driving as the burning ship drove, waiting for daylight; when, on a sudden, to our great terror, though we had reason to expect it, the ship blew up in the air; and immediately, that is to say, in a few minutes, all the fire was out, that is to say, the rest of the ship sunk. This was a terrible, and indeed an afflicting sight, for the sake of the poor men, who, I concluded, must be either all destroyed in the ship, or be in the utmost distress in their boat in the middle of the ocean, which at present, by reason it was dark, I could not see. However, to direct them as well as I could, I caused lights to be hung out in all the parts of the ship where we could, and which we had lanthorns for, and kept firing guns all the night long, letting them know by this that there was a ship not far off.

About eight o'clock in the morning we discovered the ship's boats by the help of our perspective glasses, and found there were two of them, both thronged with people, and deep in the water. We perceived they rowed, the wind being against them, that they saw our ship, and did their utmost to make us see them.

We immediately spread our ancient 1 to let them know we saw them, and hung a waft out as a signal for them to come on board and then made more sail, standing directly to them. In less than half an hour we came up with them, and in a half an hour we took them all in, being no less than sixty-four men, some children; for there were a great many passengers.

Upon the whole, we found it was a French merchant three hundred ton, homeward bound from Quebec, in the Canada. The master gave us a long account of the distress of ship; how the fire began in the steerage by a negligence of the steersman; but on his crying out for help, was, as the master thought, entirely put out, when they found that soon the first fire had gotten into some part of the ship so as to come at such a rate that they could not effectually quench it, till between the timbers, and within the ceiling of the

---

1 Ancient was the way of pronouncing ensign: the flag or stree
ed into the hold, and mastered all the skill and all the applic-
they were able to exert.
they had no more to do then but to go into their boats, which,
heir great comfort, were pretty large, being their long-boat,
a great shallop,¹ besides a small skiff, which was of no great
tice to them, other than to get some fresh water and provisions
her after they had secured their lives from the fire. They
indeed small hope of their lives by getting into these boats at
distance from any land, only, as they said well, that they were
wed from the fire, and had a possibility that some ship might
open to be at sea, and might take them in. They had sails,
and a compass, and were preparing to make the best of their
back to Newfoundland, the wind blowing pretty fair, for it
was an easy gale at south-east by east. They had as much pro-
tions and water as, with sparing it so as to be next door to starv-
might support them about twelve days, in which, if they had no
weather, and no contrary winds, the captain said he hoped he
ght get the Banks of Newfoundland, and might perhaps take
fish to sustain them till they might go on shore. But there
so many chances against them in all these cases, such as
is to overset and founder them, rains and cold to benumb and
ish their limbs, contrary winds to keep them out and starve
that it must have been next to miraculous if they had
ped.
In the midst of their consultations, every one being hopeless
ready to despair, the captain, with tears in his eyes, told me
were on a sudden surprised with the joy of hearing a gun
and after that four more. These were the five guns which I
used to be fired at first seeing the light. This revived their
se, and gave them the notice which, as above, I desired it
uld, namely, that there was a ship at hand for their help.
It was upon the hearing these guns that they took down their
ste and sails; the sound coming from the windward, they
olved to lie by till morning. Some time after this, hearing no
re guns, they fired three muskets, one a considerable while
imilar to a sloop or shallop, with a small mainsail, and foremast, and lug-sails,
be hauled up or down.
after another; but these, the wind being contrary, we never heard.

Some time after that again, they were still more agreeably surprised with seeing our lights, and hearing the guns, which, as I have said, I caused to be fired all the rest of the night. This set them to work with their oars, to keep their boats ahead, at least, that we might the sooner come up with them; and at last, to their inexpressible joy, they found we saw them.

It is impossible for me to express the several gestures, the strange ecstasies, the variety of postures which these poor delivered people run into to express the joy of their souls at so unexpected a deliverance. Grief and fear are easily described; sighs, tears, groans, and a very few motions of the head and hands make up the sum of its variety; but an excess of joy, a surprise of joy,
has a thousand extravagances in it. There were some in tears; some raging and tearing themselves, as if they had been in the greatest agonies of sorrow; some stark-raving and downright lunatic; some ran about the ship stamping with their feet, others wringing their hands; some were dancing, some singing, some laughing, more crying, many quite dumb, not able to speak a word; others sick and vomiting; several swooning, and ready to faint; and a few were crossing themselves, and giving God thanks.

I would not wrong them neither; there might be many that were thankful afterward, but the passion was too strong for them at first, and they were not able to master it; they were thrown into ecstasies and a kind of frenzy, and it was but a very few that were composed and serious in their joy.

Perhaps the case may have some addition to it from the particular circumstance of that nation they belonged to, I mean the French, whose temper is allowed to be more volatile, more passionate, and more sprightly, and their spirits more fluid than in other nations. I am not philosopher enough to determine the case; but nothing I had ever seen before came up to it. The ecstasies poor Friday, my trusty savage, was in, when he found his father in the boat, came the nearest to it; and the surprise of the master and his two companions, who I delivered from the villains that set them on shore in the island, came a little way towards it; but nothing was to compare to this, either that I saw in Friday—or anywhere else in my life.

It is further observable, that these extravagances did not show themselves in that different manner I have mentioned in different persons only, but all the variety would appear in a short succession of moments in one and the same person. A man that we saw this minute dumb, and, as it were, stupid and confounded, should the next minute be dancing and hallooing like an antic;¹ and the next moment be tearing his hair, or pulling his clothes to pieces and stamping them under his feet, like a mad man; a few moments after that we should have him all in tears, then sick, then swooning; and had not immediate help been had, would in

¹ A buffoon; one who plays “antics” or makes quaint gestures.
a few moments more have been dead. And thus it was, not with one or two, or ten or twenty, but with the greatest part of them; and if I remember right, our surgeon was obliged to let above thirty of them blood.

There were two priests among them, one an old man, and the other a young man; and that which was strangest was that the oldest man was the worst. As soon as he set his foot on board our ship, and saw himself safe he dropped down stone-dead, not the least sign of life could be perceived in him. Our surgeon immediately applied proper remedies to recover him, and was the only man in the ship that believed he was not dead. At length he opened a vein in his arm, having first chaffed and rubbed the part so as to warm it as much as possible. Upon this, the blood, which only dropped at first, flowed something freely; in three minutes after the man opened his eyes; and about a quarter of an hour after that, he spoke, grew better, and quite well. After the blood was stopped, he walked about, told us he was perfectly well, took a dram of cordial which the surgeon gave him, and was what we called come to himself. About a quarter of an hour after, they came running into the cabin to the surgeon, who was bleeding a French woman that had fainted, and told him the priest was gone stark man. It seems he had begun to revolve the change of his circumstance, and again this put him into an ecstasy of joy; his spirits whirled about faster than the vessels could convey them, the blood grew hot and feverish, and the man was as fit for Bedlam as any creature that ever was in it. The surgeon would not bleed him again in that condition, but gave him something to dose and put him to sleep, which after some time operated upon him, and he waked the next morning perfectly composed and well.

The younger priest behaved with great command of his passion, and was really an example of a serious, well-governed mind. At his first coming on board the ship, he threw himself flat on his face, prostrating himself in thankfulness for his deliverance; in which I unhappily and unseasonably disturbed him, really thinking he had been in a swoon; but he spake calmly, thanked me, told me he was giving God thanks for his deliverance, and begged
A TIMELY CAUTION.

Ave him a few moments, and that next to his Maker he give me thanks also.

Heartily sorry that I disturbed him, and not only left kept others from interrupting him also. He continued posture about three minutes, or little more, after I left came to me, as he had said he would, and with a great seriousness and affection, but with tears in his eyes, me that had, under God, given him and so many miseries their lives. I told him I had no room¹ to move thank God for it, rather than me; but I added, that it was but what reason and humanity dictated to all men, and had as much reason as he to give thanks to God, who had us so far as to make us the instruments of his mercy to of his creatures.

This, the young priest applied himself to his country-folks; to compose them, persuaded, entreated, argued, reasoned with, and did his utmost to keep them within the exercise of reason; and with some he had success, though others were out of all government of themselves.

To help committing this to writing, as perhaps it may be those into whose hands it may fall, for the guiding them all the extravagances of their passions; for if an excess in carry men out to such a length beyond the reach of son, what will not the extravagances of anger, rage, and mad mind, carry us to? And, indeed, here I saw reason ing an exceeding watch over our passions of every kind, those of joy and satisfaction, as those of sorrow and

There something disordered by these extravagances among guests for the first day; but when they had been retired, provided for them as well as our ship would allow, and I slept heartily, as most of them did, they were quite sort of people the next day.

ING of good manners or civil acknowledgments for the shown them was wanting; the French, it is known, are apt enough to exceed that way. The captain and one

¹ No occasion: because he had done so already.
of the priests came to me the next day, and desiring to speak with me and my nephew the commander, began to consult with us what should be done with them. And first they told us that, as we had saved their lives, so all they had was little enough for a return to us for that kindness received. The captain said, they had saved some money and some things of value in their boats, caught hastily out of the flames, and if we would accept it, they were

ordered to make an offer of it all to us; they only desired to set on shore somewhere in our way, where, if possible, they might get passage to France.

My nephew was for accepting their money at first word, and to consider what to do with them afterwards; but I overruled him in that part, for I knew what it was to be set on shore in a strange country; and if the Portugal captain that took me up at sea had served me so, and took all I had for my deliverance, I must have starved, or have been as much a slave at the Brazils as I had been.
barry, the mere being sold to a Mohammedan excepted; and as a Portuguese is not much a better master than a Turk, if some cases a much worse.

Therefore told the French captain, that we had taken them up in distress, it was true, but that it was our duty to do so as fellow-creatures, and as we would desire to be so delivered were in the like or any other extremity; that we had done for them but what we believed they would have done for we had been in their case and they in ours: but that we rem up to save them, not to plunder them; and it would est barbarous thing to take that little from them which ad saved out of the fire, and then set them on shore and hem; that this would be first to save them from death and ill them ourselves, save them from drowning and abandon o starving; and therefore I would not let the least thing en from them. As to setting them on shore, I told them that was an exceeding difficulty to us, for that the ship und to the East Indies, and though we were driven out of irse to the westward a very great way, and perhaps were d by Heaven on purpose for their deliverance, yet it was ile for us wilfully to change our voyage on this particular t, nor could my nephew, the captain, answer it to the ers, with whom he was under charter-party to pursue his by the way of Brazil; and all I knew we could do for them put ourselves in the way of meeting with other ships, ard bound from the West Indies, and get them passage, if e, to England or France.

First part of the proposal was so generous and kind, they not but be very thankful for it; but they were in a very consternation, especially the passengers, at the notion of carried away to the East Indies; and they then entreated at seeing I was driven so far to the westward before I met hem, I would at least keep on the same course to the Banks foundland, where it was probable I might meet with some r slop that they might hire to carry them back to Canada, whence they came.

Sought this was but a reasonable request on their part, and
therefore I inclined to agree to it; for, indeed, I considered that to carry this whole company to the East Indies, would not only be an intolerable severity upon the poor people, but would be ruining our whole voyage by devouring all our provisions: so I thought it no breach of charter-party, but what an unforeseen accident made absolutely necessary to us, and in which no one could say we were to blame; for the laws of God and nature would have forbid that we should refuse to take up two boats full of people in such a distressed condition; and the nature of the thing, as well respecting ourselves as the poor people, obliged us to set them on shore somewhere or other for their deliverance. So I consented that we should carry them to Newfoundland, if wind and weather would permit, and if not, that I would carry them to Martinico in the West Indies.

The wind continued fresh easterly, but the weather pretty good; and as the winds had continued in the points between north-east and south-east a long time, we missed several opportunities of sending them to France; for we met several ships bound to Europe, whereof two were French, from St. Christopher's, but they had been so long beating up against the wind, that they durst take in no passengers for fear of wanting provisions for the voyage, as well for themselves as for those they should take in; so we were obliged to go on. It was about a week after this that we made the Banks of Newfoundland, where, to shorten my story, we put all our French people on board a bark, which they hired at sea there, to put them on shore, and afterwards to carry them to France, if they could get provision to victual themselves with. When I say all the French went on shore, I should remember that the young priest I spoke of, hearing we were bound to the East Indies, desired to go the voyage with us, and to be set on shore on the coast of Coromandel, which I readily agreed to, for I wonderfully liked the man, and had very good reason, as will appear afterwards; also four of the seamen entered themselves on our ship, and proved very useful fellows.

From hence we directed our course for the West Indies, steering away south and south by east for about twenty days together, sometimes little or no wind at all, when we met with another
for our humanity to work upon, almost as deplorable as any.

s in the latitude of 27° 5' north, and the 19th day of 694–5, when we spied a sail, our course south-east and by We soon perceived it was a large vessel, and that she bore , but could not at first know what to make of her, till ning a little nearer we found she had lost her maintop- e-mast, and boltsprit; and presently she fired a gun as of distress. The weather was pretty good, wind at rth-west, a fresh gale; and we soon came to speak with

und her a ship of Bristol, bound home from Barbadoes, been blown out of the road at Barbadoes a few days before ready to sail by a terrible hurricane, while the captain and mates were both gone on shore; so that, beside the terror orm, they were but in an indifferent case for good artists the ship home. They had been already nine weeks at had met with another terrible storm after the hurricane , which had blown them quite out of their knowledge to ward, and in which they lost their masts, as above. They hey expected to have seen the Bahama Islands, but were ven away again to the south-east by a strong gale of wind north-west, the same that blew now; and having no sails the ship with but a main course, and a kind of square sail uery fore-mast, which they had set up, they could not lie wind, but were endeavouring to stand away for the

at which was worst of all was, that they were almost for want of provisions, besides the fatigues they had under their bread and flesh was quite gone, they had not one ft in the ship, and had had none for eleven days. The ef they had was, their water was not all spent, and they at half a barrel of flour left; they had sugar enough; some , or sweatmeats, they had at first, but they were devoured; had seven casks of rum.

was a youth and his mother and a maidservant on board, sprit, a sort of mast that is at the head of the ship pointing forward.
who were going passengers, and thinking the ship was ready to sail, unhappily came on board the evening before the hurricane began; and having no provisions of their own left, they were in a more deplorable condition than the rest, for the seamen, being reduced to such an extreme necessity themselves, had no compassion, we may be sure, for the poor passengers, and they were indeed in a condition that their misery is very hard to describe.

I had, perhaps, not known this part, if my curiosity had not led me, the weather being fair and the wind abated, to go on board the ship. The second mate, who upon this occasion commanded the ship, had been on board our ship, and he told me indeed they had three passengers in the great cabin, that they were in a deplorable condition: "Nay," says he, "I believe they are dead, for I have heard nothing of them for above two days, and I was afraid to inquire after them," said he, "for I had nothing to relieve them with."

We immediately applied ourselves to give them what relief we could spare; and, indeed, I had so far overruled things with my nephew, that I would have victualled them, though we had gone away to Virginia, or any part of the coast of America, to have supplied ourselves; but there was no necessity for that.

But now they were in a new danger; for they were afraid of eating too much, even of that little we gave them. The mate, or commander, brought six men with him in his boat, but these poor wretches looked like skeletons, and were so weak they could hardly sit to their oars. The mate himself was very ill and half starved; for he declared he had reserved nothing from the men, and went share and share alike with them in every bit they eat.

I cautioned him to eat sparingly, but set meat before him immediately, and he had not eaten three mouthfuls before he began to be sick and out of order. So he stopped a while, and our surgeon mixed him up something with some broth, which he said would be to him both food and physic; and after he had taken it, he grew better. In the meantime I forgot not the men; I ordered victuals to be given them, and the poor creatures rather devoured than eat it. They were so exceeding hungry, that they were in a kind ravenous, and had no command of themselves; and two of
at with so much greediness that they were in danger of
ves the next morning.
sight of these people's distress was very moving to me, and
not to mind what I had a terrible prospect of at my first
shore in the island, where I had neither the least
al of food or any prospect of procuring any, besides the
apprehension I had of being made the food of other
But all the while the mate was thus relating to me the
condition of the ship's company, I could not put out of
ight the story he had told me of the three poor creatures
great cabin, namely, the mother, her son, and the maid-
who he had heard nothing of for two or three days, and
seemed to confess they had wholly neglected, their own
ties being so great; by which I understood that they had
iven them no food at all, and that therefore they must be
l, and be all lying dead, perhaps on the floor or deck of the

therefore kept the mate, who we then called captain, on
ith his men to refresh them, so I also forgot not the starv- that were left on board, but ordered my own boat to go
d the ship, and with my mate and twelve men to carry
sack of bread and four or five pieces of beef to boil. Our
charged the men to cause the meat to be boiled while they
and to keep guard in the cook-room to prevent the men
t to eat raw, or taking it out of the pot before it was well
nd then to give every man but a very little at a time; and
cautions he preserved the men, who would otherwise have
m selves with that very food that was given them on pur-
save their lives.

same time, I ordered the mate to go into the great cabin
what condition the poor passengers were in, and if they
ve, to comfort them, and give them what refreshment was
and the surgeon gave him a large pitcher with some of
pared broth which he had given the mate that was on
and which he did not question would restore them
ly.
not satisfied with this, but, as I said above, having a great
mind to see the scene of misery which I knew the ship itself would
present me with in a more lively manner than I could have it by
report, I took the captain of the ship, as we now called him, with
me, and went myself a little after in their boat.

I found the poor men on board almost in a tumult to get the
victuals out of the boiler before it was ready. But my mate
observed his order, and kept a good guard at the cook-room door;
and the man he placed there, after using all possible persuasion to
have patience, kept them off by force. However, he caused some
biscuit cakes to be dipped in the pot and softened with the liquor
of the meat, which they called brewes, and gave them every one,
one to stay their stomachs, and told them it was for their own
safety that he was obliged to give them but a little at a time.
But it was all in vain; and had I not come on board, and their
own commander and officers with me, and with good words and
some threats also of giving them no more, I believe they would
have broke into the cook-room by force and tore the meat out of
the furnace. For words are indeed of very small force to a hungry
belly. However, we pacified them, and fed them gradually and
cautiously for the first time, and the next time gave them more,
and at last filled their bellies, and the men did well enough.

But the misery of the poor passengers in the cabin was of
another nature, and far beyond the rest; for as first the ship's
company had so little for themselves, it was but too true that they
had at first kept them very low, and at last totally neglected them;
so that for six or seven days, it might be said, they had really had
no food at all, and for several days before very little. The poor
mother, who, as the men reported, was a woman of good sense
and good breeding, had spared all she could get so affectionately
for her son, that at last she entirely sunk under it. And when
the mate of our ship went in, she sat upon the floor or deck, with
her back up against the sides, between two chairs, which were
lashed fast, and her head sunk in between her shoulders like a
corpse, though not quite dead. My mate said all he could to
revive and encourage her, and with a spoon put some broth into
her mouth. She opened her lips and lifted up one hand, but could
not speak; yet she understood what he said, and made signs to
A SCENE OF MISERY.

intimating that it was too late for her, but pointed to her
l, as if she would have said they should take care of him.

however, the mate, who was exceedingly moved with the sight,
avaured to get some of the broth into her mouth; and as he
got two or three spoonfuls down, though I question whether

uld be sure of it or not. But it was too late, and she died
me night.

youth, who was preserved at the price of his most affec-
e mother's life, was not so far gone, yet he lay in a cabin-bed
stretched out, with hardly any life left in him. He had a
of an old glove in his mouth, having eaten up the rest of it.
ver, being young, and having more strength than his mother,
ate got something down his throat, and he began sensibly to
; though, by giving him some time after but two or three
fuls extraordinary, he was very sick, and brought it up

; the next care was the poor maid. She lay all along upon
the deck hard by her mistress, and just like one that had fallen
down with an apoplexy, and struggled for life. Her limbs were
distorted; one of her hands was clasped round the frame of a chair,
and she gripped it so hard that we could not easily make her let
go; her other arm lay over her head; and her feet lay both
together set fast against the frame of the cabin table; in short,
she lay just like one in the last agonies of death, and yet she was
alive too.

The poor creature was not only starved with hunger and terrified
with the thoughts of death, but, as the men told us afterwards,
was broken-hearted for her mistress, who she saw dying for two
or three days before, and who she loved most tenderly.

We knew not what to do with this poor girl; for when our
surgeon, who was a man of very great knowledge and experience,
had with great application recovered her as to life, he had her
upon his hand as to her senses, for she was little less than dis-
tracted for a considerable time after, as shall appear presently.

Whoever shall read these memorandums must be desired to con-
sider that visits at sea are not like a journey into the country,
where sometimes people stay a week or a fortnight at a place.
Our business was to relieve this distressed ship's crew, but not to
lie by for them; and though they were willing to steer the same
course with us for some days, yet we could carry no sail to keep
pace with a ship that had no masts. However, as their captain
begged of us to help him to set up a maintop-mast, and a kind of
a top-mast to his jury fore-mast, we did, as it were, lie by him for
three or four days; and then, having given him five barrels of
beef, a barrel of pork, two hogsheads of biscuit, and a proportion
of pease, flour, and what other things we could spare; and taking
three casks of sugar, some rum, and some pieces of eight of them
for satisfaction, we left them, taking on board with us, at their
own earnest request, the priest, the youth, and the maid, and all
their goods.

The young lad was about seventeen years of age, a pretty, well-
bred, modest, and sensible youth, greatly dejected with the loss of
his mother, and, as it seems, had lost his father but a few months
before at Barbadoes. He begged of the surgeon to speak to me to
out of the ship, for he said the cruel fellows had mur-
mother. And indeed so they had, that is to say, pas-
or they might have spared a small sustenance to the poor
widow that might have preserved her life, though it had
just to keep her alive. But hunger knows no friend, no
no justice, no right; and therefore is remorseless, and
of no compassion.

The surgeon told him how far we were going, and how it would
away from all his friends, and put him, perhaps, in as
stances almost as those we found him in; that is to say,
in the world. He said it mattered not whither he went,
but delivered from the terrible crew he was among.

captain (by which he meant me, for he could know
of my nephew) had saved his life, and he was sure would
him; and as for the maid, he was sure, if she came to
he would be very thankful for it, let us carry them where
l. The surgeon represented the case so affectionately to
yielded, and we took them both on board with all their
cept eleven hogsheads of sugar, which could not be
or come at; and as the youth had a bill of lading for
made his commander sign a writing obliging himself to
on as he came to Bristol, to one Mr. Rogers, a merchant
om whom the youth said he was related, and to deliver a letter
rote to him, and all the goods he had belonging to the
widow; which, I suppose, was not done, for I could never
the ship came to Bristol, but was, as is most probable,
a, being in so disabled a condition and so far from any
: I am of opinion the first storm she met with afterwards
t founder in the sea; for she was leaky, and had damage
ld when we met with her.

now in the latitude of 19° 32', and had hitherto had a
voyage as to weather, though at first the winds had been

I shall trouble nobody with the little incidents of
ther, currents, &c., on the rest of our voyage; but
my story for the sake of what is to follow, shall
hat I came to my old habitation, the island, on the 10th
1695. It was with no small difficulty that I found the
place; for as I came to it and went from it before on the south and east side of the island, as coming from the Brazils, so now coming in between the main and the island, and having no chart for the coast nor any landmark, I did not know it when I saw it, or know whether I saw it or no.

We beat about a great while, and went on shore on several islands in the mouth of the great river Oronooque, but none for my purpose. Only this I learned by my coasting the shore, that I was under one great mistake before, namely, that the continent which I thought I saw from the island I lived in was really no continent, but a long island, or rather a ridge of islands, reaching from one to the other side of the extended mouth of that great river; and that the savages who came to my island were not properly those which we call Caribbees, but islanders, and other barbarians of the same kind, who inhabited something nearer to our side than the rest.

In short, I visited several of these islands to no purpose. Some I found were inhabited, and some were not. On one of them I found some Spaniards, and thought they had lived there; but, speaking with them, found they had a sloop lay in a small creek hard by, and they came thither to make salt, and to catch some pearl mussels if they could, but that they belonged to the Isle de Trinidad, which lay farther north, in the latitude of 10 and 11 degrees.

But at last coasting from one island to another, sometimes with the ship, sometimes with the Frenchman's shallow, which we had found a convenient boat, and therefore kept her with their very good will, at length I came fair on the south side of my island, and I presently knew the very countenance of the place; so I brought the ship safe to an anchor broadside with the little creek, where was my old habitation.

As soon as I saw the place I called for Friday, and asked him if he knew where he was? He looked about a little, and presently clapping his hands, cried, "O yes, O there! O yes, O there!" pointing to our old habitation; and fell a dancing and capering like a mad fellow, and I had much ado to keep him from jumping into the sea to swim ashore to the place.
"Well, Friday," says I, "do you think we shall find anybody here or not? And what do you think; shall we see your father?"

The fellow stood mute as a stock a good while, but when I named his father, the poor affectionate creature looked dejected, and I could see the tears run down his face very plentifully. "What is the matter, Friday?" says I. "Are you troubled because you may see your father?" "No, no," says he, shaking his head; "no see him more, no evermore see again." "Why so?" said I to Friday; how do you know that?" "O no, O no," says Friday; "he long ago die, long ago; he much old man." "Well, well," said I, "Friday, you don't know; but shall we see any one else then?" The fellow, it seems, had better eyes than I, and he points just to the hill above my old house; and though we lay half a league off, he cries out, "We see! we see! yes, we see much men there, and there, and there." I looked, but I could see nobody, no, not with a perspective glass; which was, I suppose because I could not hit the place, for the fellow was right, as I found upon inquiry the next day, and there was five or six men altogether, stood to look at the ship, not knowing what to think of us.

As soon as Friday had told me he saw people, I caused the English ancient to be spread and fired three guns, to give them notice we were friends; and in about half a quarter of an hour after, we perceived a smoke rise from the side of the creek; so I immediately ordered a boat out, taking Friday with me, and hanging out a white flag, or flag of truce, I went directly on shore, taking with me the young friar I mentioned, to whom I had told the whole story of my living there, and the manner of it, and every particular both of myself and those I left there; and who was on that account extremely desirous to go with me. We had besides about sixteen men very well armed, if we had found any new guests there which we did not know of; but we had no need of weapons.

As we went on shore upon the tide of flood, near high water, we rowed directly into the creek, and the first man I fixed my eye upon was the Spaniard whose life I had saved, and who I knew by his face perfectly well; as to his habit, I shall describe it afterwards. I ordered nobody to go on shore at first but myself, but
there was no keeping Friday in the boat; for the affectionate creature had spied his father at a distance, a good way off of the Spaniards, where indeed I saw nothing of him; and if they had not let him go on shore, he would have jumped into the sea. He was no sooner on shore but he flew away to his father like an arrow out of a bow. It would have made any man have shed tears in spite of the firmest resolution to have seen the first transports of this poor fellow’s joy when he came to his father; how he embraced him, kissed him, stroked his face, took him up in his arms, set him down upon a tree, and lay down by him, then stood and looked at him, as any one would look at a strange picture, for a quarter of an hour together; then lie down on the ground and stroke his legs, and kiss them, and then get up again and stare at him; one would have thought the fellow bewitched. But it would have made a dog laugh to see how the next day his passion
run out another way. In the morning he walked along the shore to
and again with his father several hours, always leading him by the
hand, as if he had been a lady; and every now and then he would
come to fetch something or other for him to the boat, either a
lump of sugar, or a dram, a biscuit cake, or something or other
that was good. In the afternoon his frolics run another way, for
then he would set the old man down upon the ground, and dance
about him, and make a thousand antic postures and gestures; and
all the while he did this he would be talking to him, and telling
him one story or another of his travels, and of what had happened
to him abroad, to divert him. In short, if the same filial affection
was to be found in Christians to their parents in our part of the
world, one would be tempted to say there would hardly have been
any need of the Fifth Commandment.

But this is a digression. I return to my landing. It would be
endless to take notice of all the ceremonies and civilities that the
Spaniards received me with. The first Spaniard, who, as I said,
I knew very well, was he whose life I had saved. He came
towards the boat, attended by one more carrying a flag of truce
also; and he did not only not know me at first, but he had no
thoughts, no notion of its being me that was come till I spoke to
him. "Seignior," said I, in Portuguese, "do you not know me?"
At which he spoke not a word, but giving his musket to the man
that was with him, threw his arms abroad, and saying something
in Spanish that I did not perfectly hear, comes forward, and em-
bred me, telling me he was inexcusable not to know that face
again that he had once seen as of an angel from heaven sent to
save his life. He said abundance of very handsome things, as a
well-bred Spaniard always knows how; and then beckoning to the
person that attended him, bade him go and call out his comrades.
He then asked me if I would walk to my old habitation, where he
would give me possession of my own house again, and where I
should see there had been but mean improvements; so I walked
along with him: but, alas! I could no more find the place again
than if I had never been there; for they had planted so many
trees, and placed them in such a posture, so thick and close to one
another, and in ten years' time they were grown so big that in
THE SPANIARD'S STORY.

The place was inaccessible, except by such windings and blindways as they themselves only, who made them, could find.

I asked them what put them upon all these fortifications? I told me I would say there was need enough of it, when they had given me an account how they had passed their time since they arrived in the island, especially after they had the misfortune to find that I was gone. He told me he could not but have satisfaction in my good fortune when he heard that I was away in a good ship, and to my satisfaction; and that he oftentimes a strong persuasion that one time or other he should see me again. But nothing that ever befell him in his life, he said, was so surprising and afflictive to him at first as the discovery he was under when he came back to the island and was not there.

As to the three barbarians (so he called them) that were behind, and of whom he said he had a long story to tell. Spaniards all thought themselves much better among them only that their number was so small. "And," says he, "they been strong enough, we had been all long ago in and with that he crossed himself on the breast. "By heaven, I hope you will not be displeased when I shall enforce by necessity, we were obliged for our own protection to disarm them and make them our subjects, who would not submit with being moderately our masters, but would demand more."

I answered I was heartily afraid of it when I was there; and nothing troubled me at my parting from them but that they were not come back, that I might have the possession of everything first, and left the other plunder to them as they deserved. But if they had redressed me was very glad, and should be very far from finding it; for I knew they were a parcel of refractory, unmanageable and were fit for any manner of mischief.

While I was saying this, came the man whom I had seen and with him eleven men more. In the distance it was impossible to guess what nation they were. It was all clear both to them and to me. First, he pointing to them said, "These, sir, are some
who owe their lives to you;" and then, turning to them, and pointing to me, he let them know who I was; upon which they all came up one by one, not as if they had been sailors and ordinary fellows and I the like, but really as if they had been ambassadors of noblemen and I a monarch or a great conqueror. Their behaviour was to the last degree obliging and courteous, and

Yet mixed with a manly, majestic gravity, which very well became them; and, in short, they had so much more manners than I that I scarce knew how to receive their civilities, much less how to return them in kind.

The history of their coming to, and conduct in, the island, after my going away, is so very remarkable, and has so many incidents which the former part of my relation will help to understand, and which will in most of the particulars refer to that account I have already given, that I cannot but commit them with great delight to the reading of those that come after me.
I shall no longer trouble the story with a relation in the first person, which will put me to the expense of ten thousand "said I's" and "said he's," and "he told me's," and "I told him's," and the like; but I shall collect the facts historically as near as I can gather them out of my memory from what they related to me, and from what I met with in my conversing with them and with the place.

In order to do this succinctly, and as intelligibly as I can, I must go back to the circumstance in which I left the island, and in which the persons were of whom I am to speak. And first, it is necessary to repeat that I had sent away Friday's father and the Spaniard, the two whose lives I had rescued from the savages; I say, I had sent them away in a large canoe to the main, as I then thought it, to fetch over the Spaniard's companions, who he had left behind him, in order to save them from the like calamity that he had been in; and in order to succour them for the present, and that if possible we might together find some way for our deliverance afterward.

When I sent them away, I had no visible appearance of, or the least room to hope for, my own deliverance, any more than I had twenty year before; much less had I any foreknowledge of what afterward happened, I mean of an English ship coming on shore there to fetch me off; and it could not but be a very great surprise to them when they came back, not only to find that I was gone, but to find three strangers left on the spot, possessed of all that I had left behind me, which would otherwise have been their own.

The first thing, however, which I inquired into, that I might begin where I left off, was of their own part; and I desired he would give me a particular account of his voyage back to his countrymen with the boat, when I sent him to fetch them over. He told me there was little variety in that part, for nothing remarkable happened to them on the way, they having very calm weather and a smooth sea; for his countrymen it could not be doubted, he said, but that they were overjoyed to see him. (It seems he was the principal man among them, the captain of the vessel they had been shipwrecked in having been dead some time.) They were, he said, the more surprised to see him, because they
THE SPANIARDS ARRIVE.

... was fallen into the hands of the savages, who, they... 

as when he told them the story of his deliverance, manner he was furnished for carrying them away, it seem to them; and their astonishment, they said, was like that of Joseph's brethren, when he told them who told them the story of his exaltation in Pharaoh's 

when he showed them the arms, the powder, the ball, visions that he brought them for their journey or were restored to themselves, took a just share of the deliverance, and immediately prepared to come away

business was to get canoes; and in this they were so stick so much upon the honest part of it, but to n their friendly savages, and to borrow two large friaguas, on pretense of going out a fishing or for

hey came away the next morning. It seems they me to get themselves ready, for they had no baggage, es or provisions, or anything in the world but what them, and a few roots to eat, of which they used to read.

in all three weeks absent, and in that time, unluckily ad the occasion offered for my escape, as I mentioned Part, and to get off from the island, leaving three of prudent, hardened, ungoverned, disagreeable villains hat any man could desire to meet with, to the poor eat grief and disappointment, you may be sure. ast thing the rogues did was, that when the Spaniards re they gave my letter to them, and gave them pro- other relief, as I had ordered them to do; also they e long paper of directions which I had left with them, e particular methods which I took for managing my life there; the way how I baked my bread, bred te, and planted my corn; how I cured my grapes, s; and, in a word, everything I did. All this being 2, they gave to the Spaniards, two of whom under...
stand English well enough; nor did they refuse to accommodate the Spaniards with everything else, for they agreed very well for some time. They gave them an equal admission into the house or cave; and they began to live very sociably. And the head Spaniard, who had seen pretty much of my methods, and Friday's father together, managed all their affairs: for as for the Englishmen, they did nothing but ramble about the island, shoot parrots, and catch tortoises; and when they came home, at night, the Spaniards provided their suppers for them.

The Spaniards would have been satisfied with this, would the other but have let them alone; which, however, they could not find in their hearts to do long, but, like the dog in the manger, they would not eat themselves, and would not let others eat neither. The differences, nevertheless, were at first but trivial, and such as are not worth relating; but at last it broke out into open war, and it began with all the rudeness and insolence that can be imagined, without reason, without provocation, contrary to nature, and indeed to common sense; and though it is true the first relation of it came from the Spaniards themselves, who I may call the accusers, yet when I came to examine the fellows, they could not deny a word of it.

But before I come to the particulars of this part, I must supply a defect in my former relation; and this was, that I forgot to set down among the rest, that just as we were weighing the anchor to set sail, there happened a little quarrel on board our ship, which I was afraid once would have turned to a second mutiny; nor was it appeased till the captain, rousing up his courage and taking us all to his assistance, parted them by force, and making two of the most refractory fellows prisoners, he laid them in irons; and as they had been active in the former disorders, and let fall some ugly dangerous words the second time, he threatened to carry them in irons to England, and have them hanged there for mutiny and running away with the ship.

This, it seems, though the captain did not intend to do it, frightened some other men in the ship, and some of them had put it into the heads of the rest that the captain only gave them good words for the present, till they should come to some English port,
and that then they should be all put into jail, and tried for their lives.

The mate got intelligence of this, and acquainted us with it; upon which it was desired that I, who still passed for a great man among them, should go down with the mate and satisfy the men, and tell them that they might be assured, if they behaved well the rest of the voyage, all they had done for the time past should be pardoned. So I went, and after passing my honour's word to them, they appeared easy; and the more so, when I caused the two men who were in irons to be released and forgiven.

But this mutiny had brought us to an anchor for that night, the wind also falling calm. Next morning, we found that our two men who had been laid in irons had stole each of them a musket and some other weapons, what powder or shot they had we know not, and had taken the ship's pinnace, which was not yet hauled up, and ran away with her to their companions in roguery on shore.

As soon as we found this, I ordered the long-boat on shore, with twelve men and the mate, and away they went to seek the rogues; but they could neither find them or any of the rest, for they all fled into the woods when they saw the boat coming on shore. The mate was once resolved, in justice to their roguery, to have destroyed their plantations, burned all the household stuff and furniture, and left them to shift without it; but having no order, he let it all alone, left everything as they found it, and bringing the pinnace away, came on board without them.

These two men made their number five, but the other three villains were so much wickeder than these, that after they had been two or three days together, they turned their two new comers out of doors to shift for themselves, and would have nothing to do with them, nor could they for a good while be persuaded to give them any food; as for the Spaniards, they were not yet come.

When the Spaniards came first on shore, the business began to go forward. The Spaniards would have persuaded the three English brutes to have taken in their two countrymen again, that, as they said, they might be all one family; but they would not hear
of it. So the two poor fellows lived by themselves; and finding nothing but industry and application would make them live comfortably, they pitched their tents on the north shore of the island, but a little more to the west, to be out of the danger of the savages, who always landed on the east parts of the island.

Here they built them two huts, one to lodge in, and the other to lay up their magazines and stores in; and the Spaniards having given them some corn for seed, and especially some of the peas which I had left them, they dug, and planted, and enclosed, after the pattern I had set for them all, and began to live pretty well. Their first crop of corn was on the ground, and though it was but a little bit of land which they had dug up at first, having had but a little time, yet it was enough to relieve them, and find them with bread and other eatables; and one of the fellows being the cook's mate of the ship, was very ready at making soup, puddings, and such other preparations, as the rice and the milk, and such little flesh as they got, furnished him to do.

They were going on in this little thriving posture, when the three unnatural rogues, their own countrymen too, in mere humour and to insult them, came and bullied them, and told them the island was theirs; that the governor (meaning me) had given them possession of it, and nobody else had any right to it; and they should build no houses upon their ground, unless they would pay them rent for them.

The two men thought they had jested at first, asked them to come in and sit down, and see what fine houses they were that they had built, and tell them what rent they demanded; and one of them merrily told them, if they were ground-landlords, he hoped, if they built tenements upon their land and made improvements, they would, according to the custom of landlords, grant them a long lease, and bid them go fetch a scrivener to draw the writings. One of the three, cursing and raging, told them they should see they were not in jest; and going to a little place at a distance, where the honest men had made a fire to dress their victuals, he takes a firebrand and claps it to the outside of their hut, and very fairly set it on fire; and it would have been all burned down in a few minutes, if one of the two had not run to the fellow,
A VILLAINOUS DEED.

thrust him away, and trod the fire out with his feet, and that not without some difficulty too.

The fellow was in such a rage at the honest man's thrusting him away, that he returned upon him with a pole he had in his hand, and, had not the man avoided the blow very nimbly, and run into the hut, he had ended his days at once. His comrade, seeing the

"It would have been all burned if one had not thrust him away."

danger they were both in, run in after him; and immediately they came both out with their muskets, and the man that was first struck at with the pole knocked the fellow down that begun the quarrel, with the stock of his musket, and that before the other two could come to help him; and then, seeing the rest come at them, they stood together, and presenting the other ends of their pieces to them, bade them stand off.

The other had firearms with them too, but one of the two honest men, bolder than his comrade, and made desperate by his danger, told them if they offered to move hand or foot they were dead
men, and boldly commanded them to lay down their arms. The did not indeed lay down their arms, but seeing him so resolute: brought them to a parley, and they consented to take their wounded man with them and be gone—and indeed it seems the fellow wounded sufficiently with the blow. However, they were much in the wrong, since they had the advantage, that they did not disarm them effectually, as they might have done, and have gone immediately to the Spaniards and given them an account how the rogues had treated them; for the three villains studied nothing but revenge, and every day gave them some intimation that they did so.

But not to crowd this part with an account of the lesser part of their rogueries, such as treading down their corn, shooting three young kids and a she-goat, which the poor men had got to breed up tame for their store; and, in a word, plaguing them night and day in this manner, it forced the two men to such a desperation, that they resolved to fight them all three the first time they had a fair opportunity. In order to this, they resolved to go to the castle, as they called it, that was my old dwelling, where the three rogues and the Spaniards all lived together, at that time intending to have a fair battle, and the Spaniards should stand by to see fair play. So they got up in the morning before day, and came to the place, and called the Englishmen by their names, telling a Spaniard that answered that they wanted to speak with them.

It happened that the day before, two of the Spaniards having been in the woods, had seen one of the two Englishmen, who, for distinction, I call the honest men, and he had made a sad complaint to the Spaniards of the barbarous usage they had met with from their three countrymen, and how they had ruined their plantation and destroyed their corn that they had laboured so hard to bring forward, and killed the milch-goat and their three kids, which was all they had provided for their sustenance; and that if he and his friends, meaning the Spaniards, did not assist them again, they should be starved. When the Spaniards came home at night, and they were all at supper, he took the freedom to reprove the three Englishmen, though in very gentle and mannerly
terms, and asked them, "How they could be so cruel, they being harmless inoffensive fellows, and that they were only putting themselves in a way to subsist by their labour, and that it had cost them a great deal of pains to bring things to such perfection as they had?"

One of the Englishmen returned very briskly, "What had they to do there? That they came on shore without leave, and they should not plant or build upon the island; it was none of their ground." "Why," says the Spaniard, very calmly, "Seignior Inglese, they must not starve." The Englishman replied like a true rough-hewn Tarpaulin,1 "They might starve and be damned, they should not plant nor build." "But what must they do, then, seignior?" said the Spaniard. Another of the brutes returned, "Do! hang them. They should be servants and work for them." "But how can you expect that of them?" says the Spaniard, "they are not bought with your money; you have no right to make them servants." The Englishman answered, "The island was theirs, the governor had given it to them, and no man had anything to do there but themselves;" and with that swore by his Maker "that they would go and burn all their new huts, they should build none upon their land."

"Why, seignior," says the Spaniard, "by the same rule we must be your servants too." "Ay," says the bold dog, "and so you shall, too, before we have done with you;" mixing two or three oaths in the proper intervals of his speech. The Spaniard only smiled at that, and made him no answer. However, this little discourse had heated them, and starting up, one says to the other (I think it was he they called Will Atkins), "Come, Jack, let us go and have t'other brush with them; we'll demolish their castle, I'll warrant you, they shall plant no colony in our dominions."

Upon this they went all trooping away, with every man a gun, a pistol, and a sword, and muttered some insolent things among themselves of what they would do to the Spaniards too, when opportunity offered; but the Spaniards, it seems, did not so perfectly understand them as to know all the particulars; only that

---

1 Common sailor.
in general they threatened them hard for taking the two Englishmen's part.

Whither they went, or how they bestowed their time that evening, the Spaniards said, they did not know; but it seems they wandered about the country part of the night, and then lying down in the place which I used to call my bower, they were weary, and overslept themselves. The case was this: they had resolved to stay till midnight, and so to take the two poor men when they were asleep; and, as they acknowledged afterwards, intended to set fire to their huts while they were in them, and either burn them in them, or murder them as they came out; and as malice seldom sleeps very sound, it was very strange they should not have been kept waking.

However, as the two men had also a design upon them, as I have said, though a much fairer one than that of burning and murdering, it happened, and very luckily for them all, that they were up and gone abroad before the bloody-minded rogues came to their huts.

When they came there and found the men gone, Atkins, who it seems was the forwordest man, called out to his comrades, "Ha, Jack! here's the nest, but the birds are flown." They mused a while to think what should be the occasion of their being gone abroad so soon, and suggested presently that the Spaniards had given them notice of it; and with that they shook hands, and swore to one another that they would be revenged of the Spaniards. As soon as they had made this bloody bargain, they fell to work with the poor men's habitation. They did not set fire indeed to anything, but they pulled down both their little houses, and pulled them so limb from limb that they left not the least stick standing, or scarce any sign on the ground where they stood. They tore all their little collected household stuff in pieces, and threw everything about in such a manner, that the poor men afterwards found some of their things a mile off from their habitation.

When they had done this, they pulled up all the young trees the poor men had planted, pulled up an enclosure they had made to secure their cattle and their corn, and in a word, sacked and
plundered everything as completely as a horde of Tartars would have done.

The two men were at this juncture gone to find them out, and had resolved to fight them wherever they had been, though they were but two to three. So that had they met, there certainly would have been bloodshed among them, for they were all very stout resolute fellows, to give them their due.

But Providence took more care to keep them asunder than they themselves could do to meet; for, as if they had dogged one another, when the three were gone thither, the two were here; and afterwards when the two went back to find them, the three were come to the old habitation again;—we shall see their differing conduct presently. When the three came back, like furious creatures, flushed with the rage which the work they had been about had put them into, they came up to the Spaniards and told them what they had done, by way of scoff and bravado; and one of them, stepping up to one of the Spaniards, as if they had been a couple of boys at play, takes hold of his hat, as it was upon his head, and giving it a twirl about, flinging in his face, says he to him, "And you, Seignior Jack Spaniard, shall have the same sauce, if you do not mend your manners." The Spaniard, who though a quiet civil man, was as brave as a man could be desired to be, and withal a strong well-made man, looked steadily at him for a good while, and then, having no weapon in his hand, stepped gravely up to him, and with one blow of his fist knocked him down, as an ex is felled with a pole-axe; at which one of the rogues, insolent at the first, fired his pistol at the Spaniard immediately. He missed his body indeed, for the bullets went through his hair, but one of them touched the tip of his ear, and he bled pretty much. The blood made the Spaniard believe he was more hurt than he really was, and that put him into some heat: for before, he acted all in a perfect calm; but now, resolving to go through with his work, he stooped to take the fellow's musket who he had knocked down, and was just going to shoot the man who had fired at him, when the rest of the Spaniards, being in the cave, came out, and calling to him not to shoot, they stepped in, secured the other two, and took their arms from them.
When they were thus disarmed, and found they had made all the Spaniards their enemies, as well as their own countrymen, they began to cool, and giving the Spaniards better words, would have had their arms again. But the Spaniards, considering the feud that was between them and the other two Englishmen, and that it would be the best method they could take to keep them from one another, told them they would do them no harm, and if they would live peaceably, they would be very willing to assist and sociate with them, as they did before; but that they could not think of giving them their arms again while they appeared so resolved to do mischief with them to their own countrymen, and had even threatened them all to make them their servants.

The rogues were now no more capable to hear reason than to act reason, and being refused their arms they went raving away and raging like madmen, threatening what they would do, though they had no firearms. But the Spaniards, despising their threatening, told them they should take care how they offered any injury to
THE SPANIARDS' ADVICE.

ir plantation or cattle; for if they did, they would shoot them, they would do ravenous beasts, wherever they found them; and they fell into their hands alive, they should certainly be hanged. Never, this was far from cooling them; but away they went, and swearing like furies of hell. As soon as they were, came back the two men, in passion and rage enough also, of another kind; for having been at their plantation, and it all demolished and destroyed as above, it will easily be posed they had provocation enough. They could scarce have a to tell their tale, the Spaniards were so eager to tell them in; and it was strange enough to find three men thus bully steen, and receive no punishment at all.

The Spaniards indeed despised them, and especially, having thus turned them, made light of all their threatenings; but the two dishmen resolved to have their remedy against them, what pain ever it cost to find them out.

But the Spaniards interposed here too, and told them that as they disarmed them they could not consent that they (the ) should pursue them with firearms, and perhaps kill them. At," said the grave Spaniard, who was their governor, "we endeavour to make them do you justice if you will leave it as; for as there is no doubt but they will come to us again in their passion is over, being not able to subsist without our stance, we promise you to make no peace with them, without a full satisfaction for you. Upon this condition we hope will promise to use no violence with them, other than in your defence."

The two Englishmen yielded to this very awkwardly and with reluctance; but the Spaniards protested they did it only keep them from bloodshed, and to make all easy at last. ""We are not so many of us; here is room enough as all, and it is great pity we should not be all good friends,"" length they did consent, and waited for the issue of the thing, g for some days with the Spaniards, for their own habitation destroyed.

About five days time, the three vagrants, tired with wander- and almost starved with hunger, having chiefly lived on
turtles' eggs all that while, came back to the grove, and finding
my Spaniard, who, as I have said, was the governor, and two
more with him walking by the side of the creek, they came up in
a very submissive, humble manner, and begged to be received
again into the family. The Spaniards used them civilly, but told
them they had acted so unnaturally by their countrymen, and so
very grossly by them (the Spaniards), that they could not come
to any conclusion without consulting the two Englishmen and the
rest; but, however, they would go to them and discourse about it,
and they should know in half an hour. It may be guessed that
they were very hard put to it: for it seems, as they were to wait
this half hour for an answer, they begged they would send them
out some bread in the meantime; which he did, and sent them at
the same time a large piece of goat's flesh and a broiled parrot,
which they eat very heartily, for they were hungry enough.

After half an hour's consultation they were called in, and a long
debate had among them, their two countrymen charging them
with the ruin of all their labour, and a design to murder them—
all which they owned before, and therefore could not deny now.
Upon the whole, the Spaniard acted the moderator between them;
and as they had obliged the two Englishmen not to hurt the three
while they were naked and unarmed, so they now obliged the
three to go and build their fellows two huts, one of the same and
the other of larger dimensions, than they were before; to fence
their ground again where they had pulled up the fences, plant
trees in the room of those pulled up, dig up the land again for
planting corn, where they had spoiled it; and in a word, to restore
everything in the same state as they found it, as near as they
could, for entirely it could not be, the season for the corn and the
growth of the trees and hedges not being possible to be recovered.

Well, they submitted to all this, and as they had plenty of pro-
visions given them all the while, they grew very orderly, and the
whole society began to live pleasantly and agreeably together,
only that these three fellows could never be persuaded to work, I
mean for themselves, except now and then a little, just as they
pleased. However, the Spaniards told them plainly, that if they
would but live sociably and friendly together, and study in the
whole the good of the plantation, they would be content to work for them, and let them walk about and be as idle as they pleased; and thus, having lived pretty well together for a month or two, the Spaniards gave them arms again, and gave them liberty to go abroad with them as before.

It was not above a week after they had these arms and went abroad, but the ungrateful creatures began to be insolent and troublesome as before; but, however, an accident happening presently upon this, which endangered the safety of them all, they were obliged to lay by all private resentments, and look to the preservation of their lives.

It happened one night that the Spaniard governor, as I call him, that is to say, the Spaniard whose life I had saved, who was now the captain or leader or governor of the rest, found himself very uneasy in the night, and could by no means get any sleep. He was perfectly well in body, as he told me the story, only found his thoughts tumultuous, his mind run upon men fighting and killing of one another, but was broad awake, and could not by any means get any sleep. In short, he lay a great while, but growing more and more uneasy, he resolved to rise. As they lay, being so many of them, upon goat-skins, laid thick upon such couches and pads as they made for themselves, not in hammocks and ship beds, as I did, who was but one, so they had little to do, when they were willing to rise, but to get up upon their feet, and perhaps put on a coat, such as it was, and their pumps, and they were ready for going any way that their thoughts guided them.

Being thus gotten up he looked out, but being dark he could see little or nothing. And besides, the trees which I had planted, as in my former account is described, and which were now grown tall, intercepted his sight, so that he could only look up and see that it was a clear starlight night; and hearing no noise, he returned and laid him down again. But it was all one, he could not sleep, nor could he compose himself to anything like rest; but his thoughts were to the last degree uneasy, and yet he knew not for what.

Having made some noise with rising and walking about, going out and coming in, another of them waked, and calling asked,
Who it was that was up? The governor told him how it had been with him. "Say you so," says the other Spaniard. "Such things are not to be slighted, I assure you; there is certainly some mischief working," says he, "near us." And presently he asked him, "Where are the Englishmen?" "They are all in their huts," says he, "safe enough." It seems the Spaniards had kept possession of the main apartment, and had made a place where the three Englishmen, since their last mutiny, always quartered by themselves, and could not come at the rest. "Well," says the Spaniard, "there is something in it, I am persuaded, from my own experience. I am satisfied our spirits embodied have a converse with, and receive intelligence from the spirits unembodied and inhabiting the invisible world; and this friendly notice is given for our advantage, if we know how to make use of it. Come," says he, "let us go out and look abroad; and if we find nothing at all in it to justify the trouble, I will tell you a story to the purpose, that shall convince you of the justice of my proposing it."

In a word, they went out to go up to the top of the hill, where I used to go. But they being strong and in good company, not alone, as I was, used none of my cautions to go up by the ladder, and then pulling it up after them, to go up a second stage to the top, but were going round through the grove unconcerned and unwary, when they were surprised with seeing a light, as of fire, a very little way off from them, and hearing the voices of men—not of one, or two, but of a great number.

In all the discoveries I had made of the savages landing on the island, it was my constant care to prevent them making the least discovery of there being any inhabitant upon the place. And when by any occasion they came to know it, they felt it so effectually, that they that got away were scarce able to give any account of it, for we disappeared as soon as possible. Nor did ever any that had seen me escape to tell any one else, except it was the three savages in our last encounter, who jumped into the boat, of whom I mentioned that I was afraid they should go home and bring more help.

Whether it was the consequence of the escape of those men that so great a number came now together, or whether they came
VISIT OF THE SAVAGES.

; and by accident, on their usual bloody errand, they ; it seems, understand. But whatever it was, it had business either to have concealed themselves as not to them at all, much less to have let the savages have seen were any inhabitants in the place; or to have fallen 1 so effectually as that not a man of them should have which could only have been by getting in between them boats. But this presence of mind was wanting to them, the ruin of their tranquillity for a great while.

And not doubt but that the governor and the man with rised with this sight, run back immediately and raised ws, giving them an account of the imminent danger they n; and they again as readily took the alarm. But it sible to persuade them to stay close within where they that they must run all out to see how things stood.

It was dark, indeed, they were well enough, and they tunity enough for some hours to view them by the light res they had made at a distance from one another. What doing they knew not, and what to do themselves they : for, first, the enemy were too many; and secondly, not keep together, but were divided into several parties, on shore in several places.

Spaniards were in no small consternation at this sight; they found that the fellows ran straggling all over the made no doubt but, first or last, some of them would upon their habitation, or upon some other place where ld see the token of inhabitants. And they were in great also for fear of their flock of goats, which would have less than starving them if they should have been . So the first thing they resolved upon was to despatch a away before it was light, namely, two Spaniards and ishman, to drive all the goats away to the great valley cave was, and, if need were, to drive them into the very if they have seen the savages all together in one body, and stance from their canoes, they resolved, if they had been ed of them, to have attacked them; but that could not
be obtained, for they were some of them two miles off from the other, and, as it appeared afterwards, were of two different nations.

And after having mused a great while on the course they should take, and beaten their brains in considering their present circumstances, they resolved at last, while it was dark, to send the old savage, Friday's father, out as a spy, to learn, if possible, something concerning them, what they came for, and what they intended to do. The old man readily undertook it; and stripping himself quite naked, as most of the savages were, away he went. After he had been gone an hour or two, he brings word that he had been among them undiscovered; that he found they were two parties, and of two several nations, who had war with one another, and had had a great battle in their own country; and that both sides having had several prisoners taken in the fight, they were by mere chance landed all in the same island, for the devouring their prisoners and making merry. But their coming so by chance to the same place had spoiled all their mirth; that they were in a great rage at one another; and that they were so near, that he believed they would fight again as soon as daylight began to appear. But he did not perceive that they had any notion of anybody's being on the island but themselves. He had hardly made an end of telling his story, when they could perceive, by the unusual noise they made, that the two little armies were engaged in a bloody fight.

Friday's father used all the arguments he could to persuade our people to lie close, and not be seen. He told them their safety consisted in it; and that they had nothing to do but lie still, and the savages would kill one another to their hands, and then the rest would go away: and it was so to a tittle. But it was impossible to prevail, especially from the Englishmen; their curiosity was so importunate upon their prudentials,¹ that they must run out and see the battle. However, they used some caution too; namely, they did not go openly, just by their own dwelling, but went farther into the woods, and placed themselves to advantage, where they might securely see them manage the fight, and, as they

¹ So overcame their prudence.
thought, not to be seen by them; but it seems the savages did see them, as we shall find hereafter.

The battle was very fierce; and if I might believe the Englishmen, one of them said he could perceive that some of them were men of great bravery, of invincible spirits, and of great policy in guiding the fight. The battle, they said, held two hours before they could guess which party would be beaten. But then that party which was nearest our people's habitation began to appear weakest; and after some time more some of them began to fly; and this put our men again into a great consternation, lest any of those that fled should run into the grove before their dwelling for shelter, and thereby involuntarily discover the place; and that by consequence the pursuers should do the like in search for them. Upon this they resolved that they would stand armed within the wall, and whoever came into the grove they should sally out over the wall and kill them: so that, if possible, not one should return to give an account of it. They ordered also that it should be done with their swords, or by knocking them down with the stock of the musket; but not by shooting them, for fear of the noise.

As they expected, it fell out. Three of the routed army fled for life, and, crossing the creek, ran directly into the place, not in the least knowing whither they went, but running as into a thick wood for shelter. The scout they kept to look abroad gave notice of this within, with this addition, to our men's great satisfaction, namely, that the conquerors had not pursued them, or seen which way they were gone. Upon this the Spaniard governor, a man of humanity, would not suffer them to kill the three fugitives; but sending three men out by the top of the hill, ordered them to go round and come in behind them, surprise, and take them prisoners; which was done. The residue of the conquered people fled to their canoes, and got off to sea. The victors retired, and made no pursuit, or very little; but drawing themselves into a body together, gave two great screaming shouts, which they supposed was by way of triumph; and so the fight ended. And the same day, about three o'clock in the afternoon, they also marched to their canoes; and thus the Spaniards had their island again free to themselves,
their fright was over, and they saw no savages in several years after.

After they were all gone, the Spaniards came out of their den; and viewing the field of battle, they found about two-and-thirty dead men upon the spot. Some were killed with great long arrows, some of which were found sticking in their bodies; but most of them were killed with their great wooden swords, sixteen or seventeen of which they found in the field of battle, and as many bows, with a great many arrows. These swords were strange great unwieldy things, and they must be very strong men that used them. Most of those men that were killed with them had their heads mashed to pieces, as we may say, or as we call it in English, their brains knocked out; and several their arms and legs broken: so that it is evident they fight with inexpressible rage and fury. We found not one wounded man that was not stone dead; for either they stay by their enemy till they have quite killed him, or they carry all the wounded men that are not quite dead away with them.

This deliverance tamed our Englishmen for a great while.
THREE SAVAGES CAPTURED. 371

ght had filled them with horror; and the consequences ed terrible to the last degree, even to them, if ever they fall into the hands of those creatures, who would not only m as enemies, but kill them for food, as we kill our cattle.
ey professed to me, that the thoughts of being eaten up like mutton, though it was supposed it was not to be till they had something in it so horrible, that it nauseated their omachs, made them sick when they thought of it, and filled minds with such unusual terror, that they were not them-for some weeks after.

, as I said, tamed even the three English brutes I have been of; and for a great while after they were very tractable, nt about the common business of their whole society well; planted, sowed, reaped, and began to be all naturalized country. But some time after this they fell all into such ees as brought them into a great deal of trouble.

g had taken three prisoners, as I had observed; and these being lusty stout young fellows, they made them servants, ught them to work for them; and as slaves they did well. But they did not take their measures with them as I did man Friday, namely, to begin with them upon the prin- f having saved their lives, and then instruct them in the l principles of life, much less of religion, civilizing and ng them by kind usage and affectionate arguings; but as ave them their food every day, so they gave them their so, and kept them fully employed in drudgery enough. But iled in this by it, that they never had them to assist them ht for them, as I had my man Friday, who was as true to he very flesh upon my bones.
to come to the family part. Being all now good friends, amon danger, as I said above, had effectually reconciled they began to consider their general circumstances. And t thing that came under their consideration was, whether, the savages particularly haunted that side of the island, and re were more remote and retired parts of it equally adapted r way of living, and manifestly to their advantage, they not rather remove their habitation, and plant in some more
proper place for their safety, and especially for the security of their cattle and corn?

Upon this, after long debate, it was concluded that they would not remove their habitation; because that, some time or other, they thought they might hear from their governor again (meaning me); and if I should send any one to seek them, I should be sure to direct them to that side; where, if they should find the place demolished, they would conclude the savages had killed us all, and we were gone, and so our supply would go too.

But as to their corn and cattle, they agreed to remove them into the valley where my cave was, where the land was as proper for both, and where, indeed, there was land enough. However, upon second thought, they altered one part of that resolution too, and resolved only to remove part of their cattle thither, and plant part of their corn there; and so if one part was destroyed, the other might be saved. And one part of prudence they used, which it was very well they did; namely, that they never trusted those three savages which they had prisoners with knowing anything of the plantation they had made in that valley, or of any cattle they had there; much less of the cave there, which they kept, in case of necessity, as a safe retreat, and whither they carried also the two barrels of powder which I had sent them at my coming away.

But, however, they resolved not to change their habitation; yet they agreed, that as I had carefully covered it, first with a wall or fortification, and then with a grove of trees, so, seeing their safety consisted entirely in their being concealed, of which they were now fully convinced, they set to work to cover and conceal the place yet more effectually than before. To this purpose, as I had planted trees (or rather thrust in stakes, which in time all grew up to be trees) for some good distance before the entrance into my apartment, they went on in the same manner, and filled up the rest of that whole space of ground, from the trees I had set quite down to the side of the creek, where, as I said, I landed my floats, and even into the very ooze where the tide flowed, not so much as leaving any place to land, or any sign that there had been any landing thereabout. The stakes also being of a wood very forward to grow, as I have noted formerly,
they took care to have generally very much larger and taller than those which I had planted; and as they grew apace, so they planted them so very thick and close together, that when they had been three or four years grown there was no piercing with the eye any considerable way into the plantation. And as for that part which I had planted, the trees were grown as thick as a man's thigh. And among them they placed so many other short ones, and so thick, that, in a word, it stood like a palisado1 a quarter of a mile thick. And it was next to impossible to penetrate it but with a little army to cut it all down; for a little dog could hardly get between the trees, they stood so close.

But this was not all, for they did the same by all the ground to the right hand and to the left, and round even to the top of the hill, leaving no way, not so much as for themselves to come out, but by the ladder placed up to the side of the hill, and then lifted up, and placed again from the first stage up to the top; which ladder when it was taken down, nothing but what had wings or witchcraft to assist it could come at them.

This was excellently well contrived; nor was it less than what they afterwards found occasion for: which served to convince me that as human prudence has the authority of Providence to justify it, so it has, doubtless, the direction of Providence to set it to work. And would we listen carefully to the voice of it, I am fully persuaded we might prevent many of the disasters which our lives are now, by our own negligence, subjected to. But this by the way.

I return to the story. They lived two years after this in perfect retirement, and had no more visits from the savages. They had, indeed, an alarm given them one morning, which put them into a great consternation; for some of the Spaniards being out early one morning on the west side, or rather the end of the island (which, by the way, was that end where I never went, for fear of being discovered), they were surprised with seeing above twenty canoes of Indians just coming on shore!

They made the best of their way home, in hurry enough; and giving the alarm to their comrades, they kept close all that day

1 Palisado, a close fence of stakes.
and the next, going out only at night to make observation. But they had the good luck to be mistaken; for wherever the savage went, they did not land at that time on the island, but pursued some other design.

And now they had another broil with the three Englishmen; one of which, a most turbulent fellow, being in a rage at one of the three slaves which I mentioned they had taken, because the fellow had not done something right which he bid him do, and seemed a little untractable in his showing him, drew a hatchet out of a frog-belt in which he wore it by his side, and fell upon the poor savage, not to correct him, but to kill him. One of the Spaniards who was by, seeing him give the fellow a barbarous cut with the hatchet, which he aimed at his head, but struck into his shoulder, so that he thought he had cut the poor creature's arm off, ran to him, and entreating him not to murder the poor man, clapped in between him and the savage to prevent the mischief.

The fellow, being enraged the more at this, struck at the Spaniard with his hatchet, and swore he would serve him as he intended to serve the savage; which the Spaniard perceiving, avoided the blow, and with a shovel which he had in his hand (for they were all working in the field about their corn-land) knocked the brute down. Another of the Englishmen, running at the same time to help his comrade, knocked the Spaniard down; and then two Spaniards more came in to help their man, and a third Englishman fell in upon them. They had none of them any firearms, or any other weapons but hatchets and other tools, except this third Englishman; he had one of my old rusty cutlasses, with which he made at the two last Spaniards, and wounded them both. This fray set the whole family in an uproar, and more help coming in, they took the three Englishmen prisoners. The next question was what should be done with them. They had been so often mutinous, and were so furious, so desperate, and so idle withal, that they knew not what course to take with them; for they were mischievous to the highest degree, and valued not what hurt they did to any man; so that, in short, it was not safe to live with them.

The Spaniard who was governor told them in so many words, that if they had been of his own country he would have hanged
them, for all laws and all governors were to preserve society, and those who were dangerous to the society ought to be expelled out of it; but as they were Englishmen, and that it was to the generous kindness of an Englishman that they all owed their preservation and deliverance, he would use them with all possible lenity, and would leave them to the judgment of the other two Englishmen, who were their countrymen.

One of the two honest Englishmen stood up and said they desired it might not be left to them, "for," says he, "I am sure we ought to sentence them to the gallows;" and with that gives an account how Will Atkins, one of the three, had proposed to have all the five Englishmen join together and murder all the Spaniards when they were in their sleep!

When the Spanish governor heard this, he calls to William Atkins, "How, Seignior Atkins," says he, "would you murder us all? What have you to say to that?" That hardened villain was so far from denying it that he said it was true, and they would do it still before they had done with them. "Well, but, Seignior Atkins," says the Spaniard, "what have we done to you, that you will kill us? And what would you get by killing us? And what must we do to prevent you killing us? Must we kill you, or you will kill us! Why will you put us to the necessity of this, Seignior Atkins?" says the Spaniard, very calmly and smiling.

Seignior Atkins was in such a rage at the Spaniard's making a jest of it, that had he not been held by three men, and withal had no weapons with him, it was thought he would have attempted to have killed the Spaniard in the middle of the company.

This hair-brained carriage obliged them to consider seriously what was to be done. The two Englishmen and the Spaniard who saved the poor savage was of the opinion they should hang one of the three for an example to the rest, and that, particularly, it should be he that had twice attempted to commit murder with his hatchet; and indeed there was some reason to believe he had done it, for the poor savage was in such a miserable condition with the wound he had received, that it was thought he could not live.
But the governor Spaniard still said, "No; it was an Englishman that had saved all their lives, and he would never consent to put an Englishman to death, though he had murdered half of them; nay," he said, "if he had been killed himself by an Englishman, and had time left to speak, it should be that they should pardon him."

This was so positively insisted on by the governor Spaniard that there was no gainsaying it; and as merciful counsels are most apt to prevail where they are so earnestly pressed, so they all came into it. But then it was to be considered what should be done to keep them from doing the mischief they designed; for all agreed, governor and all, that means were to be used for preserving the society from danger. After a long debate it was agreed, first, that they should be disarmed, and not permitted to have either gun, or powder, or shot, or sword, or any weapon; and should be turned out of the society, and left to live where they would, and how they would, by themselves; but that none of the rest, either Spaniards or English, should converse with them, speak with them, or have anything to do with them: that they should be forbid to come within a certain distance of the place where the rest dwelt; and that if they offered to commit any disorder, so as to spoil, burn, kill, or destroy any of the corn, plantings, buildings, fences, or cattle belonging to the society, they should die without mercy, and they would shoot them wherever they could find them.

The governor, a man of great humanity, musing upon the sentence, considered a little upon it, and turning to the two honest Englishmen, said, "Hold, you must reflect that it will be long ere they can raise corn and cattle of their own, and they must not starve. We must therefore allow them provisions." So he caused to be added, that they should have a proportion of corn given them to last them eight months, and for seed to sow, by which time they might be supposed to raise some of their own; that they should have six milch-goats, four he-goats, and six kids given them, as well for present subsistence as for a store; and that they should have tools given them for their work in the fields, such as six hatchets, an axe, a saw, and the like: but they should have
tools or provisions unless they would swear solemnly
uld not hurt or injure any of the Spaniards with
ir fellow-Englishmen.
dismissed them the society, and turned them out to
selves. They went away sullen and refractory, as
nted to go away or to stay; but as there was no
went, pretending to go and choose a place where
ittle themselves to plant and live by themselves, and
ns were given them, but no weapons.
 or five days after, they came again for some victuals,
governor an account where they had pitched their
ked themselves out an habitation and plantation;
very convenient place indeed, on the remotest part
orth-east, much about the place where I landed in
e when I was driven out to sea, the Lord knows
y attempt to surround the island.
built themselves two handsome huts, and contrived
inner like my first habitation, being close under the
aving some trees growing already on three sides of
planting others it would be very easily covered from
ess narrowly searched for. They desired some dried
r beds and covering, which were given them: and
their words that they would not disturb the rest, or
their plantations, they gave them hatchets and what
hey could spare; some peas, barley, and rice for
a word, anything they wanted, but arms and

in this separate condition about six months, and
their first harvest, though the quantity was but
el of land they had planted being but little; for,
g all their plantation to form, they had a great deal
their hands. And when they came to make boards,
such things, they were quite out of their element,
ake nothing of it; and when the rainy reason came
of a cave in the earth they could not keep their grain
as in great danger of spoiling. And this humbled
so they came and begged the Spaniards to help them,
which they very readily did, and in four days worked a great hole in the side of the hill for them, big enough to secure their corn and other things from the rain. But it was but a poor place at best compared to mine, and especially as mine was then, for the Spaniards had greatly enlarged it, and made several new apartments in it.

About three quarters of a year after this separation, a new frolic took these rogues, which, together with the former villany they had committed, brought mischief enough upon them, and had very near been the ruin of the whole colony. The three new sociates began, it seems, to be weary of the laborious life they led, and that without hope of bettering their circumstances; and a whim took them, that they would make a voyage to the continent from whence the savages came, and would try if they could not seize upon some prisoners among the natives there, and bring them home, so to make them do the laborious part of their work for them.

The project was not so preposterous, if they had gone no farther; but they did nothing, and proposed nothing, but had either mischief in the design or mischief in the event. And if I may give my opinion, they seemed to be under a blast from Heaven; for if we will not allow a visible curse to pursue visible crimes, how shall we reconcile the events of things with the Divine justice? It was, certainly, an apparent vengeance on their crime of mutiny and piracy that brought them to the state they were in; and as they showed not the least remorse for the crime, but added new villanies to it, such as, particularly, the piece of monstrous cruelty of wounding a poor slave, because he did not, or perhaps could not, understand to do what he was directed; and to wound him in such a manner as, no question, made him a cripple all his life; and in a place where no surgeon or medicine could be had for his cure: and what was still worse, the murderous intent, or, to do justice to the crime, the intentional murder, for such to be sure it was, as was afterwards the formed design they all laid to murder the Spaniards in cold blood, and in their sleep.

But I leave observing, and return to the story. The three fellows came down to the Spaniards one morning, and in very
THE SPANIARDS' WARNING.

The terms desired to be admitted to speak with them. The
ards very readily heard what they had to say, which was
that they were tired of living in the manner they did;
they were not handy enough to make the necessaries they
; and that, having no help, they found they should be
But if the Spaniards would give them leave to take one
canoes which they came over in, and give them arms and
ition, proportioned for their defence, they would go over to
and seek their fortune, and so deliver them from the
of supplying them with any other provisions.
Spaniards were glad enough to be rid of them, but yet
onestly represented to them the certain destruction they
ning into; told them they had suffered such hardships
at very spot; that they could, without any spirit of pro-
tell them that they would be starved, or be murdered, and
em consider of it.
men replied audaciously, they should be starved if they
here, for they could not work, and would not work; and
ould but be starved abroad; and if they were murdered,
was an end of them, they had no wives or children to cry
them; and in short, insisted importantly upon their
, declaring that they would go, whether they would give
y arms or no.
Spaniards told them, with great kindness, that if they were
to go, they should not go like naked men, and be in no
on to defend themselves; and that though they could ill
heir firearms, having not enough for themselves, yet they
let them have two muskets, a pistol, and a cutlass, and each
hatchet, which they thought was sufficient for them.
word, they accepted the offer, and having baken them
ough to serve them a month, and given them as much
esh as they could eat while it was sweet, and a great
bag of dried grapes, a potful of fresh water, and a young kid
to kill, they boldly set out in a canoe for a voyage over the
ere it was at least forty miles abroad.
boat was indeed a large one, and would have very well
fifteen or twenty men; and, therefore, was rather too big
for them to manage. But as they had a fair breeze and the flood-tide with them, they did well enough. They had made a mast of a long pole, and a sail of four large goat skins dried, which they had sewed or laced together; and away they went, merrily enough; the Spaniards called after them, "Bon Veyajo;" and no man ever thought of seeing them any more.

The Spaniards would often say to one another, and the two

``Away they went, merrily enough.''

honest Englishmen who remained behind, how quietly and comfortably they lived now those three turbulent fellows were gone: as for their ever coming again, that was the remotest thing from their thoughts that could be imagined; when, behold, after two and twenty days' absence, one of the Englishmen being abroad upon his planting-work, sees three strange men coming towards him at a distance, with guns upon their shoulders!

Away runs the Englishman, as if he was bewitched, comes frightened and amazed to the governor Spaniard, and tells him they
THE ENGLISHMEN RETURN.

were all undone, for there were strangers landed upon the island, he could not tell who. The Spaniard, pausing a while, says to him, "How do you mean, you cannot tell who? They are the savages, to be sure." "No, no," says the Englishman; "they are men in clothes, with arms." "Nay, then," says the Spaniard, "why are you concerned? If they are not savages, they must be friends, for there is no Christian nation upon earth but will do us good rather than harm."

While they were debating thus, comes the three Englishmen, and standing without the wood, which was new planted, hallowed to them. They presently knew their voices, and so all the wonder of that kind ceased. But now the admiration was turned upon another question, namely, What could be the matter, and what made them come back again?

It was not long before they brought the men in, and inquiring where they had been, and what they had been doing, they gave them a full account of their voyage in a few words, namely, that they reached the land in two days or something less, but finding the people alarmed at their coming, and preparing with bows and arrows to fight them, they durst not go on shore, but sailed on to the northward six or seven hours, till they came to a great opening, by which they perceived that the land they saw from our island was not the main, but an island: that entering that opening of the sea, they saw another island on the right hand north, and several more west; and being resolved to land somewhere, they put over to one of the islands which lay west, and went boldly on shore: that they found the people very courteous and friendly to them, and that they gave them several roots and some dried fish, and appeared very sociable; and the women, as well as the men, were very forward to supply them with anything they could get for them to eat, and brought it to them a great way upon their heads.

They continued here four days, and inquired as well as they could of them by signs what nations were this way and that way; and were told of several fierce and terrible people that lived almost every way, who, as they made signs to them, used to eat men. But as for themselves, they said that they never eat men or women,
except only such as they took in the wars; and then they owned
that they made a great feast and eat their prisoners.

The Englishmen inquired when they had a feast of that kind,
and they told them about two moons ago—pointing to the moon,
and then to two fingers; and that their great king had two hun-
dred prisoners now, which he had taken in his war, and they
were feeding them to make them fat for the next feast. The
Englishmen seemed mighty desirous to see those prisoners; but
the other mistaking them, thought they were desirous to have
some of them to carry away for their own eating. So they
beckoned to them, pointing to the setting of the sun and then to
the rising, which was to signify that the next morning at sun-
rising they would bring some for them; and accordingly the next
morning they brought down five women and eleven men, and gave
them to the Englishmen to carry with them on their voyage, just
as we would bring so many cows and oxen down to a seaport
town, to victual a ship.

As brutish and barbarous as these fellows were at home, their
stomachs turned at this sight, and they did not know what to do;
to refuse the prisoners would have been the highest affront to the
savage gentry that offered them; and what to do with them they
knew not. However, upon some debates, they resolved to accept
of them; and in return they gave the savages that brought them
one of their hatchets, an old key, a knife, and six or seven of their
bullets, which, though they did not understand, they seemed ex-
tremely pleased with. And then tying the poor creatures' hands
behind them, they (the people) dragged the poor prisoners into the
boat for our men.

The Englishmen were obliged to come away as soon as they had
them, or else they that gave them this noble present would cer-
tainly have expected that they should have gone to work with
them, have killed two or three of them the next morning, and
perhaps have invited the donors to dinner.

But having taken their leave with all the respects and thanks
that could well pass between people where on either side they
understood not one word they could say, they put off with their
boat, and came back towards the first island, where, when they
they set eight of their prisoners at liberty, there being too
em for their occasion.
voyage, they endeavoured to have some communication
prisoners, but it was impossible to make them under-
nothing they could say to them, or give them, or
but was looked upon as going about to murder them.
of all unbound them; but the poor creatures screamed
pecially the women, as if they had just felt the knife at
for, they immediately concluded they were unbound
to be killed.
ave them anything to eat, it was the same thing; then
ed it was for fear they should sink in flesh, and so not
gh to kill. If they looked at one of them more parti-
party presently concluded it was to see whether he or
ittest and fittest to kill. Nay, after they had brought
over, and began to use them kindly and treat them
they expected every day to make a dinner or a supper
new masters.
the three wanderers had given this unaccountable history
of their voyage, the Spaniard asked them, “Where their
was?” And being told that they had brought them
put them into one of their huts, and were come up
victuals for them; they (the Spaniards) and the other
men, that is to say, the whole colony, resolved to go
place and see them, and did so, and Friday’s father
they came into the hut, there they sat all bound; for
had brought them on shore, they bound their hands
ight not take the boat and make their escape. There,
sat, all of them stark naked. First, there were three
comely fellows, well shaped, straight and fair limbs,
y to thirty-five years of age; and five women, whereof two
om thirty to forty; two more not above four or five and
and the fifth, a tall, comely maiden, about sixteen or
The women were well-favoured, agreeable persons, both
features, only tawny, and two of them, had they been
ite, would have passed for very handsome women even
384  THE SAVAGES' JOY.

in London itself, having pleasant agreeable countenances, and of a very modest behaviour, especially when they came afterwards to be clothed and dressed, as they called it, though the dress was very indifferent, it must be confessed; of which hereafter.

The sight, you may be sure, was something uncouth to our Spaniards, who were (to give them a just character) men of the best behaviour, of the most calm, sedate tempers, and perfect good-humour that ever I met with, and, in particular, of the most modesty, as will presently appear: I say, the sight was very uncouth, to see three naked men and five naked women, all together bound, and in the most miserable circumstances that human nature could be supposed to be, namely, to be expecting every moment to be dragged out and have their brains knocked out, and then to be eaten up like a calf that is killed for a daintiness.

The first thing they did was to cause the old Indian, Friday's father, to go in and see first if he knew any of them, and then if he understood any of their speech. As soon as the old man came in, he looked seriously at them, but knew none of them; neither could any of them understand a word he said or a sign he could make, except one of the women.

However, this was enough to answer the end, which was to satisfy them that the men into whose hands they were fallen were Christians; that they abhorred eating of men or women, and that they might be sure they would not be killed. As soon as they were assured of this, they discovered such a joy, and by such awkward and several ways as is hard to describe; for it seems they were of several nations.

The woman, who was their interpreter, was bid in the next place to ask them if they were willing to be servants, and to work for the men who had brought them away to save their lives; at which they all fell a dancing; and presently one fell to taking up this, and another that, anything that lay next, to carry on their shoulders, to intimate that they were willing to work.

The governor, who found that the having women among them would presently be attended with some inconvenience, and might occasion some strife, and perhaps blood, asked the three men what they intended to do with these women, and how they intended to
use them—whether as servants or as women. One of the Englishmen answered very boldly and readily, "That they would use them as both." To which the governor said, "I am not going to restrain you from it; you are your own masters as to that. But this I think is but just, for avoiding disorders and quarrels among you, and I desire it of you for that reason only, namely, that you will all engage that if any of you take any of these women as a woman or wife, that he shall take but one; and that having taken one, none else should touch her: for though we cannot marry any of you, yet 'tis but reasonable that while you stay here, the woman any of you takes should be maintained by the man that takes her, and should be his wife; I mean," says he, "while he continues here, and that none else shall have anything to do with her." All this appeared so just, that every one agreed to it without any difficulty.

Then the Englishmen asked the Spaniards if they designed to take any of them. But every one of them answered, "No." Some of them said they had wives in Spain, and the others did not like women that were not Christians; and all together declared that they would not touch one of them; which was an instance of such virtue as I have not met with in all my travels. On the other hand, to be short, the five Englishmen took them every one a wife; that is to say, a temporary wife: and so they set up a new form of living; for the Spaniards and Friday's father lived in my old habitation, which they had enlarged exceedingly within. The three servants which were taken in the late battle of the savages lived with them; and these carried on the main part of the colony, supplying all the rest with food, and assisting them in anything as they could, or as they found necessity required.

But the wonder of this story was, how five such refractory, ill-matched fellows should agree about these women, and that two of them should not pitch upon the same woman, especially seeing two or three of them were, without comparison, more agreeable than the other. But they took a good way enough to prevent quarrelling among themselves; for they set the five women by themselves in one of their huts, and they went all into the other but and drew lots among them who should choose first.
A STRANGE LOTTERY.

He that drew to choose first, went away by himself to the hut where the poor naked creatures were, and fetched out her he chose; and it was worth observing that he that chose first took her that was reckoned the homeliest and the oldest of the five, which made mirth enough among the rest; and even the Spaniards laughed at it. But the fellow considered better than any of them, that it was application and business that they were to expect assistance in as much as anything else; and she proved the best wife of all the parcel.

When the poor women saw themselves set in a row thus, and fetched out one by one, the terrors of their condition returned upon them again, and they firmly believed that they were now going to be devoured; accordingly when the English sailor came in, and fetched out one of them, the rest set up a most lamentable cry, and hung about her, and took their leave of her with such agonies and such affection as would have grieved the hardest heart in the world; nor was it possible for the Englishmen to satisfy them that they were not to be immediately murdered, until they fetched the old man, Friday's father, who immediately let them know that the five men, who had fetched them out one by one, had chosen them for their wives.

When they had done, and the fright the women were in was a little over, the men went to work, and the Spaniards came and helped them; and in a few hours they had built them every one a new hut or tent, for their lodging apart; for those they had already were crowded with their tools, household stuff, and provision. The three wicked ones had pitched farthest off, and the two honest ones nearer, but both on the north shore of the island, so that they continued separate as before. And thus my island was peopled in three places; and, as I might say, three towns were begun to be planted.

And here it is very well worth observing, that as it often happens in the world (what the wise ends of God's providence are in such a disposition of things I cannot say), the two honest fellows had the two worst wives, and the three reprobates, that were scarce worth hanging, that were fit for nothing, and neither seemed born to do themselves good or any one else, had three clever, dili-
THE DILIGENT HAND.

ful, and ingenious wives: not that the two first were ill to their temper or humour, for all the five were most quiet, passive, and subjected creatures, rather like slaves; but my meaning is, they were not alike capable, industrious, or alike cleanly and neat.

A observation I must make, to the honour of a diligent one hand, and to the disgrace of a slothful, negligent temper, on the other, that when I came to the place, of the several improvements, plantings, and management; the two men had so far out-gone the there was no comparison. They had indeed both of such ground laid out for corn as they wanted; and the, because, according to my rule, Nature dictated that it purpose to sow more corn than they wanted; but the of the cultivation, of the planting, of the fences, and everything else, was easy to be seen at first view.

o men had innumerable young trees planted about their when you came to the place nothing was to be seen but and though they had twice had their plantation de- once by their own countrymen, and once by the enemy, shown in its place, yet they had restored all again, and; was thriving and flourishing about them. They had wanted in order, and managed like a vineyard, though themselves never seen anything of that kind; and by ordering their vines, their grapes were as good again the others. They had also found themselves out a the thickest part of the woods, where, though there was ral cave, as I had found, yet they made one with insour of their hands, and where, when the mischief which happened, they secured their wives and children, so as never be found; they having, by sticking innumerable poles of the wood, which, as I said, grew so easily, wood unpassable, except in some places, where they p to get over the outside part, and then went on by their own leaving.

he three reprobates, as I justly call them, though they civilization by their new settlement, compared to what
they were before, and were not so quarrelsome, having not the same opportunity, yet one of the certain companions of a profligate mind never left them; and that was their idleness. It is true, they planted corn and made fences; but Solomon’s words were never better verified than in them: “I went by the vineyard of the slothful, and it was all overgrown with thorns.” For when the Spaniards came to view their crop, they could not see it in some places for weeds. The hedge had several gaps in it, where the wild goats had gotten in, and eaten up the corn; perhaps, here and there, a dead bush was crammed in, to stop them out for the present, but it was only shutting the stable door after the steed was stolen. Whereas, when they looked on the colony of the other two, there was the very face of industry and success upon all they did; there was not a weed to be seen in all their corn, or a gap in any of their hedges. And they, on the other hand, verified Solomon’s words in another place, that “The diligent hand makes rich;” for everything grew and thrived, and they had plenty within and without; they had more tame cattle than the other, more utensils and necessaries within doors, and yet more pleasure and diversion too.

It is true, the wives of the three were very handy and cleanly within doors, and having learned the English ways of dressing and cooking from one of the other Englishmen, who, as I said, was cook’s-mate on board the ship, they dressed their husbands’ victuals very nicely and well; whereas the other could not be brought to understand it. But then the husband who, as I say, had been cook’s-mate, did it himself; but as for the husbands of the three wives, they loitered about, fetched turtles’ eggs, and caught fish and birds; in a word, anything but labour, and they fared accordingly. The diligent lived well and comfortably, and the slothful lived hard and beggarly; and so, I believe, generally speaking, it is all over the world.

But now I come to a scene different from all that had happened before, either to them or to me; and the original of the story was this:

Early one morning there came on shore five or six canoes of Indians, or savages, call them which you please; and there is no
room to doubt that they came upon the old errand of feeding upon their slaves. But that part was now so familiar to the Spaniards, and to our men too, that they did not concern themselves about it as I did; but having been made sensible by their experience that their only business was to lie concealed, and that if they were not seen by any of the savages, they would go off again quietly when their business was done, having as yet not the least notion of there being any inhabitants in the island; I say, having been made sensible of this, they had nothing to do but to give notice to all the three plantations to keep within doors, and not show themselves, only placing a scout in a proper place, to give notice when the boats went to sea again.

This was, without doubt, very right; but a disaster spoiled all these measures, and made it known among the savages that there were inhabitants there, which was in the end the desolation of almost the whole colony. After the canoes with the savages were gone off, the Spaniards peeped abroad again, and some of them had the curiosity to go to the place where they had been, to see what they had been doing. Here, to their great surprise, they found three savages left behind, and lying fast asleep upon the ground. It was supposed they had either been so gorged with their inhuman feast, that, like beasts, they were asleep and would not stir when the others went, or they were wandered into the woods, and did not come back in time to be taken in.

The Spaniards were greatly surprised at this sight, and perfectly at a loss what to do. The Spaniard governor, as it happened, was with them, and his advice was asked, but he professed he knew not what to do; as for slaves, they had enough already; and as to killing them, they were none of them inclined to that. The Spaniard governor told me they could not think of shedding innocent blood, for, as to them, the poor creatures had done them no wrong, invaded none of their property, and they thought they had no just quarrel against them to take away their lives.

And here I must, in justice to these Spaniards, observe, that let the accounts of Spanish cruelty in Mexico and Peru be what they will, I never met with seventeen men of any nation whatsoever, in any foreign country, who were so universally modest, temperate,
virtuous, so very good-humoured, and so courteous as these Spaniards; and as to cruelty, they had nothing of it in their very nature, no inhumanity, no barbarity, no outrageous passions, and yet all of them men of great courage and spirit.

Their temper and calmness had appeared in their bearing the unsufferable usage of the three Englishmen; and their justice and humanity appeared now in the case of the savages, as above. After some consultation, they resolved upon this, that they would lie still a while longer, till, if possible, these three men might be gone; but then the governor Spaniard recollected that the three savages had no boat, and that if they were left to rove about the island they would certainly discover that there were inhabitants in it, and so they should be undone that way.

Upon this, they went back again, and there lay the fellows fast asleep still; so they resolved to waken them, and take them prisoners; and they did so. The poor fellows were strangely frightened when they were seized upon and bound, and afraid, like the women, that they should be murdered and eaten; for it seems those people think all the world does as they do, eating men's flesh: but they were soon made easy as to that, and away they carried them.

It was very happy to them that they did not carry them home to their castle, I mean to my palace under the hill; but they carried them first to the bower, where was the chief of their country work, such as the keeping the goats, the planting the corn, &c.; and afterwards they carried them to the habitation of the two Englishmen.

Here they were set to work, though it was not much they had for them to do; and whether it was by negligence in guarding them, or that they thought the fellows could not mend themselves, I know not, but one of them run away, and taking into the woods, they could never hear of him more.

They had good reason to believe he got home again soon after, in some other boats or canoes of savages, who came on shore three or four weeks afterwards, and who, carrying on their revels as usual, went off again in two days' time. This thought terrified them exceedingly; for they concluded, and that not without good
THE SAVAGES MADE PRISONERS.
FEARS OF ATTACK.

lead, that if this fellow came safe home among his com-
would certainly give them an account that there were
the island, as also how few and weak they were: for
gage, as I observed before, had never been told, and it was
ppy he had not, how many there were, or where they
or had he ever seen or heard the fire of any of their guns,
as had they shown him any of their other retired places,
the cave in the valley, or the new retreat which the two
nen had made, and the like.

testimony they had that this fellow had given intelli-
them was that about two months after this, six canoes of
with about seven, or eight, or ten men in a canoe, came
dong the north side of the island, where they never used
before, and landed about an hour after sunrise, at a con-
place, about a mile from the habitation of the two Eng-
where this escaped man had been kept. As the Spaniard
said, had they been all there, the damage would not
so much, for not a man of them would have escaped;
case differed now very much, for two men to fifty was too
led. The two men had the happiness to discover them
league off, so that it was above an hour before they landed,
hey landed a mile from their huts, it was some time before
ld come at them. Now, having great reason to believe
y were betrayed, the first thing they did was to bind the
es which were left, and cause two of the three men who
ught with the women, who, it seems, proved very faithful,
to lead them with their two wives, and whatever they
rry away with them, to their retired place in the woods,
have spoken of above, and there to bind the two fellows
d foot till they heard farther.
next place, seeing the savages were all come on shore,
y they bent their course directly that way, they opened the
here their milch-goats were kept, and drove them all out,
their goats to straggle into the wood, whither they pleased,
savages might think they were all bred wild; but the
ho came with them was too cunning for that, and gave
account of it all, for they went directly to the place.
When the two poor frightened men had secured their wives and goods, they sent the other slave they had of the three, who came with the women, and who was at their place by accident, away to the Spaniards with all speed to give them the alarm, and desire speedy help; and in the meantime they took their arms and what ammunition they had, and retreated towards the place in the wood where their wives were sent, keeping at a distance, yet so that they might see, if possible, which way the savages took.

They had not gone far but that from a rising ground they could see the little army of their enemies come on directly to their habitation, and in a moment more could see all their huts and household stuff flaming up together, to their great grief and mortification; for they had a very great loss, to them irretrievable, at least for some time. They kept their station for a while, till they found the savages, like wild beasts, spread themselves all over the place, rummaging every way and every place they could think of in search for prey, and in particular for the people, of whom it now plainly appeared they had intelligence.

The two Englishmen seeing this, thinking themselves not secure where they stood, because, as it was likely some of the wild people might come that way, so they might come too many together, thought it proper to make another retreat about half a mile farther, believing, as it afterwards happened, that the farther they strolled, the fewer would be together.

The next halt was at the entrance into a very thick grown part of the woods, and where an old trunk of a tree stood, which was hollow and vastly large; and in this tree they both took their standing, resolving to see there what might offer.

They had not stood there long but two of the savages appeared running directly that way, as if they had already had notice where they stood, and were coming up to attack them; and a little way farther they spied three more coming after them, and five more beyond them, all coming the same way; besides which they saw seven or eight more at a distance, running another way; for, in a word, they ran every way like sportsmen beating for their game.

The poor men were now in great perplexity whether they should
stand and keep their posture or fly; but after a very short debate with themselves, they considered that if the savages ranged the country thus before help came, they might perhaps find out their retreat in the woods, then all would be lost; so they resolved to stand them there: and if they were too many to deal with, then they would get up to the top of the tree, from whence they doubted not to defend themselves, fire excepted, as long as their ammunition lasted, though all the savages that were landed, which was near fifty, were to attack them.

Having resolved upon this, they next considered whether they should fire at the first two, or wait for the three, and so take the middle party, by which the two and the five that followed would be separated; and they resolved to let the two first pass by, unless they should spy them in the tree, and come to attack them. The two first savages also confirmed them in this regulation by turning
a little from them towards another part of the wood; but the three and the five after them came forwards directly to the tree, as if they had known the Englishmen were there.

Seeing them come so straight towards them, they resolved to take them in a line as they came; and as they resolved to fire but one at a time, perhaps the first shot might hit them all three: to which purpose the man who was to fire put three or four bullets into his piece, and having a fair loop-hole, as it were, from a broken hole in the tree, he took a sure aim without being seen, waiting till they were within about thirty yards of the tree, so that he could not miss.

While they were thus waiting and the savages came on, they plainly saw that one of the three was the runaway savage that had escaped from them, and they both knew him distinctly, and resolved that, if possible, he should not escape though they should both fire; so the other stood ready with his piece that if he did not drop at the first shot, he should be sure to have a second.

But the first was too good a marksman to miss his aim; for as the savages kept near one another, a little behind in a line, in a word, he fired and hit two of them directly. The foremost was killed outright, being shot in the head; the second, which was the runaway Indian, was shot through the body, and fell, but was not quite dead; and the third had a little scratch in the shoulder, perhaps by the same ball that went through the body of the second, and being dreadfully frightened, though not much hurt, sat down upon the ground, screaming and yelling in a hideous manner.

The five that were behind, more frightened with the noise than sensible of the danger, stood still at first; for the woods made the sound a thousand times bigger than it really was, the echoes rattling from one side to another, and the fowls rising from all parts screaming and making every sort a several kind of noise according to their kind, just as it was when I fired the first gun that perhaps was ever shot off in that place since it was an island.

However, all being silent again, and they not knowing what the matter was, came on unconcerned till they came to the place where their companions lay in a condition miserable enough. And
A WRONG STEP.

here the poor ignorant creatures, not sensible that they were within reach of the same mischief, stood all of a huddle over the wounded man talking, and, as may be supposed, inquiring of him how he came to be hurt; and who, it is very rational to believe, told them that a flash of fire first, and immediately after that thunder from their gods, had killed those two and wounded him. This, I say, is rational; for nothing is more certain than that, as they saw no man near them, so they had never heard a gun in all their lives, or so much as heard of a gun; neither knew they anything of killing or wounding at a distance with fire and bullets; if they had, one might reasonably believe they would not have stood so unconcerned in viewing the fate of their fellows without some apprehension of their own.

Our two men, though, as they confessed to me, it grieved them to be obliged to kill so many poor creatures, who at the same time had no notion of their danger, yet, having them all thus in their power, and the first having loaded his piece again, resolved to let fly both together among them; and singling out by agreement which to aim at, they shot together, and killed or very much wounded four of them; the fifth, frightened even to death, though not hurt, fell with the rest, so that our men, seeing them all fall together, thought they had killed them all.

The belief that the savages were all killed, made our two men come boldly out from the tree before they had charged their guns again, which was a wrong step; and they were under some surprise when they came to the place and found no less than four of the men alive, and of them two very little hurt, and one not at all. This obliged them to fall upon them with the stocks of their muskets; and first they made sure of the runaway savage that had been the cause of all the mischief, and of another that was hurt in his knee, and put them out of their pain. Then the man that was not hurt at all came and knelled down to them, with his two hands held up, and made piteous moans to them by gestures and signs for his life, but could not say one word to them that they could understand.

However, they signed to him to sit down at the foot of a tree thereby, and one of the Englishmen, with a piece of rope-twine,
which he had by great chance in his pocket, tied his two feet fast together and his two hands behind him; and there they left him, and with what speed they could make after the other two which were gone before, fearing they or any more of them should find the way to their covered place in the woods, where their wives and the few goods they had left lay. They came once in sight of the two men, but it was at a great distance; however, they had the satisfaction to see them cross over a valley towards the sea, the quite contrary way from that which led to their retreat, which they were afraid of; and being satisfied with that, they went back to the tree where they left their prisoner, who, as they supposed, was delivered by his comrades, for he was gone, and the two pieces of rope-yarn with which they had bound him lay just at the foot of the tree.

They were now in as great a concern as before, not knowing what course to take, or how near the enemy might be, or in what
numbers; so they resolved to go away to the place where their wives were, to see if all was well there, and to make them easy, who were in fright enough to be sure; for though the savages were their own country-folk, yet they were most terribly afraid of them, and perhaps the more for the knowledge they had of them.

When they came there they found the savages had been in the wood, and very near that place, but had not found it; for it was indeed inaccessible by the trees standing so thick, as before, had not the persons seeking it been directed by those that knew it, which these did not; they found therefore everything very safe, only the women in a terrible fright. While they were here they had the comfort to have seven of the Spaniards come to their assistance; the other ten, with their servants and old Friday, I mean Friday's father, were gone in a body to defend their bower, and the corn and cattle that was kept there, in case the savages should have roved over to that side of the country; but they did not spread so far. With the seven Spaniards came one of the three savages, who, as I said, were their prisoners formerly; and with them also came the savage whom the Englishmen had left bound hand and foot at the tree; for it seems they came that way, saw the slaughter of the seven men, and unbound the eighth and brought him along with them, where, however, they were obliged to bind him again, as they had the two others who were left when the third ran away.

The prisoners began now to be a burden to them; and they were so afraid of their escaping that they were once resolving to kill them all, believing they were under an absolute necessity to do so for their own preservation. However, the Spaniard governor would not consent to it, but ordered, for the present, that they should be sent out of the way to my old cave in the valley, and be kept there with two Spaniards to guard them, and give them food for their subsistence; which was done, and they were bound there hand and foot for that night.

When the Spaniards came, the two Englishmen were so encouraged that they could not satisfy themselves to stay any longer there; but taking five of the Spaniards, and themselves, with four
muskets and a pistol among them, and two stout quarterstaves, away they went in quest of the savages. And first they came to the tree where the men lay that had been killed; but it was easy to see that some more of the savages had been there, for they had attempted to carry their dead men away, and had dragged two of them a good way, but had given it over. From thence they advanced to the first rising ground, where they stood and saw their camp destroyed, and where they had the mortification still to see some of the smoke; but neither could they see any of the savages. They then resolved, though with all possible caution, to go forward towards their ruined plantation. But a little before they came thither, coming in sight of the sea-shore, they saw plainly the savages all embarking again in their canoes, in order to be gone.

They seemed sorry at first, and there was no way to come at them to give them a parting blow; but, upon the whole, were very well satisfied to be rid of them.

The poor Englishmen being now twice ruined, and all their improvement destroyed, the rest all agreed to come and help them rebuild, and to assist them with needful supplies. Their three countrymen, who were not yet noted for having the least inclination to do any good, yet as soon as they heard of it (for they living remote eastward knew nothing of the matter till all was over) came and offered their help and assistance, and did very friendly work for several days to restore their habitation and make necessaries for them: and thus, in a little time, they were set upon their legs again.

About two days after this they had the farther satisfaction of seeing three of the savages' canoes come driving on shore, and at some distance from them two drowned men; by which they had reason to believe that they had met with a storm at sea, and had overset some of them; for it had blown very hard the very night after they went off.

However, as some might miscarry, so, on the other hand, enough of them escaped to inform the rest as well of what they had done as of what had happened to them, and to whet them on to another enterprise of the same nature; which they, it seems, resolved
to attempt, with sufficient force to carry all before them: for except what the first man had told them of inhabitants, they could say little to it of their own knowledge; for they never saw one man, and the fellow being killed that had affirmed it, they had no other witness to confirm it to them.

It was five or six months after this before they heard any more of the savages, in which time our men were in hopes they had either forgot their former bad luck, or given over the hopes of better, when on a sudden they were invaded with a most formidable fleet, of no less than eight and twenty canoes full of savages, armed with bows and arrows, great clubs, wooden swords, and such like engines of war; and they brought such numbers with them, that, in short, it put all our people into the utmost consternation.

As they came on shore in the evening, and at the easternmost side of the island, our men had that night to consult and consider what to do; and, in the first place, knowing that their being entirely concealed was their only safety before, and would much more be so now, while the number of their enemies was so great, they therefore resolved first of all to take down the huts which were built for the two Englishmen, and drive away their goats to the old cave; because they supposed the savages would go directly thither, as soon as it was day, to play the old game over again, though they did not now land within two leagues of it.

In the next place they drove away all the flock of goats they had at the old bower, as I called it, which belonged to the Spaniards; and, in short, left as little appearance of inhabitants anywhere as was possible; and the next morning early they posted themselves with all their force at the plantation of the two men, waiting for their coming. As they guessed, so it happened. These new invaders, leaving their canoes at the east end of the island, came ranging along the shore directly towards the place to the number of two hundred and fifty, as near as our men could judge. Our army was but small indeed; but that which was worse, they had not arms for all their number neither. The whole account, it seems, stood thus. First, as to men:—
THE MUSTER ROLL.

17 Spaniards.
5 Englishmen.
1 Old Friday, or Friday's father.
3 The three slaves taken with the women, who proved very faithful.
3 Other slaves who lived with the Spaniards.

To arm these they had:—

11 Muskets.
5 Pistols.
3 Fowling-pieces.
5 Muskets or fowling-pieces, which were taken by me from the mutinous seamen, who I reduced.
2 Swords.
3 Old Halberds.

To their slaves they did not give either musket or fuze, but they had every one a halberd, or a long staff, like a quarterstaff, with a great spike of iron fastened into each end of it, and by his side a hatchet; also every one of our men had hatchets. Two of the women could not be prevailed upon but they would come into the fight; and they had bows and arrows, which the Spaniards had taken from the savages when the first action happened, which I have spoken of, where the Indians fought with one another; and the women had hatchets too.

The Spaniard governor, who I have described so often, commanded the whole; and William Atkins, who, though a dreadful fellow for wickedness, was a most daring bold fellow, commanded under him. The savages came forward like lions, and our men, which was the worst of their fate, had no advantage in their situation, only that Will Atkins, who now proved a most useful fellow, with six men, was planted just behind a small thicket of bushes as an advanced guard, with orders to let the first of them pass by, and then fire into the middle of them; and as soon as he had fired, to make his retreat as nimble as he could round a part of the wood, and so come in behind the Spaniards where they stood having a thicket of trees all before them.

When the savages came on they run straggling about every way in heaps, out of all manner of order, and Will Atkins let about

1 From the French fusil: a light musket or pistol.
fifty of them pass by him; then seeing the rest come in a very thick throng, he orders three of his men to fire, having loaded their muskets with six or seven bullets a piece about as big as large pistol bullets. How many they killed or wounded they knew not, but the consternation and surprise were inexpressible among the savages; they were frightened to the last degree to hear such a dreadful noise, and see their men killed, and others hurt, but see nobody that did it. When in the middle of their fright, W. Atkins and his other three let fly again among the thickest of them; and in less than a minute the first three, being loaded again, gave them a third volley.

Had W. Atkins and his men retired immediately as soon as they had fired as they were ordered to do, or had the rest of the body been at hand to have poured in their shot continually, the savages had been effectually routed; for the terror that was among them came principally from this, namely, that they were killed by the gods with thunder and lightning, and could see nobody that hurt them; but W. Atkins staying to load again, discovered the cheat. Some of the savages, who were at a distance, spying them, came upon them behind, and though Atkins and his men fired at them also, two or three times, and killed about twenty, retiring as fast as they could, yet they wounded Atkins himself, and killed one of his fellow Englishmen with their arrows, as they did afterwards one Spaniard, and one of the Indian slaves who came with the women. This slave was a most gallant fellow, and fought most desperately, killing five of them with his own hand, having no weapon but one of the armed staves and a hatchet.

Our men being thus hard laid at, Atkins wounded, and two other men killed, retreated to a rising ground in the wood; and the Spaniards, after firing three volleys upon them, retreated also; for their number was so great, and they were so desperate, that though above fifty of them were killed, and more than so many wounded, yet they came on in the teeth of our men, fearless of danger, and shot their arrows like a cloud; and it was observed that their wounded men, who were not quite disabled, were made outrageous by their wounds, and fought like madmen.

When our men retreated they left the Spaniard and the English-
man that were killed behind them; and the savages, when they came up to them, killed them over again in a wretched manner, breaking the arms, legs, and heads with their clubs and wooden swords like true savages. But finding our men were gone, they did not seem to pursue them, but drew themselves up in a kind of a ring, which is, it seems, their custom, and shouted twice in token of their victory. After which they had the mortification to see several of their wounded men fall, dying with the mere loss of blood.

The Spaniard governor having drawn his little body up together upon a rising ground, Atkins, though he was wounded, would have had him marched, and charged them again all together at once. But the Spaniards replied, "Seignior Atkins, you see how their wounded men fight, let them alone till morning; all these wounded men will be stiff and sore with their wounds, and faint with the loss of blood, and so we shall have the fewer to engage."

The advice was good: but William Atkins replied merily, "That's true, Seignior, and so shall I too; and that's the reason I would go on while I am warm." "Well, Seignior Atkins," says the Spaniards, "you have behaved gallantly, and done your part; we will fight for you if you cannot come on; but I think it best to stay till morning." So they waited.

But as it was a clear moonlight night, and they found the savages in great disorder about their dead and wounded men, and a great hurry and noise among them where they lay, they afterwards resolved to fall upon them in the night, especially if they could come to give them but one volley before they were discovered, which they had a fair opportunity to do; for one of the two Englishmen, in whose quarter it was where the fight began, led them round between the woods and sea-side westward, and then turning short south, they came so near where the thickest of them lay, that before they were seen or heard eight of them fired in among them, and did dreadful execution upon them. In half a minute more eight others fired after them, pouring in their small shot in such a quantity that abundance were killed and wounded; and all this while they were not able to see who hurt them, or which way to fly.
The Spaniards charged again with the utmost expedition, and then divided themselves into three bodies, and resolved to fall in among them all together. They had in each body eight persons—that is to say, twenty-four, whereof were twenty-two men, and the two women, who, by the way, fought desperately.

They divided the firearms equally in each party, and so of the halberds and staves. They would have had the women keep back, but they said they were resolved to die with their husbands! Having thus formed their little army, they marched out from among the trees, and they came up to the teeth of the enemy, shouting and hallooing as loud as they could. The savages stood all together but were in the utmost confusion, hearing the noise of our men shouting from three quarters together. They would have fought if they had seen us; and as soon as we came near enough to be seen, some arrows were shot, and poor old Friday was wounded, though not dangerously. But our men gave them no time, but running up to them, fired among them three ways, and then fell in with the butt-ends of their muskets, their swords, armed staves and hatchets, and laid about them so well, that in a word, they set up a dismal screaming and howling, flying to save their lives which way soever they could.

Our men were tired with the execution, and killed, or mortally wounded, in the two fights about one hundred and eighty of them; the rest, being frightened out of their wits, scoured through the woods and over the hills with all the speed and fear that nimble feet could help them to do; and as we did not trouble ourselves much to pursue them, they got all together to the sea-side, where they landed, and where their canoes lay. But their disaster was not at an end yet; for it blew a terrible storm of wind that evening from the seaward, so that it was impossible for them to go off—nay, the storm continuing all night, when the tide came up their canoes were most of them driven by the surge of the sea so high upon the shore, that it required infinite toil to get them off, and some of them were even dashed to pieces against the beach or against one another.

Our men, though glad of their victory, yet got little rest that night; but having refreshed themselves as well as they could,
they resolved to march to that part of the island where the savages were fled, and see what posture they were in. This necessarily led them over the place where the fight had been, and where they found several of the poor creatures not quite dead, and yet past recovering life: a sight disagreeable enough to generous minds; for a truly great man, though obliged by the law of battle to destroy his enemy, takes no delight in his misery.

However, there was no need to give any orders in this case; for their own savages, who were their servants, despatched those poor creatures with their hatchets.

At length they came in view of the place where the more miserable remains of the savages' army lay, where there appeared about an hundred still. Their posture was generally sitting upon the ground, with their knees up towards their mouth, and the head put between the two hands, leaning down upon the knees.

When our men came within two musket shot of them, the Spaniard governor ordered two muskets to be fired without ball, to alarm them. This he did that by their countenance he might know what to expect, namely, whether they were still in heart to fight, or were so heartily beaten as to be dispirited and discouraged, and so he might manage accordingly.

This stratagem took; for, as soon as the savages heard the first gun and saw the flash of the second, they started up upon their feet in the greatest consternation imaginable; and as our men advanced swiftly towards them, they all ran screaming and yawling away, with a kind of a howling noise, which our men did not understand and had never heard before, and thus they ran up the hills into the country.

At first our men had much rather the weather had been calm, and they had all gone away to sea; but they did not then consider that this might probably have been the occasion of their coming again in such multitudes as not to be resisted, or, at least, to come so many and so often as would quite desolate the island and starve them. Will Atkins, therefore, who, notwithstanding his wound, kept always with them, proved the best counsellor in this case. His advice was, to take the advantage that offered, and clap in
between them and their boats, and so deprive them of the capacity of ever returning any more to plague the island.

They consulted long about this; and some were against it, for fear of making the wretches fly to the woods and live there desperate, and so they should have them to hunt like wild beasts, be afraid to stir out about their business, and have their plantations continually rifled, all their tame goats destroyed, and, in short, be reduced to a life of continual distress.

Will Atkins told them they had better have to do with a hundred men than with a hundred nations; that as they must destroy their boats, so they must destroy the men, or be all of them destroyed themselves. In a word, he showed them the necessity of it so plainly, that they all came into it. So they went to work immediately with the boats, and getting some dry wood together from a dead tree, they tried to set some of them on fire, but they were so wet that they would not burn; however, the fire so burned the upper part, that it soon made them unfit for swimming in the sea as boats. When the Indians saw what they were about, some of them came running out of the woods, and
coming as near as they could to our men, kneeled down and cried, "Oa, oa, waramokoa!" and some other words of their language, which none of the others understood anything of; but as they made pitiful gestures and strange noises, it was easy to understand they begged to have their boats spared, and that they would be gone, and never come there again.

But our men were now satisfied that they had no way to preserve themselves or to save their colony but effectually to prevent any of these people from ever going home again, depending upon this, that if ever so much as one of them got back into their country to tell the story, the colony was undone; so that, letting them know that they should not have any mercy, they fell to work with their canoes, and destroyed them, every one that the storm had not destroyed before; at the sight of which the savages raised a hideous cry in the woods, which our people heard plain enough, after which they ran about the island like distracted men, so that, in a word, our men did not really know at first what to do with them.

Nor did the Spaniards, with all their prudence, consider that while they made those people thus desperate, they ought to have kept good guard at the same time upon their plantations; for though, it is true, they had driven away their cattle, and the Indians did not find out their main retreat, I mean my old castle at the hill, nor the cave in the valley, yet they found out my plantation at the bower, and pulled it all to pieces, and all the fences and planting about it, trod all the corn under foot, tore up the vines and grapes, being just then almost ripe, and did to our men an inestimable damage, though to themselves not one farthing-worth of service.

Though our men were able to fight them upon all occasions, yet they were in no condition to pursue them, or hunt them up and down; for as they were too nimble of foot for our men when they found them single, so our men durst not go about single, for fear of being surrounded with their numbers. The best was, they had no weapons; for though they had bows, they had no arrows left, nor any materials to make any, nor had they any edged tool or weapon among them.
The extremity and distress they were reduced to was great, and
indeed deplorable; but at the same time our men were also
brought to very bad circumstances by them; for though their
retreats were preserved, yet their provision was destroyed, and
their harvest spoiled, and what to do, or which way to turn them-
Selves they knew not. The only refuge they had now was the
stock of cattle they had in the valley by the cave, and some little
corn which grew there, and the plantation of the three English-
men, William Atkins and his comrades, who were now reduced to
two, one of them being killed by an arrow, which struck him on
the side of his head, just under the temple, so that he never spoke
more; and it was very remarkable that this was the same barbar-
ous fellow who cut the poor savage slave with his hatchet, and
who afterwards intended to have murdered all the Spaniards.

I looked upon their case to have been worse at this time than
mine was at any time, after I first discovered the grains of barley
and rice, and got into the manner of planting and raising my corn
and my tame cattle; for now they had, as I may say, a hundred
wolves upon the island, which would devour everything they could
come at, yet could very hardly be come at themselves.

The first thing they concluded, when they saw what their cir-
cumstances were, was, that they would, if possible, drive them
up to the farther part of the island, south-west, that if any more
savages came on shore they might not find one another. Then,
that they would daily hunt and harass them, and kill as many of
them as they could come at, till they had reduced their number;
and if they could at last tame them and bring them to anything,
they would give them corn, and teach them how to plant and live
upon their daily labour.

In order to this, they so followed them, and so terrified them
with their guns, that in a few days, if any of them fired a gun at
an Indian, if he did not hit him yet he would fall down for fear;
and so dreadfully frightened they were, that they kept out of sight
farther and farther, till at last our men following them, and every
day almost killing and wounding some of them, they kept up in
the woods and hollow places so much, that it reduced them to the
utmost misery for want of food, and many were afterwards found
dead in the woods, without any hurt, but merely starved to death.

When our men found this, it made their hearts relent, and pity moved them, especially the Spaniard governor, who was the most gentlemanly generous-minded man that ever I met with in my life; and he proposed, if possible, to take one of them alive, and bring him to understand what they meant, so far as to be able to act as interpreter, and to go among them and see if they might be brought to some conditions that might be depended upon, to save their lives, and to do us no spoil.

It was some while before any of them could be taken; but being weak and half starved, one of them was at last surprised, and made a prisoner. He was sullen at first, and would neither eat or drink; but finding himself kindly used, and victuals given him, and no violence offered him, he at last grew tractable, and came to himself.

They brought old Friday to him, who talked often with him, and told him how kind the other would be to them all; that they would not only save their lives, but would give them a part of the island to live in, provided they would give satisfaction that they would keep in their own bounds, and not come beyond it to injure or prejudice others; and that they should have corn given them to plant and make it grow for their bread, and some bread given them for their present subsistence: and old Friday bade the fellow go and talk with the rest of his countrymen, and see what they said to it, assuring them that, if they did not agree immediately, they should be all destroyed.

The poor wretches, thoroughly humbled, and reduced in number to about thirty-seven, closed with the proposal at the first offer, and begged to have some food given them; upon which twelve Spaniards and two Englishmen, well armed, with three Indian slaves, and old Friday, marched to the place where they were. The three Indian slaves carried them a large quantity of bread, some rice boiled up to cakes and dried in the sun, and three live goats; and they were ordered to go to the side of a hill, where they sat down, eat the provisions very thankfully, and were the most faithful fellows to their words that could be thought of;
TEACHING THE SAVAGES.

for except when they came to beg victuals and directions, they
never came out of their bounds, and there they lived when I came
to the island, and I went to see them.

They had taught them both to plant corn, make bread, breed
tame goats, and milk them; they wanted nothing but wives, and
they soon would have been a nation. They were confined to a
neck of land, surrounded with high rocks behind them, and lying
plain towards the sea before them, on the south-east corner of the
island. They had land enough, and it was very good and fruitful;
they had a piece of land about a mile and a half broad, and three
or four mile in length.

Our men taught them to make wooden spades, such as I made
for myself; and gave them among them twelve hatchets, and three
or four knives; and there they lived, the most subjected, innocent
creatures that ever were heard of.

After this, the colony enjoyed a perfect tranquillity with respect
to the savages till I came to revisit them, which was above two
years. Not but that now and then some canoes of savages came
on shore for their triumphal unnatural feasts; but as they were of
several nations, and perhaps had never heard of those that came
before, or the reason of it, they did not make any search or
inquiry after their countrymen; and if they had, it would have
been very hard to have found them out.

Thus, I think, I have given a full account of all that happened
to them to my return, at least that was worth notice. The Indians
or savages were wonderfully civilized by them, and they frequently
went among them, but forbid, on pain of death, any one of the
Indians coming to them, because they would not have their settle-
ment betrayed again.

One thing was very remarkable, namely, that they taught the
savages to make wicker-work or baskets; but they soon outdid
their masters, for they made abundance of most ingenious things
in wicker-work; particularly, all sorts of baskets, sieves, bird-cages,
cupboards, &c., as also chairs to sit on, stools, beds, couches, and
abundance of other things, being very ingenious at such work
when they were once put in the way of it.

My coming was a particular relief to these people, because we
furnished them with knives, scissors, spades, shovels, pickaxes, and all things of that kind which they could want.

With the help of these tools they were so very handy, that they came at last to build up their huts, or our houses, very handsomely, raddling or working it up like basket-work all the way round; which was a very extraordinary piece of ingenuity, and looked very odd, but was an exceeding good fence, as well against heat as against all sorts of vermin; and our men were so taken with it, that they got the wild savages to come and do the like for them; so that when I came to see the two Englishmen's colonies, they looked at a distance as if they lived all like bees in a hive. And as for Will Atkins, who was now become a very industrious, necessary, and sober fellow, he had made himself such a tent of basket-work as I believe was never seen. It was an hundred and twenty paces round in the outside, as I measured by my steps; the walls were as close worked as a basket, in panels or squares of thirty-two in number, and very strong, standing about seven foot high. In the middle was another not above twenty-two paces round, but built stronger, being eight-square in its form; and in the eight corners stood eight very strong posts, round the top of which he laid strong pieces pinned together with wooden pins, from which he raised a pyramid for the roof of eight rafters, very handsome, I assure you, and joined together very well, though he had no nails, and only a few iron spikes, which he made himself, too, out of the old iron that I had left there; and indeed this fellow showed abundance of ingenuity in several things, which he had no knowledge of. He made him a forge, with a pair of wooden bellows to blow the fire; he made himself charcoal for his work; and he formed out of one of the iron crows a middling good anvil to hammer upon; in this manner he made many things, but especially hooks, staples and spikes, bolts and hinges. But to return to the house: after he had pitched the roof of his innermost tent, he worked it up between the rafters with basket-work, so firm, and thatched that over again so ingeniously with rice-straw, and over that a large leaf of a tree, which covered the top, that his house was as dry as if it had been tiled or slated. Indeed he owned that the savages made the basket-work for him.
ITS INTERNAL ARRANGEMENTS.

The outer circuit was covered, as a lean-to, all round this inner apartment, and long rafters lay from the two and thirty angles to the top posts of the inner house, being about twenty foot distant; so that there was a space like a walk within the outer wicker-wall and without the inner, near twenty foot wide.

The inner place he partitioned off with the same wicker-work, but much fairer, and divided it into six apartments, so that he had six rooms on a floor; and out of every one of these there was a door, first into the entry or coming into the main tent, and another door into the space or walk that was round it; so that walk was also divided into six equal parts, which served not only for retreat, but to store up any necessaries which the family had occasion for. These six spaces not taking up the whole circumference, what other apartments the outer circle had were thus ordered:—as soon as you were in at the door of the outer circle, you had a short passage straight before you to the door of the inner house, but on either side was a wicker partition, and a door in it, by which you went, first, into a large room or store-house, twenty foot wide, and about thirty foot long, and through that into another not quite so long; so that in the outer circle was ten handsome rooms, six of which were only to be come at through the apartments of the inner tent, and served as closets or retiring rooms to the respective chambers of the inner circle; and four large warehouses or barns, or what you please to call them, which went in through one another, two on either hand of the passage that led through the outer door to the inner tent.

Such a piece of basket-work, I believe, was never seen in the world, nor a house or tent so neatly contrived, much less so built. In this great bee-hive lived the three families, that is to say, Will Atkins and his companion. The third was killed, but his wife remained with three children; for she was, it seems, big with child when he died. And the other two were not at all backward to give the widow her full share of everything—I mean, as to their corn, milk, grapes, &c., and when they killed a kid, or found a turtle on the shore; so that they all lived well enough, though it was true they were not so industrious as the other two, as has been observed already.
One thing, however, cannot be omitted, namely, that as religion, I don’t know that there was anything of that among them. They pretty often, indeed, put one another in that there was a God, by the very common method of search, namely, swearing by his name. Nor were their poor ignorance savage wives much the better for having been married to Christians as we must call them; for as they knew very little of God themselves, so they were utterly incapable of entering into any discourse with their wives about a God, or to talk anything to them concerning religion.

The utmost of all the improvement which I can say the wives had made from them was, that they had taught them to speak English pretty well; and all the children they had, which was near twenty in all, were taught to speak English too, from their first learning to speak, though they at first spoke it in a very broken manner like their mothers. There were none of these children above six years old when I came thither, for it was not much above seven years that they had fetched these five savage ladies over: but they had all been pretty fruitful, for they had all children more or less; I think the cook’s mate’s wife was big of her sixth child. And the mothers were all a good sort of well-governed, quiet, laborious women, modest and decent, helpful to one another; mighty observant and subject to their masters—I cannot call them husbands; and wanted nothing but to be well instructed in the Christian religion, and to be legally married; both which were happily brought about afterwards by my means, or, at least, in consequence of my coming among them.

Having thus given an account of the colony in general, and pretty much of my five runagate Englishmen, I must say something of the Spaniards, who were the main body of the family, and in whose story there are some incidents also remarkable enough.

I had a great many discourses with them about their circumstances when they were among the savages. They told me readily, that they had no instances to give of their application or ingenuity in that country; that they were a poor, miserable, dejected handful of people; that if means had been put into their
A CONFESSION.

...and, they had yet so abandoned themselves to despair, and so sink under the weight of their misfortunes, that they thought of nothing but starving. One of them, a grave and very sensible man, told me he was convinced they were in the wrong; that it was not the part of wise men to give up themselves to their misery, but always to take hold of the helps which reason offered, as well for present support as for future deliverance. He told me that grief was the most senseless, insignificant passion in the world; for that it regarded only things past, which was generally impossible to be recalled or to be remedied, but had no view to things to come, and had no share in anything that looked like deliverance, but rather added to the affliction than proposed a remedy. And upon this he repeated a Spanish proverb, which though I cannot
repeat in just the same words that he spoke in, yet I remember I made it into an English proverb of my own, thus:—

"In trouble to be troubled,
Is to have your trouble doubled."

He ran on then in remarks upon all the little improvements I had made in my solitude; my unwearyed application, as he called it, and how I had made a condition which, in its circumstances, was at first much worse than theirs, a thousand times more happy than theirs was, even now, when they were all together. He told me it was remarkable that Englishmen had a greater presence of mind in their distress than any people that ever he met with; that their unhappy nation and the Portuguese were the worst men in the world to struggle with misfortunes, for that their first step in dangers, after the common efforts are over, was always to despair, lie down under it, and die without rousing their thoughts up to proper remedies for escape.

I told him their case and mine differed exceedingly: that they were cast upon the shore without necessaries, without supply of food or of present sustenance till they could provide: that it is true I had this disadvantage and discomfort, that I was alone; but then the supplies I had providentially thrown into my hands by the unexpected driving of the ship on shore, was such a help as would have encouraged any creature in the world to have applied himself as I had done. "Seignior," says the Spaniard, "had we poor Spaniards been in your case, we should never have gotten half those things out of the ship, as you did; nay," says he, "we should never have found means to have gotten a raft to carry them, or to have gotten the raft on shore without boat or sail; and how much less should we have done," said he, "if any of us had been alone?" Well, I desired him to abate his compliment, and go on with the history of their coming on shore, where they landed. He told me they unhappily landed at a place where there were people without provisions; whereas, had they had the common sense to have put off to sea again, and gone to another island a little farther, they had found provisions, though without people; there being an island that way, as they have been
re there was provisions, though no people; that is to say, Spaniards of Trinidad had frequently been there, and had island with goats and hogs at several times; where they lived in such multitudes, and where turtle and sea-fowls were plenty, that they could have been in no want of flesh, they had found no bread; whereas here they were only with a few roots and herbs which they understood not, had no substance in them, and which the inhabitants sparingly enough, and who could treat them no better, would turn cannibals, and eat men’s flesh, which was dainty of their country.

ave me an account how many ways they strove to civilize yes they were with, and to teach them rational customs binary way of living, but in vain; and how they retorted them as unjust, that they who came there for assistance ought should attempt to set up for instructors of those that n bread; intimating, it seems, that none should set up instructors of others but those who could live without

gave me dismal accounts of the extremities they were ; how, sometimes, they were many days without any food island they were upon being inhabited by a sort of hat lived more indolent, and for that reason were less with the necessaries of life, than they had reason to believe ere in the same part of the world; and yet they found savages were less ravenous and voracious than those better supplies of food.

hey added, that they could not but see with what demon- of wisdom and goodness the governing providence of ts the events of things in the world; which, they said, in their circumstances: for if, pressed by the hardships under, and the barrenness of the country where they had searched after a better place to live in, they had out of the way of the relief that happened to them by a.

hey gave me an account how the savages who they lived expected them to go out with them into their wars. And
it was true that, as they had firearms with them, had they not had
the disaster to lose their ammunition, they should not have been
serviceable only to their friends, but have made themselves terrible
both to friends and enemies; but being without powder and shot,
and yet in a condition that they could not in reason deny to go
out with their landlords to their wars, when they came into the
field of battle they were in a worse condition than the savages
themselves, for they neither had bows or arrows, nor could they
use those the savages gave them: so that they could do nothing
but stand still and be wounded with arrows till they came up
to the teeth of their enemy; and then, indeed, the three halberds
they had were of use to them; and they would often drive a whole
little army before them with those halberds and sharpened sticks
put into the muzzles of their muskets. But that for all this, they
were sometimes surrounded with multitudes, and in great danger
from their arrows, till at last they found the way to make them-
selves large targets of wood, which they covered with skins of
wild beasts, whose names they knew not; and these covered them
from the arrows of the savages: that, notwithstanding these,
they were sometimes in great danger, and were once five of them
knocked down together with the clubs of the savages; which
was the time when one of them was taken prisoner—that is to
say, the Spaniard whom I had relieved, that at first they thought
had been killed. But when afterwards they heard he was taken
prisoner, they were under the greatest grief imaginable, and
would willingly have all ventured their lives to have rescued
him.

They told me that when they were so knocked down, the rest
of their company rescued them, and stood over them, fighting till
they were come to themselves, all but him who they thought had
been dead; and then they made their way with their halberds and
pieces, standing close together in a line, through a body of above
a thousand savages, beating down all that came in their way, got
the victory over their enemies, but to their great sorrow, because
it was with the loss of their friend; who the other party, finding
him alive, carried off with some others, as I gave an account in
my former.
THE JOY OF DELIVERANCE

They described most affectionately how they were surprised with joy at the return of their friend and companion in misery, who they thought had been devoured by wild beasts of the worst kind, namely, by wild men; and yet how more and more they were surprised with the account he gave them of his errand, and that there was a Christian in any place near, much more one that was able, and had humanity enough to contribute to their deliverance.

They described how they were astonished at the sight of the relief I sent them, and at the appearance of loaves of bread—things they had not seen since their coming to that miserable place; how often they crossed it and blessed it, as bread sent from Heaven; and what a reviving cordial it was to their spirits to taste it; as also of the other things I had sent for their supply. And, after all, they would have told me something of the joy they were in at the sight of a boat and pilots to carry them away to the person and place from whence all these new comforts came; but they told me it was impossible to express it by words, for their excessive joy naturally driving them to unbecoming extravagances, they had no way to describe them but by telling me that they bordered upon lunacy, having no way to give vent to their passion suitable to the sense that was upon them: that in some it worked one way, and in some another; and that some of them, through a surprise of joy, would burst out into tears, others be stark mad, and others immediately faint. This discourse extremely affected me, and called to my mind Friday's ecstasy when he met his father; and the poor people's ecstasy when I took them up at sea, after their ship was on fire; the mate of the ship's joy when he found himself delivered in the place where he expected to perish; and my own joy when, after twenty-eight years' captivity, I found a good ship ready to carry me to my own country. All these things made me more sensible of the relation of those poor men, and more affected with it.

Having thus given a view of the state of things as I found them, I must relate the heads of what I did for these people, and the condition in which I left them. It was their opinion, and mine too, that they would be troubled no more with the savages; or
that if they were, they would be able to cut them off, if they were
twice as many as before; so they had no concern about that.
Then I entered into a serious discourse with the Spaniard, whom
I call governor, about their stay in the island; for as I was not
come to carry any of them off, so it would not be just to carry off
some and leave others, who perhaps would be unwilling to stay if
their strength was diminished.

On the other hand, I told them I came to establish them there,
not to remove them; and then I let them know that I had
brought with me relief of sundry kinds for them; that I had been
at a great charge to supply them with all things necessary, as well
for their convenience as their defence; and that I had such and
such particular persons with me, as well to increase and recruit
their number, as by the particular necessary employments which
they were bred to, being artificers, to assist them in those things
in which, at present, they were to seek.

They were all together when I talked thus to them; and before
I delivered to them the stores I had brought, I asked them one
by one if they had entirely forgot and buried the first animosities
that had been among them, and would shake hands with one
another, and engage in a strict friendship and union of interest,
that so there might be no more misunderstandings or jealousies.

Will Atkins, with abundance of frankness and good humour,
said they had met with afflictions enough to make them all sober,
and enemies enough to make them all friends; that, for his part
he would live and die with them; and was so far from designing
anything against the Spaniards, that he owned they had done
nothing to him but what his own mad humour made necessary,
and what he would have done, and perhaps much worse, in their
case; and that he would ask them pardon, if I desired it, for the
foolish and brutish things he had done to them; and was very
willing and desirous of living in terms of entire friendship and
union with them; and would do anything that lay in his power
to convince them of it: and as for going to England, he cared not
if he did not go thither these twenty years.

The Spaniards said they had indeed at first disarmed and ex-
cluded Will Atkins and his two countrymen for their ill conduct,
A STATE DINNER.

as they had let me know; and they appealed to me for the necessity they were under to do so; but that Will Atkins had behaved himself so bravely in the great fight they had with the savages, and on several occasions since, and had showed himself so faithful to, and concerned for, the general interest of them all, that they had forgotten all that was past, and thought he merited as much to be trusted with arms and supplied with necessaries as any of them; and that they had testified their satisfaction in him by committing the command to him, next to the governor himself. And as they had an entire confidence in him and all his countrymen, so they acknowledged they had merited that confidence by all the methods that honest men could merit to be valued and trusted; and they most heartily embraced the occasion of giving me this assurance, that they would never have any interest separate from one another.

Upon these frank and open declarations of friendship, we appointed the next day to dine all together: and indeed we made a splendid feast. I caused the ship's cook and his mate to come on shore and dress our dinner, and the old cook's mate we had on shore assisted. We brought on shore six pieces of good beef, and four pieces of pork out of the ship's provision, with our punchbowl and materials to fill it; and, in particular, I gave them ten bottles of French claret, and ten bottles of English beer—things that neither the Spaniards or the Englishmen had tasted for many years; and which, it may be supposed, they were exceeding glad of.

The Spaniards added to our feast five whole kids, which the cooks roasted; and three of them were sent covered up close on board the ship to the seamen, that they might feast on fresh meat from on shore, as we did with their salt meat from on board.

After this feast, at which we were very innocently merry, I brought out my cargo of goods, wherein, that their might be no dispute about dividing, I showed them that there was sufficient for them all; and desired that they might all take an equal quantity of the goods that were for wearing—that is to say, equal when made up; as first, I distributed linen sufficient to make every one of them four shirts, and at the Spaniard's request after-
wards made them up six. These were exceeding comfortable to
them, having been what, as I may say, they had long since forgot
the use of, or what it was to wear them.

I allotted the thin English stuffs which I mentioned before to
make every one a light coat, like a frock, which I judged fittest
for the heat of the season, cool and loose; and ordered that when-
ever they decayed they should make more as they thought fit.
The like for pumps, shoes, stockings, and hats, &c.

I cannot express what pleasure, what satisfaction, sat upon the
countenances of all these poor men when they saw the care I had
taken of them, and how well I had furnished them. They told
me I was a father to them, and that having such a correspondent
as I was in so remote a part of the world, it would make them
forget that they were left in a desolate place; and they all volun-
tarily engaged to me not to leave the place without my consent.

Then I presented to them the people I had brought with me,
particularly the tailor, the smith, and the two carpenters—all of
them most necessary people; but above all, my general artificer,
than whom they could not name anything that was more useful
to them. And the tailor, to show his concern for them, went to
work immediately, and, with my leave, made them every one a
shirt the first thing he did; and which was still more, he taught
the women, not only how to sew and stitch, and use the needle,
but made them assist to make the shirts for their husbands and
for all the rest.

As to the carpenters, I scarce need mention how useful they
were, for they took in pieces all my clumsy unhandy things, and
made them clever, convenient tables, stools, bedsteads, cupboards,
lockers, shelves, and everything they wanted of that kind.

But to let them see how Nature made artificers at first, I
carried the carpenters to see Will Atkins's basket house, as I
called it; and they both owned they never saw an instance of such
natural ingenuity before, nor anything so regular and so handily
built, at least of its kind. And one of them, when he saw it,
after musing a good while, turned about to me, "I am sure," says
he, "that man has no need of us; you need do nothing but give
him tools."
A WELL-STORED MAGAZINE

Then I brought them out all my store of tools, and gave every man a digging-spade, a shovel, and a rake, for we had no harrows or ploughs; and to every separate place a pick axe, a crow, a broad axe, and a saw—always appointing that as often as any were broken or worn out, they should be supplied without grudging out of the general stores that I left behind.

Nails, staples, hinges, hammers, chisels, knives, scissors, and all sorts of tools and iron work, they had without tale as they required; for no man would care to take more than they wanted, and he must be a fool that would waste or spoil them on any account whatever. And for the use of the smith, I left two ton of unwrought iron for a supply.

My magazine of powder and arms, which I brought them, was such, even to profusion, that they could not but rejoice at them; for now they could march as I used to do, with a musket upon each shoulder, if there was occasion; and were able to fight a thousand savages if they had but some little advantages of situation, which also they could not miss of if they had occasion.

I carried on shore with me the young man whose mother was starved to death, and the maid also. She was a sober, well educated, religious young woman, and behaved so inoffensively that every one gave her a good word. She had, indeed, an unhappy life with us, there being no woman in the ship but herself; but she bore it with patience. After a while, seeing things so well ordered, and in so fine a way of thriving upon my island, and considering that they had neither business or acquaintance in the East Indies, or reason for taking so long a voyage—I say, considering all this, both of them came to me and desired I would give them leave to remain on the island, and be entered among my family, as they called it.

I agreed to it readily, and they had a little plat of ground allotted to them, where they had three tents or houses set up, surrounded with a basket-work, palisadoed like Atkins's, adjoining to his plantation. Their tents were contrived so that they had each of them a room apart to lodge in, and a middle tent like a great storehouse to lay all their goods in, and to eat and drink in. And now the other two Englishmen removed their habitation to
the same place, and so the island was divided into three colonies, and no more, namely, the Spaniards, with old Friday and the first servantes, at my old habitation under the hill, which was, in a word, the capital city; and where they had so enlarged and extended their works, as well under as on the outside of the hill, that they lived, though perfectly concealed, yet full at large. Never was there such a little city in a wood, and so hid, I believe, in any part of the world; for I verily believe a thousand men might have ranged the island a month, and if they had not known there was such a thing, and looked on purpose for it, they would not have found it; for the trees stood so thick and so close, and grew so fast matted into one another, that nothing but cutting them down first could discover the place—except the only two narrow entrances, where they went in and out, could be found, which was not very easy. One of them was just down at the water edge of the creek, and it was afterwards above two hundred yards to the place; and the other was up the ladder at twice, as I have already formerly described it; and they had a large wood, thick planted also, on the top of the hill, which contained above an acre, which grew apace and covered the place from all discovery there, with only one narrow place between two trees, not easy to be discovered, to enter on that side.

The other colony was that of W. Atkins's, where there were four families of Englishmen, I mean those I had left there, with their wives and children; three savages that were slaves; the widow and children of the Englishman that was killed; the young man and the maid; and by the way, we made a wife of her also before we went away. There were also the two carpenters and the tailor, who I brought with me for them; also the smith, who was a very necessary man to them, especially as a gunsmith to take care of their arms; and my other man, who I called Jack of all trades, who was in himself as good almost as twenty men, for he was not only a very ingenious fellow, but a very merry fellow; and before I went away we married him to the honest maid that came with the youth in the ship I mentioned before.

And now I speak of marrying, it brings me naturally to say something of the French ecclesiastic that I had brought with me
but of the ship's crew whom I took up at sea. It is true this man was a Roman,¹ and perhaps it may give offence to some hereafter if I leave anything extraordinary upon record of a man who before begin, I must (to set him out in just colours) represent in terms very much to his disadvantage in the account of Protestants; as, first, that he was a Papist; secondly, a Popish priest; and thirdly, a French Popish priest.

But justice demands of me to give him a due character; and I must say he was a grave, sober, pious, and most religious person; exact in his life, extensive in his charity, and exemplary in almost everything he did. What, then, can any one say against my being very sensible of the value of such a man notwithstanding his profession?—though it may be my opinion, perhaps, as well as the opinion of others who shall read this, that he was mistaken.

The first hour that I began to converse with him after he had agreed to go with me to the East Indies, I found reason to delight exceedingly in his conversation. And he first began with me about religion in the most obliging manner imaginable.

"Sir," says he, "you have not only, under God (and at that he crossed his breast), saved my life, but you have admitted me to go this voyage in your ship, and by your obliging civility have taken me into your family, giving me an opportunity of free conversation. Now, sir," says he, "you see by my habit what my profession is, and I guess by your nation what yours is. I may think it is my duty, and doubtless it is so, to use my utmost endeavours on all occasions to bring all the souls I can to the knowledge of the truth, and to embrace the Catholic doctrine; but as I am here under your permission, and in your family, I am bound in justice to your kindness, as well as in decency and good manners, to be under your government; and therefore I shall not, without your leave, enter into any debates on the point of religion in which we may not agree, farther than you shall give me leave."

I told him his carriage was so modest that I could not but acknowledge it; that it was true we were such people as they called heretics, but that he was not the first Catholic that I had

¹ A Roman Catholic.
A TRUE PRIEST.

conversed with without falling into any inconveniences, or carrying the questions to any height in debate; that he should not find himself the worse used for being of a different opinion from us, and if we did not converse without any dislike on either side upon that score, it should be his fault, not ours.

He replied that he thought all our conversation might be easily separated from disputes; that it was not his business to cap principles with every man he discoursed with; and that he rather desired me to converse with him as a gentleman than as a religieuze, that if I would give him leave at any time to discourse upon religious subjects, he would readily comply with it; and that then he did not doubt but I would allow him also to defend his own opinions as well as he could; but that, without my leave, he would not break in upon me with any such thing.

He told me, farther, that he would not cease to do all that became him in his office as a priest, as well as a private Christian, to procure the good of the ship and the safety of all that was in her; and though, perhaps, we would not join with him, and he could not pray with us, he hoped he might pray for us, which he would do upon all occasions. In this manner we conversed; and as he was of a most obliging, gentleman-like behaviour, so he was, if I may be allowed to say so, a man of good sense, and, as I believe, of great learning.

He gave me a most diverting account of his life, and of the many extraordinary events of it; of many adventures which had befallen him in the few years that he had been abroad in the world; and particularly, this was very remarkable, namely, that in the voyage he was now engaged he had had the misfortune to be five times shipped and unshipped, and never to go to the place whither any of the ships he was in were at first designed! That his first intent was to have gone to Martinico, and that he went on board a ship bound thither at St. Malo, but being forced into Lisbon by bad weather, the ship received some damage by running aground in the mouth of the river Tagus, and was obliged to unload her cargo there: that finding a Portuguese ship there bound to the

1 A religious person, a priest.
2 Martinique, one of the French West India Islands.
SERIOUS BUSINESS.

Madeiras, and ready to sail, and supposing he should easily meet with a vessel there bound to Martinico, he went on board in order to sail to the Madeiras; but the master of the Portuguese ship being but an indifferent mariner, had been out in his reckoning, and they drove to Fial, where, however, he happened to find a very good market for his cargo, which was corn, and therefore resolved not to go to the Madeiras, but to load salt at the Isle of May, to go away to Newfoundland. He had no remedy in this exigence but to go with the ship, and had a pretty good voyage as far as the Banks (so they call the place where they catch the fish), where, meeting with a French ship bound from France to Quebec in the river of Canada and from thence to Martinico, to carry provisions, he thought he should have an opportunity to complete his first design; but when he came to Quebec the master of the ship died, and the ship proceeded no farther: so the next voyage he shipped himself for France in the ship that was burned when we took them up at sea, and then shipped with us for the East Indies, as I have already said. Thus he had been disappointed in five voyages, all, as I may call it, in one voyage, besides what I shall have occasion to mention farther of the same person.

But I shall not make digressions into other men’s stories which have no relation to my own. I return to what concerns our affair in the island. He came to me one morning, for he lodged among us all the while we were upon the island, and it happened to be just when I was going to visit the Englishmen’s colony at the farthest part of the island; I say, he came to me, and told me, with a very grave countenance, that he had for two or three days desired an opportunity of some discourse with me, which he hoped should not be displeasing to me, because he thought it might in some measure correspond with my general design, which was the prosperity of my new colony, and perhaps might put it, at least more than he yet thought it was, in the way of God’s blessing.

I looked a little surprised at the last part of his discourse, and turning a little short, “How, sir,” said I, “can it be said that we are not in the way of God’s blessing, after such visible assistances and wonderful deliverances as we have seen here, and of which I have given you a large account?”
THE PRIEST'S DISCOURSE.

"If you had pleased, sir," said he, with a world of modesty, and yet with great readiness, "to have heard me, you would have found no room to have been displeased, much less to think so hard of me that I should suggest that you have not had wonderful assistances and deliverances; and I hope, on your behalf, that you are in the way of God's blessing, and your design is exceeding good, and will prosper. But, sir, though it were more so than is even possible to you, yet there may be some among you that are not equally right in their actions. And you know that in the story of the children of Israel, one Achan in the camp removed God's blessing from them, and turned his hand so against them, that six and thirty of them, though not concerned in the crime, were the object of divine vengeance, and bore the weight of that punishment."

I was sensibly touched with his discourse, and told him his inference was so just, and the whole design seemed so sincere, and
was really so religious in its own nature, that I was very sorry I had interrupted him, and begged him to go on; and in the meantime, because it seemed that what we had both to say might take up some time, I told him I was going to the Englishmen's plantations, and asked him to go with me, and we might discourse of it by the way. He told me he would more willingly wait on me thither, because there partly the thing was acted which he desired to speak to me about; so we walked on, and I pressed him to be free and plain with me in what he had to say.

"Why then, sir," says he, "be pleased to give me leave to lay down a few propositions as the foundation of what I have to say, that we may not differ in the general principles, though we may be of some differing opinions in the practice of particulars. First, sir, though we differ in some of the doctrinal articles of religion—and it is very unhappy that it is so, especially in the case before us, as I shall show afterwards—yet there are some general principles in which we both agree, namely, first, that there is a God, and that this God having given us some stated general rules for our service and obedience, we ought not willingly and knowingly to offend him, either by neglecting to do what he has commanded, or by doing what he has expressly forbidden. And let our different religions be what they will, this general principle is readily owned by us all, that the blessing of God does not ordinarily follow a presumptuous sinning against his command, and every good Christian will be affectionately concerned to prevent any that are under his care living in a total neglect of God and his commands.

It is not your men being Protestants, whatever my opinion may be of such, that discharges me from being concerned for their souls, and from endeavouring, if it lies before me, that they should live in as little distance from and enmity with their Maker as possible, especially if you give me leave to meddle so far in your circuit."

I could not yet imagine what he aimed at, and told him I granted all he had said, and thanked him that he would so far concern himself for us; and begged he would explain the particulars of what he had observed, that, like Joshua, to take his own parable, I might put away the accursed thing from us.

"Why then, sir," says he, "I will take the liberty you give me;
and there are three things which, if I am right, must stand in the way of God's blessing upon your endeavours here, and which I should rejoice for your sake and their own to see removed. And, sir,” says he, “I promise myself that you will fully agree with me in them all as soon as I name them; especially because I shall convince you that every one of them may with great ease, and very much to your satisfaction, be remedied.”

He gave me no leave to put in any more civilities, but went on. “First, sir,” says he, “you have here four Englishmen, who have fetched women from among the savages, and have taken them as their wives, and have had many children by them all, and yet are not married to them after any stated legal manner, as the laws of God and man require; and therefore are yet, in the sense of both, no less than adulterers, and living in adultery. To this, sir,” says he, “I know you will object, that there was no clergymen or priest of any kind or of any profession to perform the ceremony; nor any pen and ink or paper to write down a contract of marriage, and have it signed between them. And I know also, sir, what the Spaniard governor has told you; I mean of the agreement that he obliged them to make when they took these women—namely, that they should choose them out by consent, and keep separately to them; which, by the way, is nothing of a marriage, no agreement with the women as wives, but only an agreement among themselves, to keep them from quarrelling.

“But, sir, the essence of the sacrament of matrimony”¹ (so he called it, being a Roman) “consists not only in the mutual consent of the parties to take one another as man and wife, but in the formal and legal obligation that there is in the contract to compel the man and woman at all times to own and acknowledge each other; obliging the men to abstain from all other women, to engage in no other contract while these subsist, and on all occasions, as ability allows, to provide honestly for them and their children; and to oblige the women to the same, or like conditions, mutatis mutandis, on their side.

“Now, sir,” says he, “these men may, when they please, or

¹ In the Roman Catholic Church the ceremony of marriage is placed as one of the sacraments.
A GREAT NEGLECT.

...tion presents, abandon these women, disown their chil-
e them to perish, and take other women and marry them
se are living.” And here he added, with some warmth,
, is God honoured in this unlawful liberty? and how
essing succeed your endeavours in this place, however
hemselves, and however sincere in your design, while
, who at present are your subjects, under your absolute
nt and dominion, are allowed by you to live in open

... I was struck at the thing itself, but much more with
ing arguments he supported it with; for it was certainly
ough they had no clergyman upon the spot, yet a
tract on both sides, made before witnesses, and confirmed
en which they had all agreed to be bound by, though
n but breaking a stick between them, engaging the men-
ese women for their wives upon all occasions, and never
em them or their children, and the women to the same
husbands, had been an effectual lawful marriage in the
od; and it was a great neglect that it was not done.
hought to have gotten off with my young priest by tell-
hat all that part was done when I was not here; and
ived so many years with them now, that if it was an
it was past remedy, they could do nothing in it now.
says he, “asking your pardon for such freedom, you
in this, that it being done in your absence, you could
arged with that part of the crime. But, I beseech you,
yourself that you are not therefore under an obligation
t utmost now to put an end to it. How can you think
et the time past lie on who it will, all the guilt for the
lie entirely upon you? Because it is certainly in your
v to put an end to it, and in nobody’s power but yours.”
osh still that I did not take him right; but I imagined
itting an end to it he meant that I should part them,
ffer them to live together any longer. And I said to
ould not do that by any means, for that it would put the
nd into confusion.” He seemed surprised that I should
take him. “No, sir,” says he, “I do not mean that you
should now separate them, but legally and effectually marry them now. And as, sir, my way of marrying them may not be so easy to reconcile them to, though it will be as effectual, even by your own laws, so your way may be as well before God, and as valid among men; I mean by a written contract, signed by both man and woman, and by all the witnesses present, which all the laws of Europe would decree to be valid."

I was amazed to see so much true piety and so much sincerity of zeal, besides the unusual impartiality in his discourse as to his own party or church, and such true warmth for the preserving people that he had no knowledge of, or relation to; I say, for preserving them from transgressing the laws of God—the like of which I had indeed not met with anywhere. But recollecting what he had said of marrying them by a written contract, which I knew would stand too, I returned it back upon him, and told him I granted all that he had said to be just, and on his part very kind; that I would discourse with the men upon the point now, when I came to them. And I knew no reason why they should scruple to let him marry them all, which I knew well enough would be granted to be as authentic and valid in England as if they were married by one of our own clergymen. What was afterwards done in this matter I shall speak of by itself.

I then pressed him to tell me what was the second complaint which he had to make, acknowledging that I was very much his debtor for the first, and thanked him heartily for it. He told me he would use the same freedom and plainness in the second, and hoped I would take it as well. And this was, that notwithstanding these English subjects of mine, as he called them, had lived with those women for almost seven years, had taught them to speak English, and even to read it; and that they were, as he perceived, women of tolerable understanding and capable of instruction; yet they had not to this hour taught them anything of the Christian religion, no not so much as to know that there was a God or a worship, or in what manner God was to be served, or that their own idolatry, and worshipping they knew not who, was false and absurd.

This, he said, was an unaccountable neglect, and what God
TRUE CHRISTIAN ZEAL.

would certainly call them to account for, and perhaps at last take
the work out of their hands. He spoke this very affectionately
and warmly. "I am persuaded," says he, "had those men lived
in the savage country whence their wives came, the savages would
have taken more pains to have brought them to be idolaters, and
to worship the devil, than any of these men," so far as he could
see, "had taken with them to teach them the knowledge of the
true God. "Now, sir," said he, "though I do not acknowledge
your religion, or you mine, yet we should be glad to see the devil's
servants, and the subjects of his kingdom, taught to know the
general principles of the Christian religion; that they might, at
least, hear of God, and of a Redeemer, and of the resurrection,
and of a future state—things which we all believe; they had at
least been so much nearer coming into the bosom of the true
Church than they are now in the public profession of idolatry and
devil-worship."

I could hold no longer; I took him in my arms, and embraced
him with an excess of passion. "How far," said I to him, "have
I been from understanding the most essential part of a Christian,
namely to love the interest of the Christian Church, and the good
of other men's souls! I scarce have known what belongs to being
a Christian." "Oh, sir, do not say so," replied he; "this thing
is not your fault." "No," says I; "but why did I never lay it
to heart as well as you?" "Tis not too late yet," said he; "be
not too forward to condemn yourself." "But what can be done
now!" said I; "you see I am going away." "Will you give me
leave," said he, "to talk with those poor men about it?" "Yes,
with all my heart," said I; "and will oblige them to give heed
to what you say too." "As to that," said he, "we must leave
them to the mercy of Christ; but it is our business to assist them,
encourage them, and instruct them; and if you will give me leave,
and God his blessing, I do not doubt but the poor ignorant souls
shall be brought home into the great circle of Christianity, if not
into the particular faith that we all embrace,¹ and that even while

¹This evidently means, if not into the particular faith that any of us may
embrace—that is the doctrines belonging especially to any particular church or
body of Christians.
you stay here." Upon this, I said, "I shall not only give you leave, but give you a thousand thanks for it." What followed on this account I shall mention also again in its place.

I now pressed him for the third article in which we were to blame. "Why, really," says he, "it is of the same nature; and I will proceed, asking your leave, with the same plainness as before. It is about your poor savages, who are, as I may say, your conquered subjects. It is a maxim, sir, that is, or ought to be, received among all Christians, of what church or pretended church soever—namely, 'The Christian knowledge ought to be propagated by all possible means, and on all possible occasions.' Tis on this principle that our Church sends missionaries into Persia, India, and China; and that our clergy, even of the superior sort, willingly engage in the most hazardous voyages and the most dangerous residence among murderers and barbarians, to teach them the knowledge of the true God, and to bring them over to embrace the Christian faith. Now, sir, you have such an opportunity here to have six or seven and thirty poor savages brought over from idolatry to the knowledge of God their Maker and Redeemer, that I wonder how you can pass such an occasion of doing good, which is really worth the expense of a man's whole life."

I was now struck dumb indeed, and had not one word to say. I had here a spirit of true Christian zeal for God and religion before me, let his particular principles be of what kind soever. As for me, I had not so much as entertained a thought of this in my heart before, and I believe should not have thought of it; for I looked upon these savages as slaves, and people who, had we had any work for them to do, we would have used as such; or would have been glad to have transported them to any other part of the world, for our business was to get rid of them, and we would all have been satisfied if they had been sent to any country, so they had never seen their own. But to the case. I say I was confounded at his discourse, and knew not what answer to make him. He looked earnestly at me, seeing me in some disorder. "Sir," says he, "I shall be very sorry if what I have said gives you any offence." "No, no," says I, "I am offended with nobody but
myself; but I am perfectly confounded, not only to think that I should never take any notice of this before, but with reflecting what notice I am able to take of it now. You know, sir," said I, "what circumstances I am in. I am bound to the East Indies, in a ship freighted by merchants, and to whom it would be an unsufferable piece of injustice to detain their ship here, the men lying all this while at victuals and wages upon the owners' account. It is true I agreed to be allowed twelve days here, and if I stay more I must pay £3 sterling per diem demurrage, nor can I stay upon demurrage above eight days more, and I have been here thirteen days already; so that I am perfectly unable to engage in this work, unless I would suffer myself to be left behind here again; in which case, if this single ship should miscarry, in any part of her voyage, I should be just in the same condition that I was left in here at first, and from which I have been so wonderfully delivered."

He owned the case was very hard upon me as to my voyage, but laid it home upon my conscience whether the blessing of saving seven and thirty souls was not worth my venturing all I had in the world for? I was not so sensible of that as he was. I returned upon him thus: "Why, sir, it is a valuable thing, indeed, to be an instrument in God's hand to convert seven and thirty heathens to the knowledge of Christ, but as you are an ecclesiastic, and are given over to the work, so that it seems so naturally to fall into the way of your profession, how is it that you do not rather offer yourself to undertake it than press me to it?"

Upon this he faced about, just before me, as we walked along, and putting me to a full stop, made me a very low bow. "I most heartily thank God and you, sir," says he, "for giving me so evident a call to so blessed a work; and if you think yourself discharged from it, and desire me to undertake it, I will most readily do it, and think it a happy reward for all the hazards and difficulties of such a broken, disappointed voyage as I have met with, that I may be dropped at last into so glorious a work."

I discovered a kind of rapture in his face while he spoke this to me; his eyes sparkled like fire, his face glowed, and his colour came and went, as if he had been falling into fits. In a word,
he was fired with the joy of being embarked in such a work. I paused a considerable while before I could tell what to say to him, for I was really surprised to find a man of such sincerity and zeal, and carried out in his zeal beyond the ordinary rate of men, not of his profession only, but even of any profession whatsoever. But, after I had considered it awhile, I asked him seriously if he was in earnest, and that he would venture, on the single consideration of an attempt on those poor people, to be locked up in an unplanted island for, perhaps, his life, and at last might not know whether he should be able to do them any good or not?

He turned short upon me, and asked me what I called a venture? "Pray, sir," said he, "what do you think I consented to go in your ship to the East Indies for?" "Nay," said I, "that I know not, unless it was to preach to the Indians." "Doubtless it was," said he; "and do you think, if I can convert these seven and thirty men to the faith of Christ, it is not worth my time, though I should never be fetched off the island again; nay, is it not infinitely of more worth to save so many souls than my life is, or the life of twenty more of the same profession?" Yes, sir," says
he, "I would give Christ and the Blessed Virgin thanks all my days if I could be made the least happy instrument of saving the souls of these poor men, though I was never to set my foot off of this island, or see my native country any more. But since you will honour me," says he, "with putting me into this work (for which I will pray for you all the days of my life), I have one humble petition to you," said he, "besides." "What is that?" said I. "Why," says he, "it is that you will leave your man Friday with me, to be my interpreter to them, and to assist me; for without some help I cannot speak to them, or they to me."

I was sensibly troubled at his requesting Friday, because I could not think of parting with him, and that for many reasons. He had been the companion of my travels; he was not only faithful to me, but sincerely affectionate to the last degree, and I had resolved to do something considerable for him if he outlived me, as it was probable he would. Then I knew that, as I had bred Friday up to be a Protestant, it would quite confound him to bring him to embrace another profession; and he would never, while his eyes were open, believe that his old master was a heretic, and would be damned; and this might in the end ruin the poor fellow's principles, and so turn him to his first idolatry.

However, a sudden thought relieved me in this strait, and it was this: I told him I could not say that I was willing to part with Friday on any account whatever, though a work that to him was of more value than his life ought to be to me of much more value than the keeping or parting with a servant. But, on the other hand, I was persuaded that Friday would by no means consent to part with me, and I could not force him to it without his consent, without manifest injustice, because I had promised I would never put him—and he had promised and engaged to me that he would never leave me unless I put him—away.

He seemed very much concerned at it, for he had no rational access to these poor people, seeing he did not understand one word of their language, nor they one word of his. To remove this difficulty, I told him Friday's father had learned Spanish, which I found he also understood, and he should serve him for an interpreter. So he was much better satisfied, and nothing could
persuade him but he would stay to endeavour to convert them; but Providence gave another, and very happy turn to all this.

I come back now to the first part of his objections. When we came to the Englishmen, I sent for them all together, and after some account given them of what I had done for them—namely, what necessary things I had provided for them, and how they were distributed, which they were very sensible of, and very thankful for, I began to talk to them of the scandalous life they led, and gave them a full account of the notice the clergyman had already taken of it, and arguing how unchristian and irreligious a life it was. I first asked them if they were married men or bachelors? They soon explained their condition to me, and showed me that two of them were widowers, and the other three were single men or bachelors. I asked them with what consciences they could take these women and lie with them, as they had done, call them their wives, and have so many children by them, and not be married lawfully to them?

They all gave me the answer that I expected, namely, that there was nobody to marry them; that they agreed before the governor to keep them as their wives; and to keep them and own them as their wives; and they thought, as things stood with them, they were as legally married as if they had been married by a parson, and with all the formalities in the world.

I told them that no doubt they were married in the sight of God, and were bound in conscience to keep them as their wives; but that the laws of men being otherwise, they might pretend they were not married, and so desert the poor women and children hereafter; and that their wives being poor desolate women, friendless and moneyless, would have no way to help themselves. I therefore told them that, unless I was assured of their honest intent, I could do nothing for them, but would take care that what I did should be for the women and their children without them; and that unless they would give some assurances that they would marry the women, I could not think it was convenient they should continue together as man and wife, for that it was both scandalous to men and offensive to God, who they could not think would bless them if they went on thus.
WILL ATKINS' DECLARATION.

All this went on as I expected, and, they told me, especially Will Atkins, who seemed now to speak for the rest, that they loved their wives as well as if they had been born in their own native country, and would not leave them upon any account whatever; and they did verily believe their wives were as virtuous and as modest, and did, to the utmost of their skill, as much for them and for their children, as any women could possibly do, and they would not part with them on any account. And Will Atkins, for his own particular, added, if any man would take him away, and offer to carry him home to England, and make him captain of the best man-of-war in the navy, he would not go with him if he might not carry his wife and children with him; and if there was a clergyman in the ship, he would be married to her now with all his heart.

This was just as I would have it. The priest was not with me at that moment, but was not far off; so to try him farther, I told him I had a clergyman with me, and if he was sincere I would have him married the next morning, and bid him consider of it, and talk with the rest. He said, as for himself, he need not consider of it at all, for he was very ready to do it, and was glad I had a minister with me; and he believed they would be all willing also. I then told him that my friend the minister was a Frenchman, and could not speak English, but that I would act the clerk between them. He never so much as asked me whether he was Papist or Protestant, which was indeed what I was afraid of. But, I say, they never inquired about it. So we parted; I went back to my clergyman, and Will Atkins went in to talk with his companions. I desired the French gentleman not to say anything to them till the business was thorough ripe, and I told him what answer the men had given me.

Before I went from their quarter, they all came to me and told me they had been considering what I had said: that they were very glad to hear I had a clergyman in my company, and they were very willing to give me the satisfaction I desired, and to be formally married as soon as I pleased; for they were far from desiring to part with their wives, and that they meant nothing but what was very honest when they chose them. So I appointed them to meet
me the next morning, and that in the meantime they should let
their wives know the meaning of the marriage-law; and that it
was not only to prevent any scandal, but also to oblige them that
they should not forsake them, whatever might happen.

The women were easily made sensible of the meaning of the
thing, and were very well satisfied with it, as indeed they had
reason to be. So they failed not to attend all together at my apart-
ment the next morning, where I brought out my clergyman; and
though he had not on a minister's gown, after the manner of Eng-
land, or the habit of a priest, after the manner of France, yet
having a black vest something like a cassock, with a sash round it,
he did not look very unlike a minister; and as for his language, I
was his interpreter.

But the seriousness of his behaviour to them, and the scruples
he made of marrying the women because they were not baptized
and professed Christians, gave them an exceeding reverence for his
person; and there was no need after that to enquire whether he
was a clergyman or no.

Indeed I was afraid his scruple would have been carried so far
as that he would not have married them at all; nay, notwithstanding
all I was able to say to him, he resisted me, though modestly,
yet very steadily, and at last refused absolutely to marry them,
unless he had first talked with the men and the women too; and
though at first I was a little backward to it, yet at last I agreed
to it with a good will, perceiving the sincerity of his design.

When he came to them, he let them know that I had acquainted
him with their circumstances, and with the present design: that
he was very willing to perform that part of his function, and
marry them as I had desired; but that before he could do it, he
must take the liberty to talk with them. He told them, that in
the sight of all indifferent men, and in the sense of the laws of
society, they had lived all this while in an open adultery; and that
it was true that nothing but the consenting to marry, or effectually
separating them from one another now, could put an end to it; but
there was a difficulty in it, too, with respect to the laws of Chris-
tian matrimony, which he was not fully satisfied about, namely,
that of marrying one that is a professed Christian to a savage, an
idolater, and a heathen, one that is not baptized; and yet that he did not see that there was time left for it to endeavour to persuade the women to be baptized, or to profess the name of Christ, whom they had, he doubted, heard nothing of, and without which they could not be baptized.

He told them he doubted they were but indifferent Christians themselves; that they had but little knowledge of God or of his ways; and therefore he could not expect that they had said much to their wives on that head yet; but that unless they would promise him to use their endeavour with their wives to persuade them to become Christians, and would, as well as they could, instruct them in the knowledge and belief of God that made them, and to worship Jesus Christ that redeemed them, he could not marry them; for he would have no hand in joining Christians with savages; nor was it consistent with the principles of the Christian religion; and was, indeed, expressly forbidden in God’s law.

They heard all this very attentively, and I delivered it very faithfully to them from his mouth, as near his own words as I could; only sometimes adding something of my own to convince them how just it was, and how I was of his mind; and I always very faithfully distinguished between what I said from myself and what were the clergyman’s words. They told me it was very true what the gentleman had said, that they were but very indifferent Christians themselves, and that they had never talked to their wives about religion. “Lord, sir,” says Will Atkins, “how should we teach them religion? Why, we know nothing ourselves; and besides, sir,” said he, “should we go to talk to them of God and Jesus Christ, and heaven and hell, ’twould be to make them laugh at us, and ask us what we believe ourselves? And if we should tell them we believe all the things that we speak of to them—such as of good people going to heaven, and wicked people to the devil—they would ask us where we intend to go ourselves, that believe all this and are such wicked fellows, as we indeed are? Why, sir, ’tis enough to give them a surfeit of religion at first hearing. Folks must have some religion themselves, before they pretend to teach other people.” “Will Atkins,” said I to him, “though I am afraid what you say has too much truth in it, yet can you not
tell your wife that she's in the wrong;—that there is a God and a religion better than her own; that her gods are idols, that they can neither hear nor speak; that there is a great Being that made all things, and that can destroy all that he has made; that he rewards the good and punishes the bad; and that we are to be judged by him at last for all we do here. You are not so ignorant but even Nature itself will teach you that all this is true; and I am satisfied you know it all to be true, and believe it yourself."

"That's true, sir," said Atkins; "but with what face can I say anything to my wife of all this, when she will tell me immediately it cannot be true?"

"Not true!" said I; "what do you mean by that?" "Why, sir," said he, "she will tell me it cannot be true that this God I shall tell her of can be just, or can punish or reward, since I am not punished and sent to the devil, that have been such a wicked creature as she knows I have been, even to her and to everybody else; and that I should be suffered to live that have been always acting so contrary to what I must tell her is good, and to what I ought to have done."

"Why, truly, Atkins," said I, "I am afraid thou speakest too much truth." And with that I let the clergyman know what Atkins had said, for he was impatient to know. "Oh," said the priest, "tell him there is one thing will make him the best minister in the world to his wife, and that is repentance; for none teach repentance like true penitents. He wants nothing but to repent, and then he will be so much the better qualified to instruct his wife. He will be then able to tell her that there is not only a God, and that he is the just Rewarder of good and evil, but that he is a merciful Being, and with infinite goodness and longsuffering forbears to punish those that offend, waiting to be gracious, and willing not the death of a sinner, but rather that he should return and live: that he oftentimes suffers wicked men to go on a long time, and even reserves damnation to the general day of retribution: that it is a clear evidence of God, and of a future state, that righteous men receive not their reward, or wicked men their punishment, till they come into another world;—and this will lead him to teach his wife the doctrine of the resurrection and of the
last judgment. Let him but repent for himself, he will be an excellent preacher of repentance to his wife."

I repeated all this to Atkins, who looked very serious all the while, and who, we could easily perceive, was more than ordinarily affected with it;—when being eager, and hardly suffering me to make an end. "I know all this, master," says he, "and a great deal more; but I han't the impudence to talk thus to my wife, when God and my own conscience knows, and my wife will be an undeniable evidence against me, that I have lived as if I had never heard of a God or future state, or anything about it. And to talk of my repenting—alas!" (and with that he fetched a deep sigh, and I could see that tears stood in his eyes) "'tis past all that with me." "Past it, Atkins!" said I; "what dost thou mean by that?" "I know well enough what I mean," says he; "I mean 'tis too late, and that is too true."

I told my clergyman word for word what he said. The poor zealous priest (I must call him so; for, be his opinion what it will, he had certainly a most singular affection for the good of other men's souls; and it would be hard to think he had not the like for his own)—I say, this zealous affectionate man could not refrain tears also. But recovering himself, he said to me, "Ask him but one question—Is he easy that it is too late, or is he troubled and wishes it were not so?" I put the question fairly to Atkins, and he answered with a great deal of passion, "How could any man be easy in a condition that certainly must end in eternal destruction?—that he was far from being easy, but that, on the contrary, he believed it would one time or other ruin him."

"What do you mean by that?" said I. Why, he said, he believed he should, one time or other, cut his throat to put an end to the terror of it.

The clergyman shook his head with a great concern in his face when I told him all this. But turning quick to me upon it, says he, "If that be his case, you may assure him it is not too late; Christ will give him repentance. But pray," says he, "explain this to him, that as no man is saved but by Christ and the merit of his passion procuring divine mercy for him, how can it be too late for any man to receive mercy? Does he think he is able to
A TRUE PENITENT.

sin beyond the power or reach of divine mercy? Pray tell him there may be a time when provoked mercy will no longer strive, and when God may refuse to hear, but that 'tis never too late for men to ask mercy: and we that are Christ's servants are commanded to preach mercy at all times, in the name of Jesus Christ, to all those that sincerely repent; so that 'tis never too late to repent."

I told Atkins all this, and he heard me with great earnestness; but it seemed as if he turned off the discourse to the rest, for he said to me he would go and have some talk with his wife; so he went out a while, and we talked to the rest. I perceived they were all stupidly ignorant as to matters of religion, much as I was when I went rambling away from my father, and yet that there were none of them backward to hear what had been said; and all of them seriously promised that they would talk with their wives about it, and do their endeavour to persuade them to turn Christians.

The clergyman smiled upon me when I reported what answer they gave, but said nothing a good while; but at last, shaking his head, "We that are Christ's servants," says he, "can go no further than to exhort and instruct; and when men comply, submit to the reproof, and promise what we ask, 'tis all we can do: we are bound to accept their good words. But believe me, sir," said he, "whatever you may have known of the life of that man you call Will Atkins, I believe he is the only sincere convert among them. I take that man to be a true penitent. I won't despair of the rest; but that man is apparently struck with the sense of his past life; and I doubt not but when he comes to talk religion to his wife, he will talk himself effectually into it; for attempting to teach others is sometimes the best way of teaching ourselves. I knew a man, who having nothing but a summary notion of religion himself, and being wicked and profligate to the last degree in his life, made a thorough reformation in himself by labouring to convert a Jew. If that poor Atkins begins but once to talk seriously of Jesus Christ to his wife, my life for it, he talks himself into a thorough convert—makes himself a penitent. And who knows what may follow?"
"WE STOOD AND LOOKED VERY STEADILY AT THEM."
A HOPEFUL SIGHT.

Upon this discourse, however, and their promising, as above, to endeavour to persuade their wives to embrace Christianity, he married the other three couple; but Will Atkins and his wife were not yet come in. After this, my clergyman, waiting a while, was curious to know where Atkins was gone; and turning to me, says he, "I entreat you, sir, let us walk out of your labyrinth here and look. I daresay we shall find this poor man somewhere or other talking seriously to his wife, and teaching her already something of religion." I began to be of the same mind; so we went out together, and I carried him a way which none knew but myself, and where the trees were so thick set, as that it was not easy to see through the thicket of leaves, and far harder to see in than to see out, when, coming to the edge of the wood, I saw Atkins and his tawny savage wife sitting under the shade of a bush, very eager in discourse. I stopped short till my clergyman came up to me, and then, having showed him where they were, we stood and looked very steadily at them a good while.

We observed him very earnest with her, pointing up to the sun, and to every quarter of the heavens, then down to the earth, then out to the sea, then to himself, then to her, to the woods, to the trees. "Now," says my clergyman, "you see my words are made good; the man preaches to her. Mark him now; he is telling her that our God has made him, and her, and the heavens, the earth, the sea, the woods, the trees, &c." "I believe he is," said I. Immediately we perceived Will Atkins start up upon his feet, fall down on his knees, and lift up both his hands. We suppose he said something; but we could not hear him, it was too far for that. He did not continue kneeling half a minute, but comes and sits down again by his wife, and talks to her again. We perceived then the woman very attentive; but whether she said anything or not, we could not tell. While the poor fellow was upon his knees, I could see the tears run plentifully down my clergyman's cheeks, and I could hardly forbear myself; but it was a great affliction to us both that we were not near enough to hear anything that passed between them.

Well, however, we could come no nearer for fear of disturbing them, so we resolved to see an end of this piece of still conversa-
tion, and it spoke loud enough to us without the help of voice. He sat down again, as I have said, close by her, and talked again earnestly to her; and two or three times we could see him embrace her most passionately. Another time we saw him take out his handkerchief and wipe her eyes, and then kiss her again with a kind of transport very unusual; and after several of these things we see him on a sudden jump up again, and lend her his hand to help her up, when immediately, leading her by the hand a step or two, they both kneeled down together, and continued so about two minutes.

My friend could bear it no longer, but cries out aloud, "St. Paul, St. Paul! 'behold, he prayeth!'" I was afraid Atkins would hear him, therefore I entreated him to withhold himself awhile, that we might see an end of the scene, which to me, I must confess, was the most affecting, and yet the most agreeable, that ever I saw in my life. Well, he strove with himself, and contained himself for awhile, but was in such raptures of joy to think that the poor heathen woman was become a Christian, that he was not able to contain himself. He wept several times, then throwing up his hands and crossing his breast, said over several things ejaculatory, and by way of giving God thanks for so miraculous a testimony of the success of our endeavours. Some he spoke softly, and I could not well hear, others audibly; some in Latin, some in French; then two or three times the tears of joy would interrupt him that he could not speak at all. But I begged that he would compose himself, and let us more narrowly and fully observe what was before us, which he did for a time, and the scene was not ended there yet; for after the poor man and his wife were risen again from their knees, we observed he stood talking still eagerly to her; and we observed by her motion that she was greatly affected with what he said, by her frequent lifting up her hands, laying her hand to her breast, and such other postures as usually express the greatest seriousness and attention. This continued about half a quarter of an hour, and then they walked away too, so that we could see no more of them in that situation.

I took this interval to talk with my clergyman; and first I told him I was glad to see the particulars we had both been witnesses
A DIFFICULTY STARTED.

To; that though I was hard enough of belief in such cases, yet that I began to think it was all very sincere here, both in the man and his wife, however ignorant they might both be; and I hoped such a beginning would have a yet more happy end. "And who knows," said I, "but these two may in time, by instruction and example, work upon some of the others?" "Some of them!" said he, turning quick upon me, "ay, upon all of them. Depend upon it, if those two savages, for he has been but little better, as you relate it, should embrace Jesus Christ, they will never leave till they work upon all the rest; for true religion is naturally communicative, and he that is once made a Christian will never leave a pagan behind him, if he can help it." I owned it was a most Christian principle to think so, and a testimony of a true zeal, as well as a generous heart in him. "But, my friend," said I, "will you give me leave to start one difficulty here? I cannot tell how to object the least thing against that affectionate concern which you show for the turning the poor people from their paganism to the Christian religion; but how does this comfort you, while these people are in your account out of the pale of the Catholic Church, without which you believe there is no salvation; so that you esteem these but heretics, and for other reasons, as effectually lost as the pagans themselves."

To this he answered with abundance of candour and Christian charity thus: "Sir, I am a Catholic of the Roman Church, and a priest of the order of St. Benedict, and I embrace all the principles of the Roman faith; but yet, if you will believe me, and that I do not speak in compliment to you, or in respect to my circumstances and your civilities; I say, nevertheless, I do not look up upon you who call yourselves Reformed without some charity. I dare not say, though I know it is our opinion in general; I say, I dare not say that you cannot be saved. I will by no means limit the mercy of Christ so far as to think that he cannot receive you into the bosom of his Church in a manner to us unperceivable, and which it is impossible for us to know; and I hope you have the same charity for us. I pray daily for your being all restored to Christ's Church, by whatsoever methods he, who is all-wise, is pleased to direct. In the meantime, sure you will allow it to
consist with me, as a Roman, to distinguish far between a Protestant and a pagan; between one that calls on Jesus Christ, though in a way which I do not think is according to the true faith, and a savage, a barbarian, that knows no God, no Christ, no Redeemer; and if you are not within the pale of the Catholic Church, we hope you are nearer being restored to it than those that know nothing of God or his Church. And I rejoice, therefore, when I see this poor man, whom you say has been a profligate and almost a murderer, kneel down and pray to Jesus Christ, as we suppose he did, though not fully enlightened, believing that God, from whom every such work proceeds, will sensibly touch his heart, and bring him to the further knowledge of that truth in his own time; and if God shall influence this poor man to convert and instruct the ignorant savage his wife, I can never believe that he shall be cast away himself. And have I not reason then to rejoice the nearer any are brought to the knowledge of Christ, though they may not be brought quite home into the bosom of the Catholic Church just at the time when I may desire it, leaving it to the goodness of Christ to perfect his work in his own time and his own way? Certainly I would rejoice if all the savages in America were brought like this poor woman to pray to God, though they were to be all Protestants at first, rather than they should continue pagans and heathens, firmly believing that He that had bestowed the first light to them would further illuminate them with a beam of his heavenly grace, and bring them into the pale of his Church when he should see good."

I was astonished at the sincerity and temper of this truly pious Papist, as much as I was oppressed by the power of his reasoning; and it presently occurred to my thoughts, that if such a temper was universal, we might be all Catholic Christians, whatever church or particular profession we joined to, or joined in; that a spirit of charity would soon work us all up into right principles. And in a word, as he thought that the like charity would make us all Catholics, so I told him I believed had all the members of his church the like moderation, they would soon be all Protestants. And there we left that part, for we never disputed at all.

However, I talked to him another way, and taking him by the
hand, "My friend," says I, "I wish all the clergy of the Romish Church were blessed with such moderation, and had an equal share of your charity. I am entirely of your opinion; but I must tell you that if you should preach such doctrine in Spain or Italy, they would put you into the Inquisition."

"It may be so," said he; "I know not what they might do in Spain or Italy; but I will not say they would be the better Christians for that severity, for I am sure there is no heresy in too much charity."

Well, as Will Atkins and his wife were gone, our business there was over, so we went back our own way; and when we came back, we found them waiting to be called in. Observing this, I asked my clergyman if we should discover to him that we had seen him under the bush, or no; and it was his opinion we should not, but that we should talk to him first, and hear what he would say to us. So we called him in alone, nobody being in the place but ourselves, and I began with him thus:—

Will Atkins, said I, prithee, what education had you? What was your father?

W. A. A better man than ever I shall be. Sir, my father was a clergyman.

R. C. What education did he give you?

W. A. He would have taught me well, sir; but I despised all education, instruction, or correction, like a beast as I was.

R. C. It's true, Solomon says, "He that despises reproof is brutish."

W. A. Ay, sir, I was brutish indeed—I murdered my father. For God's sake, sir, talk no more about that, sir—I murdered my poor father.

Pr. Ha! a murderer!

[Here the priest started (for I interpreted every word as he spoke it) and looked pale. It seems he believed that Will had really killed his own father.]

R. C. No, no, sir; I do not understand him so.—Will Atkins, explain yourself. You did not kill your father, did you, with your own hands?
W. A. No, sir; I did not cut his throat, but I cut the thread of all his comforts, and shortened his days. I broke his heart by the most ungrateful, unnatural return for the most tender, affectionate treatment that ever father gave or child could receive.

R. C. Well, I did not ask you about your father to extort this confession; I pray God give you repentance for it, and forgive you that and all your other sins. But I asked you because I see that though you have not much learning, yet you are not so ignorant as some are in things that are good; that you have known more of religion a great deal than you have practised.

W. A. Though you, sir, did not extort the confession that I made about my father, conscience does; and whenever we come to look back upon our lives, the sins against our indulgent parents are certainly the first that touch us. The wounds they make lie
WILL ATKINS' EXPLANATION.

deepest, and the weight they leave will lie heaviest upon the
mind, of all the sins we can commit.

R. C. You talk too feelingly and sensibly for me, Atkins. I
cannot bear it.

W. A. You bear it, master? I daresay you know nothing of it.

R. C. Yes, Atkins; every shore, every hill, nay, I may say
every tree, in this island is witness to the anguish of my soul, for
my ingratitude and base usage of a good, tender father; a father
much like yours, by your description. And I murdered my father
as well as you, Will Atkins; but I think, for all that, my repen-
tance is short of yours, too, by a great deal.

[I would have said more if I could have restrained my passions: but
I thought this poor man's repentance was so much sincerer than
mine, that I was going to leave off the discourse and retire; for I
was surprised with what he said, and thought that, instead of my
going about to teach and instruct him, the man was made a teacher
and instructor to me in a most surprising and unexpected manner.]

I laid all this before the young clergyman, who was greatly
affected with it, and said to me, "Did I not say, sir, that when
this man was converted he would preach to us all? I tell you,
sir, if this one man be made a true penitent, here will be no need
of me; he will make Christians of all on the island." But having
a little composed myself, I renewed my discourse with Will
Atkins.

But, Will, said I, how comes the sense of this matter to touch
you just now?

W. A. Sir, you have set me about a work that has struck a
dart through my very soul. I have been talking about God and
religion to my wife, in order, as you directed me, to make a
Christian of her; and she has preached such a sermon to me as I
shall never forget while I live.

R. C. No, no, it is not your wife has preached to you; but
when you were moving religious arguments to her, conscience has
flung them back upon you.

W. A. Ay, sir, with such a force as is not to be resisted.

R. C. Pray, Will, let us know what passed between you and
your wife, for I know something of it already.
W. A. Sir, it is impossible to give you a full account of it. I am too full to hold it, and yet have no tongue to express. But let her have said what she will, and though I cannot give you an account of it, this I can tell you of it, that I resolve to amend and reform my life.

R. C. But tell us some of it. How did you begin, Will? For this has been an extraordinary case, that's certain. She has preached a sermon indeed, if she has wrought this upon you.

W. A. Why, I first told her the nature of our laws about marriage, and what the reasons were that men and women were obliged to enter into such compacts as it was neither in the power of one or other to break; that otherwise order and justice could not be maintained, and men would run from their wives and abandon their children, mix confusedly with one another, and neither families be kept entire or inheritances be settled by legal descent.

R. C. You talk like a civilian, Will. Could you make her understand what you meant by inheritance and families? They know no such thing among the savages, but marry anyhow, without regard to relation, consanguinity, or family: brother and sister—nay, as I have been told, even the father and daughter, and son and the mother.

W. A. I believe, sir, you are misinformed; and my wife assures me of the contrary, and that they abhor it. Perhaps, for any farther relations they may not be so exact as we are; but she tells me they never touch one another in the near relations you speak of.

R. C. Well, what did she say to what you told her?

W. A. She said she liked it very well, and it was much better than in her country.

R. C. But did you tell her what marriage was?

W. A. Ay, ay; there began all our dialogue. I asked her if she would be married to me our way. She asked me what way that was. I told her marriage was appointed by God. And here we had a strange talk together, indeed, as ever man and wife had, I believe.

[N.B.—This dialogue between W. Atkins and his wife, as I took it down in writing just after he told it me, was as follows:—]
THE BENAMUCKEE GOD.

Wife. Appointed by your God! Why, have you a God in your country?

W. A. Yes, my dear; God is in every country.

Wife. No you God in my country. My country have the great old Benamuckee god.

W. A. Child, I am very unfit to show you who God is. God is in heaven, and made the heaven and the earth, the sea, and all that in them is.

Wife. No makee de earth. No you God make all earth; no make my country.

[W. A. laughed a little at her expression, of God not making her country.]

Wife. No laugh. Why laugh me? This no thing to laugh.

[He was justly reproved by his wife, for she was more serious than he at first.]

W. A. That's true indeed. I will not laugh any more, my dear.

Wife. Why you say you God make all?

W. A. Yes, child; our God made the whole world, and you, and me, and all things. For he is the only true God; there is no God but him. He lives for ever in heaven.

Wife. Why you no tell me long ago?

W. A. That's true indeed. But I have been a wicked wretch, and have not only forgotten to acquaint thee with anything before, but have lived without God in the world myself.

Wife. What! have you de great God in you country, you no know him! No say "O" to him! No do good thing for him? That no possible!

W. A. It is too true; though, for all that, we live as if there was no God in heaven, or that he had no power on earth.

Wife. But why God let you do so? Why he no makee you good live?

W. A. It is all our own fault.

Wife. But you say me he is great, much great, have much great power; can makee kill when he will. Why he no makee kill when you no serve him? No say "O" to him! No be good mans!
THE LIGHT OF REASON.

W. A. That is true. He might strike me dead; and I ought to expect it, for I have been a wicked wretch, that is true. But God is merciful, and does not deal with us as we deserve.

Wife. But then do not you tell God tankee for that too?

W. A. No, indeed; I have not thanked God for his mercy any more than I have feared God for his power.

Wife. Than you God no God. Me no think, believe, he be such one, great much power, strong. No makee kill you though you makee him much angry.

W. A. What! will my wicked life hinder you from believing in God? What a dreadful creature am I, and what a sad truth is it that the horrid lives of Christians hinders the conversion of heathens!

Wife. How me tink you have great much God up there—[she points up to heaven]—and yet no do well, do no good thing? Can he tell? Sure he no tell what you do?

W. A. Yes, yes; he knows and sees all things. He hears us speak; sees what we do; knows what we think, though we do not speak.

Wife. What! he no hear you swear, curse, speak the great damn?

W. A. Yes, yes: he hears it all.

Wife. Where be, then, the muchee great power strong?

W. A. He is merciful; that's all we can say for it. And this proves him to be the true God. He is God, and not man; and therefore we are not consumed.

[Here Will Atkins told us he was struck with horror to think how he could tell his wife so clearly that God sees, and hears, and knows the secret thoughts of the heart, and all that we do; and yet that he had dared to do all the vile things he had done.]

Wife. Merciful! What you call that?

W. A. He is our Father and Maker, and he pities and spares us.

Wife. So then he never makee kill, never angry when you do wicked? Then he no good himself, or no great able.

W. A. Yes, yes, my dear; he is infinitely good, and infinitely great, and able to punish too. And sometimes, to show his justice
and vengeance, he lets fly his anger to destroy sinners and make examples. Many are cut off in their sins.

Wife. But no make kill you yet? Than he tell you, maybe, that he no make you kill, so you make de bargain with him, you do bad thing he no be angry at you when he be angry at other mans.

W. A. No, indeed. My sins are all presumptions upon his goodness, and he would be infinitely just if he destroyed me as he has done other men.

Wife. Well! and yet no kill, no makee you dead? What you say to him for that? You no tell him tankee for all that too?

W. A. I am an unthankful, ungrateful dog, that's true.

Wife. Why he no makee you much good better? You say he makee you?

W. A. He made me, as he made all the world. It is I have formed myself and abused his goodness, and made myself an abominable wretch.

Wife. I wish you makee God know me. I no do bad wicked thing.

[Here Will Atkins said his heart sunk within him to hear a poor untaught creature desire to be taught to know God, and he such a wicked wretch that he could not say one word to her about God but what the reproach of his own carriage would make most irrational to her to believe; nay, that already she had told him that she could not believe in God, because he that was so wicked was not destroyed.]

W. A. My dear, you mean you wish I could teach you to know God, not God to know you; for he knows you already, and every thought in your heart.

Wife. Why, then, he know what I say to you now. He know me wish to know him; how shall me know who makee me?

W. A. Poor creature! he must teach thee; I cannot teach thee. I'll pray to him to teach thee to know him, and to forgive me that I am unworthy to teach thee.

[The poor fellow was in such an agony at her desiring him to make her know God, and her wishing to know him, that, he said, he fell down on his knees before her, and prayed to God to enlighten her mind]
with the saving knowledge of Jesus Christ, and to pardon his sins,
and accept of his being the unworthy instrument of instructing her
in the principles of religion; after which he sat down by her again,
and their dialogue went on.  N.B.—This was the time when we saw
him kneel down and lift up his hands.]

*Wife.* What you put down the knee for? What you hold up
the hand for? What you say? Who you speak to? What is
all that?

*W. A.* My dear, I bow my knees in token of my submission to
him that made me. I said "O" to him, as you call it, and as you
say your old men do to their idol Benamuckee; that is, I prayed
to him.

*Wife.* What you say "O" to him for?

*W. A.* I prayed to him to open your eyes and your under-
standing, that you may know him and be accepted by him.

*Wife.* Can he do that too?

*W. A.* Yes, he can; he can do all things.

*Wife.* But he no hear what you say?

*W. A.* Yes; he has bid us pray to him, and promised to hear
us.

*Wife.* Bid you pray? When he bid you? How he bid you?
What! you hear him speak?

*W. A.* No, we do not hear him speak; but he has revealed
himself many ways to us.

[Here he was at a great loss to make her understand that God has
revealed himself to us by his Word, and what his Word was.  But
at last he told it her thus:—]

*W. A.* God has spoken to some good men in former days, even
from heaven, by plain words; and God has inspired good men by
his Spirit and they have written all his laws down in a book.

*Wife.* Me no understand that. Where is Book?

*W. A.* Alas, my poor creature, I have not this book! but I
hope I shall one time or other get it for you, and help you to
read it.

[Here he embraced her with great affection, but with inexpressible grief
that he had not a Bible.]
THE WORD OF GOD.

Wife. But how you make me know that God teachee them to write that book?

W. A. By the same rule that we know him to be God.

Wife. What rule, what way you know him?

W. A. Because he teaches and commands nothing but what is good, righteous, and holy, and tends to make us perfectly good, as well as perfectly happy; and because he forbids, and commands us to avoid, all that is wicked, that is evil in itself, or evil in its consequences.

Wife. That me would understand, that me fain see. If he teache all good thing, forbid all wicked thing; he reward all good thing, punish all wicked thing; he make all thing, he give all thing; he hear me when I say O to him, as you go do just now; he make me good, if I wish be good, he spare me, no makee kill me when I no be good; all this you say he do, yet he be great God: me take, think, believe him be great God; me say O to him too with you, my dear.

Here the poor man could forbear no longer; but raising her up made her kneel by him, and he prayed to God aloud, to instruct her in the knowledge of himself by his Spirit, and that by some good providence, if possible, she might some time or other come to have a Bible, that she might read the Word of God, and be taught by it to know him.

This was the time that we saw him lift her up by the hand, and saw him kneel down by her, as above.

They had several other discourses, it seems, after this, too long set down here; and particularly she made him promise, that once he confessed his own life had been a wicked, abominable course of provocation against God, that he should reform it, and not make God angry any more, lest he should make him dead, as he called it, and then she should be left alone, and never be taught to know this God better; and lest he should be miserable, he had told her wicked men should be after death.

This was a strange account, and very affecting to us both, but particularly to the young clergyman. He was indeed wonderfully surprised with it, but under the greatest affliction imaginable that he could not talk to her, that he could not speak English to make
her understand him; and as she spoke but very broken English, he could not understand her. However, he turned himself to me and told me that he believed there must be more to do with this woman than to marry her. I did not understand him at first, but at length he explained himself, namely, that she ought to be baptized.

I agreed with him in that part readily, and was for going about it presently. "No, no; hold, sir," said he. "Though I would have her be baptized by all means, yet I must observe, that Will Atkins, her husband, has indeed brought her in a wonderful manner to be willing to embrace a religious life, and has given her just ideas of the being of a God, of his power, justice, mercy, yet I desire to know of him if he has said anything to her of Jesus Christ, and of the salvation of sinners, of the nature of faith in him, and redemption by him, of the Holy Spirit, the resurrection, the last judgment, and a future state."

I called Will Atkins again, and asked him; but the poor fellow fell immediately into tears, and told us he had said something to her of all those things, but that he was himself so wicked a creature, and his own conscience so reproached him with his horrid ungodly life, that he trembled at the apprehensions that her knowledge of him should lessen the attention she should give to those things, and make her rather contempt religion than receive it. But he was assured, he said, that her mind was so disposed to receive due impressions of all those things, that if I would but discourse with her she would make it appear to my satisfaction that my labour would not be lost upon her.

Accordingly I called her in, and placing myself as interpreter between my religious priest and the woman, I entreated him to begin with her. But sure such a sermon was never preached by a Popish priest in these latter ages of the world; and, as I told him, I thought he had all the zeal, all the knowledge, all the sincerity of a Christian, without the error of a Roman Catholic; and that I took him to be such a clergyman as the Roman bishops were before the Church of Rome assumed spiritual sovereignty over the consciences of men.

In a word, he brought the poor woman to embrace the know-
AN INDIAN BAPTIZED.

ledge of Christ, and of redemption by him, not with wonder and astonishment only, as she did the first notions of a God, but with joy and faith, with an affection and a surprising degree of understanding scarce to be imagined, much less to be expressed; and at her own request she was baptized.

When he was preparing to baptize her, I entreated him that he would perform that office with some caution, that the man might not perceive he was of the Roman Church, if possible, because of other ill consequences which might attend a difference among us in that very religion which we were instructing the other in. He told me that, as he had no consecrated chapel, no proper things for the office, I should see he would do it in a manner that I should not know by it that he was a Roman Catholic myself, if I had not known it before. And so he did; for saying only some words over to himself in Latin, which I could not understand, he poured a whole dishful of water upon the woman's head, pronouncing in French, very loud, "Mary (which was the name her husband desired me to give her, for I was her godfather), I baptize thee in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost;" so that none could know anything by it what religion he was of. He gave the benediction afterwards in Latin; but either Will Atkins did not know but it was in French, or else did not take notice of it at that time.

As soon as this was over, we married them; and after the marriage was over, he turned himself to Will Atkins, and in a very affectionate manner exhorted him not only to persevere in that good disposition he was in, but to support the convictions that were upon him by a resolution to reform his life; told him it was in vain to say he repented if he did not forsake his crimes; represented to him how God had honoured him with being the instrument of bringing his wife to the knowledge of the Christian religion, and that he should be careful he did not dishonour the grace of God, and that if he did, he would see the heathen a better Christian than himself—the savage converted and the instrument cast away.

He said a great many good things to them both, and then recommending them, in a few words, to God's goodness, gave
them the benediction again, I repeating everything to them in English; and thus ended the ceremony. I think it was the most pleasant, agreeable day to me that ever I passed in my whole life.

But my clergyman had not done yet. His thoughts hung con-

"As soon as this was over, we married them."

tinually upon the conversion of the seven-and-thirty savages, and fain he would have stayed upon the island to have undertaken it. But I convinced him, first, that his undertaking was impracticable in itself; and secondly, that perhaps I would put it into a way of being done in his absence to his satisfaction: of which by-and-by.

Having thus brought the affair of the island to a narrow com-

pass, I was preparing to go on board the ship, when the young
man who I had taken out of the famished ship's company came to me, and told me he understood I had a clergyman with me, and that I had caused the Englishmen to be married to the savages whom they called wives; that he had a match too, which he desired might be finished before I went, between two Christians, which he hoped would not be disagreeable to me.

I knew this must be the young woman who was his mother's servant, for there was no other Christian woman on the island. So I began to persuade him not to do anything of that kind rashly, or because he found himself in this solitary circumstance. I represented to him that he had some considerable substance in the world, and good friends, as I understood by himself and by his maid also; that the maid was not only poor and a servant, but was unequal to him, she being six or seven and twenty years old, and he not above seventeen or eighteen; that he might very probably, with my assistance, make a remove from this wilderness, and come into his own country again; and that then it would be a thousand to one but he would repent his choice; and the dislike of that circumstance might be disadvantageous to both. I was going to say more, but he interrupted me, smiling, and told me, with a great deal of modesty, that I mistook in my guesses; that he had nothing of that kind in his thoughts, his present circumstance being melancholy and disconsolate enough; and he was very glad to hear that I had thoughts of putting them in a way to see their country again; and nothing should have put him upon staying there but that the voyage I was going was so exceeding long and hazardous, and would carry him quite out of the reach of all his friends: that he had nothing to desire of me but that I would settle him in some little property in the island where he was, give him a servant or two, and some few necessaries, and he would settle himself here like a planter, waiting the good time when, if ever I returned to England, I would redeem him, and hoped I would not be unmindful of him when I came to England: that he would give me some letters to his friends in London to let them know how good I had been to him, and in what part of the world and what circumstance I had left him in: that he promised me that, whenever I redeemed him, the plantation, and all the
improvements he had made upon it, let the value be what it would, should be wholly mine.

His discourse was very prettily delivered, considering his youth, and was the more agreeable to me because he told me positively the match was not for himself. I gave him all possible assurances that, if I lived to come safe to England, I would deliver his letters, and do his business effectually, and that he might depend I would never forget the circumstance I had left him in. But still I was impatient to know who was the person to be married, upon which he told me it was my Jack of all trades and his maid Susan.

I was most agreeably surprised when he named the match, for indeed I thought it very suitable. The character of that man have given already; and as for the maid, she was a very honest, modest, sober, and religious young woman; had a very good share of sense, was agreeable enough in her person, spoke very handsomely and to the purpose, always with decency and good manners, and not backward to speak when anything required it, or impertinently forward to speak when it was not her business; very handy and housewifely in anything that was before her; an excellent manager, and fit indeed to have been governess to the whole island; she knew very well how to behave to all kind of folks she had about her, and to better, if she had found any there.

The match being proposed in this manner, we married them the same day; and as I was father at the altar, as I may say, and gave her away, so I gave her a portion; for I appointed her and her husband a handsome large space of ground for their plantation. And indeed this match, and the proposal the young gentleman made to give him a small property in the island, put me upon parceling it out amongst them, that they might not quarrel afterwards about their situation.

This sharing out the land to them I left to Will Atkins, who, indeed, was now grown a most sober, grave, managing fellow, perfectly reformed, exceeding pious and religious, and, as far as I may be allowed to speak positively in such a case, I verily believe was a true sincere penitent.

He divided things so justly, and so much to everyone's satisfaction, that they only desired one general writing under my hand
GOVERNMENT OF THE ISLAND.

le, which I caused to be drawn up and signed and em, setting out the bounds and situation of every tion, and testifying that I gave them thereby severally the whole possession and inheritance of the respective or farms, with their improvements, to them and their ng all the rest of the island as my own property, and t for every particular plantation after eleven years, if e from me or in my name, came to demand it, pro-tested copy of the same writing.
government and laws among them, I told them I was of giving them better rules than they were able to give only made them promise me to live in love and good od with one another. And so I prepared to leave

I must not omit, and this is, that being now settled commonwealth among themselves, and having much and, it was but odd to have seven and thirty Indians k of the island independent, and indeed unemployed; the providing themselves food, which they had dif-
h in too, sometimes, they had no manner of business to manage. I proposed, therefore, to the governor at he should go to them, with Friday's father, and em to remove, and either plant for themselves or take neir several families as servants, to be maintained for but without being absolute slaves; for I would not to make them slaves by force by any means, because ir liberty given them by capitulation, and, as it were, rrender, which they ought not to break.

willingly embraced the proposal, and came all very ong with him; so we allotted them land and planta-three or four accepted of, but all the rest chose to be servants in the several families we had settled. And lony was, in a manner, settled as follows:—The assed my original habitation, which was the capital tended their plantations all along the side of the made the creek that I have so often described, as far ; and as they increased their culture, it went always
eastward. The English lived in the north-east part, where Will Atkins and his comrades began, and came on southward and south-west, towards the back part of the Spaniards; and every plantation had a great addition of land to take in, if they found occasion, so that they need not jostle one another for want of room.

All the west end of the island was left uninhabited, that if any of the savages should come on shore there, only for their usual customary barbarities, they might come and go. If they disturbed nobody, nobody would disturb them; and no doubt but they were often ashore and went away again, for I never heard that the planters were ever attacked or disturbed any more.

It now came into my thoughts that I had hinted to my friend the clergyman that the work of converting the savages might perhaps be set on foot in his absence to his satisfaction. And I told him that now I thought it was put in a fair way; for the savages being thus divided among the Christians, if they would but every one of them do their part with those which came under their hands, I hoped it might have a very good effect.

He agreed presently in that, if, said he, they will do their part. "But how," says he, "shall we obtain that of them?" I told him we would call them all together, and leave it in charge with them, or go to them one by one, which he thought best. So we divided it, he to speak to the Spaniards, who were all Papists, and I to the English, who were all Protestants; and we recommended it earnestly to them, and made them promise that they never would make any distinction of Papist or Protestant in their exhorting the savages to turn Christians; but teach them the general knowledge of the true God, and of their Saviour Jesus Christ. And they likewise promised us, that they would never have any differences or disputes one with another about religion.

When I came to W. Atkins's house—I may call it so, for such a house, or such a piece of basket-work, I believe, was not standing in the world again; I say, when I came there, I found the young woman I have mentioned above and W. Atkins's wife were become intimates; and this prudent religious young woman had perfected the work Will Atkins had begun. And though it was
not above four days after what I have related, yet the new baptized savage woman was made such a Christian as I have seldom heard of any like her in all my observation or conversation in the world.

It came next into my mind, in the morning before I went to them, that amongst all the needful things I had to leave with them I had not left them a Bible; in which I showed myself less considering for them than my good friend the widow was for me when she sent me the cargo of an hundred pounds from Lisbon, where she packed up three Bibles and a Prayer-book. However, the good woman’s charity had a greater extent than ever she imagined; for they were reserved for the comfort and instruction of those that made much better use of them than I had done.

I took one of the Bibles in my pocket, and when I came to Will Atkins’s tent or house, and found the young woman and Atkins’s baptized wife had been discoursing of religion together; for W. Atkins told it me with a great deal of joy: I asked if they were together now, and he said, “Yes,” so I went into the house, and he with me, and we found them together very earnest in discourse. “Oh, sir,” says Will Atkins, “when God has sinners to reconcile to himself and aliens to bring home, he never wants a messenger; my wife has got a new instructor. I knew I was unworthy as I was uncapable of that work. That young woman has been sent hither from heaven; she is enough to convert a whole island of savages!” The young woman blushed, and rose up to go away, but I desired her to sit still. I told her she had a good work upon her hands, and I hoped God would bless her in it.

We talked a little, and I did not perceive they had any book among them, though I did not ask; but I put my hand in my pocket, and pulled out my Bible. “Here,” says I to Atkins, “I have brought you an assistant that perhaps you had not before.” The man was so confounded that he was not able to speak for some time; but recovering himself, he takes it with both his hands, and turning to his wife, “Here, my dear,” says he; “did not I tell you our God, though he lives above, could hear what we said? Here’s the book I prayed for when you and I kneeled
EARLY TRAINING.

down under the bush: now God has heard us, and sent it." When he had said so, the man fell into such transports of a passionate joy, that between the joy of having it, and giving God thanks for it, the tears run down his face like a child that was crying.

The woman was surprised, and was like to have run into a mistake that none of us were aware of; for she firmly believed God had sent the book upon her husband's petition. It is true that providentially it was so, and might be taken so in a consequent sense; but I believed it would have been no difficult matter at that time to have persuaded the poor woman to have believed that an express messenger came from heaven on purpose to bring that individual book. But it was too serious a matter to suffer any delusion to take place, so I turned to the young woman, and told her we did not desire to impose upon the new convert in her first and more ignorant understanding of things, and begged her to explain to her that God may be very properly said to answer our petitions, when in the course of his providence such things are in a particular manner brought to pass as we petitioned for; but we do not expect returns from heaven in a miraculous and particular manner, and that it is our mercy that it is not so.

This the young woman did afterwards effectually, so that there was, I assure you, no priestcraft used here; and I should have thought it one of the most unjustifiable frauds in the world to have had it so. But the surprise of joy upon Will Atkins is really not to be expressed; and there we may be sure there was no delusion. Sure no man was ever more thankful in the world for anything of its kind than he was for his Bible; nor, I believe, never any man was glad of a Bible from a better principle. And though he had been a most profligate creature, desperate, headstrong, outrageous, furious, and wicked to a great degree, yet this man is a standing rule to us all for the well instructing children, namely, that parents should never give over to teach and instruct, or ever despair of the success of their endeavours, let the children be ever so obstinate, refractory, or to appearance insensible of instruction. For if ever God in his providence touches the consciences of such, the force of their education returns upon them,
and the early instruction of parents is not lost, though it may have been many years laid asleep, but some time or other they may find the benefit of it.

Thus it was with this poor man. However ignorant he was, or divested of religion and Christian knowledge, he found he had some to do with now more ignorant than himself, and that the least part of the instruction of his good father that could now come to his mind was of use to him.

Among the rest it occurred to him, he said, how his father used to insist much upon the inexpressible value of the Bible, the privilege and blessing of it to nations, families, and persons; but he never entertained the least notion of the worth of it till now, when, being to talk to heathens, savages, and barbarians, he wanted the help of the written oracle for his assistance.

The young woman was very glad of it also for the present occasion, though she had one, and so had the youth, on board our ship among their goods, which were not yet brought on shore. And now having said so many things of this young woman, I cannot omit telling one story more of her and myself, which has something in it very informing and remarkable.

I have related to what extremity the poor young woman was reduced; how her mistress was starved to death, and did die on board that unhappy ship we met at sea; and how the whole ship's company being reduced to the last extremity, the gentlewoman and her son and this maid were first hardly used as to provisions, and at last totally neglected and starved; that is to say, brought to the last extremity of hunger.

One day being discoursing with her upon the extremities they suffered, I asked her if she could describe by what she had felt what it was to starve, and how it appeared. She told me she believed she could, and she told her tale very distinctly thus:—

"First, sir," said she, "we had for some days fared exceeding hard, and suffered very great hunger; but now at last we were wholly without food of any kind, except sugar and a little wine and a little water. The first day after I had received no food at all, I found myself towards evening first empty and sickish at my stomach, and nearer night, mightily inclined to yawning and
THE Pangs OF HUNGER.

sleepy. I lay down on a couch in the great cabin to sleep, and slept about three hours, and awaked a little refreshed, having taken a glass of wine when I lay down. After being about three hours awake, it being about five o'clock in the morning, I found myself empty, and my stomach sickish, and lay down again, but could not sleep at all, being very faint and ill; and thus I continued all the second day with a strange variety, first hungry, then sick again, with retchings to vomit. The second night, being obliged to go to bed again without any food more than a draught of fair water, and being asleep, I dreamed I was at Barbadoes and that the market was mightily stocked with provisions; that I bought some for my mistress, and went and dined very heartily.

"I thought my stomach was as full after this as any would have been after, or at a good dinner; but when I waked, I was exceedingly sunk in my spirits to find myself in the extremity of famine. The last glass of wine we had I drank, and put sugar in it, because of its having some spirit to supply nourishment; but there being no substance in the stomach for the digesting office to work upon, I found the only effect of the wine was to raise disagreeable fumes from the stomach into the head; and I lay, as they told me, stupid and senseless, as one drunk for some time.

"The third day, in the morning, after a night of strange and confused inconsistent dreams, and rather dozing than sleeping, I waked ravenous and furious with hunger; and I question, had not my understanding returned and conquered it—I say I question whether, if I had been a mother, and had had a little child with me, its life would have been safe or not.

"This lasted about three hours, during which time I was twice raging mad as any creature in Bedlam, as my young master told me, and as he can now inform you.

"In one of these fits of lunacy or distraction, whether by the motion of the ship or some slip of my foot, I know not, I fell down and struck my face against the corner of a pallet bed, in which my mistress lay, and with the blow the blood gushed out of my nose; and the cabin-boy bringing me a little basin, I sat down and bled into it a great deal, and as the blood run from me
came to myself, and the violence of the flame or the fever I was abated, and so did the ravenous part of the hunger.

"Then I grew sick, and retched to vomit, but could not, for I d nothing in my stomach to bring up. After I had bled some I swooned, and they all believed I was dead; but I came to myself soon after, and then had a most dreadful pain in my stomach, not to be described—not like the colic, but a gnawing pain for food; and towards night it went off with a kind of rest—which longing or longing for food. I took another draught of water with sugar in it, but my stomach loathed the sugar, and fought it all up again; then I took a draught of water without sugar, and that stayed with me; and I laid me down upon the d, praying most heartily that it would please God to take me away; and composing my mind in hopes of it, I slumbered awhile, and then waking, thought myself dying, being light with vapours on an empty stomach. I recommended my soul then to God, and earnestly wished that somebody would throw me into the grave.

"All this while my mistress lay by me, just, as I thought, expiring, but bore it with much more patience than I; and gave the last bit of bread she had left to her child, my young master, who would not have taken it, but she obliged him to eat it; and believe it saved his life.

"Towards the morning I sate again, and first when I awaked fell into a violent passion of crying, and after that had a second of violent hunger. I got up ravenous, and in a most dreadful condition. Had my mistress been dead, as much as I loved her, I am certain I should have eaten a piece of her flesh with as much relish and as unconcerned as ever I did the flesh of any creature appointed for food; and once or twice I was going to bite my own arm. At last I saw the basin in which was the blood I had bled at my nose the day before. I ran to it, and swallowed it with such haste and such a greedy appetite as if I had wondered nobody had taken it before, and afraid it should be taken from me now.

"Though, after it was down, the thoughts of it filled me with terror, yet it checked the fit of hunger; and I drank a draught
of fair water, and was composed and refreshed for some hours after it. This was the fourth day, and thus I held it, till towards night, when, within the compass of three hours, I had all these several circumstances over again, one after another—namely, sick, sleepy, eagerly hungry, pain in the stomach, then ravenous again, then sick again, then lunatic, then crying, then ravenous again; and so every quarter of an hour, and my strength wasted exceedingly. At night I laid me down, having no comfort but in the hope that I should die before morning.

"All this night I had no sleep; but the hunger was now turned into a disease, and I had a terrible colic and griping by wind, instead of food, having found its way into the bowels. And in this condition I lay till morning, when I was surprised a little with the cries and lamentations of my young master, who called out to me that his mother was dead. I lifted myself up a little, for I had not strength to rise; but found she was not dead, though she was able to give very little signs of life.

"I had then such convulsions in my stomach, for want of some sustenance, that I cannot describe, with such frequent throes and pangs of appetite that nothing but the tortures of death can imitate. And in this condition I was when I heard the seamen above cry out, 'A sail! a sail!' and halloo and jump about as if they were distracted.

"I was not able to get off from the bed, and my mistress much less; and my young master was so sick that I thought he had been expiring; so we could not open the cabin door, or get any account what it was that occasioned such a combustion, nor had we had any conversation with the ship's company for two days, they having told us that they had not a mouthful of anything to eat in the ship; and they told us afterwards they thought we had been dead.

"It was this dreadful condition we were in when you were sent to save our lives; and how you found us, sir, you know as well as I, and better too."

This was her own relation, and is such a distinct account of starving to death as I confess I never met with, and was exceeding entertaining to me. I am the rather apt to believe it to be a true account, because the youth gave me an account of a good
PRUDENT PRECAUTIONS.

part of it, though, I must own, not so distinct and so feelingly as his maid; and the rather, because it seems his mother fed him at the price of her own life. But the poor maid, though her constitution being stronger than that of her mistress, who was in years, and a weakly woman too, she might struggle harder with it; I say, the poor maid might be supposed to feel the extremity something sooner than her mistress, who might be allowed to keep the last bit something longer than she parted with any to relieve the maid. No question, as the case is here related, if our ship, or some other, had not so providentially met them, a few days more would have ended all their lives, unless they had prevented it by eating one another; and even that, as their case stood, would have served them but a little while, they being five hundred leagues from any land or any possibility of relief other than in the miraculous manner it happened; but this is by the way. I return to my disposition of things among the people.

And, first, it is to be observed here, that for many reasons I did not think fit to let them know anything of the sloop I had framed, and which I thought of setting up among them; for I found, at least at my first coming, such seeds of divisions among them, that I saw it plainly, had I set up the sloop and left it among them, they would upon every light disgust have separated, and gone away from one another; or perhaps have turned pirates, and so made the island a den of thieves, instead of a plantation of sober and religious people, so as I intended it. Nor did I leave the two pieces of brass cannon that I had on board, or the two quarter-deck guns that my nephew took extraordinarily, for the same reason. I thought it was enough to qualify them for a defensive war against any that should invade them; but not to set them up for an offensive war, or to encourage them to go abroad to attack others, which in the end would only bring ruin and destruction upon themselves and all their undertaking. I reserved the sloop, therefore, and the guns for their service another way, as I shall observe in its place.

I have now done with the island. I left them all in good circumstances, and in a flourishing condition, and went on board my ship again, having been five and twenty days among them; and
as they were all resolved to stay upon the island till I came to remove them, I promised to send some further relief from the Brazils, if I could possibly find an opportunity; and particularly, I promised to send them some cattle, such as sheep, hogs, and cows; for as to the two cows and calves which I brought from England, we had been obliged by the length of our voyage to kill them at sea, for want of hay to feed them.

The next day, giving them a salute of five guns at parting, we set sail, and arrived at the Bay of All Saints in the Brazils in about twenty-two days, meeting nothing remarkable in our passage but this,—that about three days after we sailed, being becalmed, and the current setting strong to the east-north-east, running, as it were, into a bay or gulf on the land side, we were driven something out of our course, and once or twice our men cried, "Land to the eastward;" but whether it was the continent or islands we could not tell by any means.

But the third day towards evening, the sea smooth, and the weather calm, we saw the sea as it were covered towards the land with something very black. Not being able to discover what it was till after some time, our chief mate going up the main shrouds a little way and looking at them with a perspective, cried out it was an army. I could not imagine what he meant by an army, and spoke a little hastily, calling the fellow a fool, or some such word. "Nay, sir," says he, "don't be angry, for 'tis an army and a fleet too, for I believe there are a thousand canoes; and you may see them paddle along, and they are coming towards us, too, apace."

I was a little surprised then, indeed, and so was my nephew the captain; for he had heard such terrible stories of them in the island, and having never been in those seas before, that he could not tell what to think of it, but said two or three times we should all be devoured. I must confess, considering we were becalmed, and the current set strong towards the shore, I liked it the worse. However, I bade him not be afraid, but bring the ship to an anchor as soon as we came so near to know that we must engage them.

The weather continued calm, and they came on apace towards
us; so I gave order to come to an anchor, and furl all our sails. As for the savages, I told them they had nothing to fear but fire; and therefore they should get their boats out and fasten them, one close by the head, and the other by the stern, and man them both well, and wait the issue in that posture. This I did, that the men in the boats might be ready with skeets and buckets to put out any fire these savages might endeavour to fix to the outside of the ship.

In this posture we lay by for them, and in a little while they came up with us; but never was such a horrid sight seen by Christians. My mate was much mistaken in his calculation of their number, I mean of a thousand canoes; the most we could make of them, when they came up, being about a hundred and six and twenty; and a great many of them too; for some of them had sixteen or seventeen men in them, and some more, and the least six or seven.

When they came nearer to us they seemed to be struck with wonder and astonishment, as at a sight which they had doubtless never seen before; nor could they at first, as we afterwards understood, know what to make of us. They came boldly up, however, very near to us, and seemed to go about to row round us; but we called to our men in the boats not to let them come too near them.

This very order brought us to an engagement with them without our designing it; for five or six of their large canoes came so near our longboat, that our men beckoned with their hands to them to keep back, which they understood very well, and went back; but at their retreat about fifty arrows came on board us from those boats, and one of our men in the longboat was very much wounded.

However, I called to them not to fire by any means; but we handed down some deal boards into the boat, and the carpenter presently set up a kind of fence, like waste boards, to cover them from the arrows of the savages, if they should shoot again.

About half an hour afterwards they came all up in a body astern of us and pretty near us, so near that we could easily discern what they were, though we could not tell their design. And I
easily found they were some of my old friends, the same sort of
savages that I had been used to engage with; and in a little time
more they rowed a little farther out to sea, till they came directly
broadside with us, and then rowed down straight upon us, till
they came so near that they could hear us speak. Upon this I
ordered all my men to keep close, lest they should shoot any more
arrows, and made all our guns ready; but being so near as to be
within hearing, I made Friday go out upon the deck, and call out
aloud to them in his language to know what they meant; which
accordingly he did. Whether they understood him or not, that
I knew not; but as soon as he had called to them, six of them,
who were in the foremost or nighest boat to us, turns their canoes
from us, and stooping down, showed us their naked backsides.
Whether this was a defiance or challenge we know not, or whether
it was done in mere contempt, or as a signal to the rest; but im-
mediately Friday cried out they were going to shoot, and un-
happily for him, poor fellow, they let fly about three hundred of
their arrows, and to my inexpressible grief, killed poor Friday,
no other man being in their sight.

The poor fellow was shot with no less than three arrows, and
about three more fell very near him; such unlucky marksmen
they were.

I was so enraged with the loss of my old servant, the companion
of all my sorrows and solitudes, that I immediately ordered five
guns to be loaded with small shot, and four with great, and gave
them such a broadside as they had never heard in their lives
before, to be sure.

They were not above half a cable length off when we fired, and
our gunners took their aim so well that three or four of their
canoes were overset, as we had reason to believe, by one shot
only.

The ill manners of turning up their bare backsides to us gave
us no great offence, neither did I know for certain whether that
which would pass for the greatest contempt among us might be
understood so by them or not; therefore, in return, I had only
resolved to have fired four or five guns at them with powder only,
which I knew would fright them sufficiently. But when they
at us directly with all the fury they were capable of, and
dally as they had killed my poor Friday, who I so entirely
and valued, and who indeed so well deserved it, I not only
been justified before God and man, but would have been very

"Poor Friday was shot with no less than three arrows."

if I could, to have overset every canoe there, and drowned
one of them.

an neither tell how many we killed or how many we wounded
his broadside; but sure such a fright and hurry never was
among such a multitude. There were thirteen or fourteen
heir canoes split and overset in all, and the men all set
a-swimming; the rest, frightened out of their wits, scoured away as fast as they could, taking but little care to save those whose boats were split or spoiled with our shot. So I suppose that they were many of them lost. And our men took up one poor fellow swimming for his life, above an hour after they were all gone.

Our small shot from our cannon must needs kill and wound a great many; but in short, we never knew anything how it went with them, for they fled so fast, that in three hours or thereabouts we could not see above three or four straggling canoes; nor did we ever see the rest any more, for a breeze of wind springing up the same evening, we weighed and set sail for the Brazils.

We had a prisoner, indeed, but the creature was so sullen that he would neither eat nor speak, and we all fancied he would starve himself to death. But I took a way to cure him, for I made them take him and turn him into the longboat, and made him believe they would toss him into the sea again, and so leave him where they found him, if he would not speak. Nor would that do; but they really did throw him into the sea, and came away from him; and then he followed them, for he swam like a cork, and called to them in his tongue, though they knew not one word of what he said. However, at last they took him in again, and then he began to be more tractable, nor did I ever design they should drown him.

We were now under sail again; but I was the most disconsolate creature alive for want of my man Friday, and would have been very glad to have gone back to the island, to have taken one of the rest from thence for my occasion, but it could not be; so we went on. We had one prisoner, as I have said, and 'twas a long while before we could make him understand anything; but, in time, our men taught him some English, and he began to be a little tractable. Afterwards we inquired what country he came from, but could make nothing of what he said; for his speech was so odd, all gutturals, and spoke in the throat in such a hollow, odd manner, that we could never form a word from him; and we were all of opinion that they might speak that language as well if they were gagged, as otherwise. Nor could we perceive that they had any occasion either for teeth, tongue, lips, or palate, but
formed their words just as a hunting horn forms a tune with an open throat. He told us, however, some time after, when we had taught him to speak a little English, that they were going with their kings to fight a great battle. When he said kings, we asked him how many kings? He said they were FIVE NATION,—we could not make him understand the plural s,—and that they all joined to go against TWO NATION. We asked him what made them come up to us? He said, "To makee te great wonder look;" where it is to be observed that all those natives, as also those of Africa, when they learn English, they always add two e's at the end of the words where we use one, and make the accent upon them, as makkè, takè, and the like; and we could not break them of it; nay, I could hardly make Friday leave it off, though at last he did.

And now I name the poor fellow once more, I must take my last leave of him; poor, honest Friday! We buried him with all the decency and solemnity possible, by putting him into a coffin, and throwing him into the sea. And I caused them to fire eleven guns for him; and so ended the life of the most grateful, faithful, honest, and most affectionate servant that ever man had.

We went now away with a fair wind for Brazil, and in about twelve days' time we made land in the latitude of five degrees south of the line, being the north-easternmost land of all that part of America. We kept on south by east in sight of the shore four days, when we made Cape St. Augustine, and in three days came to an anchor off of the Bay of All Saints, the old place of my deliverance, from whence came both my good and evil fate.

Never ship came to this part that had less business than I had; and yet it was with great difficulty that we were admitted to hold the least correspondence on shore. Not my partner himself, who was alive, and made a great figure among them; not my two merchants' trustees; not the fame of my wonderful preservation in that island, could obtain me that favour. But my partner, remembering that I had given five hundred moidores to the prior of the monastery of the Augustines, and two hundred and seventy-two to the poor, went to the monastery, and obliged the prior that then was to go to the governor and get leave for me personally, with
the captain and one more, besides eight seamen, to come on shore, and no more; and this upon condition, absolutely capitulated for, that we should not offer to land any goods out of the ship, or to carry any person away without license.

They were so strict with us as to landing any goods, that it was with extreme difficulty that I got on shore three bales of English goods, such as fine broadcloths, stuffs, and some linen, which I had brought for a present to my partner.

He was a very generous, broad-hearted man, though like me, he came from little at first; and though he knew not that I had the least design of giving him anything, he sent me on board a present of fresh provisions, wine, and sweetmeats, worth above thirty moidores, including some tobacco, and three or four fine medals in gold. But I was even with him in my present, which, as I have said, consisted of fine broadcloth, English stuffs, lace, and fine Hollands. Also I delivered him about the value of one hundred pounds sterling in the same goods, for other uses; and I obliged him to set up the sloop which I had brought with me from England, as I have said, for the use of my colony, in order to send the refreshments I intended to my plantation.

Accordingly he got hands, and finished the sloop in a very few days, for she was ready framed; and I gave the master of her such instructions as he could not miss the place, nor did he miss them, as I had an account from my partner afterwards. I got him soon loaded with the small cargo I sent them; and one of our seamen that had been on shore with me there offered to go with the sloop and settle there, upon my letter to the governor Spaniard to allot him a sufficient quantity of land for a plantation, and giving him some clothes, and tools for his planting work, which he said he understood, having been an old planter at Maryland, and a buccaneer into the bargain.

I encouraged the fellow, by granting all he desired; and as an addition, I gave him the savage which we had taken prisoner of war to be his slave, and ordered the governor Spaniard to give him his share of everything he wanted with the rest.

When we came to fix this man out, my old partner told me there was a certain very honest fellow, a Brazil planter of his ac-
SUPPLIES FOR THE ISLAND. 477

ce, who had fallen into the displeasure of the Church. "I
what the matter is with him," says he, "but on my con-
think he is a heretic in his heart, and he has been obliged
himself for fear of the Inquisition; that he would be
of such an opportunity to make his escape with his wife
daughters; and if I would let them go to my island, and
a plantation, he would give them a small stock to begin
the officers of the Inquisition had seized all his effects and
he had nothing left but a little household stuff, and
And," adds he, "though I hate his principles, yet I
t have him fall into their hands; for he would assuredly
alive, if he does."

ed this presently, and joined my Englishman with them,
onealed the man and his wife and daughters on board
till the sloop put out to go to sea, and then, having put
goods on board the sloop some time before, we put them
the sloop after he was got out of the bay.
amen were mightily pleased with this new partner; and
k, indeed, was much alike, rich in tools, in preparations,
m, but nothing to begin with, but as above. However,
ed over with them, which was worth all the rest, some
for planting sugar-canes, with some plants of canes,
I mean the Portugal man, understood very well.
the rest of the supplies sent my tenants in the island, I
by their sloop three milch cows and five calves, about
hogs among them, three sows big with pig, two mares,
e-horse.¹

y Spaniards, according to my promise, I engaged three
women to go; and recommended it to them to marry
use them kindly. I could have procured more women,
embered that the poor persecuted man had two daugh-
there was but five of the Spaniards that wanted; the
wives of their own, though in another country.
ss cargo arrived safe, and, as you may easily suppose, very
to my old inhabitants, who were now, with this addition,
sixty and seventy people, besides little children; of which

¹ A stallion, or horse for breeding.
there was a great many. I found letters at London from them all by the way of Lisbon, when I came back to England; of which I shall also take some notice immediately.

I have now done with my island, and all manner of discourse about it; and whoever reads the rest of my memorandums would do well to turn his thoughts entirely from it, and expect to read of the follies of an old man, not warned by his own harms, much less by those of other men, to beware of the like; not cooled by almost forty years' misery and disappointments, not satisfied with prosperity beyond expectation, not made cautious by affliction and distress beyond imitation.

I had no more business to go to the East Indies, than a man at full liberty, and having committed no crime, has to go to the turnkey at Newgate, and desire him to lock him up among the prisoners there and starve him. Had I taken a small vessel from England, and went directly to the island; had I loaded her, as I did the other vessel, with all the necessaries for the plantation and for my people, took a patent from the governor here to have secured my property, in subjection only to that of England; had I carried over cannon and ammunition, servants and people, to plant, and, taking possession of the place, fortified and strengthened it in the name of England, and increased it with people, as I might easily have done; had I then settled myself there, and sent the ship back loaded with good rice, as I might also have done in six months' time, and ordered my friends to have fitted her out again for our supply; had I done this, and stayed there myself, I had, at least acted like a man of common sense. But I was possessed with a wandering spirit, scorned all advantages. I pleased myself with being the patron of those people I placed there, and doing for them in a kind of haughty, majestic way, like an old patriarchal monarch; providing for them as if I had been father of the whole family, as well as of the plantation. But I never so much as pretended to plant in the name of any government or nation, or to acknowledge any prince, or to call my people subjects to any one nation more than another; nay, I never so much as gave the place a name, but left it as I found it, belonging to no man, and the people under no discipline or government but
my own; who, though I had influence over them as father and benefactor, had no authority or power to act or command one way or other, farther than voluntary consent moved them to comply. Yet even this, had I stayed there, would have done well enough. But as I rambled from them, and came there no more, the last letters I had from any of them was by my partner's means, who afterwards sent another sloop to the place, and who sent me word (though I had not the letter till five years after it was written), that they went on but poorly, were discontent with their long stay there; that Will Atkins was dead; that five of the Spaniards were come away; and that though they had not been much molested by the savages, yet they had had some skirmishes with them; that they begged of him to write to me, to think of the promise I had made, to fetch them away that they might see their own country again before they died.

But I was gone a wild-goose chase indeed; and they who will have any more of me must be content to follow me through a new variety of follies, hardships, and wild adventures, wherein the justice of Providence may be duly observed, and we may see how easily Heaven can gorge us with our own desires, make the strongest of our wishes be our affliction, and punish us most severely with those very things which we think it would be our utmost happiness to be allowed in.

Let no wise man flatter himself with the strength of his own judgment, as if he was able to choose any particular station of life for himself. Man is a short-sighted creature, sees but a very little way before him; and as his passions are none of his best friends, so his particular affections are generally his worst counsellors.

I say this with respect to the impetuous desire I had from a youth to wander into the world, and how evident it now was that this principle was preserved in me for my punishment. How it came on, the manner, the circumstance, and the conclusion of it, it is easy to give you historically, and with its utmost variety of particulars. But the secret ends of divine power, in thus permitting us to be hurried down the stream of our own desires, is only to be understood of those who can listen to the voice of Pro-
vidence, and draw religious consequences from God's justice and their own mistakes.

Be it I had business, or no business, away I went. 'Tis no time now to enlarge any farther upon the reason or absurdity of my own conduct; but to come to the history, I was embarked for the voyage, and the voyage I went.

I should only add here, that my honest and truly pious clergyman left me here. A ship being ready to go to Lisbon, he asked me leave to go thither, being still, as he observed, bound never to finish any voyage he began. How happy had it been for me if I had gone with him!

But it was too late now. All things Heaven appoints are best. Had I gone with him I had never had so many things to be thankful for, and you had never heard of the Second Part of the Travels and Adventures of Robinson Crusoe. So I must leave here the fruitless exclaiming at myself, and go on with my voyage.

From the Brazils, we made directly away over the Atlantic Sea, to the Cape de Bon Esperance, or, as we call it, the Cape of Good Hope, and had a tolerable good voyage, our course generally south-east; now and then a storm, and some contrary winds. But my disasters at sea were at an end. My future rubs and cross events were to befall me on shore, that it might appear the land was as well prepared to be our scourge as the sea, when Heaven, who directs the circumstances of things, pleases to appoint it to be so.

Our ship was on a trading voyage, and had a supercargo on board, who was to direct all her motions after she arrived at the Cape, only being limited to certain numbers of days for stay, by charter-party, at the several ports she was to go to. This was none of my business, neither did I meddle with it at all, my nephew, the captain, and the supercargo adjusting all those things between them as they thought fit.

We made no stay at the Cape longer than was needful to take in fresh water, but made the best of our way for the coast of Coromandel. We were indeed informed that a French man-of-war of fifty guns, and two large merchant-ships, were gone for the
Indies; and as I knew we were at war with France, I had some apprehensions of them. But they went their own way, and we heard no more of them.

I shall not pester my account, or the reader, with descriptions of places, journals of our voyages, variations of compass, latitudes, meridian distances, trade winds, situation of ports, and the like, such as almost all the histories of long navigation are full of, and makes the reading tiresome enough, and are perfectly unprofitable to all that read it, except only to those who are to go to those places themselves.

It is enough to name the ports and places which we touched at, and what occurred to us upon our passing from one to another. We touched first at the island of Madagascar, where, though the people are fierce and treacherous, and, in particular, very well armed with lances and bows, which they use with inconceivable dexterity, yet we fared very well with them a while: they treated us very civilly, and for some trifles which we gave them, such as knives, scissors, &c., they brought us eleven good fat bullocks, middling in size, but very good in flesh; which we took in partly for fresh provisions for our present spending, and the rest to salt for the ship's use.

We were obliged to stay here some time after we had furnished ourselves with provisions; and I, that was always too curious to look into every nook of the world wherever I came, was for going on shore as often as I could. It was on the east side of the island that we went on shore, one evening; and the people, who, by the way, are very numerous, came thronging about us, and stood gazing at us at a distance. But as we had traded freely with them, and had been kindly used, we thought ourselves in no danger. But when we saw the people, we cut three boughs out of a tree, and stuck them up at a distance from us; which, it seems, is a mark in the country, not only of truce and friendship, but, when it is accepted, the other side set up three poles or boughs, which is a signal that they accept the truce too. But then, this a known condition of the truce, that you are not to pass beyond their three poles towards them, nor they to come past your three poles or boughs towards you; so that you are
perfectly secure within the three poles, and all the space between
your poles and theirs is allowed, like a market, for free converse,
traffic, and commerce. When you go there, you must not carry
your weapons with you; and if they come into that space, they
stick up their javelins and lances all at the first poles, and come on
unarmed; but if any violence is offered them, and the truce there-
by broken, away they run to the poles and lay hold of their
weapons, and then the truce is at an end.

It happened one evening when we went on shore, that a greater
number of their people came down than usual; but all was very
friendly and civil, and they brought in several kinds of provisions,
for which we satisfied them with such toys as we had. Their
women also brought us milk and roots, and several things very
acceptable to us; and all was quiet. And we made us a little
tent, or hut, of some boughs of trees, and lay on shore all night.

I know not what was the occasion, but I was not so well satis-
fied to lie on shore as the rest; and the boat lying at an anchor,
about a stone-cast from the land, with two men in her to take care
of her, I made one of them come on shore, and getting some
boughs of trees to cover us also in the boat, I spread the sail on
the bottom of the boat, and lay under the cover of the branches of
trees all night in the boat.

About two o'clock in the morning, we heard one of our men
make a terrible noise on the shore, calling out for God's sake to
bring the boat in, and come and help them, for they were all like
to be murdered. At the same time I heard the firing of five
muskets, which was the number of the guns they had, and that
three times over; for it seems the natives here were not so easily
frighted with guns as the savages were in America, where I had
to do with them.

All this while I knew not what was the matter; but rousing
immediately from sleep with the noise, I caused the boat to be
thrust in, and resolved, with three fusils,1 we had on board, to land
and assist our men.

We got the boat soon to the shore. But our men were in too
much haste; for being come to the shore, they plunged into the

1 Fusil, the French name for a gun or musket.
ATTACKED BY THE NATIVES.

water to get to the boat with all the expedition they could, being pursued by between three and four hundred men. Our men were but nine in all, and only five of them had fusils with them; the rest had indeed pistols and swords, but they were of small use to them.

We took up seven of our men, and with difficulty enough too, three of them being very ill wounded. And that which was still worse was, that while we stood in the boat to take our men in, we were in as much danger as they were in on shore; for they poured their arrows in upon us so thick, that we were fain to barricade the side of the boat up with the benches, and two or three loose boards, which, to our great satisfaction, we had by mere accident or providence in the boat.

And yet, had it been daylight, they are, it seems, such exact marksmen, that if they could have seen but the least part of any of us, they would have been sure of us. We had, by the light of the moon, a little sight of them, as they stood pelting us from the shore with darts and arrows: and having got ready our firearms, we gave them a volley, that we could hear by the cries of some of them that we had wounded several. However, they stood thus in

"We had by the light of the moon a little sight of them."
battle array on the shore till break of day; which, we suppose, was that they might see the better to take their aim at us.

In this condition we lay, and could not tell how to weigh our anchor or set up our sail, because we must needs stand up in the boat, and they were as sure to hit us as we were to hit a bird in a tree with small shot. We made signals of distress to the ship, which, though we rode a league off, yet my nephew, the captain, hearing our firing, and by glasses perceiving the posture we lay in, and that we fired towards the shore, pretty well understood us; and weighing anchor with all speed, he stood as near the shore as he durst with the ship, and then sent another boat with ten hands in her to assist us. But we called to them not to come too near, telling them what condition we were in. However, they stood in nearer to us; and one of the men taking the end of a tow-line in his hand, and keeping our boat between him and the enemy, so that they could not perfectly see him, swam on board us, and made fast the line to the boat; upon which we slipped our little cable, and leaving our anchor behind, they towed us out of reach of the arrows, we all the while lying close behind the barricado we had made.

As soon as we were got from between the ship and the shore, that she could lay her side to the shore, she run along just by them, and we poured in a broadside among them, laden with pieces of iron and lead, small bullets, and such stuff, besides the great shot; which made a terrible havoc amongst them.

When we were got on board and out of danger, we had time to examine into the occasion of this fray. And, indeed, our supercargo, who had been often in those parts, put me upon it; for, he said, he was sure the inhabitants would not have touched us after we had made a truce, if we had not done something to provoke them to it. At length it came out; namely, that an old woman, who had come to sell us some milk, had brought it within our poles, with a young woman with her, who also brought some roots or herbs; and while the old woman, (whether she was mother to the young woman or no, they could not tell,) was selling us the milk, one of our men offered some rudeness to the wench that was with her, at which the old woman made a great noise. How-
ever, the seaman would not quit his prize, but carried her out of the old woman's sight among the trees, it being almost dark. The old woman went away without her, and, as we suppose, made an outcry among the people she came from, who, upon notice, raised this great army upon us in three or four hours; and it was great odds but we had been all destroyed.

One of our men was killed with a lance thrown at him just at the beginning of the attack, as he sallied out of the tent they had made. The rest came off free, all but the fellow who was the occasion of all the mischief, who paid dear enough for his black mistress; for we could not hear what became of him a great while. We lay upon the shore two days after, though the wind presented, and made signals for him; made our boat sail up shore and down shore several leagues, but in vain. So we were obliged to give him over; and if he alone had suffered for it, the loss had been the less.

I could not satisfy myself, however, without venturing on shore once more, to try if I could learn anything of him or them. It was the third night after the action, that I had a great mind to learn, if I could by any means, what mischief we had done, and how the game stood on the Indians' side. I was careful to do it in the dark, lest we should be attacked again; but I ought indeed to have been sure that the men I went with had been under my command before I engaged in a thing so hazardous and mischievous as I was brought into by it without my knowledge or design.

We took twenty stout fellows with us as any in the ship, besides the supercargo and myself, and we landed two hours before midnight, at the same place where the Indians stood drawn up the evening before. I landed here because my design, as I have said, was chiefly to see if they had quitted the field, and if they had left any marks behind them of the mischief we had done them. And I thought if we could surprise one or two of them, perhaps, we might get our man again by way of exchange.

We landed without any noise, and divided our men into two bodies, whereof the boatswain commanded one and I the other. We neither saw nor heard anybody stir when we landed, and we
486

A LANDING BY NIGHT.

marched up one body at a distance from the other to the place; but at first could see nothing, it being very dark, till by-and-by, our boatswain, that led the first party, stumbled, and fell over a dead body. This made them halt a while, for knowing by the circumstances that they were at the place where the Indians had stood, they waited for my coming up. Here we concluded to halt till the moon began to rise, which we knew would be in less than an hour, when we could easily discern the havoc we had made among them. We told two and thirty bodies upon the ground, whereof two were not quite dead. Some had an arm, and some a leg shot off, and one his head; those that were wounded, we supposed, they had carried away.

When we had made, as I thought, a full discovery of all we could come at the knowledge of, I was resolved for going on board; but the boatswain and his party sent me word that they were resolved to make a visit to the Indian town, where these dogs, as they called them, dwelt, and asked me to go along with them; and if they could find them, as still they fancied they should, they did not doubt getting a good booty, and it might be they might find Thomas Jeffrys there: that was the man's name we had lost.

Had they sent to ask my leave to go, I knew well enough what answer to have given them; for I would have commanded them instantly on board, knowing it was not a hazard fit for us to run, who had a ship and ship-loading in our charge, and a voyage to make, which depended very much upon the lives of the men; but as they sent me word they were resolved to go, and only asked me and my company to go along with them, I positively refused it, and rose up, for I was sitting on the ground, in order to go to the boat. One or two of the men began to importune me to go, and when I refused positively, began to grumble, and say they were not under my command, and they would go. "Come, Jack," says one of the men, "will you go with me? I'll go for one." Jack said he would, and another followed, and then another; and in a word, they all left me but one, who I persuaded to stay, and a boy left in the boat. So the supercargo and I, with the third man, went back to the boat, where we told them we would stay
VAIN REMONSTRANCE. 487

them, and take care to take in as many of them as should be for I told them it was a mad thing they were going about, supposed most of them would run the fate of Thomas Jeffrys. ey told me, like seamen, they’d warrant it they would come rain, and they would take care, &c. So away they went. I

"I entreated them to consider the ship and voyage."
and they did not doubt but they would be back again in about an hour at farthest; for the Indian town, they said, was not above half a mile off, though they found it above two miles before they got to it.

Well, they all went away as above; and though the attempt was desperate, and such as none but mad men would have gone about, yet, to give them their due, they went about it warily as boldly. They were gallantly armed, that's true; for they had every man a fuze or musket, a bayonet, every man a pistol; some of them had broad cutlasses, some of them hangers, and the boatswain and two more had pole-axes; besides all which, they had among them thirteen hand-grenades. Bolder fellows, and better provided, never went about any wicked work in the world.

When they went out their chief design was plunder, and they were in mighty hopes of finding gold there; but a circumstance which none of them were aware of set them on fire with revenge, and made devils of them all. When they came to the few Indian houses which they thought had been the town, which was not above half a mile off, they were under a great disappointment; for there were not above twelve or thirteen houses, and where the town was, or how big, they knew not. They consulted, therefore, what to do, and were some time before they could resolve; for if they fell upon these, they must cut all their throats, and it was ten to one but some of them might escape, it being in the night, though the moon was up; and if one escaped, he would run away, and raise all the town, so they should have a whole army upon them. Again, on the other hand, if they went away and left those untouched (for the people were all asleep) they could not tell which way to look for the town.

However, the last was the best advice; so they resolved to leave them, and look for the town as well as they could. They went on a little way, and found a cow tied to a tree. This they

---

1 Short swords to hang from straps or loops.
2 From the Latin granatum, a pomegranate or apple containing grains. The hand-grenades were hollow balls of metal filled with powder lighted by a fuse or slow match and thrown amongst the enemy or into their camp or buildings. The word should be either grenade, which is the French, or granado, which is Spanish.
A COMRADE'S FATE.

tly concluded would be a good guide to them, for they said
x certainly belonged to the town before them, or the town
them; and if they untied her they should see which way
nt: if she went back, they had nothing to say to her, but
went forward, they had nothing to do but to follow her.
y cut the cord, which was made of twisted flags, and the
nt on before them. In a word, the cow led them directly
own, which, as they report, consisted of above two hundred
or huts, and in some of these they found several families
gether.

they found all in silence as profoundly secure as sleep and
ry that had never seen an enemy of that kind could make
and, first, they called another council, to consider what
ad to do; and, in a word, they resolved to divide them-
to three bodies, and to set three houses on fire in three
of the town, and as the men came out, to seize them and
em (if any resisted, they need not be asked what to do
and so to search the rest of the houses for plunder; but
olved to march silently first through the town, and see
ensions it was of, and if they might venture upon

it did so, and desperately resolved that they would venture
hem; but while they were animating one another to the
ree of them that were a little before the rest called out
m, and told them they had found Thomas Jeffrys.
run up to the place, and so it was indeed; for there they
the poor fellow hanged up naked by one arm, and his
cut. There was an Indian house just by the tree, where
und sixteen or seventeen of the principal Indians who
en concerned in the fray with us before, and two or three
ounded with our shot; and our men found they were
and talking one to another in that house, but knew not
umber.
sight of their poor mangled comrade so enraged them, as
that they swore to one another they would be revenged,
at not an Indian who came into their hands should have
; and to work they went immediately, and yet not so
madly as by the rage and fury they were in might be expected. Their first care was to get something that would soon take fire, but after a little search they found that would be to no purpose; but most of the houses were low, and thatched with flags or rushes, of which the country is full; so they presently made some wildfire, as we call it, by wetting a little powder in the palms of their hands, and in a quarter of an hour they set the town on fire in four or five places, and particularly that house where the Indians were not gone to bed. As soon as the fire began to blaze, the poor frightened creatures began to rush out to save their lives, but met with their fate in the attempt, and especially at the door where they drove them back, the boatswain himself killing one or two with his pole-axe. The house being large and many in it, he did not care to go in, but called for a hand-grenado, and threw it among them, which at first frightened them, but when it burst, made such havoc among them, that they cried out in a hideous manner.

In short, most of the Indians who were in the open part of the house were killed or hurt with the grenado, except two or three more who pressed to the door, which the boatswain and two more kept with their bayonets in the muzzles of their pieces, and despatched all who came that way. But there was another apartment in the house, where the prince or king, or whatever he was, and several others were; and these they kept in till the house, which was by this time all of a light flame, fell in upon them, and they were smothered or burned together.

All this while they fired not a gun, because they would not waken the people faster than they could master them; but the fire began to waken them fast enough, and our fellows were glad to keep a little together in bodies, for the fire grew so raging, all the houses being made of light combustible stuff, that they could hardly bear the street between them, and their business was to follow the fire for the surer execution. As fast as the fire either forced the people out of those houses which were burning, or frightened them out of others, our people were ready at their doors to knock them on the head, still calling and hallooing to one another to remember Thomas Jeffryes.
FIRE AND SWORD.

While this was doing I must confess I was very uneasy, and especially when I saw the flames of the town, which, it being night, seemed to be just by me.

My nephew, the captain, who was roused by his men too, seeing such a fire, was very uneasy, not knowing what the matter was, or what danger I was in; especially hearing the guns too, for by this time they began to use their firearms. A thousand thoughts oppressed his mind concerning me and the supercargo,

what should become of us; and at last, though he could ill spare any more men, yet not knowing what exigence we might be in, he takes another boat and with thirteen men and himself comes on shore to me.

He was surprised to see me and the supercargo in the boat with no more than two men; and though he was glad that we were well, yet he was in the same impatience with us to know what was going, for the noise continued and the flame increased. In short, it was next to an impossibility for any men in the world to restrain their curiosity to know what had happened, or the concern for the safety of the men. In a word, the captain told me he would go and help his men, let what would come. I argued with him,
as I did before with the men, the safety of the ship, the danger of the voyage, the interest of the owners and merchants, &c., and told him I would go and the two men, and only see if we could at a distance learn what was like to be the event, and come back and tell him.

It was all one to talk to my nephew, as it was to talk to the rest before; he would go, he said, and he only wished he had left but ten men in the ship, for he could not think of having his men lost for want of help; he had rather lose the ship, the voyage, and his life and all; and away went he.

In a word, I was no more able to stay behind now than I was to persuade them not to go; so, in short, the captain ordered two men to row back the pinnace, and fetch twelve men more, leaving the long-boat at an anchor, and that, when they came back, six men should keep the two boats, and six more come after us, so that he left only sixteen men in the ship; for the whole ship's company consisted of sixty-five men, whereof two were lost in the last quarrel, which brought this mischief on.

Being now on the march, you may be sure we felt little of the ground we trode on; and being guided by the fire, we kept no path, but went directly to the place of the flame. If the noise of the guns was surprising to us before, the cries of the poor people were now of quite another nature, and filled us with horror. I must confess I never was at the sacking a city, or at the taking a town by storm. I had heard of Oliver Cromwell taking Drogheda in Ireland, and killing man, woman, and child; and I had read of Count Tilly sacking of the city of Magdeburgh, and cutting the throats of twenty-two thousand of both sexes. But I never had an idea of the thing itself before, nor is it possible to describe it, or the horror which was upon our minds at hearing it.

However, we went on, and at length came to the town, though there was no entering the streets of it for the fire. The first object we met with was the ruins of a hut or house, or rather the ashes of it, for the house was consumed; and just before it, plain now to be seen by the light of the fire, lay four men and three women killed, and, as we thought, one or two more lay in the heap among the fire. In short, there were such instances of a rage
altogether barbarous, and of a fury something beyond what was human, that we thought it impossible our men could be guilty of it, or if they were the authors of it, we thought they ought to be every one of them put to the worst of deaths. But this was not all: we saw the fire increase forward, and the cry went on just as the fire went on; so that we were in the utmost confusion. We advanced a little way farther, and behold, to our astonishment, three women, naked, and crying in a most dreadful manner, come flying, as if they had indeed had wings, and after them sixteen or seventeen men, natives, in the same terror and consternation, with three of our English butchers, for I can call them no better, in their rear; who, when they could not overtake them, fired in among them, and one that was killed by their shot fell down in our sight. When the rest saw us, believing us to be their enemies, and that we would murder them as well as those that pursued them, they set up a most dreadful shriek, especially the women; and two of them fell down as if already dead with the fright.

My very soul shrank within me, and my blood ran chill in my veins, when I saw this; and I believe, had the three English sailors that pursued them come on, I had made our men kill them all. However, we took some ways to let the poor flying creatures know that we would not hurt them, and immediately they came up to us, and kneeling down, with their hands lifted up, made piteous lamentation to us to save them, which we let them know we would; whereupon they crept all together in a huddle close behind us, as for protection. I left my men drawn up together, and charged them to hurt nobody, but if possible to get at some of our people, and see what devil it was possessed them, and what they intended to do; and, in a word, to command them off, assuring them that if they stayed till daylight, they would have an hundred thousand men about their ears. I say I left them and went among those flying people, taking only two of our men with me; and there was indeed a piteous spectacle among them. Some of them had their feet terribly burned with trampling and running through the fire, others their hands burned. One of the women had fallen down in the fire, and was very much burned before she could get out again; and two or three of the men had cuts in their
backs and thighs from our men pursuing; and another was shot through the body, and died while I was there.

I would fain have learned what the occasion of all this was; but I could not understand one word they said, though by signs I perceived that some of them knew not what was the occasion themselves. I was so terrified in my thoughts at this outrageous attempt, that I could not stay there, but went back to my own men, and resolved to go into the middle of the town through the fire, or whatever might be in the way, and put an end to it, cost what it would. Accordingly, as soon as I came back to my men I told them my resolution, and commanded them to follow me; when in the very moment came four of our men, with the boatswain at their head, roving over the heaps of bodies they had killed, all covered with blood and dust, as if they wanted more people to massacre, when our men hallooed to them as loud as they could halloo; and with much ado one of them made them hear, so that they knew who we were, and came up to us.

As soon as the boatswain saw us he set up a halloo like a shout of triumph, for having, as he thought, more help come; and without bearing to hear me, "Captain," says he, "noble captain, I am glad you are come. We have not half done yet, villainous hellhound dogs! I'll kill as many of them as poor Tom has hairs upon his head. We have sworn to spare none of them; we'll root out the very nation of them from the earth." And thus he ran on, out of breath too with action, and would not give us leave to speak a word.

At last, raising my voice that I might silence him a little, "Barbarous dog," said I, "what are you doing? I won't have one creature touched more, upon pain of death. I charge you, upon your life, to stop your hands, and stand still here, or you are a dead man this minute."

"Why, sir," says he, "do you know what you do, or what they have done? If you want a reason for what we have done, come hither." And with that he showed me the poor fellow hanging with his throat cut.

I confess I was urged then myself, and at another time should have been forward enough; but I thought they had carried their
rage too far, and thought of Jacob's words to his sons Simeon and Levi, "Cursed be their anger, for it was fierce; and their wrath, for it was cruel." But I had now a new task upon my hands; for when the men I carried with me saw the sight, as I had done, I had as much to do to restrain them as I should have had with the other. Nay, my nephew himself fell in with them, and told me in their hearing that he was only concerned for fear of the men being overpowered; for as to the people, he thought not one of them ought to live, for they had all glutted themselves with the murder of the poor man, and that they ought to be used like murderers. Upon these words, away ran eight of my men, with the boatswain and his crew, to complete their bloody work; and I, seeing it quite out of my power to restrain them, came away pensive and sad, for I could not bear the sight, much less the horrible noise and cries of the poor wretches that fell into their hands.

I got nobody to come back with me but the supercargo and two men; and with these I walked back to the boats. It was a very great piece of folly in me, I confess, to venture back, as it were, alone; for as it began now to be almost day, and the alarm had spread over the country, there stood about forty men, armed with pikes and bows, at the little place where the twelve or thirteen men stood mentioned before. But by accident I missed the house, and came directly to the sea-side; and by the time I got to the sea-side it was broad day. Immediately I took the pinnace, went aboard, and sent her back to assist the men in what might happen.

I observed about the time that I came to the boat-side that the sun was pretty well out and the noise abated; but in about half an hour after I got on board I heard a volley of our men's fire and saw a great smoke. This, as I understood afterwards, was fired upon the men who, as I said, stood at the few houses on the way; of whom they killed sixteen or seventeen, and those houses on fire, but did not meddle with the women and children.

At the time the men got to the shore again with the pinnace, I began to appear. They came dropping in, some and
some; not in two bodies, and in form, as they went, but all in heaps, straggling here and there in such a manner that a small force of resolute men might have cut them all off.

But the dread of them was upon the whole country; and the men were amazed and surprised, and so frightened, that I believe a hundred of them would have fled at the sight of but five of our men. Nor in all this terrible action was there a man who made any considerable defence. They were so surprised between the terror of the fire and the sudden attack of our men in the dark, that they knew not which way to turn themselves: for if they fled one way, they were met by one party; if back again, by another; so that they were everywhere knocked down. Nor did any of our men receive the least hurt, except one, who strained his foot; and another had one of his hands very much burned.

I was very angry with my nephew the captain, and indeed with all the men, in my mind; but with him in particular, as well for his acting so out of his duty as commander of the ship, and having the charge of the voyage upon him, as in his prompting rather than cooling the rage of his men in so bloody and cruel an enterprise. My nephew answered me very respectfully; but told me that when he saw the body of the poor seaman, whom they had murdered in such a cruel and barbarous manner, he was not master of himself, neither could he govern his passion. He owned he should not have done so, as he was commander of the ship; but as he was a man, and nature moved him, he could not bear it. As for the rest of the men, they were not subject to me at all; and they knew it well enough, so they took no notice of my dislike.

The next day we set sail, so we never heard any more of it. Our men differed in the account of the number they killed: some said one thing, some another; but according to the best of their accounts put together, they killed or destroyed about one hundred and fifty people, men, women, and children, and left not a house standing in the town. As for the poor fellow, Thomas Jeffrys, as he was quite dead, for his throat was so cut that his head was half off, it would do him no service to bring him away. So they
left him where they found him; only took him down from the
tree where he was hanged by one hand.

However just our men thought this action, I was against them
in it; and I always after that time told them God would blast the
voyage, for I looked upon all the blood they shed that night to
be murder in them. For though it is true that they had killed
Thomas Jeffrys, yet it was as true that Jeffrys was the aggressor,
had broken the truce, and had violated or debauched a young
woman of theirs who came down to them innocently, and on the
faith of their public capitulation.

The boatswain defended this quarrel when we were afterwards
on board. He said, it is true that we seemed to break the truce,
but really had not, and that the war was begun the night before
by the natives themselves, who had shot us and killed one of
our men without any just provocation; so that as we were in a
capacity to fight them now, we might also be in a capacity to do
ourselves justice upon them in an extraordinary manner: that
though the poor man had taken a little liberty with a wench, he
ought not to have been murdered, and that in such a villainous
manner; and that they did nothing but what was just, and what
the laws of God allowed to be done to murderers.

One would think this should have been enough to have warned
us against going on shore among heathens and barbarians; but it
is impossible to make mankind wise but at their own expense, and
their experience seems to be always of most use to them when it
is dearest bought.

We are now bound to the Gulf of Persia, and from thence to
the coast of Coromandel, only to touch at Surat; but the chief of
the supercargo's design lay at the Bay of Bengal, where if he
missed of his business outward bound, he was to go up to China,
and return to the coast as he came home.

The first disaster that befell us was in the Gulf of Persia, where
five of our men, venturing on shore on the Arabian side of the
gulf, were surrounded by the Arabians, and either all killed or
carried away into slavery. The rest of the boat's crew were not
able to rescue them, and had but just time to get off their boat.
I began to upbraid them with the just retribution of Heaven in
this case; but the boatswain very warmly told me he thought I went farther in my censures than I could show any warrant for in Scripture, and referred to the thirteenth of St. Luke, verse fourth, where our Saviour intimates that those men on whom the tower of Siloam fell were not sinners above all the Galileans. But that which indeed put me to silence in the case was, that not one of these five men who were now lost were of the number of those who went on shore to the massacre of Madagascar (so I always called it, though our men could not bear the word “massacre” with any patience). And, indeed, this last circumstance, as I have said, put me to silence for the present.

But my frequent preaching to them on this subject had worse consequences than I expected; and the boatswain, who had been the head of the attempt, came up boldly to me one time, and told me he found that I continually brought that affair upon the stage; that I made unjust reflections upon it, and had used the men very ill on that account, and himself in particular; that as I was but a passenger, and had no command in the ship or concern in the voyage, they were not obliged to bear it; that they did not know but I might have some ill design in my head, and perhaps to call them to account for it when they came to England; and that therefore, unless I would resolve to have done with it, and also not to concern myself any farther with him or any of his affairs, he would leave the ship, for he did not think it was safe to sail with me among them.

I heard him patiently enough till he had done, and then told him that I did confess I had all along opposed the massacre of Madagascar, for such I would always call it: and that I had on all occasions spoken my mind freely about it, though not more upon him than any of the rest: that as to my having no command in the ship, that was true, nor did I exercise any authority, only took my liberty of speaking my mind in things which publicly concerned us all; and what concern I had in the voyage was none of his business: that I was a considerable owner of the ship, and in that claim I conceived I had a right to speak even farther than I had yet done, and would not be accountable to him or any one else, and begun to be a little warm with him. He made but
little reply to me at that time, and I thought that affair had been over. We were at this time in the road at Bengal; and being willing to see the place, I went on shore with the supercargo in the ship's boat to divert myself, and towards evening was preparing to go on board, when one of the men came to me, and told me he would not have me trouble myself to come down to the boat, for they had orders not to carry me on board any more! Any one may guess what a surprise I was in at so insolent a message; and I asked the man who bade him deliver that errand to me. He told me, the boatswain. I said no more to the fellow, but bade him let them know he had delivered his message, and that I had given him no answer to it.

I immediately went and found out the supercargo, and told him the story; adding what I presently foresaw, namely, that there would certainly be a mutiny in the ship, and entreated him to go immediately on board the ship in an Indian boat, and acquaint the captain of it. But I might have spared this intelligence, for before I had spoken to him on shore the matter was effected on board. The boatswain, the gunner, the carpenter, and, in a word, all the inferior officers, as soon as I was gone off in the boat, came up to the quarter-deck and desired to speak with the captain; and there the boatswain, making a long harangue, for the fellow talked very well, and repeating all he had said to me, told the captain, in few words, that as I was now gone peaceably on shore, they were loath to use any violence with me; which, if I had not gone on shore, they would otherwise have done, to oblige me to have gone: they therefore thought fit to tell him, that as they shipped themselves to serve in the ship under his command, they would perform it well and faithfully; but if I would not quit the ship, or the captain oblige me to quit it, they would all leave the ship, and sail no farther with him. And at that word "all" he turned his face about towards the mainmast, which was, it seems, the signal agreed on between them; at which, all the seamen being got together, they cried out, "One and all! one and all!"

My nephew the captain was a man of spirit, and of great presence of mind; and though he was surprised, you may be sure, at the thing, yet he told them calmly that he would consider of
the thing, but that he could do nothing in it till he had spoken to me about it. He used some arguments with them to show them the unreasonableness and injustice of the thing: but it was all in vain; they swore and shook hands round before his face that they would go all on shore, unless he would engage to them not to suffer me to come any more on board the ship.

This was a hard article upon him, who knew his obligation to me, and did not know how I might take it. So he began to talk cavalierly to them; told them that I was a very considerable owner of the ship, and that in justice he could not put me out of my own house; that this was next door to serving me as the famous pirate Kid had done, who made the mutiny in a ship, set the captain on shore in an uninhabited island, and run away with the ship; that let them go into what ship they would, if ever they came to England again, it would cost them dear; that the ship was mine, and that he could not put me out of it; and that he would rather lose the ship, and the voyage too, than disoblige me so much; so they might do as they pleased: however, he would go on shore and talk with me on shore; and invited the boatswain to go with him, and perhaps they might accommodate the matter with me.

But they all rejected the proposal, and said they would have nothing to do with me any more, neither on board nor on shore, and if I came on board they would all go on shore. "Well," said the captain, "if you are all of this mind, let me go on shore, and talk with him." So away he came to me with this account, a little after the message had been brought to me from the boatswain.

I was very glad to see my nephew, I must confess; for I was not without apprehensions that they would confine him by violence, set sail, and run away with the ship, and then I had been stripped naked in a remote country, and nothing to help myself; in short, I had been in a worse case than when I was all alone in the island.

But they had not come that length, it seems, to my great satisfaction; and when my nephew told me what they had said to him, and how they had sworn, and shook hands, that they would one
and all leave the ship if I was suffered to come on board, I told him he should not be concerned at it at all, for I would stay on shore. I only desired he would take care and send me all my necessary things on shore, and leave me a sufficient sum of money, and I would find my way to England as well as I could.

This was a heavy piece of news to my nephew; but there was no way to help it, but to comply with it; so, in short, he went on board the ship again, and satisfied the men that his uncle had yielded to their importunity, and had sent for his goods from on board the ship; so that matter was over in a very few hours, the men returned to their duty, and I began to consider what course I should steer.

I was now alone in the remotest part of the world, as I think I may call it; for I was near three thousand leagues by sea farther off from England than I was at my island. Only, it is true, I might travel here by land over the Great Mogul’s country to Surat; might go from thence to Bassora by sea, up the Gulf of Persia; and from thence might take the way of the caravans over the desert of Arabia to Aleppo and Scanderoon; from thence by sea again to Italy, and so over land into France: and this put together might be at least a full diameter of the globe, but if it were to be measured, I suppose it would appear to be a great deal more.

I had another way before me, which was to wait for some English ships, which were coming to Bengal from Achin, on the island of Sumatra, and get passage on board them for England; but as I came hither without any concern with the English East India Company, so it would be difficult to go from hence without their licence, unless with great favour of the captains of the ships, or of the Company’s factors, and to both I was an utter stranger.

Here I had the particular pleasure, speaking by contraries, to see the ship sail without me; a treatment, I think, a man in my circumstances scarce ever met with, except from pirates running away with a ship, and setting those that would not agree with their villainy on shore. Indeed this was next door to it both ways. However, my nephew left me two servants, or rather, one companion and one servant; the first was clerk to the purser, who he engaged to go with me, and the other was his own servant. I
took me also a good lodging in the house of an Englishwoman, where several merchants lodged, some French, two Italians, or rather Jews, and one Englishman. Here I was handsomely enough entertained; and that I might not be said to run rashly upon anything, I stayed here above nine months, considering what course to take, and how to manage myself. I had some English goods with me of value, and a considerable sum of money, my nephew furnishing me with a thousand pieces of eight, and a letter of credit for more, if I had occasion, that I might not be straitened, whatever might happen.

I quickly disposed of my goods, and to advantage too; and, as I originally intended, I bought here some very good diamonds; which, of all other things, was the most proper for me in my present circumstances, because I might always carry my whole estate about me.

After a long stay here, and many proposals made for my return to England, but none falling out to my mind, the English merchant who lodged with me, and with whom I had contracted an intimate acquaintance, came to me one morning. "Countryman," says he, "I have a project to communicate to you, which, as it suits with my thoughts, may, for aught I know, suit with yours also, when you shall have thoroughly considered it.

"Here we are posted," says he, "you by accident, and I by my own choice, in a part of the world very remote from our own country; but it is in a country where, by us who understand trade and business, a great deal of money is to be got. If you will put a thousand pound to my thousand pound, we will hire a ship here, the first we can get to our minds; you shall be captain, I'll be merchant, and we will go a trading voyage to China; for what should we stand still for? The whole world is in motion, rolling round and round; all the creatures of God, heavenly bodies and earthly, are busy and diligent; why should we be idle? There are no drones in the world but men; why should we be of that number?"

I liked his proposal very well, and the more because it seemed to be expressed with so much goodwill and in so friendly a manner. I will not say but that I might by my loose and unhinged cir-
Another voyage.

circumstances be the fitter to embrace a proposal for trade, or, indeed, for anything else; whereas, otherwise, trade was none of my element. However, I might perhaps say with some truth, that if trade was not my element, rambling was, and no proposal for seeing any part of the world which I had never seen before could possibly come amiss to me.

It was, however, some time before we could get a ship to our minds; and when we had got a vessel, it was not easy to get English sailors; that is to say, so many as were necessary to govern the voyage and manage the sailors which we should pick up there. After some time we got a mate, a boatswain, and a gunner, English, a Dutch carpenter, and three Portuguese foremastmen. With these we found we could do well enough, having Indian seamen, such as they are, to make up.

There are so many travellers who have wrote the history of their voyages and travels this way, that it would be very little diversion to anybody to give a long account of the places we went to, and the people who inhabit there. Those things I leave to others, and refer the reader to those journals and travels of Englishmen, of which many I find are published, and more promised every day. 'Tis enough to me to tell you that I made this voyage to Achin, in the island of Sumatra, and from thence to Siam, where we exchanged some of our wares for opium, and some arrack; the first a commodity which bears a great price among the Chinese, and which at that time was very much wanted there. In a word, we went up to Suskan, made a very great voyage, was eight months out, and returned to Bengal; and I was very well satisfied with my adventure. I observed that our people in England often admire how the officers which the Company send into India, and the merchants which generally stay there, get such very great estates as they do, and sometimes come home worth sixty, seventy, to one hundred thousand pound at a time.

But it is no wonder, or at least we shall see so much farther into it, when we consider the innumerable ports and places where they have a free commerce, that it will then be no wonder; and much less will it be so, when we consider that at all those places and ports where the English ships come, there is so much, and such
constant demand for the growth of all other countries, that there is a certain vent for the returns, as well as a market abroad, for the goods carried out.

In short, we made a very good voyage, and I got so much money by the first adventure, and such an insight into the method of getting more, that had I been twenty year younger, I should have been tempted to have stayed here, and sought no farther for making my fortune. But what was all this to a man on the wrong side of threescore, that was rich enough, and came abroad more in obedience to a restless desire of seeing the world, than a covetous desire of getting in it; and indeed I think 'tis with great justice that I now call it a restless desire, for it was so. When I was at home, I was restless to go abroad; and now I was abroad, I was restless to be at home. I say, what was this gain to me? I was rich enough, nor had I any uneasy desires about getting more money, and therefore the profits of the voyage to me were things of no great force for the prompting me forward to farther undertakings; and I thought that by this voyage I had made no progress at all, because I was come back, as I might call it, to the place from whence I came, as to a home; whereas my eye, which, like that which Solomon speaks of, was never satisfied with seeing, was still more desirous of wandering and seeing. I was come into a part of the world which I was never in before, and that part in particular which I had heard much of, and was resolved to see as much of as I could, and then I thought I might say I had seen all the world that was worth seeing.

But my fellow-traveller and I had different notions. I do not name this to insist upon my own; for I acknowledge his were the most just, and the most suited to the end of a merchant's life, who, when he is abroad upon adventures, 'tis his wisdom to stick to that as the best thing for him which he is like to get the most money by. My new friend kept himself to the nature of the thing, and would have been content to have gone like a carrier's horse always to the same inn, backward and forward, provided he could, as he called it, find his account in it. On the other hand, mine was the notion of a mad rambling boy, that never cares to see a thing twice over.
But this was not all: I had a kind of impatience upon me to be nearer home, and yet the most unsettled resolution imaginable which way to go. In the interval of these consultations my friend, who was always upon the search for business, proposed another voyage to me among the Spice Islands, and to bring home a loading of cloves from the Manillas, or thereabouts; places where indeed the Dutch do trade, but islands belonging partly to the Spaniards; though we went not so far, but to some other, where they have not the whole power, as they have at Batavia, Ceylon, &c. We were not long in preparing for this voyage; the chief difficulty was in bringing me to come into it. However, at last, nothing else offering, and finding that really stirring about and trading, the profit being so great, and, as I may say, certain, had more pleasure in it, and more satisfaction to the mind than sitting still, which, to me especially, was the unhappiest part of life; I resolved on this voyage too, which we made very successfully, touching at Borneo and several islands, whose names I do not remember, and came home in about five months. We sold our spice, which was chiefly cloves, and some nutmegs to the Persian merchants, who carried them away for the Gulf; and making near five of one, we really got a great deal of money.

My friend, when we made up this account, smiled at me, "Well now," said he, with a sort of agreeable insulting my inindolent temper, "is not this better than walking about here, like a man of nothing to do, and spending our time in staring at the nonsense and ignorance of the pagans?" "Why, truly," says I, "my friend, I think it is, and I begin to be a convert to the principles of merchandizing; but I must tell you," said I, "by the way, you do not know what I am a-doing; for if once I conquer my backwardness, and embark heartily, as old as I am, I shall harass you up and down the world till I tire you; for I shall pursue it so eagerly, I shall never let you lie still."

But to be short with my speculations, a little while after this there came in a Dutch ship from Batavia; she was a coaster, not an European trader, and of about two hundred ton burden; the men, as they pretended, having been so sickly that the captain had not men enough to go to sea with. He lay by at Bengal, and
having, it seems, got money enough, or being willing, for other reasons, to go for Europe, he gave public notice that he would sell his ship. This came to my ears before my new partner heard of it, and I had a great mind to buy it; so I goes home to him, and told him of it. He considered a while; for he was no rash man, neither; but musing some time, he replied, "She is a little too big; but, however, we will have her." Accordingly we bought the ship, and agreeing with the master, we paid for her and took possession. When we had done so, we resolved to entertain the men, if we could, to join them with those we had, for the pursuing our business; but on a sudden, they having received not their wages, but their share of the money, not one of them was to be found. We inquired much about them, and at length were told that they were all gone together by land to Agra, the great city of the Mogul's residence, and from thence were to travel to Surat, and so by sea to the Gulf of Persia.

Nothing had so heartily troubled me a good while, as that I missed the opportunity of going with them; for such a ramble, I thought, and in such company as would both have guarded me and diverted me, would have suited mightily with my great design; and I should both have seen the world and gone homewards too. But I was much better satisfied a few days after, when I came to know what sort of fellows they were; for, in short, their history was, that this man they called captain was the gunner only, not the commander; that they had been a trading voyage, in which they were attacked on shore by some of the Malaysans, who had killed the captain and three of his men; and that after the captain was killed, these men, eleven in number, had resolved to run away with the ship, which they did, and brought her in at the Bay of Bengal, leaving the mate and five men more on shore, of whom we shall hear farther.

Well, let them come by the ship how they would, we came honestly by her, as we thought; though we did not, I confess, examine into things so exactly as we ought, for we never inquired anything of the seamen; who, if we had examined, would certainly have faltered in their account, contradicted one another, and perhaps contradicted themselves; or, one how or other we should have
seen reason to have suspected them. But the man showed us a bill of sale for the ship, to one Emanuel Clostershoven, or some such name (for I suppose it was all a forgery), and called himself by that name, and we could not contradict him; and being withal a little too unwary, or, at least, having no suspicion of the thing, we went through with our bargain.

We picked up some more English seamen here after this, and some Dutch; and now we resolved for a second voyage to the south-east, for cloves, &c.; that is to say, among the Philippine and Molucca Isles. And, in short, not to fill this part of my story with trifles, when what is yet to come is so remarkable, I spent from first to last six years in this country, trading from port to port, backward and forward, and with very good success, and was now the last year with my new partner, going in the ship above-mentioned on a voyage to China, but designing first to Siam to buy rice.

In this voyage, being by contrary winds obliged to beat up and down a great while in the Straits of Malacca and among the islands, we were no sooner got clear of those difficult seas but we found our ship had sprung a leak, and we were not able by all our industry to find it out where it was. This forced us to make for some port, and my partner, who knew the country better than I did, directed the captain to put into the river of Cambodia; for I had made the English mate, one Mr. Thomson, captain, not being willing to take the charge of the ship upon myself. This river lies on the north side of the great bay or gulf which goes up to Siam.

While we were here, and going often on shore for refreshment, there comes to me one day an Englishman, and he was, it seems, a gunner's mate on board an English East India ship which rode in the same river, up at, or near the city of Cambodia. What brought him hither we know not, but he comes up to me, and speaking English, "Sir," says he, "you are a stranger to me, and I to you, but I have something to tell you that very nearly concerns you."

I looked steadily at him a good while, and thought at first I had known him, but I did not. "If it very nearly concerns me,"
said I, "and not yourself, what moves you to tell it me?" "I am moved," says he, "by the imminent danger you are in, and, for aught I see, you have no knowledge of it." "I know no danger I am in," said I, "but that my ship is leaky, and I cannot find it out; but I purpose to lay her a-ground to-morrow to see if I can find it." "But, sir," says he, "leaky or not leaky, find it or not find it, you will be wiser than to lay your ship on shore to-morrow, when you hear what I have to say to you. Do, you know, sir," said he, "the town of Cambodia lies about fifteen leagues up this river, and there are two large English ships about five leagues on this side, and three Dutch?" "Well," said I, "and what is that to me?" "Why, sir," said he, "is it for a man that is upon such adventures as you are upon, to come into a port and not examine first what ships there are there, and whether he is able to deal with them? I suppose you don't think you are a match for them?" I was amused very much at his discourse, but not amazed at it, for I could not conceive what he meant, and I turned short upon him, and said, "Sir, I wish you would explain yourself. I cannot imagine what reason I have to be afraid of any company of ships or Dutch ships. I am no interloper; what can they have to say to me?"

He looked like a man half angry, half pleased, and pausing a while, but smiling, "Well, sir," says he, "if you think yourself secure, you must take your chance. I am sorry your fate should blind you against good advice. But assure yourself, if you do not put to sea immediately, you will the very next tide be attacked by five longboats full of men; and perhaps, if you are taken, you'll be hanged for a pirate, and the particulars be examined afterwards. I thought, sir," added he, "I should have met with a better reception than this for doing you a piece of service of such importance." "I can never be ungrateful," said I, "for any service, or to any man that offers me any kindness; but it is past my comprehension," said I, "what they should have such a design upon me for. However, since you say there is no time to be lost, and that there is some villainous design in hand against me, I'll go on board this minute and put to sea immediately, if my men can stop the leak, or if we can swim
AN AKWARD POSITION.

without stopping it. But, sir," said I, "shall I go away ignorant of the reason of all this? Can you give me no farther light into it?"

"I can tell you but part of the story, sir," says he, "but I have a Dutch seaman here with me, and I believe I could persuade him to tell you the rest; but there is scarce time for it. But the short of the story is this, the first part of which, I suppose, you know well enough; namely, that you was with this ship at Sumatra, that there your captain was murdered by the Malayans with three of his men, and that you, or some of those who were on board with you, ran away with the ship, and are since turned pirates. This is the sum of the story; and you will be all seized as pirates, I can assure you, and executed with very little ceremony; for you know, merchant ships show but little law to pirates if they get them into their power."

"Now you speak plain English," said I, "and I thank you; and though I know nothing that we have done like what you talk of, but am sure we came honestly and fairly by the ship, yet, seeing such work is a-doing as you say, and that you seem to mean honestly, I'll be upon my guard."

"Nay, sir," says he, "do not talk of being upon your guard; the best defence is to be out of the danger. If you have any regard to your life, and the life of all your men, put out to sea without fail at high-water; and as you have a whole tide before you, you will be gone too far out before they can come down; for they come away at high-water, and as they have twenty miles to come, you get near two hours of them by the difference of the tide, not reckoning the length of the way. Besides, as they are only boats, and not ships, they will not venture to follow you far out to sea, especially if it blows."

"Well," says I, "you have been very kind in this; what shall I do for you to make you amends?" "Sir," says he, "you may not be so willing to make me any amends, because you may not be convinced of the truth of it. I'll make an offer to you. I have nineteen months' pay due to me on board the ship ——, which I came out of England in, and the Dutchman that is with me has seven months' pay due to him; if you will make good our pay to
us we will go along with you; if you find no more in it, we will desire no more; but if we do convince you that we have saved your lives, and the ship, and the lives of all the men in her, we will leave the rest to you.”

I consented to this readily, and went immediately on board, and the two men with me. As soon as I came to the ship’s side, my partner, who was on board, came out on the quarter-deck, and called to me with a great deal of joy, “O ho! O ho! we have stopped the leak! we have stopped the leak!” “Say you so,” said I; “thank God! but weigh the anchor then immediately.” “Weight!” says he, “what do you mean by that? What is the matter?” says he. “Ask no questions,” says I, “but all hands to work, and weigh without losing a minute.” He was surprised; but, however, he called the captain, and he immediately ordered the anchor to be got up. And though the tide was not quite done, yet a little land breeze blowing, we stood out to sea. Then I called him into the cabin and told him the story at large, and we called in the men and they told us the rest of it. But as it took us up a great deal of time, so before we had done, a seaman comes to the cabin door, and calls out to us that the captain bade him tell us we were chased. “Chased,” says I, “by whom, and by what?” “By five sloops or boats,” says the fellow, “full of men.” “Very well,” said I, “then it is apparent there is something in it.” In the next place I ordered all our men to be called up, and told them that there was a design to seize the ship, and to take us for pirates; and asked them if they would stand by us and by one another? The men answered cheerfully, that one and all they would live and die with us. Then I asked the captain what way he thought best for us to manage a fight with them, for resist them I was resolved we would, and that to the last drop. He said readily that the way was to keep them off with our great shot as long as we could, and then to fire at them with our small arms as long as we could; but when neither of these would do any longer, we should retire to our close quarters; perhaps they had not materials to break open our bulkheads, or get in upon us.

The gunner had, in the meantime, order to bring two guns to
bear fore and aft out of the steerage, to clear the deck, and loaded
them with musket-bullets, and small pieces of old iron, and what
next came to hand, and thus we made ready for fight; but all this

"They kept crowding after us till they came within shot."

while we kept out to sea with wind enough, and could see the
boats at a distance, being five large longboats, following us with
all the sail they could make.

Two of those boats, which by our glasses we could see were
English, out-sailed the rest, were near two leagues ahead of them,
and gained upon us considerably, so that we found they would come up with us. Upon which we fired gun without ball, to intimate that they should bring-to, and we put out a flag of truce as a signal for parley. But they kept crowding after us till they came within shot, when we took in our white flag, they having made no answer to it, hung out a red flag, and fired at them with a shot. Notwithstanding this, they came on till they were near enough to call to them with a speaking-trumpet which we had on board; so we called to them, and bid them keep off at their peril.

It was all one; they crowded after us, and endeavoured to come under our stern, so to board us on our quarter; upon which, seeing they were resolute for mischief, and depended upon the strength that followed them, I ordered to bring the ship to, so that they lay upon our broadside, when immediately we fired five guns at them; one of which had been levelled so true as to carry away the stern of the hindermost boat, and bring them to the necessity of taking down their sail, and running all to the head of the boat to keep her from sinking; so she lay by, and had enough of it; but seeing the foremost boat crowd on after us, we made ready to fire at her in particular.

While this was doing, one of the three boats that was behind, being forwarder than the other two, made up to the boat which we had disabled, to relieve her, and we could afterwards see her take out the men. We called again to the foremost boat, and offered a truce to parley again, and to know what was her business with us; but had no answer, only she crowded close under our stern. Upon this our gunner, who was a very dexterous fellow, run out his two chase-guns, and fired again at her; but the shot missing, the men in the boat shouted, waved their caps, and came on. But the gunner, getting quickly ready again, fired among them the second time; one shot of which, though it missed the boat itself, yet fell in among the men, and, we could easily see, had done a great deal of mischief among them; but we, taking no notice of that, warded the ship again, and brought our quarter to

1 Or wared. To wear a ship is to sail or steer her on another "tack:" that is, in a different direction.
on them, and firing three guns more, we found the boat to pieces; in particular, her rudder and a piece of was shot quite away; so they handed their sail immedi- were in great disorder. But, to complete their misfor- gunner let fly two guns at them again. Where he hit s could not tell, but we found the boat was sinking, and the men already in the water. Upon this I immediately out our pinnace, which we had kept close by our side, with to pick up some of the men if they could, and save them owning, and immediately to come on board with them, be- saw the rest of the boats began to come up. Our men pinnace followed their orders, and took up three men, one h was just drowning, and it was a good while before we recover him. As soon as they were on board we crowded sail we could make and stood farther out to sea, and we hat when the other three boats came up to the first two ve over their chase.

; thus delivered from a danger which, though I knew not on of it, yet seemed to be much greater than I apprehended, are that we would change our course, and not let any one whither we were going; so we stood out to sea eastward, of the course of all European ships, whether they were to China or anywhere else within the commerce of the in nations.

1 we were now at sea we began to consult with the two and inquire, first, what the meaning of all this should be; Dutchman let us into the secret of it at once, telling us fellow that sold us the ship, as we said, was no more thief, that had run away with her. Then he told us how ain, whose name too he told us, though I do not remember, uciously murdered by the natives on the coast of Malacca, tree of his men; and that he, this Dutchman, and four got into the woods, where they wandered about a great till at length he, in particular, in a miraculous manner is escape, and swam off to a Dutch ship, which, sailing near e, in its way from China, had sent their boat on shore for ater; that he durst not come to that part of the shore
where the boat was, but made shift in the night, to take the water 1 farther off, and the ship's boat took him up.

He then told us that he went to Batavia, where two of the seamen belonging to the ship arrived, having deserted the rest in their travels, and gave an account that the fellow who had run away with the ship sold her at Bengal to a set of pirates, which were gone a-cruising in her, and that they had already taken an English ship and two Dutch ships very richly laden.

This later part we found to concern us directly, and though we knew it to be false, yet, as my partner said very well, if we had fallen into their hands, and they had had such a prepossession against us beforehand, it had been in vain for us to have defended ourselves, or to hope for any good quarter at their hands; and especially considering that our accusers had been our judges, and that we could have expected nothing from them but what rage would have dictated and an ungoverned passion have executed. And, therefore, it was his opinion we should go directly back to Bengal, from whence we came, without putting in at any port whatever; because there we could give a good account of ourselves, could prove where we were when the ship put in, who we bought her of, and the like; and, which was more than all the rest, if we were put to the necessity of bringing it before the proper judges, we should be sure to have some justice, and not be hanged first and judged afterwards.

I was some time of my partner's opinion, but, after a little more serious thinking, I told him I thought it was a very great hazard for us to attempt returning to Bengal, for that we were on the wrong side of the Straits of Malacca; and that, if the alarm was given, we should be sure to be waylaid on every side, as well by the Dutch of Batavia as the English elsewhere: that if we should be taken, as it were running away, we should even condemn ourselves, and there would want no more evidence to destroy us. I also asked the English sailor's opinion, who said he was of my mind, and that we should certainly be taken.

This danger a little startled my partner and all the ship's com-

1 That is, to enter the water to swim, just as in walking we may say we will leave the path and take the road.
pany, and we immediately resolved to go away to the coast of Tonquin, and so on to the coast of China, and pursuing the first design as to trade, find some way or other to dispose of the ship, and come back in some of the vessels of the country, such as we could get. This was approved of as the best method for our security; and accordingly we steered away north-north-east, keeping above fifty leagues off from the usual course to the eastward.

This, however, put us to some inconveniences; for first the winds, when we came to the distance from the shore, seemed to be more steadily against us, blowing almost trade, as we call it, from the east and east-north-east, so that we were a long while upon our voyage, and we were but ill provided with victuals for so long a voyage; and, which was still worse, there was some danger that those English and Dutch ships, whose boats pursued us, whereof some were bound that way, might be got in before us; and if not, some other ship bound to China might have information of us from them, and pursue us with the same vigour.

I must confess I was now very uneasy, and thought myself, including the late escape from the longboats, to have been in the most dangerous condition that ever I was in through all my past life; for whatever ill circumstances I had been in, I was never pursued for a thief before, nor had I ever done anything that merited the name of dishonest or fraudulent, much less thievish. I had chiefly been my own enemy; or, as I may rightly say, I had been nobody's enemy but my own. But now I was embarrassed in the worst condition imaginable; for though I was perfectly innocent, I was in no condition to make that innocence appear. And if I had been taken, it had been under a supposed guilt of the worst kind; at least, a crime esteemed so among the people I had to do with.

This made me very anxious to make an escape, though which way to do it I knew not, or what port or place we should go to. My partner seeing me thus dejected, though he was the most concerned at first, began to encourage me; and describing to me the several ports of that coast, told me he would put in on the coast of Cochín China or the Bay of Tonquin, intending to go afterwards to Macao, a town once in the possession of the Portuguese, and
where still a great many European families resided, and particularly
the missionary priests usually went thither, in order to their going
forward to China.

Hither, then, we resolved to go; and accordingly, though after
a tedious and irregular course, and very much straitened for pro-
visions, we came within sight of the coast very early in the mor-
ning. And upon reflection upon the past circumstances we were in
and the danger if we had not escaped, we resolved to put into a
small river, which, however, had a depth enough of water for us,
and to see if we could, either over land or by the ship’s pinnacle,
come to know what ships were in any port therabouts. This
happy step was indeed our deliverance; for though we did not
immediately see any European ships in the Bay of Tonquin, yet
the next morning there came into the bay two Dutch ships, and
a third without any colours spread out, but which we believed to
be a Dutchman, passed by at about two leagues’ distance, steering
for the coast of China; and in the afternoon went by two English
ships steering the same course; and thus we thought we saw
ourselves beset with enemies both one way or other. The place
we were in was wild and barbarous, the people thieves, even by
occupation or profession; and though it is true we had not much
to seek of them, and, except getting a few provisions, cared not
how little we had to do with them, yet it was with much diffi-
culty that we kept ourselves from being insulted by them several
ways.

We were in a small river of this country, within a few leagues
of its utmost limits northward, and by our boat we coasted north-
est to the point of land which opens the great Bay of Tonquin;
and it was in this beating up along the shore that we discovered,
as above, that, in a word, we were surrounded with enemies. The
people we were among were the most barbarous of all the inhabi-
tants of the coast; having no correspondence with any other
nation, and dealing only in fish, and oil, and such gross commo-
dities. And it may be particularly seen that they are, as I said,
the most barbarous of any of the inhabitants, namely, that, among
other customs they have this as one, namely, that if any vessel
have the misfortune to be shipwrecked upon their coast, they pre-
ently make the men all prisoners or slaves; and it was not long before we found a spice of their kindness this way, on the occasion following.

I have observed above that our ship sprung a leak at sea, and that we could not find it out; and, however it happened, that, as I have said, it was stopped unexpectedly in the happy minute of our being to be seized by the Dutch and English ships in the Bay of Siam; yet as we did not find the ship so perfectly fit and sound as we desired, we resolved, while we were in this place, to lay her on shore, take out what heavy things we had on board, which were not many, and to wash and clean her bottom, and, if possible, to find out where the leaks were.

Accordingly, having lightened the ship, and brought all our guns and other movable things to one side, we tried to bring her down, that we might come at her bottom; but, on second thoughts, we did not care to lay her dry on ground, neither could we find out a proper place for it.

The inhabitants, who had never been acquainted with such a sight, came wondering down to the shore to look at us; and seeing the ship lie down on one side in such a manner, and heeling in towards the shore, and not seeing our men, who were at work on her bottom with stages, and with their boats on the off side, they presently concluded that the ship was cast away, and lay so fast on the ground.

On this supposition they came all about us in two or three hours' time, with ten or twelve large boats, having some of them eight, some ten men in a boat, intending, no doubt, to have come on board and plundered the ship, and if they had found us there, to have carried us away for slaves to their king, or whatever they call him, for we knew nothing who was their governor.

When they came up to the ship, and began to row round her, they discovered us all hard at work on the outside of the ship's bottom and side; washing, and graving,¹ and stopping, as every sea-faring man knows how.

They stood for a while gazing at us, and we, who were a little

¹ Scrapping off the shells, weeds, and dirt from the hull of the ship, coating it with pitch or tar.
surprised, could not imagine what their design was; but, being willing to be sure, we took this opportunity to get some of us into the ship, and others to hand down arms and ammunition to those that were at work, to defend themselves with if there should be occasion. And it was no more than need; for in less than a quarter of an hour's consultation, they agreed, it seems, that the ship was really a wreck, that we were all at work endeavouring to save her, or to save our lives by the help of our boats; and when we handed our arms into the boats, they concluded, by that motion, that we were endeavouring to save some of our goods. Upon this they took it for granted we all belonged to them, and away they came down upon our men, as if it had been in a line of battle.

Our men seeing so many of them, began to be frightened, for we lay but in an ill posture to fight, and cried out to us to know what they should do. I immediately called to the men who worked upon the stages to slip them down and get up the side into the ship, and bade those in the boat to row round and come on board; and those few of us who were on board worked with all the strength and hands we had to bring the ship to rights. But, however, neither the men upon the stages nor those in the boats could do as they were ordered, before the Cochinches were upon them; and two of their boats boarded our longboat, and began to lay hold of the men as their prisoners.

The first man they laid hold of was an English seaman; a stout, strong fellow, who, having a musket in his hand, never offered to fire it, but laid it down in the boat, like a fool as I thought. But he understood his business better than I could teach him; for he grappled the pagan, and dragged him by main force out of their own boat into ours, where, taking him by the two ears, he beat his head so against the boat's gunwale, that the fellow died instantly in his hands. And in the meantime, a Dutchman who stood next took up the musket, and with the butt end of it so laid about him, that he knocked down five of them who attempted to enter the boat. But this was doing little towards resisting thirty or forty men, who, fearless, because ignorant of their danger, began to throw themselves into the longboat, where we had but
five men in all to defend it. But one accident gave our men a complete victory, which deserved our laughter rather than anything else. And that was this.

Our carpenter being preparing to grave the outside of the ship,

"He immediately saluted them with a ladleful boiling hot."

as well as to pay the seams where he had caulked her to stop the leaks, had got two kettles just let down into the boat, one filled with boiling pitch, and the other with rosin, tallow, and oil, and such stuff as the shipwrights use for that work; and the man that

1 Caulking is filling the seams or spaces between planks or timbers with "oakum," or old rope pulled into loose shreds. The oakum is then "payed" over with melted pitch, &c.
attended the carpenter had a great iron ladle in his hand, with which he supplied the men that were at work with that hot stuff. Two of the enemy’s men entered the boat just where this fellow stood, being in the fore-sheets; he immediately saluted them with a ladleful of the stuff, boiling hot, which so burned and scalded them, being half naked, that they roared out like two bulls, and enraged with the fire, leaped both into the sea. The carpenter saw it, and cried out, “Well done, Jack! give them some more of it;” and stepping forward himself, takes one of their mops, and dipping it in the pitch-pot, he and his man threw it among them so plentifully, that, in short, of all the men in three boats, there was not one that was not scalded and burned with it in a most frightful, pitiful manner, and made such a howling and crying that I never heard a worse noise, and indeed nothing like it: for it is worth observing that though pain naturally makes all people cry out, yet every nation has a particular way of exclamation, and make noises as different from one another as their speech. I cannot give the noise these creatures made a better name than howling, nor a name more proper to the tone of it; for I never heard anything more like the noise of the wolves, which, as I have said, I heard howl in the forest on the frontiers of Languedoc.

I was never pleased with a victory better in my life; not only as it was a perfect surprise to me, and that our danger was imminent before, but as we got this victory without any bloodshed, except of that man the fellow killed with his naked hands, and which I was very much concerned at; for I was sick of killing such poor savage wretches, even though it was in my own defence, knowing they came on errands which they thought just, and knew no better. And that though it may be a just thing, because necessary, for there is no necessary wickedness in nature, yet I thought it was a sad life, in which we must be always obliged to be killing our fellow-creatures to preserve our own; and indeed I think so still, and I would even now suffer a great deal, rather than I would take away the life even of that person injuring me. And I believe all considering people, who know the value of life, would be of my opinion; at least they would, if they entered seriously into the consideration of it.
AT SEA AGAIN. 521

But to return to my story. All the while this was doing, my partner and I, who managed the rest of the men on board, had with great dexterity brought the ship almost to rights; and having gotten the guns into their places again, the gunner called to me to bid our boat get out of the way, for he would let fly among them. I called back again to him, and bid him not offer to fire, for the carpenter would do the work without him, but bade him heat another pitch-kettle; which our cook, who was on board, took care of. But the enemy were so terrified with what they had met with in their first attack, that they would not come on again. And some of them that were farthest off, seeing the ship swim as it were upright, began, as we supposed, to see their mistake, and give over the enterprise, finding it was not as they expected. Thus we got clear of this merry fight; and having gotten some rice, and some roots, and bread, with about sixteen good big hogs, on board two days before, we resolved to stay here no longer, but go forward, whatever came of it; for we made no doubt but we should be surrounded the next day with rogues enough, perhaps more than our pitch-kettle would dispose of for us.

We therefore got all our things on board the same evening, and the next morning were ready to sail. In the meantime, lying at an anchor at some distance, we were not so much concerned, being now in a fighting posture as well as in a sailing posture, if any enemy had presented. The next day, having finished our work within board, and finding our ship was perfectly healed of all her leaks, we set sail. We would have gone into the Bay of Tonquin, for we wanted to inform ourselves of what was to be known concerning the Dutch ships that had been there; but we durst not stand in there, because we had seen several ships go in, as we supposed, but a little before; so we kept on north-east, towards the Isle of Formosa, as much afraid of being seen by a Dutch or English merchant ship, as a Dutch or English merchant ship in the Mediterranean is of an Algerine man-of-war.

When we were thus got to sea, we kept out north-east, as if we would go to the Manillas or the Philippine Islands; and this we did that we might not fall into the way of any of our European ships; and then we steered north till we came to the latitude
of 22 degrees, 30 minutes, by which means we made the island Formosa directly, where we came to an anchor, in order to get water and fresh provisions; which the people there, who are very courteous and civil in their manners, supplied us with willingly, and dealt very fairly and punctually with us in all their agreements and bargains; which is what we did not find among other people, and may be owing to the remains of Christianity, which was once planted here by a Dutch missionary of Protestants, and is a testimony of what I have often observed, namely, that the Christian religion always civilizes the people, and reforms their manners, where it is received, whether it works saving effects upon them or no.

From hence we sailed still north, keeping the coast of China at an equal distance, till we knew we were beyond all the ports of China where our European ships usually come, being resolved if possible not to fall into any of their hands, especially in this country, where, as our circumstances were, we could not fail of being entirely ruined; nay, so great was my fear in particular as to my being taken by them, that I believe firmly I would much rather have chosen to fall into the hands of the Spanish Inquisition.

Being now come to the latitude of 30 degrees, we resolved to put into the first trading port we should come at; and standing in for the shore, a boat came off two leagues to us, with an old Portuguese pilot on board, who, knowing us to be a European ship, came to offer his service, which indeed we were very glad of, and took him on board; upon which, without asking us whither we would go, he dismissed the boat he came in, and sent them back.

I thought it was now so much in our choice to make the old man carry us whither we would, that I began to talk with him about carrying us to the Gulf of Nanquin,¹ which is the most northern part of the coast of China. The old man said he knew the Gulf of Nanquin very well; but smiling, asked us what we would do there.

I told him we would sell our cargo and purchase China wares,

¹ Nankin.
calicoes, raw silks, tea, wrought silks, &c., and so would return by the same course we came. He told us our best port had been to have put in at Macao, where we could not have failed of a market for our opium to our satisfaction, and might for our money have purchased all sorts of China goods as cheap as we could at Nanquin.

Not being able to put the old man out of his talk, of which he was very opinionated or conceited, I told him we were gentlemen as well as merchants, and that we had a mind to go and see the great city of Pecking,\textsuperscript{1} and the famous court of the monarch of China. "Why, then," says the old man, "you should go to Ningpo, where, by the river which runs into the sea there, you may go up within five leagues of the Great Canal." This canal is a navigable river, which goes through the heart of that vast empire of China, crosses all the rivers, passes some considerable hills by the help of sluices and gates, and goes up to the city of Pecking; being in length near two hundred and seventy leagues.

"Well," said I, "Seignior Portuguese, but that is not our business now. The great question is, if you can carry us up to the city of Nanquin, from whence we can travel to Pecking afterwards."

"Yes," he said, "he could do so very well, and that there was a great Dutch ship gone up that way just before." This gave me a little shock; and a Dutch ship was now our terror, and we had much rather have met the devil, at least if he had not come in too frightful a figure; and we depended upon it that a Dutch ship would be our destruction, for we were in no condition to fight them; all the ships they trade with into those parts being of great burden and of much greater force than we were.

The old man found me a little confused, and under some concern when he named a Dutch ship, and said to me, "Sir, you need be under no apprehensions of the Dutch, I suppose they are not now at war with your nation." "No," says I, "that's true; but I know not what liberties men may take when they are out of the reach of the law." "Why," says he, "you are no pirates, what need you fear? They will not meddle with peaceable merchants, sure."

\textsuperscript{1} Pekin.
THE PILOT'S STORY.

If I had any blood in my body that did not fly up into my face at that word, it was hindered by some stop in the vessels appointed by Nature to prevent it; for it put me into the greatest disorder and confusion imaginable. Nor was it possible for me to conceal it so, but that the old man easily perceived it.

"Sir," says he, "I find you in some disorder in your thoughts at my talk; pray be pleased to go which way you think fit, and depend upon it I'll do you all the service I can." "Wherein, seignior," said I, "it is true I am a little unsettled in my resolution at this time whither to go in particular; and I am something more so for what you said about pirates. I hope there are no pirates in these seas; we are but in an ill condition to meet with them, for you see we have but a small force, and but very weakly manned."

"O sir," says he, "do not be concerned; I do not know that there has been any pirates in these seas these fifteen years, except one which was seen, as I hear, in the Bay of Siam about a month since; but you may be assured she is gone to the southward. Nor was she a ship of any great force, or fit for the work. She was not built for a privateer, but was run away with by a reprobate crew that were on board, after the captain and some of his men had been murdered by the Malayans at or near the island of Sumatra."

"What!" said I, seeming to know nothing of the matter, "did they murder the captain?" "No," said he; "I do not understand that they murdered him; but as they afterwards run away with the ship, it is generally believed they betrayed him into the hands of the Malayans, who did murder him, and perhaps they procured them to do it." "Why then," said I, "they deserve death as much as if they had done it themselves." "Yea," says the old man, "they do deserve it, and they will certainly have it, if they light upon any English or Dutch ship; for they have all agreed together that if they meet that rogue they will give him no quarter."

"But," said I to him, "you say the pirate is gone out of those seas. How can they meet with him?" "Why, that is true," says he. "They do say so; but he was, as I tell you, in the Bay
of Siam, in the river Cambodia, and was discovered there by some Dutchmen who belonged to the ship, and who were left on shore when they run away with her; and some English and Dutch traders being in the river, they were within a little of taking him. Nay," said he, "if the foremost boats had been well seconded by the rest, they had certainly taken him, but he finding only two boats within reach of him, tacked about, and fired at these two, and disabled them before the others came up; and then standing off to sea, the other were not able to follow him, and so he got away. But they have all so exact a description of the ship that they will be sure to know him; and wherever they find him they have vowed to give no quarter, to either the captain or the seamen, but to hang them all up at the yard-arm."

"What!" says I; "will they execute them right or wrong; hang them first, and judge them afterwards?" "O sir!" says the old pilot, "there's no need to make a formal business of it with such rogues as those; let them tie them back to back and set them a diving. 'Tis no more than they richly deserve."

I knew I had my old man fast aboard, and that he could do me no harm, so that I turned short upon him. "Well now, seignior," said I, "and this is the very reason why I would have you carry us up to Nanquin, and not to put back to Macao, or to any other part of the country where the English or Dutch ships come. For be it known to you, seignior, those captains of the English and Dutch ships are a parcel of rash, proud, insolent fellows, that neither knows what belongs to justice, nor how to behave themselves as the laws of God and nature direct. But being proud of their offices, and not understanding their power, they would act the murderers to punish robbers; would take upon them to insult men falsely accused, and determine them guilty without due inquiry. And perhaps I may live to call some of them to an account for it, where they may be taught how justice is to be executed, and that no man ought to be treated as a criminal till some evidence may be had of the crime, and that he is the man."

With this I told him that this was the very ship they attacked; and gave him a full account of the skirmish we had with their boats, and how foolishly and coward-like they behaved. I told
him all the story of our buying the ship, and how the Dutchmen served us. I told him the reasons I had to believe that this story of killing the master by the Malayans was not true; as also the running away with the ship: but that it was all a fiction of their own, to suggest that the men were turned pirates; and they ought to have been sure it was so before they had ventured to attack us by surprise, and oblige us to resist them; adding, that they would have the blood of those men who we killed there in our just defence to answer for.

The old man was amazed at this relation, and told us we were very much in the right to go away to the north; and that if he might advise us, it should be to sell the ship in China, which we might very well do, and buy or build another in the country. "And," said he, "though you will not get so good a ship, yet you may get one able enough to carry you and all your goods back again to Bengal, or anywhere else."

I told him I would take his advice when I came to any port where I could find a ship for my turn, or get any customer to buy this. He replied I should meet with customers enough for the ship at Nanquin, and that a Chinese junk would serve me very well to go back again; and that he would procure me people both to buy the one and sell the other.

"Well but, seignior," says I, "as you say they know the ship so well, I may perhaps, if I follow your measures, be instrumental to bring some honest innocent men into a terrible broil, and perhaps to be murdered in cold blood; for wherever they find the ship they will prove the guilt upon the men by proving this was the ship, and so innocent men may probably be overpowered and murdered." "Why," says the old man, "I'll find out a way to prevent that also; for as I know all those commanders you speak of very well, and shall see them all as they pass by, I will be sure to set them to rights in the thing, and let them know that they had been so much in the wrong: that though the people who were on board at first might run away with the ship, yet it was not true that they had turned pirates; and that in particular these were not the men that first went off with the ship, but innocently bought her for their trade: and I am persuaded they will so far
believe me as, at least, to act more cautiously for the time to come." "Well," says I; "and will you deliver one message to them from me?" "Yes, I will," says he, "if you will give it under your hand in writing, that I may be able to prove that it came from you, and not out of my own head." I answered, "That I would readily give it him under my hand." So I took a pen, and ink, and paper, and wrote at large the story of assaulting me with the longboats, &c.; the pretended reason of it, and the unjust cruel design of it; and concluded to the commanders, that they had done what they not only should have been ashamed of, but also, that if ever they came to England, and I lived to see them there, they should all pay dearly for it, if the laws of my country were not grown out of use before I arrived there.

My old pilot read this over and over again, and asked me several times if I would stand to it? I answered, "I would stand to it as long as I had anything left in the world;" being sensible that I should one time or other find an opportunity to put it home to them. But we had no occasion ever to let the pilot carry this letter; for he never went back again. While those things were passing between us, by way of discourse, we went forward directly for Nanquin; and in about thirteen days' sail came to an anchor at the south-west point of the great Gulf of Nanquin, where, by the way, I came by accident to understand that two Dutch ships were gone the length before me, and that I should certainly fall into their hands. I consulted my partner again in this exigency; and he was as much at a loss as I was, and would very gladly have been safe on shore almost anywhere. However, I was not in such perplexity neither; but I asked the old pilot if there was no creek or harbour which I might put into, and pursue my business with the Chinese privately, and be in no danger of the enemy? He told me if I would sail to the southward about two and forty leagues, there was a little port called Quinchang, where the fathers of the mission usually landed from Macao, on their progress to teach the Christian religion to the Chinese, and where no European ships ever put in; and if I thought to put in there, I might consider what farther course to take when I was on shore. He confessed, he said, it was not a place for merchants,
except that at some certain times they had a kind of a fair there, when the merchants from Japan came over thither to buy the Chinese merchandise.

We all agreed to go back to this place. The name of the port as he called it I may perhaps spell wrong, for I do not particularly remember it, having lost this, together with the names of many other places set down in a little pocket-book which was spoiled by the water, on an accident which I shall relate in its order; but this I remember, that the Chinese or Japonese merchants we corresponded with called it by a differing name from that which our Portuguese pilot gave it, and pronounced it, as above, Quinchang.

As we were unanimous in our resolutions to go to this place, we weighed the next day, having only gone twice on shore, where we were to get fresh water; on both which occasions the people of the country were very civil to us, and brought us abundance of things to sell to us, I mean, of provisions, plants, roots, tea, rice, and some fowls; but nothing without money.

We came to the other port (the wind being contrary) not till five days, but it was very much to our satisfaction. And I was joyful, and I may say thankful, when I set my foot safe on shore, resolving, and my partner too, that if it was possible to dispose of ourselves and effects any other way, though not every way to our satisfaction, we would never set one foot on board that unhappy vessel more; and, indeed, I must acknowledge, that of all the circumstances of life that ever I had any experience of, nothing makes mankind so completely miserable as that of being in constant fear. Well does the Scripture say, "The fear of man brings a snare:" it is a life of death, and the mind is so entirely suppressed by it, that it is capable of no relief; the animal spirits sink, and all the vigour of nature, which usually supports men under other afflictions, and is present to them in the greatest exigencies, fails them here.

Nor did it fail of its usual operations upon the fancy by heightening every danger, representing the English and Dutch captains to be men incapable of hearing reason, or of distinguishing between honest men and rogues; or between a story calculated for
our own turn, made out of nothing, on purpose to deceive, and a true genuine account of our whole voyage, progress, and design. For we might many ways have convinced any reasonable creature that we were not pirates: the goods we had on board, the course we steered, our frankly showing ourselves, and entering into such and such ports; and even our very manner, the force we had, the number of men, the few arms, little ammunition, short provisions; all these would have served to convince any men that we were no pirates. The opium, and other goods we had on board, would make it appear the ship had been at Bengal. The Dutchmen, who, it was said, had the names of all the men that were in the ship, might easily see that we were a mixture of English, Portuguese, and Indians, and but two Dutchmen on board. These, and many other particular circumstances, might have made it evident to the understanding of any commander, whose hands we might fall into, that we were no pirates.

But fear, that blind, useless passion, worked another way, and threw us into the vapours; it bewildered our understandings, and set the imagination at work to form a thousand terrible things that perhaps might never happen. We first supposed, as indeed everybody had related to us, that the seamen on board the English and Dutch ships, but especially the Dutch, were so enraged at the name of a pirate, and especially at our beating of their boats and escaping, that they would not give themselves leave to inquire whether we were pirates or no, but would execute us off-hand, as we call it, without giving us any room for a defence. We reflected that there was really so much apparent evidence before them, that they would scarce inquire after any more; as, first, that the ship was certainly the same, and that some of the seamen among them knew her, and had been on board her; and secondly, that when we had intelligence at the river of Cambodia that they were coming down to examine us, we fought their boats and fled: so that we made no doubt that they were fully satisfied of our being pirates, as we were satisfied of the contrary; and, as I often said, I know not but I should have been apt to have taken those circumstances for evidence, if the tables were turned, and my case was theirs, and have made no scruple of cutting all the crew to pieces, without
believing, or perhaps considering, what they might have to offer in their defence.

But let that be how it will, those were our apprehensions; and both my partner and I too scarce slept a night without dreaming of halters and yard-arms—that is to say, gibbets; of fighting, and being taken; of killing, and being killed; and one night I was in such a fury in my dream, fancying the Dutchmen had boarded us, and I was knocking one of their seamen down, that I struck my double fist against the side of the cabin I lay in, with such a force as wounded my hand most grievously, broke my knuckles and cut and bruised the flesh; so that it not only waked me out of my sleep, but I was once afraid I should have lost two of my fingers.

Another apprehension I had, was of the cruel usage we might meet with from them if we fell into their hands. Then the story of Amboyna\(^1\) came into my head, and how the Dutch might perhaps torture us, as they did our countrymen there, and make some of our men, by extremity of torture, confess those crimes they never were guilty of, own themselves and all of us to be pirates, and so they would put us to death, with a formal appearance of justice; and that they might be tempted to do this for the gain of our ship and cargo, which was worth four or five thousand pound, put all together.

These things tormented me, and my partner too, night and day; nor did we consider that the captains of ships have no authority to act thus; and if we had surrendered prisoners to them, they could not answer the destroying us, or torturing us, but would be

---

\(^1\) Amboyna, the most important but not the largest of the Moluccas or Spice Islands in the Eastern seas. Taken in 1621 by the Portuguese, who were tyrannical and cruel to the natives. Early in the seventeenth century the Dutch took the island from the Portuguese, but were just as cruel, so that the people of Amboyna were always at strife with them. In 1604 the East India Company tried to make a settlement in the island, and in 1619 a treaty was made between them and the Dutch, but there were constant quarrels and disputes. At a later date the jealousy of the Dutch led them to accuse a Captain Towerson, with nine Englishmen, nine Japanese, and one Portuguese sailor, of conspiring to surprise the garrison, and these persons were seized, tortured, tried, found guilty, and executed. This, which was called the "massacre of Amboyna," made a great sensation in England, and it is this that is referred to here.
accountable for it when they came into their own country: this, I say, gave me no satisfaction; for if they will act thus with us, what advantage would it be to us that they would be called to an account for it? or if we were first to be murdered, what satisfaction would it be to us to have them punished when they came home?

I cannot refrain taking notice here what reflections I now had upon the past variety of my particular circumstances; how hard I thought it was that I, who had spent forty years in a life of continued difficulties, and was at last come, as it were, to the port or haven which all men drive at, namely, to have rest and plenty, should be a volunteer in new sorrows by my own unhappy choice; and that I, who had escaped so many dangers in my youth, should now come to be hanged in my old age, and in so remote a place, for a crime I was not in the least inclined to, much less really guilty of, and in a place and circumstance where innocence was not like to be any protection at all to me.

After these thoughts, something of religion would come in; and I should be considering that this seemed to me to be a disposition of immediate Providence, and I ought to look upon it, and submit to it as such; that although I was innocent as to men, I was far from being innocent as to my Maker; and I ought to look in and examine what other crimes in my life were most obvious to me, and for which Providence might justly inflict this punishment as a retribution; and that I ought to submit to this, just as I would to a shipwreck, if it had pleased God to have brought such a disaster upon me.

In its turn, natural courage would sometimes take its place, and then I would be talking myself up to vigorous resolutions, that I would not be taken, to be barbarously used, by a parcel of merciless wretches, in cold blood: that it were much better to have fallen into the hands of the savages, who were man-eaters, and who, I was sure, would feast upon me when they had taken me, than by those, who would perhaps glut their rage upon me by inhuman tortures and barbarities: that in the case of the savages, I always resolved to die fighting to the last gasp; and why should I not do so, seeing it was much more dreadful to me, at least, to
think of falling into these men's hands, than ever it was to think of being eaten by men; for the savages, give them their due, would not eat a man till he was dead, and killed him first, as we do a bullock; but that these men had many arts beyond the cruelty of death. Whenever these thoughts prevailed I was sure to put myself in a kind of fever with the agitations of a supposed fight; my blood would boil and my eyes sparkle as if I was engaged; and I always resolved that I would take no quarter at their hands, but even at last, if I could resist no longer, I would blow up the ship, and all that was in her, and leave them but little booty to boast of.

By how much the greater weight the anxieties and perplexities of these things were to our thoughts while we were at sea, by so much the greater was our satisfaction when we saw ourselves on shore; and my partner told me he dreamed that he had a very heavy load upon his back, which he was to carry up a hill, and found that he was not able to stand long under it; but that the Portuguese pilot came and took it off his back, and the hill disappeared, the ground before him showing all smooth and plain; and truly it was so, we were all like men who had a load taken off their backs.

For my part, I had a weight taken off from my heart that I was not able any longer to bear; and, as I said above, we resolved to go no more to sea in that ship. When we came on shore, the old pilot, who was now our friend, got us a lodging and a warehouse for our goods; which, by the way, was much the same. It was a little house or hut, with a large house joining to it, all built with canes, and palisaded round with large canes to keep out pilfering thieves, of which, it seems, there were not a few in that country. However, the magistrates allowed us also a little guard, and we had a sentinel with a kind of halberd, or half-pike, who stood sentinel at our door; to whom we allowed a pint of rice, and a little piece of money, about the value of threepence per day; so that our goods were kept very safe.

The fair or mart usually kept in this place had been over some time; however, we found that there were three or four junkas in the river, and two Japanners, I mean ships from Japan, with goods
which they had bought in China, and were not gone away, having
Japanese merchants on shore.

The first thing our old Portuguese pilot did for us, was to bring
us acquainted with three missionary Romish priests who were in
the town, and who had been there some time, converting the
people to Christianity; but we thought they made but poor work
of it, and made them but sorry Christians when they had done.
However, that was none of our business. One of these was a
Frenchman, whom they called Father Simon. He was a jolly,
well-conditioned man, very free in his conversation; not seeming
so serious and grave as the other two did, one of whom was a
Portuguese, and the other a Genoese: but Father Simon was
courteous, easy in his manner, and very agreeable company. The
other two were more reserved, seemed rigid and austere, and
applied seriously to the work they came about, namely, to talk
with and insinuate themselves among the inhabitants wherever
they had opportunity. We often eat and drank with those men;
and though I must confess the conversion, as they call it, of the
Chinese to Christianity is so far from the true conversion required
to bring heathen people to the faith of Christ, that it seems to
amount to little more than letting them know the name of Christ,
and say some prayers to the Virgin Mary and her Son in a tongue
which they understand not, and to cross themselves, and the like,
yet it must be confessed that these religious, who we call mission-
aries, have a firm belief that these people shall be saved, and that
they are the instruments of it. And on this account they undergo,
not only the fatigue of the voyage, and hazards of living in such
places, but oftentimes death itself, with the most violent tortures,
for the sake of this work; and it would be a great want of charity
in us, whatever opinion we have of the work itself, and the manner
of their doing it, if we should not have a good opinion of their
zeal, who undertook it with so many hazards, and who have no
prospect of the least temporal advantage to themselves.

But to return to my story. This French priest, Father Simon,
was appointed, it seems, by order of the chief of the mission, to
go up to Peking, the royal seat of the Chinese Emperor, and waited
only for another priest who was ordered to come to him from
Macao to go along with him; and we scarce ever met together but he was inviting me to go that journey, telling me how he would show me all the glorious things of that mighty empire; and, among the rest, the greatest city in the world—"A city," said he, "that your London and our Paris put together cannot be equal to." This was the city of Peking: which, I confess, is very great, and infinitely full of people; but as I looked on those things with different eyes from other men, so I shall give my opinion of them in few words, when I come in the course of my travels to speak more particularly of them.

But first, I come to my friar or missionary. Dining with him one day, and being very merry together, I showed some little inclination to go with him, and he pressed me and my partner very hard, and with a great many persuasions, to consent. "Why, Father Simon," says my partner, "why should you desire our company so much? You know we are heretics, and you do not love us, nor can keep us company with any pleasure." "Oh," says he, "you may, perhaps, be good Catholics in time; my business here is to convert heathens, and who knows but I may convert you too." "Very well, father," said I; "so you will preach to us all the way." "I won't be troublesome to you," says he; "our religion does not divest us of good manners; besides," says he, "we are here like countrymen, and so we are, compared to the place we are in; and if you are Huguenots and I a Catholic, we may be all Christians at last; at least," said he, "we are all gentlemen, and we may converse so without being uneasy to one another." I liked that part of his discourse very well, and it began to put me in mind of my priest that I had left in the Brazils; but this Father Simon did not come up to his character, by a great deal; for though Father Simon had no appearance of a criminal levity in him neither, yet he had not that fund of Christian zeal, strict piety, and sincere affection to religion that my other good ecclesiastic had, of whom I have said so much.

But to leave him a little, though he never left us, nor soliciting us to go with him; but we had something else before us at first:

1 The Protestants in France were called Huguenots or Hugonots, it is supposed, from the name of Hugon, one of their early leaders.
for we had all this while our ship and our merchandise to dispose of, and we began to be very doubtful what we should do, for we were now in a place of very little business; and once I was about to venture to sail for the river of Kilam and the city of Nanquin. But providence seemed now more visibly, as I thought, than ever to concern itself in our affair; and I was encouraged from this very time to think I should one way or other get out of this tangled circumstance and be brought home to my own country again, though I had not the least view of the manner; and when I began sometimes to think of it, could not imagine by what method it was to be done. Providence, I say, began here to clear up our way a little; and the first thing that offered was that our old Portuguese pilot brought a Japan merchant to us, who began to inquire what goods we had; and in the first place, he bought all our opium, and gave us a very good price for it, paying us in gold
by weight; some in small pieces of their own coin, and some in small wedges of about ten or eleven ounces each. While we were dealing with him for our opium, it came into my head that he might perhaps deal with us for the ship too, and I ordered the interpreter to propose it to him. He shrunk up his shoulders at it when it was first proposed to him, but in a few days after he came to me, with one of the missionary priests for his interpreter, and told me he had a proposal to make to me, and that was this: He had bought a great quantity of goods of us, when he had no thoughts (or proposals made to him) of buying the ship, and that, therefore he had not money enough to pay for the ship; but if I would let the same men who were in the ship navigate her, he would hire the ship to go to Japan, and would send them from thence to the Philippine Islands with another loading, which he would pay the freight of before they went from Japan; and that at their return he would buy the ship. I began to listen to his proposal, and so eager did my head still run upon rambling, that I could not but begin to entertain a notion of going myself with him, and so to sail from the Philippine Islands away to the South Seas; and accordingly I asked the Japanese merchant if he would not hire us to the Philippine Islands and discharge us there. He said, No, he could not do that, for then he could not have the return of his cargo; but he would discharge us in Japan, he said, at the ship’s return. Well, still I was for taking him at that proposal, and going myself; but my partner, wiser than myself, persuaded me from it, representing the dangers as well of the seas as of the Japanese, who are a false, cruel, and treacherous people; and then of the Spaniards at the Philippines, more false, more cruel, and more treacherous than they.

But to bring this long turn of our affairs to a conclusion, the first thing we had to do was to consult with the captain of the ship, and with his men, and know if they were willing to go to Japan. And while I was doing this, the young man who, as I said, my nephew had left with me as my companion for my travels, came to me and told me that he thought that voyage promised very fair, and that there was a great prospect of advantage, and he would be very glad if I undertook it; but that if I would not,
and would give him leave, he would go as a merchant, or how I pleased to order him; that if ever he came to England, and I was there and alive, he would render me a faithful account of his success, and it should be as much mine as I pleased.

I was really loath to part with him, but considering the prospect of advantage, which was really considerable, and that he was a young fellow as likely to do well in it as any I knew, I inclined to let him go; but first I told him I would consult my partner, and give him an answer the next day. My partner and I dis-coursed about it, and my partner made a most generous offer. He told me, “You know it has been an unlucky ship, and we both resolve not to go to sea in it again; if your steward,” so he called my man, “will venture the voyage, I’ll leave my share of the vessel to him, and let him make his best of it; and if we live to meet in England, and he meets with success abroad, he shall account for one half of the profits of the ship’s freight to us, the other shall be his own.”

If my partner, who was no way concerned with my young man, made him such an offer, I could do no less than offer him the same; and all the ship’s company being willing to go with him, we made over half the ship to him in property, and took a writing from him, obliging him to account for the other; and away he went to Japan. The Japan merchant proved a very punctual, honest man to him, protected him at Japan, and got him a license to come on shore, which the Europeans in general have not lately obtained; paid him his freight very punctually, sent him to the Philippines loaded with Japan and China wares, and a supercargo of their own, who, trafficking with the Spaniards, brought back European goods again, and a great quantity of cloves and other spice. And there he was not only paid his freight very well and at a very good price, but being not willing to sell the ship then, the merchant furnished him with goods on his own account; that for some money and some spices of his own, which he brought with him, he went back to the Manillas to the Spaniards, where he sold his cargo very well. Here, having gotten a good acquaintance at Manilla, he got his ship made a free ship; and the Governor of Manilla hired him to go to Acapulco in America, on the coast of
Mexico, and gave him a license to land there, and travel to Mexico, and to pass in any Spanish ship to Europe, with all his men.

He made the voyage to Acapulco very happily, and there he sold his ship; and having there also obtained allowance to travel by land to Portobello, he found means, somehow or other, to get to Jamaica with all his treasure; and about eight years after, came to England exceeding rich: of the which I shall take notice in its place; in the meantime, I return to our particular affairs.

Being now to part with the ship and ship's company, it came before us, of course, to consider what recompense we should give to the two men that gave us such timely notice of the design against us in the river of Cambodia. The truth was, they had done us a considerable service, and deserved well at our hands; though, by the way, they were a couple of rogues too; for as they believed the story of our being pirates, and that we had really run away with the ship, they came down to us, not only to betray the design that was formed against us, but to go to sea with us as pirates; and one of them confessed afterwards, that nothing else but the hopes of going a-roguing brought him to do it. However, the service they did us was not the less; and therefore, as I had promised to be grateful to them, I first ordered the money to be paid to them which they said was due to them on board their respective ships; that is to say, the Englishman nineteen months' pay, and to the Dutchman seven; and over and above that, I gave them, each of them, a small sum of money in gold, and which contented them very well. Then I made the Englishman gunner in the ship, the gunner being now made second mate and purser; the Dutchman I made boatswain: so they were both very well pleased, and proved very serviceable, being both able seamen, and very stout fellows.

We were now on shore in China. If I thought myself banished and remote from my own country at Bengal, where I had many ways to get home for my money, what could I think of myself now, when I was gotten about a thousand leagues farther off from home, and perfectly destitute of all manner of prospect of return?

All we had for it was this, that in about four months' time there
AT NANQUIN.

was to be another fair at the place where we were; and then we
might be able to purchase all sorts of the manufactures of the
country, and withal might possibly find some Chinese junks or
vessels from Tonquin that would be to be sold, and would carry us
and our goods whither we pleased. This I liked very well, and
resolved to wait; besides, as our particular persons were not
obnoxious, so if any English or Dutch ships came thither, perhaps
we might have an opportunity to load our goods and get passage
to some other place in India, nearer home.

Upon these hopes we resolved to continue here; but to divert
ourselves, we took two or three journeys into the country. First
we went ten days' journey to see the city of Nanquin: a city well
worth seeing indeed. They say it has a million of people in it;
which, however, I do not believe. It is regularly built, the streets
all exactly straight, and cross one another in direct lines, which gives
the figure of it great advantage.

But when I come to compare the miserable people of these
countries with ours, their fabrics, their manner of living, their
government, their religion, their wealth, and their glory (as some
call it), I must confess I do not so much as think it is worth
naming, or worth my while to write of, or any that shall come
after me to read.

It is very observable, that we wonder at the grandeur, the
riches, the pomp, the ceremonies, the government, the manu-
factures, the commerce, and the conduct of these people; not that
it is to be wondered at, or, indeed, in the least to be regarded, but
because, having first a true notion of the barbarity of those coun-
tries, the rudeness and the ignorance that prevails there, we do not
expect to find any such things so far off.

Otherwise, what are their buildings to the palaces and royal
buildings of Europe? What their trade to the universal com-
merce of England, Holland, France, and Spain? What are their
cities to ours, for wealth, strength, gaiety of apparel, rich furniture,
and an infinite variety? What are their ports, supplied with a
few junks and barks, to our navigation, our merchant fleets, our
large and powerful navies? Our city of London has more trade
than all their mighty empire. One English, or Dutch, or French
man-of-war of eighty guns would fight and destroy all the shipping of China. But the greatness of their wealth, their trade, the power of their government, and strength of their armies, is surprising to us, because, as I have said, considering them as a barbarous nation of pagans, little better than savages, we did not expect such things among them; and this, indeed, is the advantage with which all their greatness and power is represented to us. Otherwise, it is in itself nothing at all; for as I have said of their ships, so may be said of their armies and troops. All the forces of their empire, though they were to bring two millions of men into the field together, would be able to do nothing but ruin the country and starve themselves. If they were to besiege a strong town in Flanders, or to fight a disciplined army, one line of German cuirassiers or of French cavalry would overthrow all the horse of China. A million of their foot could not stand before one embattled body of our infantry, posted so as not to be surrounded, though they were to be not one to twenty in number; nay, I do not boast if I say that 30,000 German or English foot, and 10,000 French horse, would fairly beat all the forces of China. And so of our fortified towns, and of the art of our engineers in assaulting and defending towns. There is not a fortified town in China could hold out one month against the batteries and attacks of an European army; and, at the same time, all the armies of China could never take such a town as Dunkirk, provided it was not starved, no, not in a ten years' siege. They have firearms, it is true, but they are awkward, clumsy, and uncertain in going off. They have powder, but it is of no strength. They have neither discipline in the field, exercise to their arms, skill to attack, or temper to retreat. And therefore I must confess it seemed strange to me, when I came home and heard our people say such fine things of the power, riches, glory, magnificence, and trade of the Chinese; because I saw and knew that they were a contemptible herd, or crowd of ignorant, sordid slaves, subjected to a government qualified only to rule such a people. And in a word (for I am now launched quite beside my design)—I say, in a word, were not its distance inconceivably great from Muscovy,1 and was not the Muscovite

1 Russia, anciently called Muscovy: the capital being Moscow or Muscov.
empire almost as rude, impotent, and ill-governed a crowd of slaves as they, the Czar of Muscovy might with much ease drive them all out of their country, and conquer them in one campaign. And had the Czar, who I since hear is a growing prince, and begins to appear formidable in the world, fallen this way, instead of attacking the warlike Swedes (in which attempt none of the powers of Europe would have envied or interrupted him), he might by this time have been Emperor of China, instead of being beaten by the King of Sweden at Narva, when the latter was not one to six in number. As their strength and their grandeur, so their navigation, commerce, and husbandry is imperfect and impotent, compared to the same things in Europe; also in their knowledge, their learning, their skill in the sciences. They have globes and spheres, and a smatch\(^1\) of the knowledge of the mathematics; but when you come to inquire into their knowledge, how short-sighted are the wisest of their students! They know nothing of the motion of the heavenly bodies; and so grossly, absurdly ignorant, that when the sun is eclipsed, they think it is a great dragon has assaulted and run away with it, and they fall a-clattering with all the drums and kettles in the country, to fright the monster away, just as we do to hive a swarm of bees!

As this is the only excursion of this kind which I have made in all the account I have given of my travels, so I shall make no more descriptions of countries and people; it is none of my business, or any part of my design, but giving an account of my own adventures, through a life of inimitable wanderings, and a long variety of changes, which perhaps few that come after me will have heard the like of. I shall therefore say very little of all the mighty places, desert countries, and numerous people I have yet to pass through more than relates to my own story, and which my concern among them will make necessary. I was now, as near as I can compute, in the heart of China, about the latitude of 30 degrees north of the line, for we were returned from Nanquin. I had indeed a mind to see the city of Peking, which I had heard so much of, and Father Simon importuned me daily to do it. At length his time of going away being set, and the other missionary

\(^1\) Or as we say, smattering, a small or superficial knowledge.
who was to go with him being arrived from Macao, in was necessary that we should resolve either to go or not to go; so I referred him to my partner, and left it wholly to his choice, who at length resolved it in the affirmative, and we prepared for our journey. We set out with very good advantage as to finding the way; for we got leave to travel in the retinue of one of their mandarins—a kind of viceroy, or principal magistrate in the province where they reside, and who take great state upon them, travelling with great attendance, and with great homage from the people, who are sometimes greatly impoverished by them, because all the countries they pass through are obliged to furnish provisions for them and all their attendance. That which I particularly observed, as to our travelling with his baggage, was this, that though we received sufficient provisions, both for ourselves and our horses, from the country, as belonging to the mandarin, yet were obliged to pay for everything we had after the market price of the country, and the mandarin’s steward, or commissary of the provisions, collected it duly from us; so that our travelling in the retinue of the mandarin, though it was a very great kindness to us, was not such a mighty favour in him, but was indeed a great advantage to him, considering there were above thirty other people travelled in the same manner besides us, under the protection of his retinue, or, as we may call it, under his convoy. This, I say, was a great advantage to him, for the country furnished all the provisions for nothing, and he took all our money for them.

We were five and twenty days travelling to Peking, through a country infinitely populous, but miserably cultivated; the husbandry, the economy, and the way of living miserable, though they boast so much of the industry of the people. I say miserable, and so it is, if we who understand how to live were to endure it, or to compare it with our own; but not so to these poor wretches who know no other. The pride of these people is infinitely great, and exceeded by nothing but their poverty, which adds to that which I call their misery. And I must needs think the naked savages of America live much more happy, because, as they have nothing, so they desire nothing; whereas these are proud and insolent, and in the main are mere beggars and drudges.
Their ostentation is inexpressible, and is chiefly shewed in their clothes and buildings, and in the keeping multitudes of servants or slaves; and, which is to the last degree ridiculous, their contempt of all the world but themselves.

I must confess I travelled more pleasantly afterwards in the deserts and vast wildernesses of Grand Tartary than here; and yet the roads here are well paved, and well kept, and very convenient for travellers; but nothing was more awkward to me than to see such a haughty, imperious, insolent people, in the midst of the grossest simplicity and ignorance; for all their famed ingenuity is no more. And my friend Father Simon and I used to be very merry upon these occasions, to see the beggarly pride of those people. For example, coming by the house of a country gentleman, as Father Simon called him, about ten leagues off of the city of Nanquin, we had first of all the honour to ride with the master of the house about two miles. The state he rode in was a perfect Don Quixotism, being a mixture of pomp and poverty.

The habit of this greasy don was very proper for a scaramouch or merry Andrew, being a dirty calico, with all the tawdry and trapping of a fool's coat, such as hanging sleeves, tassels, and cuts and slashes almost on every side. It covered a taffeta vest, as greasy as a butcher, and which testified that his honour must needs be a most exquisite sloven.

His horse was a poor, lean, starved, hobbling creature, such as in England might sell for about thirty or forty shillings; and he had two slaves followed him on foot to drive the poor creature along. He had a whip in his hand, and he belaboured the beast as fast about the head as his slaves did about the tail; and thus he rode by us with about ten or twelve servants, and we were told he was going from the city to his country seat, about half a league before us. We travelled on gently, but this figure of a gentleman rode away before us, and as we stopped at a village about an hour to refresh us, when we came by the country-seat of this great man, we saw him in a little place before his door eating his repast. It was a kind of a garden, but he was easy to be seen; and we were given to understand that the more we looked on him the better he would be pleased.
He sat under a tree something like the palmetto tree, which effectually shaded him over the head; and on the south side, but under the tree also, was placed a large umbrella, which made that part look well enough. He sat lolling back in a great elbow-chair, being a heavy corpulent man, and his meat being brought him by two women slaves. He had two more, whose office, I think, few gentlemen in Europe would accept of their service in—namely, one fed the squire with a spoon, and the other held the dish with one hand, and scraped off what he let fall upon his worship's beard and taffeta vest; while the great fat brute thought it below him to employ his own hands in any of those familiar offices, which kings and monarchs would rather do than be troubled with the clumsy fingers of their servants.

I took this time to think what pain men's pride puts them to, and how troublesome a haughty temper, thus ill managed, must be to a man of common sense. And leaving the poor wretch to please himself with our looking at him, as if we admired his pomp, whereas we really pitied and contemned him, we pursued our journey. Only Father Simon had the curiosity to stay to inform himself what dainties the country justice had to feed on, in all his state, which, he said, he had the honour to taste of, and which was, I think, a dose that an English hound would scarce have eaten if it had been offered him, namely, a mess of boiled rice, with a great piece of garlic in it, and a little bag filled with green pepper, and another plant which they have there, something like our ginger, but smelling like musk, and tasting like mustard. All this was put together; and a small lump or piece of lean mutton boiled in it; and this was his worship's repast, four or five servants more attending at a distance. If he fed them meaner than he was fed himself, the spice excepted, they must fare very coarsely indeed.

As for our mandarin, with whom we travelled, he was respected like a king; surrounded always with his gentlemen, and attended in all his appearances with such pomp that I saw little of him but at a distance. But this I observed, that there was not a horse in his retinue, but that our carriers' pack-horses in England seem to me to look much better; but they were so covered with equipage,
mantles, trappings, and such like trumpery, that you cannot see whether they are fat or lean. In a word, we could see scarce anything but their feet and their heads.

I was now light-hearted, and all my trouble and perplexity that I have given an account of being over, I had no anxious thoughts about me, which made this journey the pleasanter to me; nor had I any ill accident attended me, only in the passing or fording a small river, my horse fell, and made me free of the country, as they call it, that is to say, threw me in. The place was not deep, but it wetted me all over. I mention it because it spoiled my pocket-book, wherein I had set down the names of several people and places, which I had occasion to remember; and which, not taking due care of, the leaves rotted, and the words were never after to be read, to my great loss as to the names of some places I touched at in this voyage.

At length we arrived at Peking. I had nobody with me but the youth who my nephew, the captain, had given me to attend me as a servant, and who proved very trusty and diligent; and my partner had nobody with him but one servant, who was a kinsman. As for the Portuguese pilot, he being desirous to see the court, we gave him his passage—that is to say, bore his charges for his company, and to use him as an interpreter; for he understood the language of the country, and spoke good French, and a little English. And, indeed, this old man was a most useful implement to us everywhere; for we had not been above a week at Peking when he came laughing. "Ah, Seignor Inglese," says he, "I have something to tell you will make your heart glad." "My heart glad," says I. "What can that be? I don't know anything in this country can either give me joy or grief to any great degree." "Yes, yes," said the old man, in broken English; "make you glad, me sorrow." "Sorry" he would have said. This made me more inquisitive. "Why," said I, "will it make you sorry?" "Because," said he, "you have brought me here twenty-five days' journey, and will leave me to go back alone. And which way shall I get to my port afterwards, without a ship, without a horse, without pecune?" So he called money, being his broken Latin, of which he had abundance to make us merry with.
In short, he told us there was a great caravan of Muscovite and Polish merchants in the city, and they were preparing to set out on their journey by land to Muscovy, within four or five weeks; and he was sure we would take the opportunity to go with them, and leave him behind to go back all alone. I confess I was surprised with his news; a secret joy spread itself over my whole soul, which I cannot describe, and never felt before or since, and I had no power for a good while to speak a word to the old man. But at last I turned to him. "How do you know this?" said I. "Are you sure it is true?" "Yes," says he: "I met this morning in the street an old acquaintance of mine, an Armenian, or one you call a Grecian, who is among them. He came last from Astracan, and was designing to go to Tonquin, where I formerly knew him, but has altered his mind, and is now resolved to go with the caravan to Muscov, and so down the river Wolga to Astracan." "Well, seignior," says I, "do not be uneasy about being left to go back alone. If this be a method for my return to England, it shall be your fault if you go back to Macao at all." We then went to consulting together what was to be done, and I asked my partner what he thought of the pilot's news, and whether it would suit with his affairs? He told me he would do just as I would; for he had settled all his affairs so well at Bengal, and left his effects in such good hands, that as we had made a good voyage here, if he could vest it in China silks, wrought and raw, such as might be worth the carriage, he would be content to go to England, and then make his voyage back to Bengal by the Company's ships.

Having resolved upon this, we agreed that, if our Portugal pilot would go with us, we would bear his charges to Muscov, or to England if he pleased. Nor, indeed, were we to be esteemed over-generous in that part neither, if we had not rewarded him farther, for the service he had done us was really worth all that, and more: for he had not only been a pilot to us at sea, but he had been like a broker for us on shore; and his procuring for us the Japan merchant was some hundred of pounds in our pocket. So we consulted together about it, and being willing to gratify him, which was indeed but doing him justice, and very willing
also to have him with us besides, for he was a most necessary man on all occasions, we agreed to give him a quantity of coined gold, which, as I compute it, came to about £175 sterling between us, and to bear all his charges, both for himself and horse, except only a horse to carry his goods.

Having settled this among ourselves, we called him to let him know what we had resolved. I told him he had complained of our being to let him go back alone, and I was now to tell him we were resolved he should not go back at all; that as we had resolved to go to Europe with the caravan, we resolved also he should go with us; and that we called him to know his mind. He shook his head, and said it was a long journey, and he had no pecunia to carry him thither, or to subsist himself when he came there. We told him we believed it was so, and therefore we had resolved to do something for him that should let him see how sensible we were of the service he had done us, and also how agreeable he was to us. And then I told him what we had resolved to give him here, which he might lay out as we would do our own; and that as for his charges, if he would go with us, we would set him safe ashore, life and casualties excepted, either in Muscovy or England, which he would, at our own charge, except only the carriage of his goods.

He received the proposal like a man transported, and told us he would go with us over the whole world; and so, in short, we all prepared ourselves for the journey. However, as it was with us, so it was with the other merchants: they had many things to do, and instead of being ready in five weeks, it was four months and some odd days before all things were got together.

It was the beginning of February, our style, when we set out from Peking. My partner and the old pilot had gone express back to the port where we had first put in, to dispose of some goods which we had left there; and I, with a Chinese merchant, who I had some knowledge of at Nanquin, and who came to Peking on his own affairs, went to Nanquin, where I bought ninety pieces of fine damasks, with about two hundred pieces of other very fine silks, of several sorts, some mixed with gold, and had all these
brought to Peking against my partner's return. Besides this, we
bought a very large quantity of raw silk, and some other goods;
our cargo amounting in these goods only to about three thousand
five hundred pounds sterling; which, together with tea and some
fine calicoes, and three camel-loads of nutmegs and cloves, loaded
in all eighteen camels for our share, besides those we ride upon,
which, with two or three spare horses, and two horses loaded with
provisions, made us, in short, twenty-six camels and horses in our
retinue.

The company was very great, and, as near as I can remember,
made between three and four hundred horse, and upwards of a
hundred and twenty men, very well armed, and provided for all
events. For as the Eastern caravans are subject to be attacked
by the Arabs, so are these by the Tartars. But they are not al-
together so dangerous as the Arabs, nor so barbarous when they
prevail.

The company consisted of people of several nations, such as
Muscovites chiefly; for there were above sixty of them who were
merchants or inhabitants of Muscov, though of them some were
Livonians, and, to our particular satisfaction, five of them were
Scots, who appeared also to be men of great experience in busi-
ness, and men of very good substance.

When we had travelled one day's journey, the guides, who were
five in number, called all the gentlemen and merchants, that is
to say, all the passengers, except the servants, to a great council,
as they called it. At this great council every one deposited a
certain quantity of money to a common stock, for the necessary
expense of buying forage on the way, where it was not otherwise
to be had, and for satisfying the guides, getting horses and the
like. And here they constituted the journey, as they call it;
namely, they named captains and officers to draw us all up, and
give the command in case of an attack, and gave every one their
turn of command. Nor was this forming us into order any more
than what we found needful upon the way, as shall be observed
in its place.

The road all on this side of the country is very populous, and
is full of potters and earthmakers; that is to say, people that
tempered the earth for the China ware. And as I was coming along, our Portugal pilot, who had always something or other to say to make us merry, came sneering to me, and told me he would show me the greatest rarity in all the country, and that I should have this to say of China, after all the ill-humoured things I had said of it, that I had seen one thing which was not to be seen in all the world beside. I was very importunate to know what it was. At last he told me it was a gentleman's house built all with China ware. "Well," says I, "are not the materials of their building the product of their own country; and so it is all China ware, is it not?" "No, no," says he; "I mean it is a house all made of China ware, such as you call it in England; or, as it is called in our country, porcelain." "Well," says I, "such a thing may be. How big is it? Can we carry it in a box upon a camel? If we can, we will buy it." "Upon a camel!" says the old pilot, holding up both his hands; "why, there is a family of thirty people lives in it."

I was then curious indeed to see it; and when I came to it, it was nothing but this: it was a timber house, or a house built, as we call it in England, with lath and plaster, but all the plastering was really China ware; that is to say, it was plastered with the earth that makes China ware.

The outside, which the sun shone hot upon, was glazed, and looked very well, perfect white, and painted with blue figures, as the large China ware in England is painted, and hard, as if it had been burned. As to the inside, all the walls, instead of wainscot, were lined up with hardened and painted tiles, like the little square tiles we call galley-tiles in England, all made of the finest China; and the figures exceeding fine indeed, with extraordinary variety of colours mixed with gold, many tiles making but one figure, but joined so artificially, the mortar being made of the same earth, that it was very hard to see where the tiles met. The floors of the rooms were of the same composition, and as hard as the earthen floors we have in use in several parts of England, especially Lincolnshire, Nottinghamshire, Leicestershire, &c., as hard as stone, and smooth, but not burned and painted, except some smaller rooms, like closets, which were all, as it were, paved
with the same tile. The ceilings and, in a word, all the plastering
work in the whole house were of the same earth; and after all, the
roof was covered with tiles of the same, but of a deep shining
black.

This was a China warehouse indeed, truly and literally to be
called so; and had I not been upon the journey, I could have
stayed some days to see and examine the particulars of it. They
told me there were fountains and fish-ponds in the garden, all paved
at the bottom and sides with the same, and fine statues set up in
rows on the walks, entirely formed of the porcelain earth, and
burned whole.

As this is one of the singularities of China, so they may be
allowed to excel in it; but I am very sure they excel in their
accounts of it; for they told me such incredible things of their
performance in crockery ware, for such it is, that I care not to
relate, as knowing it could not be true. They told me, in par-
ticular, of one workman that made a ship with all its tackle, and
masts, and sails, in earthenware, big enough to carry fifty men. If
he had told me he launched it, and made a voyage to Japan in it,
I might have said something to it indeed; but as it was, I knew
the whole of the story, which was, in short, asking pardon for the
word, that the fellow lied. So I smiled, and said nothing to it.

This odd sight kept me two hours behind the caravan, for which
the leader of it for the day fined me about the value of three
shillings, and told me, if it had been three days' journey without
the wall, as it was three days within, he must have fined me four
times as much, and made me ask pardon the next council day. So
I promised to be more orderly; for, indeed, I found afterwards the
orders made for keeping all together were absolutely necessary for
our common safety.

In two days more we passed the great China wall, made for a
fortification against the Tartars; and a very great work it is,
going over hills and mountains in a needless track, where the
rocks are impassable, and the precipices such as no enemy could
possibly enter, or indeed climb up, or where, if they did, no wall
could hinder them. They tell us, its length is near a thousand
English miles, but that the country is five hundred in a straight
measured line, which the wall bounds, without measuring the windings and turnings it takes. 'Tis about four fathom high, and as many thick in some places.

I stood still an hour or thereabout, without trespassing our orders, for so long the caravan was in passing the gate; I say, I stood still an hour to look at it on every side, near and far off; I mean, that was within my view. And the guide of our caravan, who had been extolling it for the wonder of the world, was mighty eager to hear my opinion of it. I told him it was a most excellent thing to keep off the Tartars; which he happened not to understand as I meant it, and so took it for a compliment. But the old pilot laughed. "O Seignior Inglese," says he, "you speak in colours." "In colours," said I; "what do you mean by that?" "Why, you speak what looks white this way, and black that way; gay one way, and dull another way. You tell him it is a good wall to keep out Tartars. You tell me by that, it is good for nothing but to keep out Tartars, or it will keep out none but Tartars. I understand you, Seignior Inglese, I understand you," says he; "but Seignior Chinese understood you his own way."

"Well," says I, "seignior, do you think it would stand out an army of our country people, with a good train of artillery; or our engineers, with two companies of miners; would not they batter it down in ten days, that an army might enter in battalia, or blow it up in the air, foundation and all, that there should be no sign of it left?" "Ay, ay," says he, "I know that." The Chinese wanted mightily to know what I said, and I gave him leave to tell him a few days after, for we were then almost out of their country, and he was to leave us in a little time afterward; but when he knew what I had said, he was dumb all the rest of the way, and we heard no more of his fine story of the Chinese power and greatness, while he stayed.

After we had passed this mighty nothing called a wall, something like the Picts' wall, and so famous in Northumberland, and built by the Romans, we began to find the country thinly inhabited, and the people rather confined to live in fortified towns and cities, as being subject to the inroads and depredations of the
Tartars, who rob in great armies, and therefore are not to be resisted by the naked inhabitants of an open country.

And here I began to find the necessity of keeping together in a caravan as we travelled, for we saw several troops of Tartars roving about; but when I came to see them distinctly, I wondered more that the Chinese empire could be conquered by such contemptible fellows; for they are a mere horde or crowd of wild fellows, keeping no order, and understanding no discipline or manner of fight.

Their horses are poor, lean, starved creatures, taught nothing, and fit for nothing; and this we said the first day we saw them, which was after we entered the wilder part of the country. Our leader for the day gave leave for about sixteen of us to go a-hunting, as they call it; and what was this, but hunting of sheep. However, it may be called hunting too; for the creatures are the wildest and swiftest of foot that ever I saw of their kind. Only they will not run a great way, and you are sure of sport when you begin the chase; for they appear generally thirty or forty in a flock, and, like true sheep, always keep together when they fly.

In pursuit of this odd sort of game it was our hap to meet with about forty Tartars. Whether they were hunting mutton as we were, or whether they looked for another kind of prey, I know not; but as soon as they saw us, one of them blew a kind of a horn very loud, but with a barbarous sound, that I had never heard before, and, by the way, never care to hear again. We all supposed this was to call their friends about them, and so it was; for in less than half a quarter of an hour a troop of forty or fifty more appeared at about a mile distance; but our work was over first, as it happened.

One of the Scote merchants of Muscovy happened to be amongst us, and as soon as he heard the horn he told us, in short, that we had nothing to do but to charge them immediately without loss of time; and drawing us up in a line, he asked if we were resolved? We told him we were ready to follow him; so he rode directly up to them. They stood gazing at us like a mere crowd, drawn up in no order, nor showing the face of any order at all; but as soon as they saw us advance, they let fly their arrows,
which however missed us very happily. It seems they mistook not their aim, but their distance; for their arrows all fell a little short of us, but with so true an aim, that had we been about twenty yards nearer, we must have had several men wounded, if not killed.

Immediately we halted; and though it was at a great distance,

"We fired, following our shot full gallop."

we fired, and sent them leaden bullets for wooden arrows, following our shot full gallop, to fall in among them sword in hand, for so our bold Scot that led us directed. He was indeed but a merchant, but he behaved with that vigour and bravery on this occasion, and yet with such a cool courage too, that I never saw any man in action fitter for command. As soon as we came up to them we fired our pistols in their faces, and then drew, but they fled in the greatest confusion imaginable. The only stand any of them made was on our right, where three of them stood, and by signs called the rest to come back to them, having a kind of scimitar in their hands, and their bows hanging at their backs. Our brave commander, without asking anybody to follow him,
gallops up close to them, and with his fuzee knocks one of them off his horse, killed the second with his pistol, and the third ran away; and thus ended our fight. But we had this misfortune attending it, namely, that all our mutton that we had in chase got away. We had not a man killed or hurt; but as for the Tartars, there was about five of them killed. Who were wounded, we knew not; but this we knew, that the other party was so frightened with the noise of our guns that they made off, and never made any attempt upon us.

We were all this while in the Chinese dominion, and therefore the Tartars were not so bold as afterwards; but in about five days we entered a vast great wild desert, which held us three days' and nights' march; and we were obliged to carry our water with us in great leather bottles, and to encamp all night, just as I have heard they do in the desert of Arabia.

I asked whose dominion this was in, and they told me this was a kind of border, that might be called No Man's Land; being a part of the Great Karakathie, or Grand Tartary, but that, however, it was all reckoned to China; but that there was no care taken here to preserve it from the inroads of thieves, and therefore it was reckoned the worst desert in the whole world—though we were to go over some much larger.

In passing this wilderness, which I confess was at the first very frightful to me, we saw two or three times little parties of the Tartars, but they seemed to be upon their own affairs, and to have no design upon us; and so, like the man who met the devil, if they had nothing to say to us, we had nothing to say to them; we let them go.

Once, however, a party of them came so near as to stand and gaze at us; whether it was to consider what they should do, whether attack us, or not attack us, that we knew not but when we were passed at some distance by them, we made a rear-guard of forty men, and stood ready for them, letting the caravan pass half a mile, or thereabouts, before us. But after a while they marched off, only we found they saluted us with five arrows at their parting, one of which wounded a horse so that it disabled him; and we left him the next day, poor creature, in great need
of a good farrier. We suppose they might shoot more arrows, which might fall short of us; but we saw no more arrows or Tartars that time.

We travelled near a month after this, the ways being not so good as at first, though still in the dominions of the Emperor of China, but lay for the most part in villages, some of which were fortified, because of the incursions of the Tartars. When we came to one of these towns (it was about two days and a half journey before we were to come to the city Naum), I wanted to buy a camel, of which there are plenty to be sold all the way upon that road, and of horses also, such as they are, because, so many caravans coming that way, they are often wanted. The person that I spoke to to get me a camel would have gone and fetched it for me, but I, like a fool, must be officious, and go myself along with him. The place was about two miles out of the village, where, it seems, they kept the camels and horses feeding under a guard.

I walked it on foot with my old pilot, being very desirous, forsooth, of a little variety. When we came to the place, it was a low marshy ground walled round with a stone wall, piled up dry, without mortar or earth among it, like a park, with a little guard of Chinese soldiers at the door. Having bought a camel, and agreed for the price, I came away, and the Chinese man that went with me led the camel; when on a sudden came up five Tartars on horseback: two of them seized the fellow, and took the camel from him, while other three stepped up to me and my old pilot, seeing us, as it were, unarmed; for I had no weapon about me but my sword, which could but ill defend me against three horsemen. The first that came up stopped short upon my drawing my sword (for they are arrant cowards); but a second, coming upon my left, gave me a blow on the head, which I never felt till afterward, and wondered, when I came to myself, what was the matter with me and where I was, for he laid me flat on the ground. But my never-failing old pilot, the Portuguese (so Providence, unlooked-for, directs deliverances from dangers, which to us are unforeseen), had a pistol in his pocket, which I knew nothing of, nor the Tartars neither: if they had, I suppose they would not
have attacked us; but cowards are always boldest when there is no danger.

The old man, seeing me down, with a bold heart stepped up to the fellow that had struck me, and laying hold of his arm with one hand, and pulling him down by main force a little towards him with the other, shot him into the head, and laid him dead upon the spot; he then immediately stepped up to him who had stopped us, as I said, and before he could come forward again (for it was all done, as it were in a moment), made a blow at him with a scimitar which he always wore, but, missing the man, cut his horse into the side of his head, cut one of his ears off by the root, and a great slice down the side of his face. The poor beast, enraged with the wound, was no more to be governed by his rider, though the fellow sat well enough too, but away he flew, and carried him quite out of the pilot's reach; and, at some distance, rising up upon his hind-legs, threw down the Tartar, and fell upon him.

In this interval the poor Chinese came in who had lost the camel, but he had no weapon; however, seeing the Tartar down, and his horse fallen upon him, away he runs to him, and seizing upon an ugly, ill-favoured weapon he had by his side, something like a pole-axe, but not a pole-axe neither, he wrenched it from him, and made shift to knock his Tartarian brains out with it. But my old man had the third Tartar to deal with still; and, seeing he did not fly as he expected, nor come on to fight him as he apprehended, but stand stock still, the old man stood still too, and falls to work with his tackle to charge his pistol again; but as soon as the Tartar saw the pistol, whether he supposed it to be the same or another I know not, but away he scoured, and left my pilot, my champion I called him afterward, a complete victory.

By this time I was a little awake; for I thought, when first I began to wake, that I had been in a sweet sleep; but, as I said above, I wondered where I was, how I came upon the ground, and what was the matter: in a word, a few moments after, as sense returned, I felt pain, though I did not know where; I clapped my hand to my head, and took it away bloody; then I felt my head
ache, and then, in another moment, memory returned, and every-
ing thing was present to me again.

I jumped up upon my feet instantly, and got hold of my sword, but no enemies in view. I found a Tartar lie dead, and his horse standing very quietly by him; and, looking farther, I saw my champion and deliverer, who had been to see what the Chinese had done, coming back with his hanger in his hand. The old man, seeing me on my feet, came running to me, and embraced me with a great deal of joy, being afraid before that I had been killed, and, seeing me bloody, would see how I was hurt; but it was not much, only what we call a broken head; neither did I afterwards find any great inconvenience from the blow, other than the place which was hurt, and which was well again in two or three days.

We made no great gain, however, by this victory; for we lost a camel, and gained a horse: but that which was remarkable, when we came back to the village, the man demanded to be paid for the camel. I disputed it, and it was brought to a hearing before the Chinese judge of the place; that is to say, in English, we went before a justice of the peace. Give him his due, he acted with a great deal of prudence and impartiality; and having heard both sides, he gravely asked the Chinese man that went with me to buy the camel, whose servant he was? "I am no servant," says he, "but went with the stranger." "At whose request?" says the justice. "At the stranger's request," says he. "Why, then," says the justice, "you were the stranger's servant for the time; and the camel being delivered to his servant, it was delivered to him, and he must pay for it."

I confess the thing was so clear, that I had not a word to say; but admiring to see such just reasoning upon the consequence, and so accurate stating the cause, I paid willingly for the camel, and sent for another. But you may observe, I sent for it; I did not go to fetch it myself any more; I had enough of that.

The city of Naum is a frontier of the Chinese empire: they call it fortified, and so it is, as fortifications go there; for this I will venture to affirm, that all the Tartars in Karakathie, which, I believe, are some millions, could not batter down the walls with their bows and arrows; but to call it strong, if it were attacked
with cannon, would be to make those who understand it laugh at you.

We wanted, as I have said, above two days' journey of this city, when messengers were sent express to every part of the road, to tell all travellers and caravans to halt, till they had a guard sent for them; for that an unusual body of Tartars, making ten thousand in all, had appeared in the way, about thirty miles beyond the city.

This was very bad news to travellers: however, it was carefully done of the governor, and we were very glad to hear we should have a guard. Accordingly, two days after, we had two hundred soldiers sent us from a garrison of the Chinese on our left, and three hundred more from the city of Naum, and with those we advanced boldly; the three hundred soldiers from Naum marched in our front, the two hundred in our rear, and our men on each side of our camels with our baggage, and the whole caravan in the centre. In this order, and well prepared for battle, we thought ourselves a match for the whole ten thousand Mongul Tartars, if they had appeared; but the next day, when they did appear, it was quite another thing.

It was early in the morning, when, marching from a little well-situated town, called Changu, we had a river to pass, where we were obliged to ferry: and had the Tartars had any intelligence, then had been the time to have attacked us, when, the caravan being over, the rear-guard was behind: but they did not appear.

About three hours after, when we were entered upon a desert of about fifteen or sixteen miles over, behold, by a cloud of dust they raised, we saw an enemy was at hand; and they were at hand indeed, for they came on upon the spur.

The Chinese, our guard on the front, who had talked so big the day before, began to stagger, and the soldiers frequently looked behind them, which is a certain sign in a soldier that he is just ready to run away. My old pilot was of my mind; and being near me, he called out: "Seignior Inglese," says he, "those fellows must be encouraged, or they will ruin us all; for if the Tartars come on, they will never stand it." "I am of your mind," said I; "but what course must be done?" "Done?" says he; "let fifty
of our men advance, and flank them on each wing, and encourage them, and they will fight like brave fellows in brave company; but without, they will every man turn his back.” Immediately I rode up to our leader, and told him, who was exactly of our mind; and accordingly, fifty of us marched to the right wing, and fifty to the left, and the rest made a line of reserve; and so we marched, leaving the last two hundred men to make another body by themselves, and to guard the camels; only that, if need were, they should send a hundred men to assist the last fifty.

In a word, the Tartars came on, and an innumerable company they were; how many we could not tell, but ten thousand, we thought, was the least. A party of them came on first, and viewed our posture, traversing the ground in the front of our line; and as we found them within gun-shot, our leader ordered the two wings to advance swiftly, and give them a salvo on each wing with their shot, which was done; but they went off, and, I suppose, back to give an account of the reception they were like to meet with: and, indeed, that salute clogged their stomach, for they immediately halted, stood a while to consider of it, and, wheeling off to the left, they gave over the design, and said no more to us for that time; which was very agreeable to our circumstances, which were but very indifferent for a battle with such a number.

Two days after this, we came to the city Naun, or Naum. We thanked the governor for his care for us, and collected to the value of a hundred crowns, or thereabouts, which we gave to the soldiers sent to guard us; and here we rested one day. This is a garrison, indeed, and there were nine hundred soldiers kept here; but the reason of it was, that formerly the Muscovite frontiers lay nearer to them than they do now, the Muscovites having abandoned that part of the country (which lies from this city west, for about two hundred miles) as desolate and unfit for use; and more especially, being so very remote, and so difficult to send troops thither for its defence; for we had yet above two thousand miles to Muscovy, properly so called.

After this, we passed several great rivers, and two dreadful deserts, one of which we were sixteen days passing over, and which,
as I said, was to be called No Man's Land; and on the 13th of April we came to the frontiers of the Muscovite dominions. I think the first city, or town, or fortress, whatever it might be called, that belonged to the Czar of Muscovy, was called Argun, being on the west side of the river Argun.

I could not but discover an infinite satisfaction that I was so soon arrived in, as I called it, a Christian country, or at least in a country governed by Christians; for though the Muscovites do, in my opinion, but just deserve the name of Christians, yet such they pretend to be, and are very devout in their way. It would certainly occur to any man who travels the world as I have done, and who had any power of reflection—I say, it would occur to him to reflect what a blessing it is to be brought into the world where the name of God and of a Redeemer is known, worshipped, and adored; and not where the people, given up by Heaven to strong delusions, worship the devil, and prostrate themselves to stocks and stones, worship monsters, elements, horrible shaped animals, and statues, or images of monsters. Not a town or city we passed through but had their pagods, their idols, and their temples, and ignorant people worshipping even the works of their own hands.

Now we came where, at least, a face of the Christian worship appeared, where the knee was bowed to Jesus; and whether ignorantly or not, yet the Christian religion was owned, and the name of the true God was called upon and adored; and it made the very recesses of my soul rejoice to see it. I saluted the brave Scots merchant I mentioned above, with my first acknowledgment of this; and taking him by the hand, I said to him, "Blessed be God, we are once again come among Christians!" He smiled, and answered, "Do not rejoice too soon, countryman; these Muscovites are but an odd sort of Christians; and but for the name of it, you may see very little of the substance for some months farther of our journey."

"Well," says I, "but still 'tis better than paganism and worshipping of devils." "Why, I'll tell you," says he; "except the Russian soldiers in garrisons, and a few of the inhabitants of the cities upon the road, all the rest of this country, for above a thou-
sand miles farther, is inhabited by the worst and most ignorant of pagans." And so indeed we found it.

We were now launched into the greatest piece of solid earth, if I understand anything of the surface of the globe, that is to be found in any part of the earth: we had at least twelve hundred miles to the sea, eastward; we had at least two thousand to the bottom of the Baltic Sea, westward; and above three thousand miles, if we left that sea and went on west to the British and French Channels; we had full five thousand miles to the Indian or Persian Sea, south; and about eight hundred miles to the Frozen Sea, north; nay, if some people may be believed, there might be no sea north-east till we came round the Pole, and consequently into the north-west, and so had a continent of land into America, the Lord knows where; though I could give some reasons why I believe that to be a mistake.

As we entered into the Muscovite dominions, a good while before we came to any considerable town, we had nothing to observe there but this: first, that as all the rivers run to the east; as I understood by the charts which some of our caravans had with them, it was plain that all those rivers ran into the great river Yamour, or Gammour.1 This river, by the natural course of it, must run into the East Sea, or Chinese Ocean. The story they tell us, that the mouth of this river is choked up with bulrushes of a monstrous growth, namely, three foot about, and twenty or thirty foot high, I must be allowed to say I believe nothing of; but as its navigation is of no use, because there is no trade that way—the Tartars, to whom alone it belongs, dealing in nothing but cattle—so nobody that ever I heard of, has been curious enough either to go down to the mouth of it in boats, or come up from the mouth of it in ships; but this is certain, that this river running due east, in the latitude of about fifty degrees, carries a vast concourse of rivers along with it, and finds an ocean to empty itself in that latitude; so we are sure of sea there.

1 The Amoor, into which numerous small streams flow, is formed by the union of the Shilka or Onon and the Argun or Kerulen, which divides the Chinese and Russian territories for 400 miles. The Amoor runs first S.E. and then E.N.E. to the Gulf of Saghalien in the Sea of Okhotak, in latitude 52° 30' N., longitude 140° E.
Some leagues to the north of this river there are several considerable rivers, whose streams run as due north as the Yamour runs east; and these are all found to join their waters with the great river Tartarus, named so from the northernmost nations of the Mongul Tartars, who, the Chinese say, were the first Tartars in the world; and who, as our geographers allege, are the Gog and Magog mentioned in sacred story.

These rivers running all northward, as well as all the other rivers I am yet to speak of, make it evident that the Northern Ocean bounds the land also on that side; so that it does not seem rational in the least to think that the land can extend itself to join with America on that side, or that there is not a communication between the Northern and the Eastern Ocean. But of this I shall say no more; it was my observation at that time, and therefore I take notice of it in this place. We now advanced from the river Arguna by easy and moderate journeys, and were very visibly obliged to the care the Czar of Muscovy has taken to have cities and towns built in as many places as are possible to place them, where his soldiers keep garrison, something like the stationary soldiers placed by the Romans in the remotest countries of their empire, some of which I had read particularly were placed in Britain for the security of commerce, and for the lodging travellers; and thus it was here; for wherever we came, though at these towns and stations the garrisons and governor were Russians and professed Christians, yet the inhabitants of the country were mere pagans, sacrificing to idols, and worshipping the sun, moon, and stars, or all the host of heaven: and not only so, but were, of all the heathens and pagans that ever I met with, the most barbarous, except only that they did not eat man's flesh, as our savages of America did.

Some instances of this we met with in the country between Arguna, where we enter the Muscovite dominions, and a city of Tartars and Russians together, called Nertainskay;¹ in which is a continued desert or forest, which cost us twenty days to travel over it. In a village near the last of those places, I had the curiosity to go and see their way of living, which is most brutish

¹ Nertchinsk in Asiatic Russia.
A TARTAR GOD. 563

and unsufferable. They had, I suppose, a great sacrifice that day; for there stood out upon an old stump of a tree, an idol made of wood, frightful as the devil, at least as anything we can think of to represent the devil can be made. It had a head certainly not so much as resembling any creature that the world ever saw; ears as big as goat’s horns, and as high; eyes as big as a crown piece; a nose like a crooked ram’s horn; and a mouth extended four cornered like that of a lion, with horrible teeth, hooked like a parrot’s under bill. It was dressed up in the filthiest manner that you could suppose; its upper garment was of sheep-skins, with the wool outward, a great Tartar bonnet on the head, with two horns growing through it; it was about eight foot high, yet had no feet or legs, or any other proportion of parts.

This scarecrow was set up at the outer side of the village, and when I came near to it, there were sixteen or seventeen creatures, whether men or women I could not tell, for they make no distinction by their habits,1 either of body or head. These lay all flat on the ground, round this formidable block of shapeless wood. I saw no motion among them any more than if they had been all logs of wood like the idol, and at first really thought they had been so; but when I came a little nearer, they started up upon their feet, and raised a howling cry, as if it had been so many deep-mouthed hounds, and walked away as if they were displeased at our disturbing them. A little way off from the idol, and at the door of that tent or hut, made all of sheep-skins and cow-skins, dried, stood three butchers: I thought they were such; when I came nearer to them, I found they had long knives in their hands, and in the middle of the tent appeared three sheep killed, and one young bullock or steer. These, it seems, were sacrifices to that senseless log of an idol, and these three men priests belonging to it; and the seventeen prostrated wretches were the people who brought the offering, and were making their prayers to that stock.

I confess I was more moved at their stupidity and brutish worship of a hobgoblin, than ever I was at anything in my life; to see God’s most glorious and best creature, to whom he had granted

1 Habits here means dress or attire.
so many advantages, even by creation, above the rest of the works of his hands, vested with a reasonable soul, and that soul adorned with faculties and capacities adapted both to honour his Maker and be honoured by him, sunk and degenerated to a degree so more than stupid, as to prostrate itself to a frightful Nothing, a mere imaginary Object dressed up by themselves, and made terrible to themselves, by their own contrivance; adorned only with clouts and rags; and that this should be the effect of mere ignorance, wrought up into hellish devotion by the devil himself, who, envying to his Maker the homage and adoration of his creatures, had deluded them into such gross, surfeiting, sordid, and brutish things, as one would think should shock Nature itself.

But what signified all the astonishment and reflection of thoughts? Thus it was, and I saw it before my eyes, and there was no room to wonder at it, or think it impossible. All my admiration turned to rage, and I rid up to the image or monster, call it what you will, and with my sword cut the bonnet that was on its head in two in the middle, so that it hung down by one of the horns; and one of our men that was with me took hold of the sheep-skin that covered it, and pulled at it, when, behold, a most hideous outcry and howling run through the village, and two or three hundred people came about my ears, so that I was glad to scour for it, for we saw some had bows and arrows. But I resolved from that moment to visit them again.

Our caravan rested three nights at the town, which was about four miles off, in order to provide some horses which they wanted, several of the horses having been lamed and jaded with the badness of the way and long march over the last desert; so we had some leisure here to put my design in execution. I commun.icated my project to the Scots merchant of Muscov, of whose courage I had had sufficient testimony, as above. I told him what I had seen, and with what indignation I had since thought that human nature could be so degenerate. I told him I was resolved, if I could get but four or five men well armed to go with me, I was resolved to go and destroy that vile abominable idol, and let them see that it had no power to help itself, and com-
A POLITICAL DIFFICULTY.

sequentely could not be an object of worship, or to be prayed to, much less help them that offered sacrifices to it.

He laughed at me. Says he, "Your zeal may be good, but what do you propose to yourself by it?" "Propose!" said I; "to vindicate the honour of God, which is insulted by this devil-worship." "But how will it vindicate the honour of God?" said he; "while the people will not be able to know what you mean by it, unless you could speak to them and tell them so, and then they will fight you, and beat you too, I'll assure you; for they are desperate fellows, and that especially in defence of their idolatry." "Can we not," said I, "do it in the night, and then leave them the reasons and causes in writing in their own language?" "Writing!" said he; "why, there is not a man in five nations of them that knows anything of a letter, or how to read a word in any language, or in their own." "Wretched ignorance!" said I to him; "however, I have a great mind to do it. Perhaps Nature may draw inferences from it to them, to let them see how brutish they are to worship such horrid things." "Look you, sir," said he: "if your zeal prompts you to it so warmly, you must do it; but, in the next place, I would have you consider, these wild nations of people are subjected by force to the Czar of Muscovy's dominions; and if you do this, 'tis ten to one but they will come by thousands to the Governor of Nertinskay, and complain, and demand satisfaction; and if he cannot give them satisfaction, 'tis ten to one but they revolt, and it will occasion a new war with all the Tartars in the country."

This, I confess, put new thoughts into my head for a while; but I harped upon the same string still, and all that day I was uneasy to put my project in execution. Towards the evening, the Scots merchant met me by accident in our walk about the town, and desired to speak with me. "I believe," said he, "I have put you off your good design. I have been a little concerned about it since, for I abhor the idol and the idolatry as much as you can do." "Truly," says I, "you have put it off a little as to the execution of it, but you have not put it all out of my thoughts; and I believe I shall do it still before I quit this place, though I were to be delivered up to them for satisfaction." "No, no," says
he; "God forbid they should deliver you up to such a crew of monsters. They shall not do that neither: that would be murdering you indeed." "Why," says I, "how would they use me?" "Use you!" says he; "I'll tell you how they served a poor Russian, who affronted them in their worship just as you did, and who they took prisoner. After they had lamed him with an arrow that he could not run away, they took him and stripped him stark naked, and set him up on the top of the idol monster, and stood all round him, and shot as many arrows into him as would stick over his whole body, and then they burned him, and all the arrows sticking in him, as a sacrifice to the idol." "And was this the same idol?" "Yes," says he, "the very same." "Well," says I, "I'll tell you a story." So I related the story of our men at Madagascar, and how they burned and sacked the village there, and killed man, woman, and child, for their murdering one of our men, just as it is related before; and when I had done, I added, that I thought we ought to do so to this village.

He listened very attentively to the story; but when I talked of doing so to that village, says he, "You mistake very much. It was not this village: it was almost a hundred mile from this place; but it was the same idol, for they carry him about in procession all over the country." "Well then," says I, "then that idol ought to be punished for it; and it shall," says I, "if I live this night out."

In a word, finding me resolute, he liked the design, and told me I should not go alone, but he would go with me, and bring a stout fellow, one of his countrymen, to go also with us; "and one," says he, "as famous for his zeal as you can desire any one to be against such devilish things as these." In a word, he brought me his comrade, a Scotsman, who he called Captain Richardson, and I gave him a full account of what I had seen, and, in a word, of what I intended; and he told me readily he would go with me; it cost him his life: so we agreed to go only us three. I had indeed, proposed it to my partner, but he declined it. He said he was ready to assist me to the utmost, and upon all occasions, for my defence, but that this was an adventure quite out of his way. So, I say, we resolved upon our work, only us three and my mar-
servant, and to put it in execution that night about midnight, with all the secrecy imaginable.

However upon second thoughts, we were willing to delay it till the next night, because the caravan being to set forward in the morning, we supposed the governor could not pretend to give them any satisfaction upon us, when we were out of his power. The Scots merchant, as steady in his resolution for the enterprise as bold in executing, brought me a Tartar's robe or gown of the sheep-skins, and a bonnet, with a bow and arrows, and had provided the same for himself and his countryman, that the people, if they saw us, should not be able to determine who we were.

All the first night we spent in mixing up some combustible matter with aqua vitæ, gunpowder, and such other materials as we could get; and having a good quantity of tar in a little pot, about an hour after night we set out upon our expedition.

We came to the place about eleven o'clock at night, and found that the people had not the least jealousy of danger attending their idol. The night was cloudy, yet the moon gave us light enough to see that the idol stood just in the same posture and place that it did before. The people seemed to be all at their rest, only that in the great hut, or tent, as we called it, where we saw the three priests, who we mistook for butchers, we saw a light, and going up close to the door, we heard people talking as if there were five or six of them. We concluded, therefore, that if we set the wild-fire to the idol, these men would come out immediately, and run up to the place to rescue it from the destruction that we intended for it; and what to do with them we knew not. Once we thought of carrying it away, and setting fire to it at a distance; but when we came to handle it, we found it too bulky for our carriage, so we were at a loss again. The second Scotsman was for setting fire to the tent or hut, and knocking the creatures that were there on the head when they came out; but I could not join with that. I was against killing them, if it was possible to be avoided. "Well, then," said the Scots merchant, "I'll tell you what we will do: we will try to take them prisoners, tie their hands behind them, and make them stand still and see their idol destroyed."

As it happened, we had twines or packthread enough about us,
which was used to tie our fireworks together with; so we resolved to attack these people first, and with as little noise as we could. The first thing we did, we knocked at the door, which issued just as we desired it; for one of their idol priests came to the door. We immediately seized upon him, stopped his mouth, and tied his hands behind him, and led him to the idol, where we gagged him that he might not make a noise, tied his feet also together, and left him on the ground.

Two of us then waited at the door, expecting that another would come out to see what the matter was; but we waited so long till the third man came back to us, and then nobody coming out, we knocked again gently, and immediately out came two more, and we served them just in the same manner, but were obliged to go all with them, and lay them down by the idol, some distance from one another. When going back, we found two more were come out to the door, and a third stood behind them within the door. We seized the two, and immediately tied them, when the third stepping back, and crying out, my Scots merchant went in after him, and taking out a composition we had made, that would only smoke and stink, he set fire to it, and threw it in among them. By that time the other Scotsman and my man, taking charge of the two men who were already bound, and tied together also by the arm, led them away to the idol, and left them there, to see if their idol would relieve them, making haste back to us.

When the fuze we had thrown in had filled the hut with so much smoke that they were almost suffocated, we then threw in a small leather bag of another kind, which flamed like a candle, and following it in, we found there was but four people left, who, it seems, were two men and two women, and, as we supposed, had been about some of their diabolic sacrifices. They appeared, as short, frightened to death, at least so as to sit trembling and stupid and not able to speak neither, for the smoke.

In a word, we took them, bound them as we had the others and all without any noise. I should have said, we brought them out of the house or hut first; for, indeed, we were not able to bear the smoke any more than they were. When we had done this
we carried them all together to the idol. When we came there, we fell to work with him. And, first, we daubed him all over, and his robes also, with tar and such other stuff as we had, which was tallow mixed with brimstone; then we stopped his eyes, and ears, and mouth full of gunpowder; and then we wrapped up a great piece of wildfire in his bonnet; and then, sticking all the combustibles we had brought with us upon him, we looked about to see if we could find anything else to help to burn him, when my man remembered that by the tent or hut where the men were there lay a heap of dry forage, whether straw or rushes I do not remember. Away he and one of the Scotsmen run, and fetched their arms full of that. When we had done this, we took all our prisoners, and brought them, having untied their feet and ungagged their mouths, and made them stand up, and set them just before their monstrous idol, and then set fire to the whole.

We stayed by it a quarter of an hour, or thereabouts, till the powder in the eyes, and mouth, and ears of the idol blew up, and, we could perceive, had split and deformed the shape; and, in a word, till we saw it burn into a mere block or log of wood: and then setting the dry forage to it, we found it would be quite consumed, when we began to think of going away. But the Scotsman said, "No, we must not go; for these poor deluded wretches will all throw themselves into the fire, and burn themselves with the idol." So we resolved to stay till the forage was burned down too, and then we came away and left them.

In the morning we appeared among our fellow-travellers, exceeding busy in getting ready for our journey; nor could any man suggest that we had been anywhere but in our beds, as travellers might be supposed to be, to fit themselves for the fatigues of that day's journey.

But it did not end so. The next day came a great multitude of the country-people, not only of this village, but of a hundred more, for ought I know, to the town-gates, and, in a most outrageous manner, demanded satisfaction of the Russian governor for the insulting their priests, and burning their great Cham-Chi-Thaungu; such a hard name they gave the monstrous creature they worshipped. The people of Nertsinskay were, at first, in a great
consternation; for they said, the Tartars were no less than thirty thousand, and that in a few days more would be one hundred thousand strong.

The Russian governor sent out messengers to appease them, and gave them all the good words imaginable. He assured them he knew nothing of it, and that there had not a soul of his garrison been abroad; that it could not be from anybody there; and if they would let him know who it was, they should be exemplarily punished. They returned haughtily, that all the country reverenced the great Cham-Chi-Thaungu, who dwelt in the sun, and no mortal would have dared to offer violence to his image but some Christian miscreant, so they called them, it seems; and they therefore denounced war against him, and all the Russians, who, they said, were miscreants and Christians.

The governor, still patient, and unwilling to make a breach, or to have any cause of war alleged to be given by him, the czar having straitly charged them to treat the conquered country with gentleness and civility, gave them still all the good words he could. At last he told them there was a caravan gone towards Russia that morning, and perhaps it was some of them who had done them this injury; and that if they would be satisfied with that, he would send after them to inquire into it. This seemed to appease them a little; and, accordingly, the governor sent after us, and gave us a particular account how the thing was; intimating withal that if any in our caravan had done it, they should make their escape; but that whether they had done it or no, we should make all the haste forward that was possible; and that, in the meantime, he would keep them in play as long as he could.

This was very friendly in the governor; however, when it came to the caravan, there was nobody knew anything of the matter. And as for us that were guilty, we were the least of all suspected; none so much as asked us the question. However, the captain of the caravan for the time took the hint that the governor gave us, and we marched or travelled two days and two nights without any considerable stop. And then we lay at a village called Plotthus; nor did make any long stop here, but hastened on towards Jarawena, another of the Czar of Muscovy's colonies, and where
we expected we should be safe; but it is to be observed, that here we began for two or three days' march to enter upon the vast nameless desert, of which I shall say more in its place; and which, if we had now been upon it, 'tis more than probable we had been all destroyed. It was the second day's march from Plothus that, by the clouds of dust behind us, at a great distance, some of our people began to be sensible we were pursued. We had entered the desert, and had passed by a great lake called Schaks-Oser, when we perceived a very great body of horse appear on the other side of the lake to the north, we travelling west. We observed they went away west as we did, but had supposed we would have taken that side of the lake, whereas we very happily took the south side; and in two days more we saw them not, for they, believing we were still before them, pushed on till they came to the river Udda. This is a very great river when it passes farther north; but where we came to it, we found it narrow, and fordable.

The third day they either found their mistake, or had intelligence of us, and came pouring in upon us towards the dusk of the evening. We had, to our great satisfaction, just pitched upon a place for our camp which was very convenient, for the night; for as we were upon a desert, though but at the beginning of it, that was above five hundred miles over, we had no towns to lodge at, and indeed expected none but the city Jarawena, which we had yet two days' march to. The desert, however, had some few woods in it on this side, and little rivers, which ran all into the great river Udda. It was in a narrow strait between two little, but very thick woods, that we pitched our little camp for that night, expecting to be attacked in the night.

Nobody knew but ourselves what we were pursued for; but as it was usual for the Mongul Tartars to go about in troops in that desert, so the caravans always fortify themselves every night against them, as against armies of robbers; and it was therefore no new thing to be pursued.

But we had this night, of all the nights of our travels, a most advantageous camp; for we lay between two woods, with a little

1 Perhaps Ugra, a river 200 miles long, joining the Oka 10 miles above Kaluga.
rivulet running just before our front; so that we could not be surrounded or attacked any way but in our front or rear. We took care also to make our front as strong as we could, by placing our packs, with our camels and horses, all in a line on the inside of the river, and felling some trees in our rear.

In this posture we encamped for the night; but the enemy was upon us before we had finished our situation. They did not come on us like thieves, as we expected, but sent three messengers to us, to demand the men to be delivered to them that had abused their priests, and burnt their god Cham-Chi-Thaungu with fire, that they might burn them with fire; and upon this, they said, they would go away and do us no farther harm, otherwise they would burn us all with fire. Our men looked very blank at this message, and began to stare at one another, to see who looked with most guilt in their faces; but nobody was the word, nobody did it. The leader of the caravan sent word he was well assured it was not done by any of our camp; that we were peaceable merchants, travelling on our business; that we had done no harm to them, or to any one else; and that, therefore, they must look farther for their enemies who had injured them, for we were not the people. So desired them not to disturb us; for, if they did, we should defend ourselves.

They were far from being satisfied with this for an answer; but a great crowd of them came down in the morning by break of day to our camp. But seeing us in such an unaccountable situation, they durst come no farther than the brook in our front, where they stood and showed us such a number that indeed terrified us very much; for those that spoke least of them, spoke of ten thousand. Here they stood and looked at us a while, and then setting up a great howl, they let fly a cloud of arrows among us; but we were well enough fortified for that, for we sheltered under our baggage; and I do not remember that one man of us was hurt.

Some time after this, we see them move a little to our right, and expected them on the rear; when a cunning fellow, a Cossack, as they call them, of Jarawena, in the pay of the Muscovites, calling to the leader of the caravan, said to him, "I'll go send all
these people away to Siheilka." This was a city four or five days' journey at least to the south, and rather behind us. So he takes his bow and arrows, and getting on horseback, he rides away from our rear directly, as it were, back to Nertsinskay. After this he takes a great circuit about, and comes to the army of the Tartars, as if he had been sent express to tell them a long story; that the people who had burnt the Cham-Chi-Thaungu were gone to Siheilka, with a caravan of miscreants, as he called them, that is to say, Christians; and that they had resolved to burn the god Schal-Isar belonging to the Tongueses.1

As this fellow was himself a mere Tartar, and perfectly spoke their language, he counterfeited so well, that they all took it from him, and away they drove in a most violent hurry to Siheilka, which it seems was five days' journey to the south; and in less than three hours they were entirely out of our sight, and we never heard any more of them; and we never knew whether they went to that other place called Siheilka or no.

So we passed safely on to the city of Jarawena, where there was a garrison of Muscovites; and there we rested five days, the caravan being exceedingly fatigued with the last day's hard march, and with want of rest in the night.

From this city we had a frightful desert, which held us three-and-twenty days' march. We furnished ourselves with some tents here, for the better accommodating ourselves in the night; and the leader of the caravan procured sixteen carriages or waggons of the country for carrying our water and provisions, and these carriages were our defence every night round our little camp; so that had the Tartars appeared, unless they had been very numerous indeed, they would not have been able to hurt us.

We may well be supposed to want rest again after this long journey; for in this desert we saw neither house or tree, or scarce a bush; we saw abundance of the sable-hunters, as they called them. These are all Tartars of the Mongul Tartary, of which this country is a part; and they frequently attack small caravans, but we saw no numbers of them together. I was curious to see the sable-skins they caught, but could never speak with any of

1 Tongoosees.
them; for they durst not come near us, neither durst we straggle from our company to go near them.

After we had passed this desert we came into a country pretty well inhabited; that is to say, we found towns and castles, settled by the Czar of Muscovy, with garrisons of stationary soldiers to protect the caravans, and defend the country against the Tartars, who would otherwise make it very dangerous travelling; and his czarish majesty has given such strict orders for the well guarding the caravans and merchants, that if there are any Tartars heard of in the country, detachments of the garrisons are always sent to see the travellers safe from station to station.

And thus the governor of Adinskoy, who I had opportunity to make a visit to, by means of the Scots merchant who was acquainted with him, offered us a guard of fifty men, if we thought there was any danger, to the next station.

I thought long before this, that as we came nearer to Europe we should find the country better peopled, and the people more civilized; but I found myself mistaken in both, for we had yet the nation of the Tongueses to pass through, where we saw the same tokens of paganism and barbarity, or worse than before, only as they were conquered by the Muscovites, and entirely reduced, they were not so dangerous; but for rudeness of manners, idolatry, and multitheism, no people in the world ever went beyond them. They are clothed all in skins of beasts, and their houses are built of the same. You know not a man from a woman, neither by the ruggedness of their countenances or their clothes; and in the winter, when the ground is covered with snow, they live underground in houses like vaults, which have cavities going from one to another.

If the Tartars had their Cham-Chi-Thaungu for a whole village or country, these had idols in every hut and in every cave; besides, they worship the stars, the sun, the water, the snow, and in a word, everything that they do not understand, and they understand but very little; so that almost every element, every uncommon thing sets them a-sacrificing.

But I am no more to describe people than countries, any farther than my own story comes to be concerned in them. I met with
nothing peculiar to myself in all this country, which I reckon was, from the desert which I spoke of last, at least four hundred miles, half of it being another desert, which took us up twelve days' severe travelling, without house, or tree, or bush, but were obliged again to carry our own provisions, as well water as bread. After we were out of this desert, and had travelled two days, we came to Janezay, a Muscovite city or station on the great river Janezay. This river they told us parted Europe from Asia, though our map-makers, as I am told, do not agree to it; however, it is certainly the eastern boundary of the ancient Siberia, which now makes up a province only of the vast Muscovite empire, but is itself equal in bigness to the whole empire of Germany.

And yet here I observed ignorance and paganism still prevailed, except in the Muscovite garrisons. All the country between the river Oby and the river Janezay is as entirely pagan, and the people as barbarous, as the remotest of the Tartars; nay, as any nation, for aught I know, in Asia or America. I also found, which I observed to the Muscovite governors who I had opportunity to converse with, that the poor pagans are not much the wiser or the nearer Christianity for being under the Muscovite government; which they acknowledged was true enough; but, as they said, was none of their business. That if the czar expected to convert his Siberian, or Tonguese, or Tartar subjects, it should be done by sending clergymen among them, not soldiers; and they added, with more sincerity than I expected, that they found it was not so much the concern of their monarch to make the people Christians, as it was to make them subjects.

From this river to the great river Oby, we crossed a wild, uncultivated country. I cannot say 'tis a barren soil; 'tis only barren of people and good management; otherwise it is in itself a most pleasant, fruitful, and agreeable country. What inhabitants we found in it are all pagans, except such as are sent among them from Russia; for this is the country, I mean on both sides the river Oby, whither the Muscovite criminals, that are not put to death, are banished, and from whence it is next to impossible they should ever come away.

1 Yenesey.
I have nothing material to say of my particular affairs, till I came to Tobolski, the capital city of Siberia, where I continued some time on the following occasion:—

We had been now almost seven months on our journey, and winter began to come on apace; whereupon my partner and I called a council about our particular affairs, in which we found it proper, considering that we were bound for England, and not for Muscovy, to consider how to dispose of ourselves. They told us of sledges and reindeer to carry us over the snow in the winter time; and, indeed, they have such things that it would be incredible to relate the particulars of, by which means the Russians travel more in the winter than they can in summer; because in these sleds they are able to run night and day: the snow being frozen, is one universal covering to Nature, by which the hills, the vales, the rivers, the lakes, all are smooth and hard as a stone; and they run upon the surface, without any regard to what is underneath.

But I had no occasion to push at a winter journey of this kind; I was bound to England, not to Muscovy, and my route lay two ways: either I must go on as the caravan went, till I came to Jaroslav,1 and then go off west for Narva, and the Gulf of Finland, and so either by sea or land to Dantzic, where I might possibly sell my China cargo to good advantage; or I must leave the caravan at a little town on the Dwina, from whence I had but six days by water to Archangel, and from thence might be sure of shipping, either to England, Holland, or Hamburg.

Now, to go any of these journeys in the winter, would have been preposterous; for, as to Dantzic, the Baltic would be frozen up, and I could not get passage; and to go by land in those countries, was far less safe than among the Mongul Tartars; likewise to go to Archangel in October, all the ships would be gone from thence, and even the merchants who dwell there in summer, retire south to Muscovy in the winter, when the ships are gone; so that I should have nothing but extremity of cold to encounter, with a scarcity of provisions, and must lie there in an empty town all the winter: so that, upon the whole, I thought it much my better way to let

1 Jaroslav, the capital of a province of the same name in European Russia on the Volga.
the caravan go, and to make provision to winter where I was; namely, at Tobolski, in Siberia, in the latitude of fifty-eight degrees, where I was sure of three things to wear out a cold winter with; namely, plenty of provision, such as the country afforded; a warm house, with fuel enough, and excellent company: of all which I shall give a full account in its place.

I was now in a quite different climate from my beloved island, where I never felt cold, except when I had my ague; on the contrary, I had much to do to bear any clothes on my back, and never made any fire but without doors, and for my necessity in dressing my food, &c. Now I made me three good vests, with large robes, or gowns over them, to hang down to the feet, and button close to the wrists, and all these lined with furs to make them sufficiently warm.

As to a warm house, I must confess I greatly disliked our way in England, of making fires in every room in the house, in open chimneys, which, when the fire was out, always kept the air in the room cold as the climate. But taking an apartment in a good house in the town, I ordered a chimney to be built like a furnace, in the centre of six several rooms, like a stove; the funnel to carry the smoke went up one way, the door to come at the fire went in another, and all the rooms were kept equally warm, but no fire seen; just as they heat the bagnios in England.

By this means we had always the same climate in all the rooms, and an equal heat was preserved; and how cold soever it was without, it was always warm within, and yet we saw no fire, nor was ever incommode with any smoke.

The most wonderful thing of all was, that it should be possible to meet with good company here, in a country so barbarous as that of the most northerly parts of Europe, near the Frozen Ocean, and within but a very few degrees of Nova Zembla.

But this being the country where the State criminals of Muscovy, as I observed before, are all banished, this city was full of noblemen, princes, gentlemen, colonels; and, in short, all degrees of the nobility, gentry, soldiery, and courtiers of Muscovy. Here was the famous Prince Galliozen, the old General Robostiski, and several other persons of note, and some ladies.
By means of my Scots merchant, who, nevertheless, I parted with here, I made an acquaintance here with several of these gentlemen, and some of them of the first rank; and from these, in the long winter nights in which I stayed here, I received several very agreeable visits. It was talking one night with Prince ——, one of the banished ministers of state, belonging to the Czar of Muscovy, that my talk of my particular case began. He had been telling me abundance of fine things, of the greatness, the magnificence, the dominions, and the absolute power of the Emperor of the Russians. I interrupted him, and told him, I was a greater and more powerful prince than ever the Czar of Muscovy was, though my dominions were not so large, or my people so many. The Russian grandee looked a little surprised, and, fixing his eyes steadily upon me, began to wonder what I meant.

I told him his wonder would cease when I had explained myself. First, I told him, I had the absolute disposal of the lives and fortunes of all my subjects: that, notwithstanding my absolute power, I had not one person disaffected to my government or to my person, in all my dominions. He shook his head at that, and said, there, indeed, I outdid the Czar of Muscovy. I told him, that all the lands in my kingdom were my own, and all my subjects were not only my tenants, but tenants at will; that they would all fight for me to the last drop; and that never tyrant, for such I acknowledged myself to be, was ever so universally beloved, and yet so horribly feared by his subjects.

After amusing them with these riddles in government for a while, I opened the case, and told them the story at large of my living in the island, and how I managed both myself and the people there that were under me, just as I have since minutely down. They were exceedingly taken with the story, and especially the prince, who told me, with a sigh, that the true greatness of life was to be master of ourselves; that he would not have exchanged such a state of life as mine, to have been Czar of Muscovy; and that he found more felicity in the retirement he seemed to be banished to there, than ever he found in the highest authority he enjoyed in the court of his master the czar: that the height of human wisdom was to bring our tempers down to our circumstances, and to make
a calm within under the weight of the greatest scorns without. When he came first hither, he said, he used to tear the hair from his head, and the clothes from his back, as others had done before him: but a little time and consideration had made him look into himself, as well as round him to things without; that he found the mind of man, if it was but once brought to reflect upon the state of universal life, and how little this world was concerned in its true felicity, was perfectly capable of making a felicity for itself, fully satisfying to itself, and suitable to its own best ends and desires, with but very little assistance from the world; that air to breathe in, food to sustain life, clothes for warmth, and liberty for exercise in order to health, completed, in his opinion, all that the world could do for us: and though the greatness, the authority, the riches, and the pleasures which some enjoyed in the world, and which he had enjoyed his share of, had much in them that was agreeable to us, yet, he observed, that all those things chiefly gratified the coarsest of our affections, such as our ambition, our particular pride, our avarice, our vanity, and our sensuality; all which were, indeed, the mere product of the worst part of man, were in themselves crimes, and had in them the seeds of all manner of crimes, but neither were related to, or concerned with, any of those virtues that constituted us wise men, or of those graces which distinguished us as Christians: that being now deprived of all the fancied felicity which he enjoyed in the full exercise of all those vices, he said he was at leisure to look upon the dark side of them, where he found all manner of deformity; and was now convinced that virtue only makes a man truly wise, rich, and great, and preserves him in the way to a superior happiness in a future state. And in this, he said, they were more happy in their banishment than all their enemies were, who had the full possession of all the wealth and power that they (the banished) had left behind them.

"Nor, sir," says he, "do I bring my mind to this politically, by the necessity of my circumstances, which some call miserable; but if I know anything of myself, I would not now go back, though the czar, my master, should call me, and reinstate me in all my former grandeur—I say, I would no more go back to it, than I
believe my soul, when it shall be delivered from this prison of the
body, and has had a taste of the glorious state beyond life, would
come back to the gaol of flesh and blood it is now enclosed in, and
leave heaven to deal in the dirt and grime of human affairs.”

He spoke this with so much warmth in his temper, so much
earnestness and motion of his spirits, which were apparent in his
countenance, that it was evident it was the true sense of his soul.
There was no room to doubt his sincerity.

I told him, I once thought myself a kind of a monarch in my old
station, of which I had given him an account, but that I thought
he was not a monarch only, but a great conqueror; for that he
that has got a victory over his own exorbitant desires, and has the
absolute dominion over himself, whose reason entirely governs his
will, is certainly greater than he that conquers a city. “But, my
lord,” said I, “shall I take the liberty to ask you a question?”
“With all my heart,” says he. “If the door of your liberty was
opened,” said I, “would you not take hold of it to deliver your-
self from this exile?”

“Hold!” said he; “your question is subtle, and requires some
serious just distinctions to give it a sincere answer; and I’ll give
it you from the bottom of my heart. Nothing that I know of in
this world would move me to deliver myself from this state of
banishment except these two—first, the enjoyment of my relations;
and, secondly, a little warmer climate. But I protest to you that
to go back to the pomp of the court, the glory, the power, the
hurry of a minister of state; the wealth, the gaiety, and the
pleasures, that is to say, follies, of a courtier;—if my master
should send me word this moment, that he restores me to all he
banished me from, I protest, if I know myself at all, I would not
leave this wilderness, these deserts, and these frozen lakes, for
the palace at Muscovy.”

“But, my lord,” said I, “perhaps you not only are banished
from the pleasures of the court, and from the power, and authority,
and wealth you enjoyed before, but you may be absent, too, from
some of the conveniences of life, your estate, perhaps, confiscated,
and your effects plundered, and the supplies left you here may
not be suitable to the ordinary demands of life.”
WINTER AT TOBOLSKI

"Ay," says he, "that is, as you suppose me to be a lord or a prince, &c. So indeed I am; but you are now to consider me only as a man, a human creature, not at all distinguished from another; and so I can suffer no want, unless I should be visited with sickness and distempers. However, to put the question out of dispute: you see our manner; we are in this place five persons of rank; we live perfectly retired, as suited to a state of banishment; we have something rescued from the shipwreck of our fortunes, which keeps us from the mere necessity of hunting for our food; but the poor soldiers who are here, without that help, live in as much plenty as we, who go into the woods and catch sables and foxes; the labour of a month will maintain them a year: and as the way of living is not expensive, so it is not hard to get sufficient to ourselves: so that objection is out of doors."

I have not room to give a full account of the most agreeable conversation I had with this truly great man; in all which he showed that his mind was so inspired with a superior knowledge of things, so supported by religion, as well as by a vast share of wisdom, that his contempt of the world was really as much as he expressed, and that he was always the same to the last, as I appear in the story I am going to tell.

I had been here eight months, and a dark, dreadful winter I thought it to be, the cold so intense that I could not so much as abroad without being wrapped in furs, and a mask of fur my face, or rather a hood, with only a hole for breath, two for sight. The little daylight we had was, as we reckoned, three months not above five hours a day, and six at most; that the snow lying on the ground continually, and the er clear, it was never quite dark. Our horses were kept, starved, underground; and as for our servants—for we three servants here to look after our horses and selves—we very now and then their fingers and toes to thaw and take lest they should mortify and fall off.

true, within doors we were warm, the houses being close, thick, the lights small, and the glass all double. Our chiefly the flesh of deer, dried and cured in the season; had enough, but baked as biscuits; dried fish of several
sorts, and some flesh of mutton, and of the buffaloes, which is pretty good beef. All the stores of provision for the winter are laid up in the summer, and well cured. Our drink was water mixed with aqua vitae \(^1\) instead of brandy; and, for a treat, mead instead of wine, which, however, they have excellent good. The hunters, who venture abroad all weathers, frequently brought us in fresh venison, very fat and good, and sometimes bear's flesh, but we did not much care for the last. We had a good stock of tea, with which we treated our friends as above; and, in a word, we lived very cheerfully and well, all things considered.

It was now March, and the days grown considerably longer, and the weather, at least, tolerable; so the other travellers began to prepare sleds to carry them over the snow, and to get things ready to be going; but my measures being fixed, as I have said, for Archangel, and not for Muscovy or the Baltic, I made no motion; knowing very well that the ships from the south do not set out for that part of the world till May or June; and that if I was there by the beginning of August, it would be as soon as any ships would be ready to go away; and therefore, I say, I made no haste to be gone as others did; in a word, I saw a great many people, nay, all the travellers, go away before me. It seems every year they go from hence to Muscovy for trade; namely, to carry furs, and buy necessaries with them, which they bring back to furnish their shops: also others went of the same errand to Archangel; but then they also being to come back again above eight hundred miles, went all out before me.

In short, about the latter end of May I began to make all ready to pack up; and as I was doing this, it occurred to me, that seeing all these people were banished by the Czar of Muscovy to Siberia, and yet, when they came there, were left at liberty to go whither they would, why did they not then go away to any part of the world wherever they thought fit; and I began to examine what should hinder them from making such an attempt.

But my wonder was over when I entered upon that subject with the person I have mentioned, who answered me thus: “Consider, first, sir,” said he, “the place where we are; and, secondly.

\(^1\) A strong spirit resembling gin distilled from rye.
the condition we are in; especially," said he, "the generality of
the people who are banished hither. We are surrounded," said
he, "with stronger things than bars and bolts: on the north side
an un navigable ocean, where ship never sailed and boat never
swam; neither, if we had both, could we know where to go with
them. Every other way," said he, "we have above a thousand
miles to pass through the czar's own dominions, and by ways
utterly unpassable, except by the roads made by the governor,
and by the towns garrisoned by his troops; so that we could
neither pass undiscovered by the road, or subsist any other way;
so that it is in vain to attempt it."

I was silenced, indeed, at once, and found that they were in a
prison every jot as secure as if they had been locked up in the
castle at Muscow. However, it came into my thought, that I
might certainly be made an instrument to procure the escape of
this excellent person, and that whatever hazard I run, I would
certainly try if I could carry him off. Upon this I took an occa-
sion one evening to tell him my thoughts: I represented to him
that it was very easy for me to carry him away, there being no
guard over him in the country, and as I was not going to Muscow,
but to Archangel, and that I went in the nature of a caravan, by
which I was not obliged to lie in the stationary towns in the
desert, but could encamp every night where I would, we might
easily pass uninterrupted to Archangel, where I would immediately
secure him on board an English or Dutch ship, and carry him off
safe along with me; and as to his subsistence, and other particulars,
it should be my care till he could better supply himself.

He heard me very attentively, and looked earnestly on me all
the while I spoke. Nay, I could see in his very face that what I
said put his spirits into an exceeding ferment; his colour frequently
changed, his eyes looked red, and his heart fluttered, that it might
be even perceived in his countenance; nor could he immediately
answer me when I had done, and, as it were, expected what he would
say to it; but after he had paused a little he embraced me, and
said, "How unhappy are we, unguarded creatures as we are, that
even our greatest acts of friendship are made snares to us, and we
are made tempters of one another! My dear friend," said he,
"your offer is so sincere, has such kindness in it, is so disinterested in itself and is so calculated for my advantage, that I must have very little knowledge of the world, if I did not both wonder at it, and acknowledge the obligation I have upon me to you for it; but did you believe I was sincere in what I have so often said to you of my contempt of the world? Did you believe I spoke my very soul to you, and that I had really obtained that degree of felicity here, that had placed me above all that the world could give me, or do for me? Did you believe I was sincere, when I told you I would not go back, if I was recalled even to be all that once I was in the court, with the favour of the czar, my master? Did you believe me, my friend, to be an honest man, or did you think me to be a boasting hypocrite?" Here he stopped, as if he would hear what I would say; but, indeed, I soon after perceived, that he stopped because his spirits were in motion; his great heart was full of struggles, and he could not go on. I was, I confess, astonished at the thing, as well as at the man, and I used some arguments with him to urge him to set himself free; that he ought to look upon this as a door opened by Heaven for his deliverance, and a summons by Providence, who has the care and disposition of all events, to do himself good, and to render himself useful in the world.

He had by this time recovered himself. "How do you know, sir," says he, warmly, "that, instead of a summons from Heaven, it may not be a feint of another instrument, representing, in all the alluring colours to me, the show of felicity as a deliverance, which may in itself be my snare, and tend directly to my ruin! Here I am free from the temptation of returning to my former miserable greatness; there I am not sure, but that all the seeds of pride, ambition, avarice, and luxury, which I know remain in nature, may revive and take root, and, in a word, again overwhelm me; and then the happy prisoner, who you see now master of his soul's liberty, shall be the miserable slave of his own senses, in the full of all personal liberty. Dear sir, let me remain in this blessed confinement, banished from the crimes of life, rather than purchase a show of freedom at the expense of the liberty of my reason, and at the expense of the future happiness which now I
CRUSOE'S SURPRISE.

have in my view, but shall then, I fear, quickly lose sight of; for I am but flesh, a man, a mere man, have passions and affections as likely to possess and overthrow me as any man. Oh, be not my friend and my tempter both together!"

If I was surprised before, I was quite dumb now, and stood silent, looking at him; and, indeed, admired what I saw. The struggle in his soul was so great, that, though the weather was extremely cold, it put him into a most violent sweat, and I found he wanted to give vent to his mind: so I said a word or two, that I would leave him to consider of it, and wait on him again; and then I withdrew to my own apartment.

About two hours after, I heard somebody at or near the door of
my room, and I was going to open the door; but he had opened it, and came in. "My dear friend," says he, "you had almost over- set me, but I am recovered; do not take it ill that I do not close with your offer; I assure you, 'tis not for want of a sense of the kindness of it in you: and I came to make the most sincere acknowledgment of it to you; but, I hope, I have got the victory over myself."

"My lord," said I, "I hope you are fully satisfied that you do not resist the call of Heaven." "Sir," said he, "if it had been from Heaven, the same power would have influenced me to accept it; but I hope, and am fully satisfied, that it is from Heaven that I decline it; and I have an infinite satisfaction in the parting, that you shall leave me an honest man still, though not a free man."

I had nothing to do but to acquiesce, and make professions to him of my having no end in it but a sincere desire to serve him. He embraced me very passionately, and assured me, he was sensible of that, and should always acknowledge it: and with that he offered me a very fine present of sables, too much indeed for me to accept from a man in his circumstances; and I would have avoided them, but he would not be refused.

The next morning I sent my servant to his lordship, with a small present of tea, and two pieces of China damask, and four little wedges of Japan gold, which did not all weigh above six ounces or thereabout, but were far short of the value of his sables, which, indeed, when I came to England, I found worth near £200. He accepted the tea, and one piece of the damask, and one of the pieces of gold, which had a fine stamp upon it, of the Japan coinage, which I found he took for the rarity of it, but would not take any more; and he sent word by my servant that he desired to speak with me.

When I came to him, he told me, I knew what had passed between us, and hoped I would not move him any more in that affair; but that, since I had made such a generous offer to him, he asked me, if I had kindness enough to offer the same to another person that he would name to me, in whom he had a great share of concern. I told him, that I could not say I inclined to do so much for any one but himself, for whom I had a particular value,
and should have been glad to have been the instrument of his deliverance: however, if he would please to name the person to me, I would give him my answer, and hoped he would not be displeased with me, if he was with my answer. He told me, it was only his son, who, though I had not seen, yet was in the same condition with himself, and above two hundred miles from him, on the other side the Oby; but that, if I consented, he would send for him.

I made no hesitation, but told him I would do it. I made some ceremony in letting him understand that it was wholly on his account; and that seeing I could not prevail on him, I would show my respect to him by my concern for his son. But these things are too tedious to repeat here. He sent away the next day for his son; and, in about twenty days, he came back with the messenger, bringing six or seven horses loaded with very rich furs, and which on the whole amounted to a very great value.

His servants brought the horses into the town, but left the young lord at a distance, till night, when he came incognito into our apartment, and his father presented him to me; and, in short, we concerted there the manner of our travelling, and everything proper for the journey.

I had bought a considerable quantity of sables, black fox-skins, fine ermines, and such other furs as are very rich—I say, I had bought them in that city in exchange for some of the goods I brought from China; in particular, for the cloves and nutmegs, of which I sold the greatest part here, and the rest afterwards at Archangel, for a much better price than I could have done at London; and my partner, who was sensible of the profit, and whose business more particularly than mine was merchandize, was mightily pleased with our stay, on account of the traffic we made here.

It was the beginning of June when I left this remote place, a city, I believe, little heard of in the world; and, indeed, it is so far out of the road of commerce that I know not how it should be much talked of. We were now come to a very small caravan, being only thirty-two horses and camels in all; and all of them passed for mine, though my new guest was proprietor of eleven of
them. It was most natural, also, that I should take more servants with me than I had before; and the young lord passed for my steward. What great man I passed for myself I know not, neither did it concern me to inquire. We had here the worst and the largest desert to pass over that we met with in all the journey. Indeed, I call it the worst, because the way was very deep in some places and very uneven in others. The best we had to say for it was, that we thought we had no troops of Tartars and robbers to fear, and that they never came on this side the river Oby, or, at least, but very seldom; but we found it otherwise.

My young lord had with him a faithful Muscovite servant, or rather a Siberian servant, who was perfectly acquainted with the country, and led us by private roads, that we avoided coming into the principal towns and cities upon the great road, such as Tumel, Soly-Kamskoï, and several others; because the Muscovite garrisons which are kept there are very curious and strict in their observation upon travellers, and searching lest any of the banished persons of note should make their escape that way into Muscovy. But by this means, as we were kept out of the cities, so our whole journey was a desert, and we were obliged to encamp and lie in our tents when we might have had very good accommodation in the cities on the way. This the young lord was so sensible of, that he would not allow us to lie abroad, when we came to several cities on the way, but lay abroad himself with his servant in the woods, and met us always at the appointed places.

We were just entered Europe, having passed the river Kama, which, in these parts, is the boundary between Europe and Asia, and the first city on the European side was called Soly-Kamskoï, which is as much as to say, the great city, on the river Kama. And here we thought to have seen some evident alteration in the people, their manner, their habit, their religion, and their business. But we were mistaken; for as we had a vast desert to pass, which, by relation, is near seven hundred miles long in some places, but not above two hundred miles over where we passed it, so, till we came past that horrible place, we found very little difference between that country and the Mongul Tartary; the people mostly
pagans, and little better than the savages of America, their houses
and towns full of idols, and their way of living wholly barbarous,
except in the cities as above, and the villages near them, where
they are Christians, as they call themselves, of the Greek Church,
but have their religion mingled with so many relics of superstition,
that it is scarce to be known in some places from mere sorcery
and witchcraft.

In passing this forest, I thought indeed we must, after all our
dangers were in our imagination escaped, as before, have been
plundered and robbed, and perhaps murdered, by a troop of thieves.
Of what country they were, whether the roving bands of the
Ostiachi, a kind of Tartars or wild people on the bank of the Oby,
had ranged thus far; or whether they were the sable-hunters of
Siberia, I am yet at a loss to know; but they were all on horse-
back, carried bows and arrows, and were at first about five and
forty in number. They came so near to us, as within about two
musket shot, and, asking no questions, they surrounded us with
their horse, and looked very earnestly upon us twice. At length
they placed themselves just in our way, upon which we drew up
in a little line before our camels, being not above sixteen men in
all; and being drawn up thus, we halted, and sent out the Sibe-
rian servant, who attended his lord, to see who they were. His
master was the more willing to let him go, because he was not a
little apprehensive that they were a Siberian troop sent out after
him. The man came up near them with a flag of truce, and
called them; but though he spoke several of their languages, or
dialects of languages rather, he could not understand a word they
said. However, after some signs to him not to come nearer to
them at his peril, so he said he understood them to mean, offering
to shoot at him if he advanced, the fellow came back no wiser than
he went; only that by their dress, he said, he believed them to be
some Tartars of Kalmuck, or of the Circassian hordes, and that
there must be more of them upon the great desert, though he
never heard that any of them ever were seen so far north before.

This was small comfort to us: however, we had no remedy.
There was on our left hand, at about a quarter of a mile's distance,
a little grove or clump of trees, which stood close together, and
very near the road. I immediately resolved we should advance to those trees, and fortify ourselves as well as we could there: for, first, I considered that the trees would, in a great measure, cover us from their arrows; and, in the next place, they could not come to charge us in a body. It was indeed my old Portuguese pilot who proposed it, and who had this Excellency attending him, namely, that he was always readiest, and most apt to direct and encourage us in cases of the most danger. We advanced immediately with what speed we could, and gained that little wood, the Tartars or thieves, for we knew not what to call them, keeping their stand, and not attempting to hinder us. When we came thither, we found, to our great satisfaction, that it was a swampy, springy piece of ground; and on the one side, a very great spring of water, which, running out in a little rill or brook, was, a little farther, joined by another of the like bigness, and was, in short, the head or source of a considerable river, called afterwards the Wurtska. The trees which grew about this spring were not in all above two hundred, but were very large, and stood pretty thick; so that as soon as we got in we saw ourselves perfectly safe from the enemy, unless they alighted and attacked us on foot.

But to make this more difficult, our Portuguese, with indefatigable application, cut down great arms of the trees, and laid them hanging, not quite cut of, from one tree to another, so that he made a continued fence almost round us.

We stayed here, waiting the motion of the enemy, some hours, without perceiving they made any motion: when, about two hours before night, they came down directly upon us; and, though we had not perceived it, we found they had been joined by some more of the same, so that they were near fourscore horse, whereof, however, we fancied some were women. They came on till they were within half shot of our little wood, when we fired one musket without ball, and called to them in the Russian tongue to know what they wanted, and bid them keep off. But, as if they knew nothing of what we said, they came on with a double fury, directly up to the wood-side, not imagining we were so barricaded that they could not break in. Our old pilot was our captain as well as he had been our engineer, and desired of us not to fire upon
them till they came within pistol-shot, and that we might be sure to kill; and that, when we did fight, we should be sure to take good aim. We bade him give the word of command, which he delayed so long that they were, some of them, within two pikes' length of us when we fired.

We aimed so true, or Providence directed our shot so sure, that we killed fourteen of them, and wounded several others, as also several of their horses; for we had all of us loaded our pieces with two or three bullets at least.

They were terribly surprised with our fire, and retreated immediately about one hundred rods from us, in which time we loaded our pieces again; and seeing them keep that distance, we sallied out, and caught four or five of their horses, whose riders, we suppose, were killed, and, coming up to the dead, we could easily perceive they were Tartars, but knew not from what country, or how they came to make an excursion such an unusual length.

About an hour after, they made a motion to attack us again,
and rode round our little wood to see where else they might break in; but finding us always ready to face them, they went off again, and we resolved not to stir from the place for that night.

We slept little, you may be sure, but spent the most part of the night in strengthening our situation, and barricading the entrances into the wood, and keeping a strict watch. We waited for daylight, and when it came it gave us a very unwelcome discovery indeed; for the enemy, who we thought were discouraged with the reception they had met with, were now increased to no less than three hundred, and had set up eleven or twelve huts and tents, as if they were resolved to besiege us; and this little camp they had pitched upon the open plain, at about three-quarters of a mile from us. We were indeed surprised at this discovery; and now, I confess, I gave myself over for lost, and all that I had. The loss of my effects did not lie so near me, though they were very considerable, as the thoughts of falling into the hands of such barbarians, at the latter end of my journey, after so many difficulties and hazards as I had gone through, and even in sight of our port, where we expected safety and deliverance. As for my partner, he was raging. He declared that to lose his goods would be his ruin; and he would rather die than be starved: and he was for fighting to the last drop.

The young lord, as gallant as ever flesh showed itself, was for fighting to the last also; and my old pilot was of the opinion we were able to resist them all in the situation we were then in. And thus we spent the day in debates of what we should do. But towards evening, we found that the number of our enemies still increased, perhaps as they were abroad in several parties for prey. The first had sent out scouts to call for help, and to acquaint them of the booty; and we did not know but by the morning they might still be a greater number. So I began to inquire of those people we had brought from Tobolski if there was no other or more private ways by which we might avoid them in the night, and perhaps either retreat to some town, or get help to guard us over the desert.

The Siberian, who was servant to the young lord, told us, if we designed to avoid them, and not fight, he would engage to carry
us off in the night, to a way that went north towards the Petrou, by which he made no question but we might get away, and the Tartars never the wiser. But, he said, his lord had told him he would not retreat, but would rather choose to fight. I told him he mistook his lord; for that he was too wise a man to love fighting for the sake of it; that I knew his lord was brave enough by what he had showed already; but that his lord knew better than to desire to have seventeen or eighteen men fight five hundred, unless an unavoidable necessity forced them to it; and that if he thought it possible for us to escape in the night, we had nothing else to do but to attempt it. He answered, if his lord gave him such orders, he would lose his life if he did not perform it. We soon brought his lord to give that order, though privately; and we immediately prepared for the putting it in practice.

And, first, as soon as it began to be dark, we kindled a fire in our little camp, which we kept burning, and prepared so as to make it burn all night, that the Tartars might conclude we were still there. But as soon as it was dark, that is to say, so as we could see the stars, for our guide would not stir before, having all our horses and camels ready loaden, we followed our new guide, who, I soon found, steered himself by the pole, or north star, all the country being level for a long way.

After we had travelled two hours very hard, it began to be lighter still; not that it was quite dark all night, but the moon began to rise, so that, in short, it was rather lighter than we wished it to be; but by six o'clock the next morning, we were gotten near forty miles, though, the truth is, we almost spoiled our horses. Here we found a Russian village named Kermazinskoy, where we rested, and heard nothing of the Kalmuck Tartars that day. About two hours before night, we set out again, and travelled till eight the next morning, though not quite so quiet as before; and, about seven o'clock, we passed a little river called Kirtza, and came to a good large town inhabited by Russians, and very populous, called Ozomoya. There we heard that several troops or hordes of Kalmucks had been abroad upon the desert, but that we were now completely out of danger of them, which was to our great satisfaction, you may be sure. Here we were obliged to get
some fresh horses, and having need enough of rest, we stayed five days; and my partner and I agreed to give the honest Siberian who brought us thither, the value of ten pistoles for his conducting us.

In five days more we came to Veussima, upon the river Witzogda, and running into the Dwina. We were there, very happily, near the end of our travels by land, that river being navigable in seven days' passage to Archangel. From hence we came to Lawrenskoy, the 3rd of July; and, providing ourselves with two luggage-boats, and a barge for our own convenience, embarked the 7th, and arrived all safe at Archangel the 18th, having been a year and five months and three days on the journey, including our stay of eight months and odd days at Tobolski.

We were obliged to stay at this place six weeks, for the arrival of the ships, and must have tarried longer, had not a Hamburg come in above a month sooner than any of the English ships; when, after some consideration that the city of Hamburg might happen to be as good a market for our goods as London, we all took freight with him; and, having put my goods on board, it was most natural for me to put my steward on board to take care of them, by which means my young lord had a sufficient opportunity to conceal himself, never coming on shore in all the time we stayed there; and this he did that he might not be seen in the city, where some of the Muscovy merchants would certainly have seen and discovered him.

We sailed from Archangel the 20th of August, the same year, and after no extraordinary bad voyage, arrived in the Elbe the 13th of September. Here my partner and I found a very good sale for our goods, as well those of China, as the sables, &c., of Siberia; and dividing the produce of our effects, my share amounted to £3475, 17s. 3d., notwithstanding so many losses we had sustained, and charges we had been at, only remembering that I had included in this about six hundred pounds worth of diamonds which I had purchased at Bengal.

Here the young lord took his leave of us, and went up the Elbe, in order to go to the Court of Vienna, where he resolved to seek protection, and where he could correspond with those of his
father's friends who were left alive. He did not part without all
the testimonies he could give me of gratitude for the service I had
done him, and his sense of my kindness to the prince, his father.

To conclude. Having stayed near four months in Hamburg,
I came from thence overland to the Hague, where I embarked in
the packet, and arrived in London the 10th of January 1705,
having been gone from England ten years and nine months.

And here, resolving to harass myself no more, I am preparing
for a longer journey than all these, having lived seventy-two
years a life of infinite variety, and learned sufficiently to know the
value of retirement, and the blessing of ending our days in peace.

"I am preparing for a longer journey than all these."
"It is due to Messrs. Blackie to say that no firm of publishers turns out this class of literature with more finish. We refer not only to the novel tinting of the illustrations and the richness of the cover, but more particularly to the solidity of the binding, a matter of great importance in boys’ books."—The Academy.

BLACKIE & SON’S
BOOKS FOR YOUNG PEOPLE.

New Series for Season 1885.

By G. A. HENTY.

TRUE TO THE OLD FLAG:
A TALE OF THE AMERICAN WAR OF INDEPENDENCE.

IN FREEDOM’S CAUSE:
A STORY OF WALLACE AND BRUCE.

ST. GEORGE FOR ENGLAND,
A TALE OF CRESSY AND POITIERS.

By G. MANVILLE FENN.

BUNYIP LAND:
THE STORY OF A WILD JOURNEY IN NEW GUINEA.

MENHARDOC:
A STORY OF CORNISH NETS AND MINES.

A NEW EDITION OF ROBINSON CRUSOE.
WITH OVER 100 ILLUSTRATIONS BY GORDON BROWN.

By HARRY COLLINGWOOD.

THE PIRATE ISLAND:
A STORY OF THE SOUTH PACIFIC.
2  Blackie & Son's New Publications.

BY JOHN C. HUTCHESON.

The Wreck of the Nancy Bell:
Or Cast Away on Kerguelen Land.

BY MARY C. ROWSELL.

Traitor or Patriot?
A Tale of the Rye-House Plot.

BY KATE WOOD.

Winnie's Secret:
A Story of Faith and Patience.

BY ESMÉ STUART.

Miss Fenwick's Failures:
Or "Peggy Pepper-Pot." A Story of Family Interest.

BY F. BAYFORD HARRISON.

Brothers in Arms:
A Tale of the Crusades.

STORIES OF THE SEA IN FORMER DAYS:
Narratives of Wreck and Rescue.

ADVENTURES IN FIELD, FLOOD, AND FOREST:
Stories of Danger and Daring.

BY ANNIE S. SWAN.

Warner's Chase:
Or the Gentle Heart.

BY GREGSON GOW.

Down and Up Again:
Being Some Account of the Felton Family, and the Odd People They Met.

BY ARTHUR GILMAN, A.M.

Magna Charta Stories:
Or Struggles for Freedom in the Olden Time.
BOOKS BY G. A. HENTY.

" Surely Mr. Henty should understand boys' tastes better than any man living."

—The Times.

TRUE TO THE OLD FLAG:


Owing to the unsuccessful termination of the war between Great Britain and her American colonies, the subject is one which English writers have for the most part avoided, and our histories have been generally drawn from American sources. In the present volume the author has gone to the accounts of English officers who took part in the conflict, and lads will find that in no war in which British soldiers have been engaged did they behave with greater courage and good conduct, than in the long struggle with the American colonists. Older people will read with surprise and interest this accurately written narrative of the war. The historical portion of the book being accompanied with numerous thrilling adventures with the redskins on the shores of Lake Huron, in which the hero of the tale, the son of a British officer settled in the States, and who joins the Royal army as a scout, takes part, a story of exciting interest is interwoven with the general narrative and carried through the book.

IN FREEDOM'S CAUSE:


In this story the author relates the stirring tale of the Scottish War of Independence and of the exploits of Wallace and Bruce. The extraordinary valour and personal prowess of these historical characters rival the deeds of the mythical heroes of chivalry Roland and Arthur, and indeed at one time Wallace was ranked with these legendary personages. The researches of modern historians have shown, however, that he was a living, breathing man, and that in spite of the fact that the contemporary writers were, for the most part, his bitter enemies, there can be no doubt that he was a great man as well as a valiant champion. The hero of the tale fought under both Wallace and Bruce, and while the strictest historical accuracy has been maintained with respect to public events, the work is full of "hairbreadth 'scapes" and wild adventure.
BOOKS BY G. A. HENTY.

WITH CLIVE IN INDIA:

The period between the landing of Clive as a young writer in India and the close of his career was critical and eventful in the extreme. At its commencement the English were traders existing on sufferance of the native princes. At its close they were masters of Bengal and of the greater part of Southern India. The Author has given a full and accurate account of the historical events of that stirring time, and battles and sieges follow each other in rapid succession, while he combines with his narrative a tale of daring and adventure, which gives a liftake interest to the volume.

"In this book Mr. Henty has contrived to exceed himself in stirring adventures and thrilling situations, while the realities are preserved. The pictures are by Mr. Gordon Browne, who may be congratulated on their success in adding to the interest of the book."—Saturday Review.

"Among writers of stories of adventure for boys Mr. Henty stands in the very first rank, and Mr. Gordon Browne occupies a similar place with his pencil. . . . Those who know something about India will be the most ready to thank Mr. Henty for giving them this instructive volume to place in the hands of their children."—Academy.

"He has taken a period of Indian History of the most vital importance, and he has shown by what means the work was accomplished. He has embroidered on the historical facts a story which of itself is deeply interesting. Young people assuredly will be delighted with the volume as a whole."—Scotsman.

UNDER DRAKE'S FLAG.

A story of the days when England and Spain struggled for the supremacy of the sea, and England carried off the palm. The heroes sail as lads with Drake in the expedition in which the Pacific Ocean was first seen by an Englishman from a tree-top on the Isthmus of Panama, and in his great voyage of circumnavigation. The historical portion of the story is absolutely to be relied upon, but this, although very useful to lads, will perhaps be less attractive than the great variety of exciting adventure through which the young adventurers pass in the course of their voyages.

"A stirring book of Drake's time, and just such a book as the youth of this maritime country are likely to prize highly."—Daily Telegraph.

"Not in the coils of the boa-constrictor is a wonderful picture. A boy must be hard to please if he wishes for anything more exciting."—Fall Moll Gazette.

"It is well illustrated, and is a real good story really well told."—Punch.

"A book of adventure, where the hero meets with experiences enough one would think to turn his hair gray."—Harper's Monthly Magazine.
ST. GEORGE FOR ENGLAND:


No portion of English history is more crowded with great events than that of the reign of Edward III. Cressy and Poitiers laid France prostrate at the feet of England. The Spanish fleet was dispersed and destroyed by a naval battle as remarkable in its incidents as was that which broke up the Armada in the time of Elizabeth. Europe was ravaged by the dreadful plague known as the Black Death, and France was the scene of the terrible peasant rising called the Jacquerie. All these stirring events are treated by the author in St. George for England. The hero of the story, although of good family, begins life as a London apprentice, but after countless adventures and perils, becomes by valour and good conduct the squire, and at last the trusted friend and companion of the Black Prince.

BY SHEER PLUCK:


The Ashanti Campaign seems but an event of yesterday, but it happened when the generation now rising up were too young to have made themselves acquainted with its incidents. The author has woven, in a tale of thrilling interest, all the details of the campaign, of which he was himself a witness. His hero, after many exciting adventures in the interior, finds himself at Coomasie just before the outbreak of the war, is detained a prisoner by the king, is sent down with the army which invaded the British Protectorate, escapes, and accompanies the English expedition on their march to Coomasie.

"Mr. Henty keeps up his reputation as a writer of boys' stories. 'By Sheer Pluck' will be eagerly read. The author's personal knowledge of the west coast has been turned to good advantage."—Athenaeum.

"No one could have done the work better than he has done it. The lad must be very difficult to satisfy who is not satisfied with this."— Scotsman.

"The book is one which will not only sustain, but add to Mr. Henty's reputation. The illustrations are particularly good."—Standard.

"Of all the new books for boys which the season has produced, there is not one better fitted to win their suffrages than 'By Sheer Pluck.' It is written with a simple directness, force, and purity of style worthy of Defoe. Morally, the book is everything that could be desired, setting before the boys a bright and brace ideal of the English gentleman."—Christian Leader.
Blackie & Son’s New Publications.

BY G. A. HENTY.

FACING DEATH:
Or the Hero of the Vaughan Pit. A Tale of the Coal Mines.

“Facing Death” is a story with a purpose. It is intended to show that a lad who makes up his mind firmly and resolutely that he will rise in life, and who is prepared to face toil and ridicule and hardship to carry out his determination, is sure to succeed. The hero of the story, though only a colliery lad, is a character that boys will delight in. He is a typical British boy, dogged, earnest, generous, and though “shamefaced” to a degree, is ready to face death in the discharge of duty. His is a character for imitation by boys in every station, who will assuredly be intensely interested in the narrative.

“The tale is well written and well illustrated, and there is much reality in the characters.”—Athenaeum.

“If any father, godfather, clergyman, or schoolmaster is on the look-out for a good book to give as a present this season to a boy who is worth his salt, this is the book we would recommend.”—Standard.

BY PROFESSOR POUCHET.

THE UNIVERSE:
Or the Infinitely Great and the Infinitely Little. A Sketch of Contrasts in Creation, and Marvels revealed and explained by Natural Science. By F. A. Pouchet, M.D.
Illustrated by 273 Engravings on wood, of which 56 are full-page size. 8th Edition, medium 8vo, cloth elegant, gilt edges, 7s. 6d.; also full morocco, blind tooled, 16s.

The object of this Work is to inspire and extend a taste for natural science. It is not a learned treatise, but a simple study. The title adopted indicates that the author has gathered from creation at large, often contrasting the smallest of its productions with the mightiest.

“We can honestly commend this work, which is admirably, as it is copiously illustrated.”—Times.

“As interesting as the most exciting romance, and a great deal more likely to be remembered to good purpose.”—Standard.

“Scarce any book in French or in English is so likely to stimulate in the young an interest in the physical phenomena.”—Fortnightly Review.

“The volume, and it is a splendid one, will serve as a good pioneer to more exact studies.”—Saturday Review.

“Among the most attractive of the treatises on science there is not one more suggestive and impressive than Pouchet’s Universe. The work brings so forcibly before the thoughtful reader the infinite variety of the universe that he must be dull indeed who is not awed by the impressive lesson.”—Knowledge.
There have been countless editions of "Robinson Crusoe," and they have mostly been imperfect, inasmuch as they have been so largely altered from the original text that the language in many instances has not been that of Defoe but of his revisers. The present volume has been carefully printed from the original edition, and all obsolete or little known terms and obscure phrases are explained in brief foot notes. The "Editing" is not a corruption or pretended improvement of Defoe's great work.
BOOKS BY GEORGE MANVILLE FENN.

BUNYIP LAND:

"Bunyip Land" is the story of Joseph Carstairs, son of an eminent botanist, who, in his search for new plants for the London nursemens, ventures into the interior of New Guinea. Years pass away, and Professor Carstairs does not return; and though he is supposed to be dead, his young wife and son, who live at a station in Australia, refuse to believe this to be the case; and as soon as he is old enough, young Joe declares his intention of going in search of his father. To his surprise and delight his mother is willing that he should go, and their friend the young doctor offers to be Joe's companion. Jimmy, a native black, insists upon bearing them company; and a passage is taken to New Guinea in a cruising schooner. They land, are made prisoners, get free, and finally journey into the interior of that terra incognita, New Guinea, which Jimmy believes to be full of the native demons or bunyips, as he calls them, hence the title Bunyip Land. Their adventures are many and exciting, but after numerous perils they discover the professor a prisoner among the blacks, and bring him home in triumph to his anxious wife.

THE GOLDEN MAGNET:
A Tale of the Land of the Incas. By GEO. MANVILLE FENN, author of "In the King's Name," "Nat the Naturalist," &c. With 12 full-page pictures by GORDON BROWNE. Crown 8vo, cloth elegant, bevelled boards, olivine edges, 6s.

The tale is of a romantic lad, who leaves home, where his father conducts a failing business, to seek his fortune in South America by endeavouring to discover some of that treasure which legends declare was ages ago hidden by the Peruvian rulers and the priests of that mysterious country, to preserve it from the Spanish invaders. The hero of the story is accompanied by a faithful companion, who, in the capacity both of comrade and banchman, does true service, and shows the dogged courage of the English lad during the strange adventures which befall them. The plot of the story is simple, but the movement is rapid and full of strange excitement.

"'It forms a handsome volume, and clearly a rival to 'Robinson Crusoe' as a gift-book.'—Edinburgh Daily Review.

"Told with admirable force and strength. Few men other than Mr. Fenn have the capacity for telling such stories as this, and we do not remember to have seen one of his productions which has exceeded it in merit."—Scottusian.

"There could be no more welcome Christmas present for a boy. There is not a dull page in the book, and many will be read with breathless interest. 'The Golden Magnet' is, of course, the same one that attracted Raleigh and the heroes of 'Westward Ho!'"—Journal of Education.
BOOKS BY GEORGE MANVILLE FENN.

IN THE KING'S NAME:
Or the Cruise of the Kestrel. By G. MANVILLE FENN, author of "The Golden Magnet," "Nat the Naturalist," &c. Illustrated by 12 full-page Pictures by GORDON BROWNE. Crown 8vo, cloth extra, bevelled boards, olivine edges, 6s.

"In the King's Name" is a spirited story of the Jacobite times, concerning the adventures of Hilary Leigh, a young naval officer in the preventive service off the coast of Sussex, on board the Kestrel. Leigh is taken prisoner by the adherents of the Pretender, amongst whom is an early friend and patron who desires to spare the lad's life, but will not release him. The narrative is full of exciting and often humorous incident.

"Mr. Manville Fenn has already won a foremost place among writers of stories for boys. "In the King's Name," is, we are inclined to think, the best of all his productions in this field. It has the great quality of always "moving on"—adventure following adventure in constant succession."—Daily News.

"Told with the freshness and verve which characterize all Mr. Fenn's writings and put him in the front rank of writers for boys."—Standard.

"A book in which boys will delight. Just the sort which can be given to a healthy-minded youngster with the certainty that he will enjoy it."—Scotsman.

"A capital boy's story, full of incident and adventure, and told in the lively style in which Mr. Fenn is such an adept."—Globe.

MENHARDOC:

The scene of this story of boyish aspiration and adventure is laid among the granite piles and tors of Cornwall, where the huge Atlantic waves, clear as crystal, come howling in to break in glittering cascades upon the barriers of rock. Here amongst the hardy, honest fishermen and miners the two sons of Mr. Temple meet with Will Marion, the nephew of a retired purser of the Royal Navy and owner of several fishing-boats. The lads, in spite of their differences of temperament, fraternize, and the London boys, whose father is a mining engineer in search of profitable lodes or veins, are inducted into the secrets of fishing in the great bay. They learn how to catch mackerel, pollack, and conger with the line, and are present at the hauling of the nets, but not without incurring many serious risks. Adventures are pretty plentiful, but the story has for its strong base the development of character of the three boys, who are wonderfully dissimilar. There is a good deal of quaint character throughout, and the sketches of Cornish life and local colouring are based upon experience in the bay, whose fishing village is called here Menhardoc. The search for valuable mineral proves successful in an unexpected manner, through the knowledge of the London boys' Cornish companion, and with good result. This is a thoroughly English story of phases of life but little touched upon in boys' literature up to the present time.
BY GEORGE MANVILLE FENN.

NAT THE NATURALIST:

Or a Boy's Adventures in the Eastern Seas. By G. MANVILLE FENN, author of "The Golden Magnet," "In the King's Name," &c. Illustrated by 8 full-page Pictures by GORDON BROWNE in black and tint. Crown 8vo, cloth elegant, 5s.

This is a pleasant story of a lad who, though he is brought up in a strictly quiet fashion by an aunt, has a great desire to go abroad to seek specimens in natural history, and has that desire gratified by an uncle who comes home from distant lands, whence he brings a beautiful collection. The boy Nat and his uncle Dick go on a voyage to the remoter islands of the Eastern seas, and their adventures there are told in a truthful and vastly interesting fashion, which will at once attract and maintain the earnest attention of young readers. The descriptions of Mr. Ebony, their black comrade, and of the scenes of savage life, are full of genuine humour.

"Mr. Fenn has hit upon a capital idea. This is among the best of the boys' books of the season."—The Times.

"We can conceive of no more attractive present for a young naturalist."—Land and Water.

"This sort of book encourages independence of character, develops resource, and teaches a boy to keep his eyes open."—Saturday Review.

"The late Lord Palmerston used to say that one use of war was to teach geography: such books as this teach it in a more harmless and cheaper way."—Atheneum.

BY HARRY COLLINGWOOD.

THE PIRATE ISLAND:


This story details the adventures of a lad who was found in his infancy on board a wreck, and is adopted by, and brought up as, a fisherman. By a deed of true gallantry his whole destiny is changed, and, going to sea, he forms one of a party who, after being burned out of their ship in the South Pacific, and experiencing great hardship and suffering in their boats, are picked up by a pirate brig and taken to the "Pirate Island." After many thrilling adventures, they ultimately succeed in effecting their escape. The story depicts both the Christian and the manly virtues in such colours as will cause them to be admired—and therefore imitated. There is not a single objectionable expression or suggestion throughout the book: and it abounds in adventures of just the kind that are most eagerly devoured by juvenile readers.
BY ASCOTT R. HOPE.

STORIES OF OLD RENOWN.

Tales of Knights and Heroes. By ASCOTT R. HOPE, Author of "The Wigwam and the Wah-path," &c. With nearly 100 Illustrations by GORDON BROWNE. Crown 8vo, cloth elegant, bevelled boards, olive edges, 5s.

A Series of the best of the Stories of Noble Knighthood and Old Romance, told in refined and simple language, and adapted to young readers. A book possessing remarkable attractions, especially for boys who love to hear of great deeds and enterprises of high renown.

"Ascott R. Hope here breaks new ground, and he deserves as much credit for his choice of subject as for his mode of treatment." — Academy.

"Ogier the Dane, Robert of Sicily, and other old-world heroes find their deeds embedded in beautiful type, and garnished with animated sketches by Gordon Browne. It is a charming gift-book." — Land and Water.

"Mr. Hope's style is quite in accord with his theme, and the simplicity with which he recounts these 'Stories of Old Renown' is by no means the least part of their attractiveness. Mr. Gordon Browne has furnished some excellent drawings to illustrate the text." — Pictorial World.

"The stories are admirably chosen. It is a book to be coveted by all young readers." — Scotsman.

"One of the best, if not the best, boys' book of the season." — Truth.

"It is impossible to praise this charming volume too highly." — Life.
THE WIGWAM AND THE WAR-PATH:
Stories of the Red Indians. By Ascott R. Hope, author of
"Stories of Old Renown," &c. With 8 full-page Pictures by
Gordon Browne. Crown 8vo, cloth elegant, 5s.

The interest taken by boys in stories of the North American Indians is
probably as keen as ever. At all events the works of Fenimore Cooper and
other writers about the red men and the wild hunters of the forests and
prairies are still among the most popular of boys' books. "The Wigwam
and the War-path" consists of stories of Red Indians which are none the
less romantic for being true. They are taken from the actual records of
those who have been made prisoners by the red men or have lived among
them, joining in their expeditions and taking part in their semi-savage but
often picturesque and adventurous life.

"Mr. Hope's volume is notably good: it gives a very vivid picture of life among
the Indians."—Spectator.

"Mr. Ascott Hope is so deservedly popular as a teller of stories of adventure, that
in order to recommend a new volume from his pen we need little more than say it is
his. All the stories are told well, in simple spirited language and with a fulness of
detail that makes them instructive as well as interesting."—Journal of Education.

"So far, nothing can be better than Mr. Ascott Hope's choice of 'The Wigwam
and the War-path' as the name of a collection of all the most scalping stories, so to speak,
of the North American Indians we have ever heard."—Saturday Review.

BY MARY C. ROWSELL.

TRAITOR OR PATRIOT?
A Tale of the Rye-House Plot. By Mary C. Rowsell, author
Illustrated by 6 full-page Pictures by C. O. Murray and
C. J. Staniland in black and tint. Crown 8vo, cloth
elegant, 3s. 6d.

"Traitor or Patriot!" is a romantic story of the later days of the reign
of Charles II. The main theme of the story is the conspiracy for the assassi-
nation of the king and his brother the Duke of York, which was to be
effected in the lane skirting the premises of the Rye-House in Hertfordshire,
belonging to Richard Rumbold, a maltster. The brothers were to return
from Newmarket to London, and the design was to hew down the guards,
attack the coach, and murder its two royal occupants. The hero of the
story, Lawrence Lee, a young farmer of the neighbourhood, learns the
truth from Rumbold's pretty daughter Ruth, who has accidentally over-
heard the intentions of the traitors. Thereupon Lee starts on horseback for
Newmarket without a moment's loss of time, and obtaining an audience of
the king, warns him of his impending fate. After a series of adventures,
the young man succeeds in his loyal enterprise, and duly receives his re-
ward for his conspicuous share in the frustration of the "Rye-House Plot."
Blackie & Son's New Publications.

BY JOHN C. HUTCHESON.

THE WRECK OF THE NANCY BELL;
Or, Cast Away on Kerguelen Land. By John C. Hutcheson, author of "Picked up at Sea," &c. Illustrated by 6 full-page Pictures in black and tint. Crown 8vo, cloth extra, 3s. 6d.

This is a book for boys after a boy's own heart, for it has the savour and spirit of the sea in every page. The story narrates the eventful voyage of a vessel on her way from the port of London to New Zealand, and the haps and mishaps that befell her—the contrary winds in the Chops of the Channel, the calms when in the Doldrums off the African coast—culminating in the wreck of the ill-fated Nancy Bell on Kerguelen Land. There is no lack of incident. From the opening chapter, with the cowardly steward's alarm of "a ghost in the cabin" to the end of the story, which details the rescue of the shipwrecked passengers, one engrossing narrative holds the attention of the reader, until he reaches the final page that tells in an almost poetic vein "the last of the old ship." The characters, also, are full of interest; jolly old Captain Dinks and the quaint brave Irish mate M'Carthy, winsome Kate Meldrum and the hero Frank Harness, down to the mischievous imp Maurice Negus, and the eccentric Mr. Zachariah Lathrope, and Snowball the negro cook, who need only to be known to be appreciated. "The Wreck of the Nancy Bell" has all the elements of a popular and favourite story.

PICKED UP AT SEA:
Or the Gold Miners of Minturnee Creek, and other Stories. By John C. Hutcheson. With 6 full-page Pictures in tints. In crown 8vo, cloth extra, 3s. 6d.

The story of a young English lad, rescued in mid Atlantic from a watery grave, and taken out west by a party of gold diggers to the wild regions of the Black Hills in Dakota. Here, after warring with the elements during months of unceasing toil in their search for the riches of the earth, and having the result of their indefatigable labour well-nigh torn from their grasp when on the verge of victory by a desperate onslaught of Sioux braves, success at last rewar ds the efforts of the adventurous band and their protégé. The tale abounds in exciting scenes and stirring incidents—all tending to show that pluck and perseverance when allied to a good cause invariably win in the long run all the world over.

"This is the first appearance of the author as a writer of books for boys, and the success is so marked that it may well encourage him to further efforts. The description of mining life in the Far-west is true and accurate."—Standard.

"A story of thrilling adventure which seems to combine every essential quality of a present-book for boys."—Morning Advertiser.

"A capital book; full of startling incident, clever dialogue, admirable descriptions of sky and water in all their aspects, and plenty of fun."—Sheffield Independent.
DR. JOLLIFFE'S BOYS:
A Tale of Weston School. By Lewis Hough, author of "Phil Crawford," &c. With 6 full-page Pictures in black and tint. In crown 8vo, cloth extra, 3s. 6d.

A story of school life which will be read with genuine interest, especially as it exposes some of the dangers which even in these days of high instruction may befall lads who are ill instructed at home or have been thrown among vicious or unscrupulous companions. The descriptions of some of the characters of the boys at Dr. Jolliffe's are vivid and truthful,—that of the worst boy being not too revolting, although it is necessarily painful as conveying a very distinct impression which should be useful in warning lads against giving way to overweening personal conceit and envy of the achievements of others. Perhaps the best touch in the book is the subtle description of the manner in which the best boy may exhibit weakness of purpose and some meannesses under the influence of flattery and of temporary luxury. The narrative throughout is bright, easy, and lighted by touches of humour.

"Young people who appreciate 'Tom Brown's School-days' will find this story a worthy companion to that fascinating book. There is the same manliness of tone, truthfulness of outline, avoidance of exaggeration and caricature, and healthy morality in this tale of school life as characterized the masterpiece of Mr. Hughes."—Newcastle Journal.

"This is a racy vigorous story of school life; but it is more than this. The characters are drawn with great nicety and discrimination, while the whole spirit of the narrative is such as to encourage and instruct boys in the trials which they cannot avoid."—Edinburgh Courant.

"The tone of the book cannot fail to be beneficial. The narrative 'moves on' from first to last with great vigour. It should be read not only by boys but by the seniors who are apt to forget the troubles which their boys have to meet."—Glasgow News.

"Mr. Lewis Hough may be frankly complimented on having written a book for boys in which boys will recognize their like. He knows what schoolboys are, and he paints the characters with a firm hand."—Morning Advertiser.

BROTHER AND SISTER:
Or the Trials of the Moore Family. By Elizabeth J. Lysaght, author of "Nearer and Dearer," &c. With 6 full-page Illustrations in black and tint. Crown 8vo, cloth gilt, 3s. 6d.

An interesting story for young people, showing by the narrative of the vicissitudes and struggles of a family which has "come down in the world," and of the brave endeavours of its two younger members, how the pressure of adversity is mitigated by domestic affection, mutual confidence, and hopeful honest effort.

"A pretty story, and well told. The plot is cleverly constructed, and the moral is excellent."—Athenaeum.

"A charming story, admirably adapted for young people, which relates the brave endeavours of the two youngest members of a family which has become reduced in circumstances to mitigate the pressure of adversity."—Society.
CHEEP AND CHATTER:

Or, LESSONS FROM FIELD AND TREE. BY ALICE BANKS. With 54 Character Illustrations by GORDON BROWNE, of which four are full-page size. Small 4to, cloth, handsome design on cover, 3s. 6d.; gilt edges, 4s.

About a dozen highly dramatic sketches or little stories, the actors in which are birds, beasts, and insects. They are instructive, suited to the capacities of young people, and very amusing. The curious and laughable thing is the clever way in which mice, sparrows, and butterflies are made to act and talk. We take an absorbing interest in the adventures of "Peepy" and "Cheepy," and "Birdie" and "Pecky," in the opinions they express and the characters they develop, just as if they were papas and mammas, and boys and girls; and whether we are in Fairy-land, or Mouse-land, or Bird-land, or in real Boy-and-girl-land, we cease to be sure, or, for the matter of that, to care. The character drawings, with which the book is profusely illustrated, are delightfully funny.

"The real charm of the volume lies in the illustrations. We have more than once approved Mr. Gordon Browne's pencil. Here we can give it unstinted admiration. Now of these fifty-four illustrations every one is a success. With birds and mice and insects the artist is equally at home; but his birds above all are inimitable."—Academy.

"This is a very pleasing book for the young. The morals of the stories are very sound, and by no means obtrusive. Of the illustrations it is sufficient praise to say that they are worthy of the good-natured drollery, the invention, and the sense of the humorous side of the ways of the lower animals which the author displays."—Daily News.

"The author has done her work extremely well, and has conveyed very many admirable lessons to young people in an excellent way. The illustrations are capital—full of fun and genuine humour."—Scotsman.
BOOKS BY MRS. EMMA RAYMOND PITMAN.

"Mrs. Pitman's works are all to be prized for their ennobling character—pure, elevating, interesting, and intellectual."—Christian Union.

GARNERED SHEAVES.

A Tale for Boys. By Mrs. E. R. Pitman. With 4 full-page Illustrations in black and tint. Crown 8vo, cloth extra, 3s. 6d.

This Tale gives in narrative form the history and adventures of a class of Sunday-school boys. Each boy's career is full of interest. In some chapters we are taken to America, during the civil war, and mingle in scenes relating to the battle-field; while, in other chapters, we listen to the quiet teachings of one of God's faithful servants who strove to "garnier sheaves for Christ." The wide difference between the honourable upright youth, and one who is clever and cunning, but dishonest, is here depicted by incidents from the life; and it is proved that "godliness hath promise of the life that now is," as well as of that which is to come. From this tale Sunday-school teachers may learn that their "labour shall not be in vain in the Lord."

"Has an earnest purpose running through it, and a high and healthy tone. The writer shows a thorough knowledge of the character of boys."—Glasgow Herald.

"This book is of unusual merit. It breathes out good thoughts in earnest and true tones that speak to the heart, with that force which a story does when well told. It would grace any child's library."—Schoolmistress.

"We can honestly recommend 'Garnier Sheaves' as one the best boys' stories we ever read."—Christian Globe.

"The incidents are well-depicted and the characters are true to life. . . . We shall be glad of more such sheaves as these."—Freemans.

"It should be read by every youth who is leaving school and home for business."—Literary World.

MY GOVERNESS' LIFE:

Or Earning my Living. By Mrs. E. R. Pitman. With 4 full-page Illustrations in black and tint. Crown 8vo, cloth neat, 3s. 6d.

This Story, told in the first person, is largely concerned with a young woman cast upon the world by her father's death, and compelled to earn her living by the exercise of whatever talent she possesses. Some of the minor characters in the narrative are skilfully depicted, notably the old Cornish couple who figure in the little Methodist chapel; and the young man of science, who is shown to have missed his way in substituting science for faith in a personal God, but by painful chastening is recovered and led to the cross of Christ as a humble believer. Finally, he marries the heroine of the story, and turns out a good and useful man. The aged clergyman is a fine specimen of culture and Christian charity. The scenes of boarding-school life here depicted are full of vivacity and reality.

"Told in the author's usual winsome style, which holds the reader spell-bound from first to last."—Christian Union.

"A beautiful and instructive story. . . . Mrs. Pitman never fails to interest her readers."—The Rock.

"We strongly urge all young ladies to read the book."—Christian Globe.
BOOKS BY MRS. EMMA RAYMOND PITMAN.

LIFE'S DAILY MINISTRY.

A Story of Everyday Service for Others. By Mrs. Emma Raymond Pitman. With 4 full-page Illustrations in black and tint. Crown 8vo, cloth extra, 3s. 6d.

A Story of self-sacrifice and of some touching experiences of life. Some of the characters are very attractive, others very repulsive; but all tend to show that true honour and happiness are to be found in serving others, according to our capacity, and so imitating Him "who went about doing good." Some experiences of a sincere and gifted, but doubting youth, helpless through spinal disease and destined to early death, and his attainment of faith, light, and peace, are peculiarly affecting. Olive Forrester, the chief heroine of the story, presents an example of saintly self-denial for the sake of her dead sister's children.

"The whole story is full of tender pathos, touching incident, and enchanting interest."—Christian Union.

"Full of sound teaching and bright examples of character."—Sunday-school Chronicle.

"This story is powerfully written, and maintains the reader's interest to the end."—Schoolmistress.

"Full of stirring interest, genuine pictures of real life, and pervaded by a broad and active sympathy for the true, beautiful, and good."—Christian Commonwealth.

FLORENCE GODFREY'S FAITH.

A Story of Australian Life. By Mrs. Emma Raymond Pitman. With 4 full-page Illustrations in black and tint. Crown 8vo, cloth extra, 3s. 6d.

This Tale traces the career and adventures of a family who were forced to leave Manchester during the time of the cotton famine, and seek a home in Australian wilds. Florence, the central character of the story, is a very lovely one; and in spite of girlish timidity, girlish fear, and natural shrinking, succeeds in raising a Christian church in the wilderness. The story teaches the lesson of perseverance in well-doing, and shows how faithful effort is rewarded.

"This is a clever, and what is better still, a good book, written with a freshness and power which win the reader's sympathies, and carry the story along unflaggingly to the close."—Christian Globe.

"A story which will be eagerly read by boys, and which can hardly fail to promote the growth of a manly type of Christian character."—Literary World.

"This is a very interesting book, and a suitable present for young men or women. The influence of the tale is pure and bracing."—Freeman.

"A very interesting and instructive story."—Record.
BOOKS BY MRS. R. H. READ.

DORA:

Or a Girl without a Home. By Mrs. R. H. Read. With 6 full-page Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth elegant, 3s. 6d.

The story of a friendless orphan girl, who is placed as pupil-teacher at the school in which she was educated, but is suddenly removed by hard and selfish relatives, who employ her as a menial as well as a governess. Through a series of exciting adventures she makes discoveries respecting a large property which is restored to its rightful owners, and at the same time she secures her escape from her persecutors. The character of Dora is a very sweet one, and the interest of the story is so sustained that it can scarcely fail to please the reader.

"One of the most pleasing stories for young people that we have met with of late years. There is in it a freshness, simplicity, and naturalness very engaging."—Harper's Magazine.

"It is no slight thing, in an age of rubbish, to get a story so pure and healthy."—The Academy.

"The heroine is a beautiful character, well conceived and well portrayed. The tale is a fascinating one."—Schoolmistress.

"Mrs. Read has succeeded in writing an exciting tale. The character of Dora is one which every girl would do well to imitate."—The Schoolmaster.

OUR DOLLY:

Her Words and Ways. By Mrs. R. H. Read. With many Woodcuts, and a Frontispiece in colours. Cr. 8vo, cloth extra, 2s.

A story for children, showing the growth and development of character in a little girl, and describing the surroundings of the family and a series of entertaining small adventures suitable for very juvenile readers.

"Prettily told and prettily illustrated."—Guardian.

"Sure to be a great favourite with young children."—School Guardian.

"The little London child will read with a loving heart the story of Our Dolly."—School Board Chronicle.

FAIRY FANCY:

What she Heard and what she Saw. By Mrs. R. H. Read.

With many Woodcut Illustrations in the text, and a Frontispiece printed in colours. Crown 8vo, cloth elegant, 2s.

The tale is designed to show the influence of character even among little children, and the narrative is such as to awaken and sustain the interest of the younger readers.

"The author has very great insight into child nature, and a sound healthy tone pervades the book."—Glasgow Herald.

"All is pleasant, nice reading, with a little knowledge of natural history and other matters gently introduced and divested of dryness."—Practical Teacher.
BOOKS BY GREGSON GOW.

NEW LIGHT THROUGH OLD WINDOWS.

A series of stories designed to bring before the young mind, in a new and entertaining form, some of the shreds of wit and wisdom which have come down to us from ancient times in the guise of fables. Although amusement has been a chief end aimed at, most of the tales will be found to suggest some important truth, or teach some sound lesson in practical morality.

"Agreeable reading for the young."—Athenæum.
"Racy, pointed, and fitted to delight young folks."—Freeman.
"The most delightfully-written little stories one can easily find in the literature of the season. Well constructed and brightly told, they are sure to be great favourites."—Glasgow Herald.

DOWN AND UP AGAIN:

A story of city life, in which, though the chief aim is to amuse through the recital of interesting events and the exhibition of original and humorous character, the reader may see something of the spirit in which misfortune should be met, find an illustration of the maxim that "Heaven helps those who help themselves," receive an impulse towards kindliness of deed and charity of thought, and fall on sundry other things worth knowing and noting.

TROUBLES AND TRIUMPHS OF LITTLE TIM.
A City Story. By Gregson Gow. With Illustration in colours. Crown 8vo, cloth extra, 1s. 6d.

"Strong in character and full of incident, and the narrative all through is interesting and touching."—Edinburgh Daily Review.
"An unmistakable undercurrent of sympathy with the struggles of the poor, and an ability to describe their feelings under various circumstances, eminently characteristic of Dickens, are marked features in Mr. Gow's story."—North British Mail.

BRAVE AND TRUE:
Or, the Story of Emmy Dutton. By Gregson Gow. Illustrated. Coloured boards, 4d.

JOHNIE TUPPER'S TEMPTATION:
Or, the Story of a Top. By Gregson Gow. Illustrated. Coloured boards, 4d.
BY KATE WOOD.

WINNIE'S SECRET:

Miss Kate Wood has a talent for writing a simple and pathetic story with a great deal of quaint easy description and enough of fun to enliven some chapters that might otherwise seem to be very sad because they relate to the suffering and poverty of orphan or destitute children. "Winnie's Secret" has a plot as interesting as that of many more ambitious volumes, and while the vicissitudes of the two little sisters are narrated with touching sympathy and a feeling of genuine piety, the characters of the numerous juvenile and grown-up friends who come to their aid in the course of the story are admirably depicted.

A WAIF OF THE SEA:
Or, the Lost Found. By KATE WOOD. With 4 full-page Illustrations in black and tint. Crown 8vo, cloth extra, 2s. 6d.

"A Waif of the Sea" deals very pathetically with the sorrows and trials of children, and of mothers who are separated from their children. The narrative is full of human interest, and the lives and struggles of the people of a poor London neighbourhood are well portrayed. The child-character of "Little Birdie" and her short but affecting story will attract and delight many readers.

"Little Birdie is a beautiful child-character with whom no one can come in contact without feeling purer and fresher for life's work." — Glasgow News.

"This is a very touching and pretty tale of town and country, full of pathos and interest embodied in a narrative which never flags, and told in a style which deserves the highest praise for its lucid and natural ease." — Edinburgh Courant.

BY ESMÉ STUART.

MISS FENWICK'S FAILURES:

"Miss Fenwick's Failures" will doubtless be a very complete success among young people. The story abounds in capitaly told domestic adventures, and though it has an excellent and well-sustained moral purpose, is so humorous and lively that very few readers, having taken it up, will like to part with it till they have followed the fortunes of the Fenwick family to the end of the volume. Like other books by the same author this tale is a striking example of the ability which can tell a story with spirit and harmless fun and sustained interest, and at the same time imbue it with an excellent lesson which the youthful reader may learn without having it forced on the attention.
Blackie & Son's New Publications.

BY F. BAYFORD HARRISON.

BROTHERS IN ARMS:


"Brothers in Arms" is a story which while it provides exciting incidents and vivid descriptions, will be of real value to the young reader because of its containing accurate historical information on the subject of the Crusades and the doings of Richard the Lion-heart and his army in the Holy Land. There are few tales which comprise within so brief a compass, such picturesque representations of life in that olden time, and such stirring and well-told adventures of two lads who took a prominent but not by any means an impossible part in the wars in Cyprus and Palestine.

BOOKS BY ROSA MULHOLLAND.

HETTY GRAY;

Or Nobody's Bairn. By Rosa Mulholland, author of "Four Little Mischiefs," &c. With 4 full-page Illustrations in black and tint. Crown 8vo, cloth extra, 2s. 6d.

"Hetty Gray" is the story of a girl who, having been found as an infant by a villager, is brought up by his wife, and is a kind of general pet, till an accident causes a rich widow to adopt her, and spoil her by bringing her up in alternate indulgence and neglect. On the death of her adoptive mother Hetty, who is left unprovided for, is taken by the widow's relatives to be educated in the family as a dependant, but with a view to her gaining her livelihood as a governess, an event which is prevented by a rather remarkable discovery. The tale is carried on throughout with the simplicity but genuine effect which distinguishes Miss Mulholland's writing.

"A pleasantly told story for girls, with a happy ending."—Arenaum.

"A charming story for young folks. Hetty is a delightful creature—piquant, tender, and true—and her varying fortunes are perfectly realistic."—World.

"A good story. The characters are well drawn, and the tale is altogether interesting."—Guardian.

FOUR LITTLE MISCHIEFS.


This story of child-life is one of the most amusing of the author's excellent little books. Its fun is innocent, its incident both captivating and instructive.

"Will be read with absorbing interest by the youngasters."—Land and Water.

"A charming bright story about real children."—Watchman.
STORIES OF THE SEA IN FORMER DAYS:
Narratives of Wreck and Rescue. With 4 full-page Illustrations by FRANK FELLER in black and tint. Crown 8vo, cloth extra, 2s. 6d.

While no attempt is made in "Stories of the Sea" to paint the sailor's life in glowing colours, or invest it with glamour of romance, the narratives selected, though serving, perhaps, more as beacons to warn than as lures to attract, are full of such thrilling incidents of peril, suffering, and shipwreck, as are always deeply interesting to the young reader.

ADVENTURES IN FIELD, FLOOD, & FOREST:
Stories of Danger and Daring. With 4 full-page Illustrations by FRANK FELLER in black and tint. Crown 8vo, cloth extra, 2s. 6d.

Incidents of daring, hardship, and danger have ever had, and doubtless always will have a powerful fascination for the youthful mind, and these narratives of real personal experience in "Field, Flood, and Forest," while in no sense fictitious, and conveying much sound information on the topography and customs of foreign lands, will be found quite as exciting and more truly interesting than the most cunningly devised fables.

JACK O' LANTHORN.
A Tale of Adventure. By HENRY FRITH. With 4 full-page Illustrations in black and tint. Crown 8vo, cloth elegant, 2s. 6d.

This is a story of the days when George the Third was king, and when "Jack the Painter" was trying to set fire to the shipping in Government dockyards. The hero gets into certain scrapes, and at the sea-coast makes the acquaintance of Jack o' Lanthorn, the keeper of a light-ship. The lad and a companion accidentally drifting out to sea in an open boat, discover in a singular manner the approach of the Spanish fleet, and Jack accompanies the hero of the tale to report what they have seen. Seized by a pressing gang they are taken off to sea, and eventually take part in the defence of Gibraltar. There have been few books published recently which so well represent the spirit of the stories of Marryat and of the author of "Tom Cringle's Log."

"Full of movement, picturesque situations, and illustrations of historical events. 'Jack o' Lanthorn' will hold its own with the best works of Mr. Henty and Mr. Manville Fenn."—Morning Advertiser.

"The author has related the story in a very natural and attractive manner, and he has caught the spirit of the times which he tries to delineate."—Edinburgh Courant.

"The narrative is crowded full of stirring incident, and is sure to be a prime favourite with our boys, who will be assisted by it in mastering a sufficiently exciting chapter in the history of England."—Christian Leader.
BY DARLEY DALE.

THE FAMILY FAILING.
By DARLEY DALE, author of "Little Bricks," &c. With 4 full-page Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth elegant, 2s. 6d.

This is a lively and amusing account of a family, the members of which while they lived in affluence were remarkable for their discontent, but who, after the loss of fortune has compelled them to seek a more humble home in Jersey, become less selfish, and develop very excellent traits of character under the pressure of comparative adversity. Their escapades and narrow escapes from serious dangers form an exciting part of the narrative, which contains many pleasant episodes of life in the Channel Islands.

"This is a cheery tale. The lesson is Content, and very nicely the story is told."—Tablet.

"This is at once an amusing and an interesting story, and a capital lesson on the value of contentedness."—Aberdeen Journal.

BY CHARLES PEARCE.

THE BALL OF FORTUNE;
Or Ned Somerset's Inheritance. By CHARLES PEARCE. With 4 full-page Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth extra, 2s. 6d.

A story of plot and character dealing with some out of the many scenes of London life, and founded on the strange bequest left by a sea captain, and the endeavours of some unscrupulous persons to obtain possession of it before the discovery of the true heir in the person of a neglected street Arab. The story is lively and attractive, and the incidents move so quickly that the attention of the reader is sustained throughout.

"A capital story for boys. It is very simply and brightly written. There is plenty of incident, and the interest is sustained throughout."—Journal of Education.

"It is a bright genial story, which boys will thoroughly enjoy. . . . We have seen few better stories for boys this season."—Birmingham Daily Post.

"The most exciting of them all."—The Times.

BY ALICE CORKRAN.

ADVENTURES OF MRS. WISHING-TO-BE.

The strange adventures of a very young lady, showing how she met with the wonderful people of nursery legend and the manner of her introduction to them. A tale for the Little Ones.

"Simply a charming book for little girls."—Saturday Review.

"Written just in the style and spirit to win the hearts of children."—Daily News.

"Well worth buying for the frontispiece alone."—Times.
MAGNA CHARTA STORIES:
Or Struggles for Freedom in the Olden Time. Edited by ARTHUR GILMAN, A.M. With 12 full-page Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth extra, 2s.

These stories of heroic deed in the cause of national liberty, from Marathon and Thermopylae to the times of King Alfred and the Magna Charta, are designed to stimulate a love of history, and add to the inspiration of freedom, which should be the heritage of every English-speaking boy and girl.

LONDON, PAST AND PRESENT.

Being Notices Historical and Descriptive of Ancient and Modern London. With Illustrations. Fcap 8vo, cloth extra, 2s. 6d.

"A compilation from which a variety of interesting information may be gathered with regard to the past history and present condition of the metropolis."—Altamarea.

THE NEWSPAPER READER.

Selections from leading Journals of the Nineteenth Century on Events of the Day. By H. F. BUSSEY and T. W. REID. With engraved Frontispiece. Fcap 8vo, cloth extra, 2s. 6d.

"The idea of the book is admirable, and its execution is excellent. It may be read not merely by young people, but by old ones, and they will find profit to themselves in its perusal."—Sedgman.

THE BRITISH BIOGRAPHICAL READER:

Brief Biographies of prominent British Heroes, Statesmen, Dramatists, Poets, Scientific Men, &c. Illustrated by numerous Portraits. Foolscap 8vo, cloth extra, 2s. 6d.

"A number of excellent portraits add to the attractiveness of the work, which may be pronounced one of the most interesting of the Series."—Aberdeen Journal.

MYTHS AND LEGENDS
OF ANCIENT GREECE AND ROME.

A Hand-book of Greek and Roman Mythology, by E. M. BERENS. Illustrated from Antique Sculptures in a highly interesting and instructive manner. Cloth elegant, 3s. 6d.

"Written in a spirit of reverent sympathy, and of well-sustained interest, while its absolute purity should secure it a place in every family."—Schoolmater.
THE WINGS OF COURAGE,
AND THE CLOUD-SPINNER. Translated from the French of GEORGE SAND, by MRS. CORKRAN. With 2 coloured Illustrations. CROWN 8VO, cloth extra, 2s.

These stories are among the most attractive of the many tales which the great French novelist wrote for her grandchildren. They are full of fancy, of vivid description, and of a keen appreciation of the best way to arouse the interest of juvenile readers. The romantic manner in which they are told lends them to the kind of enchantment which thoughtful children deeply appreciate.

"Mrs. Corkran has earned our gratitude by translating into readable English these two charming little stories."—Athenæum.

"The finest of all these books beyond question is the 'Wings of Courage,' which ranks with the writings of Ezechlmann Chatrían for finish, beauty, and naturalness. The whole story is delightful."—Dundee Advertiser.

NAUGHTY MISS BUNNY:
Her Tricks and Troubles. A Story for Little Children. By CLARA MULHOLLAND. With 3 Illustrations in colours. CROWN 8VO, cloth extra, 2s.

This is a book which will amuse quite little folks, as a story of the wayward tricks of a spoiled child, and the scrapes into which they lead her. The story consists of small incidents such as please small listeners, who will be interested not only in Miss Bunny's naughtiness, but in her reformation.

"This naughty child is positively delightful. Parents should not omit 'Naughty Miss Bunny' from their list of juvenile presents."—Land and Water.

MADGE'S MISTAKE.
A Recollection of Girlhood. By ANNIE E. ARMSTRONG. With 2 coloured Illustrations. CROWN 8VO, cloth extra, 1s. 6d.

This is a lively, interesting little story, the characters are well marked, and the plot, although simple, is so well worked out as to lead the reader, young or old, on to the last word.

"Will please the eye and the fancy of girls, for its illustrations are as excellent as its letterpress."—Academy.

"We cannot speak too highly of this delightful little tale. It is charmingly written, and abounds in interesting and laughable incidents."—Bristol Times.

BOX OF STORIES.
Packed for Young Folk by HORACE HAPPYMAN. A Series of interesting Tales for the Young. With 2 Illustrations printed in colours. CROWN 8VO, 192 pp., cloth extra, 1s. 6d.
BOOKS BY ANNIE S. SWAN.

WARNER'S CHASE:
Or the Gentle Heart. By Annie S. Swan, author of "Into the Haven," &c. With 3 Illustrations printed in colours. Crown 8vo, cloth extra, 2s.

"Warner's Chase" is a domestic story, in which we see the failure of an essentially self-seeking and self-assertive nature to secure happiness to itself or bestow it upon others, and the triumph of gentleness, love, and unselfish service, in the person of a feeble girl, over the coldness and indifference of a heart contracted and hardened by a life-long pursuit of gain.

INTO THE HAVEN.
By Annie S. Swan, author of "A Year at Coverley," "Climbing the Hill," &c. With 2 Illustrations printed in colours. Crown 8vo, 192 pp., cloth extra, 1s. 6d.

"No story more attractive ... by reason of its breezy freshness and unforced pathos, as well as for the wholesome practical lessons it conveys."—Christian Leader.

CLIMBING THE HILL.
By Annie S. Swan. Illustrated. Coloured boards, 4d.

A YEAR AT COVERLEY.
By Annie S. Swan. Illustrated. Coloured boards, 4d.

THE PATRIOT MARTYR:
And other Narratives of Female Heroism in Peace and War. Illustrated by 2 Pictures printed in colours. Crown 8vo, 192 pp., cloth extra, 1s. 6d.

"It should be read with interest by every girl who loves to learn what her sex can accomplish in times of difficulty and danger."—Bristol Times.

THE HAPPY LAD:
A Story of Peasant Life in Norway. From the Norwegian of Björnstjerne Björnson. With Frontispiece in colours. Crown 8vo, 192 pp., cloth extra, 1s. 6d.

"This pretty story has a freshness and natural eloquence about it such as are seldom met with in our home made tales. It seems to carry us back to some of the love stories of the Bible."—Aberdeen Free Press.
THE SHILLING SERIES OF BOOKS FOR YOUNG PEOPLE.

Thirteen books, square 16mo, neatly bound in cloth extra. Each book consisting of 128 pages and containing a coloured Illustration.

"The whole of the set will be found admirably adapted for the use of the young. The books, well-printed and elegantly bound in cloth, are a marvel of cheapness."—Journal of Education.

"They are unusually good, and are calculated to produce sound, wholesome, moral effects."—Glasgow Herald.

THE NEW BOY AT MERRITON. By JULIA GODDARD.

"A story of English school life. It is an attempt to teach a somewhat higher code of honour than that which prevails among the general run of schoolboys, and the lesson makes a very good story."—School Board Chronicle.

THE BLIND BOY OF DRESDEN.

"This is a family story of great pathos. It does not obtrusively dictate its lesson, but it quietly introduces, and leaves it within the heart."—Aberdeen Journal.

JON OF ICELAND: A True Story.

"Jon of Iceland' is a sturdy, well-educated young Icelander, who becomes a successful teacher. It gives children a clear idea of the chief physical features of the island, and of the simple and manly character of its inhalets."—School Guardian.

STORIES FROM SHAKESPEARE.

"The stories are told in such a way that young people having read them will desire to study the works of Shakespeare in their original form."—The Schoolmistress.

EVERY MAN IN HIS PLACE. The Story of a City Boy and a Forest Boy.

"This is the history of the son of a wealthy Hamburg merchant, who wished to follow in the steps of Robinson Crusoe. He was put to the test, and became convinced in the end that it is better to live the life of a wealthy merchant in a great city than to endure hardship by choice."—School Board Chronicle.

FIRESIDE FAIRIES AND FLOWER FANCIES: Stories for Girls.

"Nine stories are included, all for girls, encouraging them to try and do their duty. Young servants would find this book very interesting."—The Schoolmistress.
THE SHILLING SERIES—Continued.

TO THE SEA IN SHIPS: STORIES OF SUFFERING AND SAVING AT SEA.

"To the Sea in Ships records several noted disasters at sea, such as the foundering of the Lusitania and the wreck of the Atlantic. It also contains narratives of successful rescues. This is a capital book for boys." —School Guardian.

JACK'S VICTORY: AND OTHER STORIES ABOUT DOGS.

"Every boy, and some girls, take great delight in reading about dogs. Well, Jack was a dog; a famous and wonderful one, too. He became leader of a team in Greenland, and some rare exploits he took part in. Besides 'Jack's Victory' there are ten other stories about dogs in this volume." —The Schoolmistress.

THE STORY OF A KING, TOLD BY ONE OF HIS SOLDIERS.

"This book recounts the boyhood and reign of Charles XII. of Sweden. The wars in which he was engaged and the extraordinary victories he won are well described, and equally so are the misfortunes which latterly came on him and his kingdom through his uncontrollable wilfulness." —Aberdeen Journal.

LITTLE DANIEL: A Story of a Flood on the Rhine.

"A simple and touching story of a flood on the Rhine, told as well as George Elliot so graphically wrote of The Mill on the Floss." —Governess.

PRINCE ALEXIS: A Tale of Old Russia.

This is a legend wrought into a story, rendering a fiction of Life in Russia, something more than a hundred years ago; a state of things which, as the author says, "is now impossible, and will soon become incredible."

SASHA THE SERF: And other Stories of Russian Life.

The stories in the volume comprise: —The Life of Sasha, a poor boy who saved the life of his lord, and finally rose to wealth and gained his freedom,—Incidents of remarkable personal bravery in the Russian army, &c. &c.

TRUE STORIES OF FOREIGN HISTORY. A Series of Interesting Tales.

The book contains stories—How Quentin Matsys the Antwerp smith became a great painter,—The rise and fall of Jean Ango the fisherman of Dieppe,—The heroism of Cassianica the little French midshipman, &c. &c.
THE SIXPENNY SERIES
FOR CHILDREN.

Twelve books, 16mo, neatly bound in cloth extra. Each book consisting of 64 pages and containing a Coloured Illustration.

THE MAID OF DOMREMY: and other Tales.
LITTLE ERIC: a Story of Honesty.
UNCLE BEN THE WHALER: and other Stories.
THE PALACE OF LUXURY: and other Stories.
THE CHARCOAL-BURNER: or, Kindness Repaid.

WILLY BLACK: a Story of Doing Right.
THE HORSE AND HIS WAYS: Stories of Man and his best Friend.
THE SHOEMAKER'S PRESENT: a Legendary Story.
LIGHTS TO WALK BY: Stories for the Young.
THE LITTLE MERCHANT: and other Stories.
NICHOLINA: a Story about an Iceberg.

"The whole of the set will be found admirably adapted for the use of the young."—Schoolmaster.

"A very praiseworthy series of Prize Books. Most of the stories are designed to enforce some important moral lesson, such as honesty, industry, kindness, helpfulness, &c."—School Guardian.

A NEW SERIES OF
FOURPENNY REWARD BOOKS.

Each 6½ Pages, 18mo, Illustrated, in Picture Boards.

BRAVE AND TRUE. By GREGSON GOW.
POOR TOM OLLIVER. By JULIA GODDARD.
THE CHILDREN AND THE WATER-LILY. By JULIA GODDARD.
JOHNNIE TUPPER'S TEMPTATION. By GREGSON GOW.

FRITZ'S EXPERIMENT. By LETITIA M'CLINTOCK.
CLIMBING THE HILL. By ANNE S. SWAN.
A YEAR AT COVERLEY. By ANNE S. SWAN.
LUCY'S CHRISTMAS-BOX; or, How Georgie found his Cousin.

* * * These little books have been specially written with the aim of inculcating some sound moral, such as obedience to parents, love for brothers and sisters, kindness to animals, perseverance and diligence leading to success, &c. &c.

"Any one who wishes to send a dainty packet of story-books to a household blessed with little children will find in these exactly what he wants. They are issued with the prettiest of all the coloured covers we have yet seen."—Christian Leader.

"We have seldom seen any series of children's stories of so high-class a character placed so prettily within the reach of even the humblest purchaser."—Newcastle Journal.

"Bright, pretty, and entertaining little books. The stories are really admirable brief novellets for little people. All are of a natural, fresh, and wholesome tone, and all lively and interesting."—School Board Chronicle.
VERE FOSTER’S
WATER-COLOR DRAWING-BOOKS.

SIMPLE LESSONS IN FLOWER PAINTING.
Eight Facsimiles of Original Water-Color Drawings, and numer-ous Outline Drawings of Flowers, after various artists. With full instructions for drawing and painting. 4to, cloth elegant, 3s.

"Everything necessary for acquiring the art of flower painting is here: the facsimiles of water-color drawings are very beautiful." — Graphic.

"Such excellent books, so carefully written and studied, cannot fail to have great advantage in the creation and fostering of a taste for art." — Scoteman.

SIMPLE LESSONS IN LANDSCAPE PAINTING.
Eight Facsimiles of Original Water-Color Drawings, and Thirty Vignettes, after various artists. With full instructions by an experienced Master. 4to, cloth elegant, 3s.

SIMPLE LESSONS IN MARINE PAINTING.
Twelve Facsimiles of Original Water-Color Sketches, and numerous Illustrations in Pencil. By EDWARD DUNCAN. With practical lessons by an experienced Master. 4to, cloth elegant, 3s.

EASY STUDIES IN WATER-COLOR PAINTING.
By R. P. LEITCH and J. CALLOW. A series of Nine Plates executed in Neutral Tints. With full instructions for drawing each subject, and for Sketching from Nature. 4to, cloth elegant, 6s.

SKETCHES IN WATER-COLORS.
By T. M. RICHARDSON, R. P. LEITCH, J. A. HOUSTON, T. L. ROW-botham, E. DUNCAN, and J. NEEDHAM. Nine Facsimiles in colors. With full instructions for drawing each subject. 4to, cloth elegant, 6s.

"The pictures are judicious in selection and artistic in execution, while the instructions are so full and clear as to almost supersede the need of a teacher." — Liverpool Courier.

"The books deserve the highest commendation; they are extremely serviceable for their purpose, and are got up with remarkable care." — St. James’s Gazette.

STUDIES OF TREES,
In Pencil and in Water Colors, by J. NEEDHAM. A Series of Eighteen Examples in Colors, and Thirty-three Drawings in Pencil. With full instructions for Drawing and Painting. FIRST SERIES, 4to, cloth elegant, 5s. SECOND SERIES, 4to, cloth elegant, 5s.
BOOKS FOR YOUNG READERS

Classified according to Price.

ELEGANTLY BOUND IN EXTRA CLOTH.

Book at 7s. 6d.
The Universe; or The Infinitely Great and Infinitely Little. By F. A. Pouchet, M.D.

Books at 6s.
Robinson Crusoe. Illustrated by Gordon Browne.
In Freedom's Cause. By G. A. Henty.
With Clive in India. By G. A. Henty.
Bunyip Land. By G. Manville Fenn.
The Golden Magnet. By G. Manville Fenn.
True to the Old Flag. By G. A. Henty.
In the King's Name. By G. Manville Fenn.
Easy Studies in Water-Color, with Colored Plates.
Sketches in Water-Color, with Plates.

Books at 5s.
The Pirate Island. By Harry Collingwood.
The Wigwam and the War-Path. By Ascott R. Hope.
Menhardoc. By G. Manville Fenn.
Nat the Naturalist. By G. Manville Fenn.

Books at 3s. 6d.
The Wreck of the Nancy Bell. By J. C. Hutcherson.
Traitor or Patriot? By M. R. Bowell.
Cheep and Chatter. By Alice Banks.
Picked up at Sea. By J. C. Hutcherson.
Dr. Jolliffe's Boys. By Lewis Hough.
Brother and Sister. By Mrs. Lyshaght.
Dora. By Mrs. R. H. Read.
Garnered Sheaves. By Mrs. Pitman.
Life's Daily Ministry. By Mrs. Pitman.
My Governess Life. By Mrs. Pitman.
Myths and Legends of Ancient Greece.

Books at 3s.
Simple Lessons in Flower Painting.
Simple Lessons in Marine Painting.
Simple Lessons in Landscape Painting.

Books at 2s. 6d.
Brothers in Arms. By F. B. Harrison.
Winnie's Secret. By Kate Wood.
Miss Fenwick's Failures. By Emmi Stuart.
Jack o' Lantern. By Henry Frith.
A Walf of the Sea. By Kate Wood.
Hetty Gray. By Rosa Mulholland.
The Ball of Fortune. By Chas. Prince.
The Family Failing. By Darley Dale.
Stories of the Sea in Former Days.
Adventures in Field, Flood, and Forest.
The Newspaper Reader.
The British Biographical Reader.
London Past and Present.
Books at 2s.

Warner's Chase. By Annie S. Swan.
Four Little Mischief. By Rosa Mulholland.
Our Dolly. By Mrs. R. H. Read.
Fairy Fancy. By Mrs. R. H. Read.

Magna Charta Stories.
Mrs. Wishing-to-be. By Alice Corkran.
New Light through Old Windows. By GREGSON GOW.
Naughty Miss Bunny. By Clara Mulholland.

Books at 1s. 6d.

Down and Up Again. By GREGSON GOW.
Troubles and Triumphs of Little Tim. By GREGSON GOW.
The Happy Lad. By Bjornson.

Into the Haven. By Annie S. Swan.
Box of Stories. Packed by Horace Happyman.
The Patriot Martyr: and other Narratives of Female Heroism.

Books at 1s.

The New Boy at Merriton.
The Blind Boy of Dresden and his Sister.
Jon of Iceland: A True Story.
Stories from Shakespeare.
Every Man in His Place.
 Fireside Fairies and Flower Fancies.
To the Sea in Ships.

Jack's Victory: and other Stories about Dogs.
The Story of a King: told by one of his Soldiers.
Prince Alexis, or "Beauty and the Beast."
Sasha the Serf: Stories of Russian Life.
True Stories of Foreign History.

Books at 6d.

The Maid of Domremy: and other Tales.
Little Eric: a Story of Honesty.
Uncle Ben the Whaler: and other Stories.
The Palace of Luxury: and other Stories.
The Charcoal-Burner: or, Kindness Repaid.

Willy Black: a Story of Doing Right.
The Horse and his Ways.
The Shoemaker's Present: a Legendary Story.
Lights to Walk by: Stories for the Young.
The Little Merchant: and other Stories.
Nicholins: a Story about an Iceberg.

Books at 4d.

Brave and True. By GREGSON GOW.
Poor Tom Oliver. By JULIÃÁ GODDARD.
The Children and the Water-Lily. By JULIÁ GODDARD.
Johnnie Tupper's Temptation. By GREGSON GOW.

Climbing the Hill. By Annie S. Swale.
A Year at Coverley. By Annie S. Swale.
Fritz's Experiment. By Letitia McIltock.
Lucy's Christmas-Box; or, How George found his Cousin.

LONDON: BLACKIE & SON, 49 OLD BAILEY, E.C.; GLASGOW, EDINBURGH, AND DUBLIN.